R



DEFENDER

OWNER'S HANDBOOK

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

© Publication Part No. LRL 10 02 68 211

Introduction

ABOUT THIS HANDBOOK

Please take the time to study all of the owner literature supplied with your vehicle as soon as possible.

IMPORTANT

The information contained in this handbook covers all vehicle derivatives and optional equipment, some of which may not be fitted to your vehicle. Due to printing cycles, this handbook may include descriptions of options before they become generally available.

Images used in this publication are for illustrative purposes only and may not reflect exactly what is fitted to your vehicle.

The vehicle options, hardware and software, are designed for the market in which the vehicle is intended for original sale. If the vehicle is to be registered or used in another geographical area, it may need modifications to suit local requirements. Jaguar Land Rover Limited is not responsible for the cost of any modifications. Warranty conditions may be affected.

The information contained in this publication was correct when it went to print. Subsequent vehicle design changes may result in a supplement being added to the literature pack. The digital handbook can be viewed at: **www.ownerinfo.landrover.com** and is updated with the latest available information.

In the interest of development, the right is reserved to change specifications, design or equipment, at any time, without notice and without incurring any obligations. This publication, or part thereof, may not be reproduced nor translated without our approval. Errors and omissions excepted.

SYMBOLS USED IN THIS HANDBOOK

Safety warnings indicate either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury.

Cautions indicate either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of damage to your vehicle.

The recycling symbol identifies those items that must be disposed of safely in order to prevent unnecessary damage to the environment.

The disposal symbol identifies those items that must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from your retailer/authorised repairer or your local authority.

The personalisation symbol identifies those features that can be adjusted, disabled, or enabled by your retailer/authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2020.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

All rights reserved.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

R

Contents

Introduction.....2
Controls overview.....7
Entering the vehicle.....9
Exiting the vehicle.....19
Front seats.....26
Rear seats.....33
Head restraints.....43
Steering wheel.....46
Seat belts.....48
Child safety.....52
Airbags.....64
Instrument panel.....72
Warning and information lamps.....80
Exterior lights.....91
Interior lights.....99
Wipers and washers.....101
Mirrors.....106
Garage door opener.....[illegible]09
Windows.....113
Storage compartments.....119
Load carrying.....128
Towing.....132
Vehicle charging.....149
Vehicle preconditioning.....156
Hybrid system.....160
My Electric Vehicle (EV).....164
Starting the engine.....165
Auto Stop/start.....169
Transmission.....172
Suspension.....175
Brakes.....182
Stability control.....188
Driving programs.....191
Hill Descent Control (HDC).....197
Speed limiter.....199
Cruise control.....204
Adaptive cruise control.....207
Collision avoidance.....215
All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC).....227
Driving aids.....232
Touchscreen home.....238
Touchscreen extra features.....245
Touchscreen settings.....247
Media.....251
AM/FM radio.....258
DAB radio.....261
Portable media.....263
Climate and comfort.....270
Parking features.....285
Cameras.....293
4x4i.....299
Low traction launch.....304
Phone.....305
Bluetooth®.....315
Navigation.....316
Navigation (Korea only).....328
Voice control.....338
InControl.....341
Connectivity.....351
Fuel and refuelling.....357
Maintenance.....367
Vehicle cleaning.....377
Fluid level checks.....383
Vehicle battery.....391
Fuses.....397
Tyres.....406
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).....416
Tyre repair system.....419
Wheel changing.....426
Vehicle recovery.....435
After a collision.....441

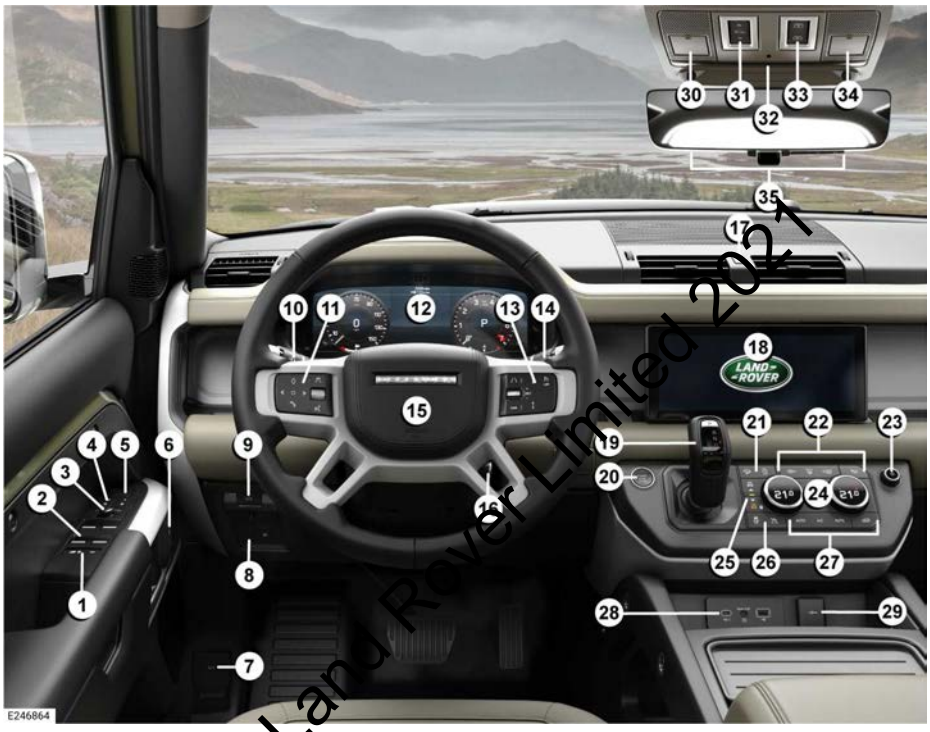
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Contents

Vehicle labels.....443
Technical specifications.....445
Service.....464
Warranty.....468
Roadside assistance.....476
Type approval.....479
Index.....497

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

DRIVER CONTROLS



1. Rear window isolator and child safety locks (**54**).
2. Window controls (**113**).
3. Mirror adjustment and power-folding mirrors (**106**).
4. Driver's seat position memory (**31**).
5. Clear exit monitor (**22**).
6. Doors lock and unlock (**21**).
7. Bonnet release lever (**372**).
8. Interior illumination control and fuel filler flap release (**100**/**363**).
9. Electric Parking Brake (EPB) (**183**).
10. Exterior lights and trip computer controls (**92**/**77**).
11. Instrument panel menu, audio, phone, and voice controls (**75**/**253**/**311**/**338**).
12. Instrument panel (**72**).
13. Lane Keep Assist (LKA), cruise or adaptive cruise control, heated steering wheel, and speed limiter (**232**/**204**/**208**/**47**/**199**).
14. Wash/wipe control (**101**).
15. Horn.
16. Steering wheel adjuster (**46**).
17. Hazard warning lights.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Controls overview

18. Touchscreen (**239**).

19. Gear selector (**172**).

20. Engine START/STOP (**165**).

21. All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC), Hill Descent Control (HDC), Electric Vehicle (EV) mode, and auto stop/start (**227**/**197**/**161**/**169**).

22. Climate control (**270**).

23. Media power button and volume control (**252**).

24. Driving programs and climate control (**191**/**270**).

25. Electronic air suspension control (**175**).

26. Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) and low range transmission (**188**/**173**).

27. Climate control (**270**).

28. Portable media connections and SIM card holder (**263**/**354**).

29. Auxiliary power socket (**124**).

30. Optimised Land Rover assistance (**348**).

31. Sunroof (**113**).

32. Front interior lights (**99**).

33. Sunroof blind (**117**).

34. SOS emergency call (**345**).

35. ClearSight rear-view mirror and garage door opener (**107**/**109**).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

SMART KEY OPERATION



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 202

Entering the vehicle

The smart key system uses Radio Frequency (RF) transmissions that could interfere with implanted medical devices. To avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device, make sure that the device is kept at a safe distance. The distance should be at least 22 cm (8 in) away from any transmitter. In rare circumstances, interference may cause an implanted medical device to malfunction. Malfunction of implanted medical devices may cause injury or death.

Note: *For more information on the locations of the security system transmitters, see* ***458, SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS****.*

Never leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. The vehicle can be operated when the smart key is inside the vehicle. Doing so may potentially result in accident or unauthorised operation.

Note: *The operational range of the smart key varies considerably, depending on atmospheric conditions and interference from other transmitting devices.*

Note: *If any door or the taildoor, is unlocked ten times within a short period, the locking can disables for approximately 1 minute.*

Note: *A replacement smart key can be obtained only from a retailer/authorised repairer. The retailer/authorised repairer will require proof of identification and ownership. Notify a retailer/authorised repairer immediately if a smart key is lost or stolen.*

The vehicle is supplied with two smart keys. The smart keys act as remote controls for the locking and alarm system. The smart keys allow the vehicle to be locked, unlocked, and driven without the use of a conventional key. Each smart key also has an emergency key inserted in the smart key's body. See **24, EMERGENCY LOCKING**, **12, KEYLESS ENTRY** and **165, STARTING THE ENGINE**.

Use of the smart key to operate the vehicle locks:

1. Lock: Press to secure the vehicle. The vehicle locks. In some markets, a second press double locks the vehicle. If power-fold mirrors are enabled, the mirrors fold in. Press and hold to activate the global closing feature, if available. See **19, SINGLE LOCKING**, **20, DOUBLE LOCKING**, **106, DOOR MIRRORS** and **23, GLOBAL CLOSING**.
2. Unlock: Press briefly to unlock the vehicle and disarm the alarm. The hazard warning lights flash twice to indicate that the vehicle is unlocked and the alarm is disarmed. The interior lights illuminate to assist entry to the vehicle. If power-fold mirrors are enabled, the mirrors unfold. See **106, DOOR MIRRORS**.
3. Headlights: When approaching the vehicle during darkness, press to switch on the headlights to provide approach illumination. Press again to switch approach illumination off. The approach illumination preset delay period is 30 seconds. The delay period can be configured to provide illumination lasting between 0 and 240 seconds. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *Make sure the smart key is not left inside the vehicle before closing the taildoor. The smart key may not be detected if kept inside a metal container, or shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example, a smartphone, laptop, including when inside a bag, or a games console. Also, if the vehicle is in an area of localised Radio Frequency (RF) interference, the smart key may not be detected. If the smart key is not detected inside the vehicle, the vehicle can still be locked. However, the vehicle does not automatically unlock. The vehicle unlocks only with another valid smart key.*

4. Taildoor: Press briefly to unlock the taildoor. If the vehicle is locked and armed, all of the other doors remain closed and the exterior alarm remains armed while the taildoor is open. Press the lock button (**1**) to lock the taildoor when closed.
5. Panic alarm: Press and hold for 3 seconds, or press three times within 3 seconds, to activate the horn and the hazard warning lights. Once active for more than 5 seconds, the alarm can be cancelled: press the button and hold for 3 seconds, or press three times within 3 seconds. The panic alarm also cancels if a valid smart key is present when the **START/STOP** button is pressed.
6. Emergency key blade: Push the release button.
7. Emergency key blade: Pull to withdraw the key blade.
8. Emergency unlock: Insert key blade into key barrel and rotate counter-clockwise to unlock door.
9. Keyless unlock: Press button on front of door handle to lock the vehicle.

2-STAGE UNLOCKING

To unlock the vehicle and disarm the alarm system, press the smart key's unlock button.

The vehicle unlocks in one of two ways:

1. 2-stage unlocking on: Unlocks the driver's door only. A second press is required to unlock the remaining doors and the taildoor.
2. 2-stage unlocking off: Unlocks all of the doors and the taildoor on the first press.

To change the vehicle's 2-stage unlocking status, press the smart key's lock and unlock buttons simultaneously for 3 seconds. The hazard warning lights flash twice to confirm the change.

2-stage unlocking can also be set via the **Vehicle** menu in the touchscreen. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

Note: *If an audible warning sounds when the vehicle is unlocked, there may be a fault with the alarm sensors. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

KEYLESS ENTRY

The smart key system uses Radio Frequency (RF) transmissions that could interfere with implanted medical devices. Make sure that the device is kept at a safe distance of at least 22 cm away from any transmitter. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device. The RFs and field strengths used by the keyless entry system operate well within required medical standards for radiated emissions. In rare circumstances, interference may cause an implanted medical device to malfunction, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.

For information concerning the location of the security system transmitters, see **458, SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS**.

Note: *The smart key may not be detected if it is shielded by metal and/or devices with LCD screens. For example, a smartphone, a laptop or a games console. Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting keyless entry, keyless locking, or push button starting.*

Note: *The smart key only needs to be on the driver's person, or in a nearby non-metallic bag or briefcase. The smart key does not need to be exposed or handled.*

Keyless entry allows the vehicle to be opened if a smart key is within 1.5 m of the door handle or taildoor button.



E246253

The keyless entry system activates when the keyless unlock button (1) is pressed. Grip and pull the door handle to open the door. The vehicle unlocks, the alarm system disarms, and the hazard warning lights will flash twice to confirm unlocking. If the power-fold mirrors are enabled, the mirrors fold out.

Note: *When 2-stage unlocking is the current security setting and a door other than the driver's door is opened first, all of the doors will unlock.*

After entering the vehicle, and closing all of the doors, the vehicle scans the interior for a valid smart key. If a valid smart key is not detected, the instrument panel displays a warning message. If this situation occurs, use a valid smart key to carry out the engine start backup procedure. See **166, ENGINE START BACKUP**.

The security system fitted to the vehicle is Thatcham category 1 approved and meets EU regulations 97/116.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ACTIVITY KEY

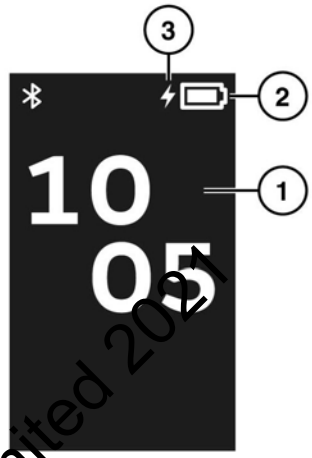
The activity key is a touchscreen with wrist strap designed to support situations where the smart key might be obtrusive or difficult to keep secure. The activity key is waterproof to a depth of 40 m and is shockproof. Care should be taken during certain sporting activities, e.g., skiing, jet-skiing, or diving, to protect the activity key.

The activity key provides full keyless entry and keyless start functionality. See **12, KEYLESS ENTRY**, **20, KEYLESS LOCKING** and **165, STARTING THE ENGINE**.

While the activity key is worn on the wrist, the smart key can remain inside the vehicle. When the activity key is activated, the vehicle locks, the alarm system arms, and any smart key remaining inside the vehicle is disabled.

Note: *Make sure any smart keys left inside the vehicle are stored out of view.*

Note: *Locking preference settings are retained when locking or unlocking the vehicle using the activity key (e.g., single or double locking. See **11, 2-STAGE UNLOCKING** and **14, GLOBAL OPENING**.*



E257241

1. Home screen: Displays the time.
2. Battery charge status.

   Note: *If the battery charge level drops below 30%, the screen displays a prompt to charge the activity key.*

   Note: *The screen disables if the charge level drops below 25%.*
3. Charge icon: Displays when the activity key is being charged.

   Note: *Charge via the supplied magnetic USB cable. Replacements are available. Contact a retailer/ authorised repairer.*

Note: *When left idle for a period of time, the activity key's touchscreen switches off to preserve battery power.*

Touchscreen use:

1. Press and hold the screen for approximately 2 seconds to wake the home screen.
2. Swipe right to access the menu screen.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

3. Touch the menu item required to select.

Locking:

1. Make sure the ignition is switched off.
2. Exit the vehicle, making sure that all of the doors and taildoor are closed.
3. Swipe the screen upward to access the **Locking** menu.
4. Touch the **Lock** icon.

   Note: *The hazard warning lights flash, and the power fold mirrors fold to confirm the locked status.*
5. Touch the home icon to return to the home screen.

Unlocking:

1. Swipe the screen upward to access the **Locking** menu.
2. Touch the **Unlock** icon.

Setting the time:

- Select the **Settings** menu.
- Select the clock symbol and adjust the time using the up/down arrows.

Panic alarm: To sound the panic alarm, briefly touch the screen 3 times in quick succession.

Note: *The panic alarm cannot be cancelled during the first 5 seconds of operation. Once the 5 seconds has passed, the panic function on the key will de-activate the panic alarm.*

GLOBAL OPENING

Note: *Global opening of the windows can be enabled and disabled via the* ***Vehicle*** *menu . See* ***247, SYSTEM SETTINGS****.*

To unlock the vehicle and open all of the windows simultaneously, press and hold the smart key's unlock button for 3 seconds. See **9, SMART KEY OPERATION**.

To cancel global opening, press any of the buttons on the smart key.

CONVENIENCE MODE

When the driver's door is opened using either the smart key or keyless entry, the vehicle initiates convenience mode. The following systems become functional:

- Seat position memory.
- Seat and steering column adjustment.
- Interior and exterior lighting.
- Instrument panel.
- Auxiliary power sockets.

STEERING COLUMN LOCK

The steering column lock unlocks and locks in conjunction with the vehicle's locking system. The steering column locks automatically when the vehicle's ignition is switched off and the smart key is removed from the vehicle.

During vehicle recovery, a smart key must remain inside the vehicle so that the steering column lock remains unlocked. If the steering column lock locks while the vehicle is moving, serious damage may occur.

If the steering column lock malfunctions, the instrument panel displays the message **Steering column locked**. If this occurs:

1. Lock and then unlock the vehicle using the smart key.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

2. Try again to unlock the steering column lock. Turn the steering wheel gently to the left and right.

   Note: *The steering column lock may malfunction if the steering column is under load. For example, when the vehicle is parked with the front wheels pressed against a kerb.*

If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.

SMART KEY SYSTEM TRANSMITTERS

Keep any implanted medical device at least 22 cm away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. Failure to do so could result in interference between the system and device. Interference may cause the implanted medical device to malfunction, potentially causing serious injury or death.

More information on the locations of the security system transmitters can be found in the technical specifications section. See **458, SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS**.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE TAILDOOR

While the taildoor is open, the locking latch is exposed. Do not attempt to manually close the latch, as it may also automatically soft-close and trap items or body parts.

Do not drive with an open taildoor at any time. Driving with an open taildoor obscures the rear lights. Also, driving with an open taildoor may result in persons or luggage falling from the vehicle. In either case, death or serious injury may occur.

An open taildoor obscures the rear lights. If available, place a warning triangle at a suitable distance behind the vehicle, facing toward oncoming traffic. See 441, WARNING TRIANGLE.

Make sure there is sufficient space behind and at the side of the vehicle before operating the taildoor. Insufficient opening space may result in damage to the vehicle.

Do not operate the taildoor if a cycle rack is fitted to the vehicle. Remove any cycles and/or racks before operating the taildoor. Improper use of cycle racks may cause damage to the vehicle.

Make sure the taildoor is fully closed before the vehicle is driven, to prevent damage to the vehicle.

For further information regarding proper use of the taildoor, refer to the taildoor label. See **443, LABEL LOCATIONS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Entering the vehicle



Opening the taildoor:

1. Press the button on the rear of the handle to release the latch.
2. Pull to open the taildoor.

Note: *The taildoor handle releases if all of the doors are unlocked and the gear selector is in the Park (**P**) position. With the gear selector in the Neutral (**N**) position, the taildoor releases only if all of the doors are unlocked. Also, the ignition must be in convenience mode or switched off. The taildoor handle does not operate the taildoor if the gear selector is in any other position. See **14, CONVENIENCE MODE**.*

To close the taildoor, move it to the closed position. The taildoor automatically soft-closes to the fully closed position.

Do not slam the taildoor as damage to the soft-close mechanism may result.

The taildoor can also be released using the following methods:

- The taildoor button on the smart key. See **9, SMART KEY OPERATION**.
- The taildoor command on the activity key. See **13, ACTIVITY KEY**.

Note: *The taildoor does not release if the vehicle is travelling at, or above, approximately 5 km/h (3 mph).*

Note: *If the smart key remains inside the loadspace when the vehicle is locked and the alarm is set, a warning is given. The warning indicates a mislock and the taildoor unlatches after approximately 3 seconds.*

Note: *If the taildoor is pushed to a closed position, the vehicle searches for a valid smart key at the rear of the vehicle. If a valid smart key is not detected within 1.5 m of the rear of the vehicle, the taildoor re-opens and an audible mislock warning sounds. Additionally the taildoor re-opens with an audible mislock warning sound if any smart key remains inside the vehicle when the taildoor is closed.*

Note: *The smart key may not be detected if it is shielded by metal and/or devices with LCD screens. For example, a smartphone, a laptop or a games console.*

Note: *Make sure the taildoor is fully closed before leaving the vehicle unattended. Visible and audible warnings indicate if the vehicle is locked and the alarm armed. If there are no visible or audible warnings upon closing the taildoor, the vehicle may be unprotected.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

90 Commercial variant

An interior release for the taildoor is located on the vehicle's left side D-pillar.

DRIVE-AWAY LOCKING

Drive-away locking automatically locks all of the doors when the vehicle reaches a set speed. The drive-away locking set speed can be adjusted via **Vehicle** in the touchscreen menu. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

Note: *After drive-away locking has taken place, press the unlock or lock button to override the feature for the current journey. The unlock and lock buttons are located on the inside of the front doors. See* ***21, DOOR LOCKS AND HANDLES****.*

SMART KEY BATTERY REPLACEMENT



When the battery needs replacing, there is a significant decrease in the effective range and the instrument panel displays a warning message.

To replace the battery:

1. Push the button on the smart key.
2. Pull the emergency key blade in the direction of the arrow.
3. Use the emergency key blade to separate the smart key's body.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 202

4. Fit a new and unused CR2032 type battery, available from a retailer/ authorised repairer, with the positive (+) side upward.

Note: *Avoid touching the new battery. Moisture or oil from fingers can reduce battery life and corrode the contacts.*

Note: *If the low battery warning does not extinguish, it indicates that the replacement battery is not in a new or unused condition.*

Refit the parts in reverse order. Make sure that the parts click securely into place.



Battery disposal: Batteries contain harmful substances and must be disposed of correctly. Seek advice on disposal from a retailer/authorised repairer and/ or the local authority.

SMART KEY CARE

To prevent accidental or unauthorised operation, never leave the smart key unattended in the vehicle. Never leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. The vehicle can be operated when the smart key remains inside the vehicle. Unintended or accidental vehicle operation could cause injury or death.

Do not expose the smart key to extremes of heat, dust, or humidity. Extreme heat, dust and humidity may damage the smart key.

Do not allow the smart key to come into contact with fluids. Fluids may damage to the smart key.

Do not leave the smart key exposed to direct sunlight. Sunlight may cause damage to the smart key.

The emergency key blade number is recorded on an attached label. Peel off the label and store it securely away from the vehicle.

The operational range of the smart key depends on atmospheric conditions and interference from other transmitting devices.

Note: *The Radio Frequency (RF) used by the smart key may be used by other devices, e.g., medical equipment. Use of these devices may prevent the smart key from operating correctly.*

The instrument panel displays a warning if the smart key battery is depleted. If a smart key low battery warning occurs, replace the batteries in all of the smart keys. Replacing all of the smart key batteries prevents permanent damage to the smart keys.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

SINGLE LOCKING

Before exiting the vehicle, always select Park (P) switch off the ignition, apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) and remove any smart keys. Missing these steps may lead to serious injury or death.

No modifications or additions should be made to the security system. Such changes could cause the system to malfunction.

Before attempting to lock the vehicle, always make sure of the following:

- The ignition is switched off.
- All of the doors, the windows, the bonnet, and the taildoor are closed correctly.

Briefly press the lock button on the smart key to lock the vehicle and arm the perimetric alarm. The hazard warning lights flash to confirm.

Single locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors from being opened from the outside. The doors may still be unlocked and opened from inside the vehicle.

Note: *The single locking setting should be used in circumstances when pets remain in the vehicle, or if a window must be left open.*

Once armed, the alarm activates if:

- The bonnet, taildoor, or a door is opened.
- The engine **START/STOP** button is pressed without a valid smart key present.
- The vehicle's battery is disconnected.
- An attempt is made to disconnect the battery back-up sounder.

Note: *Always secure the vehicle when left unattended. Where possible, always secure the vehicle to the maximum available level of security.*

Note: *In some markets, the full alarm system, including the alarm sensors, is armed when the vehicle is single locked. The alarm sensors can be enabled and disabled, for one alarm cycle only, via the* ***Vehicle*** *menu in the touchscreen. See* ***247, SYSTEM SETTINGS****.*

DOUBLE LOCKING

Never double lock the vehicle with people, children, or pets inside. In the event of an emergency, occupants would be unable to operate the doors and the emergency services would be unable to release any occupants quickly.

Double locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors from being unlocked or opened from inside or outside the vehicle.

Double locking provides extra security if the vehicle is left unattended. The vehicle cannot be opened by breaking a window and operating the doors from inside. Additionally, double locking arms the full alarm system.

Press the lock button on the smart key twice within 3 seconds to double lock the vehicle and arm the full alarm system. The hazard warning lights flash twice to confirm. If enabled, a double lock tone sounds.

Note: *In the double locked state, an open glass area may cause the alarm to sound, due to the movement of air. Make sure that all glass areas are fully closed before double locking the vehicle.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Exiting the vehicle

Once the full alarm system is armed, the alarm system activates if:

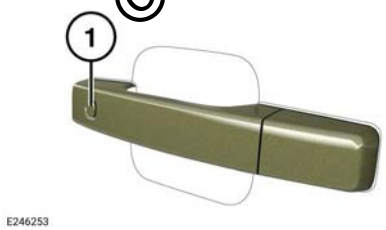
- The tailgate/taildoor/boot, a door, or the bonnet is opened.
- Movement is detected within the vehicle's interior, including air currents.
- The vehicle is raised or tilted, if a tilt sensor is fitted.

KEYLESS LOCKING

Never double lock the vehicle with people, children, or pets inside. In the event of an emergency, any occupants would be unable to exit the vehicle and the emergency services would be unable to release the occupants quickly.

Note: *The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example, a smartphone, laptop, including when inside a laptop bag, or a games console. Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting keyless entry, keyless locking, or push button starting. Loose coins in the same pocket as the smart key, may also affect its detection.*

Note: *The vehicle does not lock automatically.*



E246253

Using the door handle buttons to keyless lock:

1. Press the lock/unlock button (**1**) once to single lock the vehicle.

   Note: *Do not grip the door handle while pressing the button. Doing so prevents the vehicle from locking.*
2. The hazard warning lights flash once to confirm the single locked status.
3. Press the lock/unlock button (**1**) again, within 3 seconds, to double lock the vehicle.
4. The hazard warning lights flash twice to confirm the double locked status.

When using keyless locking, the vehicle does not lock if:

- Any door(s) is open.
- The bonnet is open.
- The boot is not fully closed.
- The vehicle's ignition is switched on.

No audible mislock error warning sounds. The hazard warning lights do not flash, and the power-fold mirrors, if enabled, do not fold in.

Make sure that the vehicle's ignition is switched off, and that all of the doors, the bonnet, and the boot are closed properly. Lock the vehicle again. If the mislock persists, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

LOCK CONFIRMATION

If uncertain about the vehicle's locked and armed status, press the lock button on the smart key.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The hazard warning lights flash once to indicate and confirm the current lock status. One short flash means that the vehicle is single locked and one long flash indicates that it is double locked.

MISLOCK

When locking the vehicle with the smart key, a mislock can occur if:

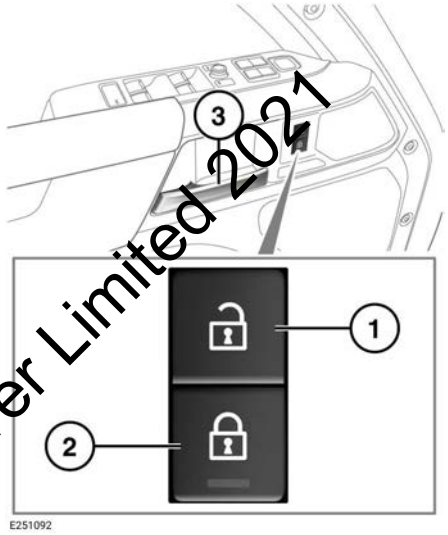
- One or more of the doors, the bonnet, or the taildoor are not fully closed.
- One or more of the doors have failed to lock.
- The vehicle's ignition is switched on.

If any of the above are present, the vehicle does not lock and an audible mislock error warning sounds. The hazard warning lights do not flash and the power-fold mirrors, if enabled, do not fold in. Check that all of the doors, the windows, the bonnet, and the taildoor are closed properly. Make sure the vehicle's ignition is switched off. Lock the vehicle again. If the mislock persists, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

Note: *Operating the interior or exterior door handles while unlocking, locking, or changing the child lock status may cause the security system to ignore requests.*

DOOR LOCKS AND HANDLES

Note: *The rear door child safety locks inhibit operation of the rear door lock and unlock buttons and the interior door handles. See* ***54, CHILD SAFETY LOCKS****.*



1. Unlock button: Press to unlock all of the doors and the taildoor.
2. Lock button: With all of the doors closed, press any lock button to lock all of the doors.
3. Door handle: Pull to unlock and open a front door. To unlock a rear door, pull the individual door handle.

   Note: *If the vehicle is locked with the smart key, operating an interior door handle unlocks only that door. If the door is opened, the alarm sounds.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

CLEAR EXIT MONITOR

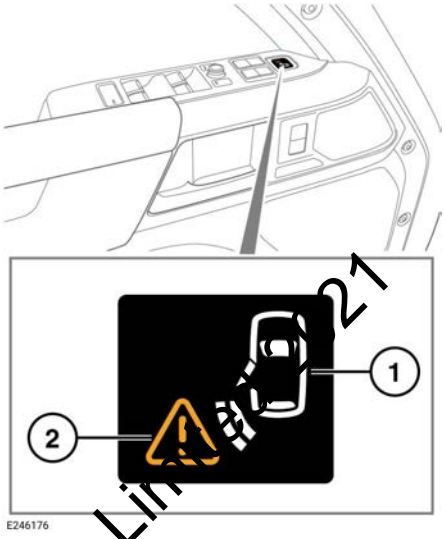
Clear exit monitor is a user aid only. The user is responsible for making sure that the door is opened with necessary care and attention. The user must make sure the door is opened in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users. Failure to operate the doors in a safe manner could lead to serious injury or death.

Make sure that the clear exit warning icons and indicators are not obscured by stickers or other objects as this will impair the user's ability to utilise the feature. If the warning icons are not visible, the user may not notice a warning, which may cause damage to the vehicle.

Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper. Stickers and other attachments may interfere with the operation of the clear exit monitor sensors.

Clear Exit Monitor warns of another vehicle, or moving object, approaching from behind when the door has been unlatched from the inside. Sensors in the rear bumper monitor nearby traffic. If the system determines that opening the door could be unsafe, due to passing traffic, it gives a visible warning to the occupant. The system does not prevent the door from being opened. Clear exit monitor is fitted to all doors.

The Clear Exit Monitor system activates only when the door has been unlatched. The icons illuminate as follows:



1. 1. Illuminates white to indicate that the system is active.
2. 2. Illuminates amber if the system determines that it could be unsafe to open the door, due to passing traffic.

The icons extinguish after the door has been closed.

The Clear exit monitor system may not be able to detect all approaching traffic in all circumstances. Operation relies on the sensor's ability to detect moving objects and this may be affected by road and weather conditions, and, also, if:

- Vehicles approach very quickly from behind.
- The sensors are impaired by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow, damage, accessories, or stickers.
- The sensor's 'line of sight' is obscured by objects, such as other vehicles parked particularly wide or close to the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Under these circumstances, as well as loss of functionality, reduced warning times may be experienced.

Clear Exit Monitor is available when the vehicle is stationary or travelling at less than 5 km/h (3 mph) and remains active for 3 minutes after the ignition is switched off.

AUTOMATIC RE-LOCKING AND RE-ARMING OF THE ALARM

The security system disarms automatically when the vehicle is unlocked with a smart key. However, if a door is not opened within 40 seconds, the security system re-engages the locks and the alarm re-arms. Automatic re-locking and re-arming is a precautionary action to protect the vehicle when it is unintentionally left unlocked.

Note: *The vehicle will not automatically double lock. Automatic re-locking and re-arming of the alarm only returns the vehicle to the single locked state.*

GLOBAL CLOSING

Make sure no children, pets, or obstructions are in any open aperture before operating the global closing feature. Unexpected use of the global closing feature may cause serious injuries.

Note: *Global closing can be enabled and disabled via the* ***Vehicle*** *menu in the touchscreen. See* ***247, SYSTEM SETTINGS****.*

To operate the global closing feature, all of the doors must be fully closed. Press and hold the lock button on the smart key for 3 seconds. The vehicle single locks and the alarm arms immediately. After 3 seconds, any open apertures close.

Note: *The canvas roof is not closed with the global closing feature. Use the roof controls to close the canvas roof. See* ***113, ELECTRIC WINDOWS****.*

TILT SENSOR

When the alarm is armed the tilt sensor detects any change in the vehicle's angle to the ground. A significant change in the vehicle's angle activates the alarm.

Note: *The tilt sensor is a sensor for the alarm system. Various alarm sensors can be enabled or disabled for one ignition cycle only, via the* ***Vehicle*** *menu in the touchscreen. See* ***247, SYSTEM SETTINGS****.*

INTERIOR MOTION SENSOR

When the alarm is armed, the interior motion sensor detects movement within the vehicle's interior, including air movement through open apertures.

When the alarm is fully armed and the interior motion sensor is active, any significant movement within the passenger compartment activates the alarm.

Note: *The interior motion sensor is a sensor for the alarm system. Various alarm sensors can be enabled and disabled, for one ignition cycle only, via the* ***Vehicle*** *menu in the touchscreen. See* ***247, SYSTEM SETTINGS****.*

BATTERY BACK-UP SOUNDER

When the alarm is armed, the battery back-up sounder activates if:

- The alarm is activated.
- The vehicle's 12V battery is disconnected.
- An attempt is made to disconnect the battery back-up sounder.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

DEACTIVATING THE ALARM WHEN TRIGGERED

If the alarm activates, it can be deactivated by any one of the following methods:

- Press the unlock button on the smart key. See **9, SMART KEY OPERATION**.
- Open a door using keyless entry. See **12, KEYLESS ENTRY**.
- Press the **START/STOP** button with a valid smart key inside the vehicle. See **165, STARTING THE ENGINE**.

The cause of the last alarm activation can be displayed in the **Vehicle** menu in the touchscreen. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

EMERGENCY LOCKING

Note: *Do not leave the emergency key blade in the vehicle at any point during the emergency locking procedure.*

In the event of a fault with the alarm and/or locking system, manually secure the vehicle. Lock all of the doors via the driver's door key barrel.

The emergency key blade is required for this procedure. See **9, SMART KEY OPERATION**.

Using the emergency key in the event of alarm or locking failure:

Note: *For vehicles with an exposed lock barrel, skip steps 2-5.*

1. Open the driver's door.
2. Locate the emergency lock access cover on the edge of the driver's door. The cover has an embossed lock icon.
3. Insert the emergency key blade into the cover's slot at the base of the door lock cover.
4. Lever the key blade upward to release the cover from its securing lugs.
5. Rotate the cover upward to remove it from the door, then retain the lock's access cover in a safe place.
6. Make sure all apertures are closed and insert the emergency key blade into the key barrel on the driver's door.
7. Turn the emergency key blade 90° clockwise. All of the doors' single lock and access to the loadspace is inhibited.
8. Make sure any valid smart keys are at least 2 m away from the doors.
9. Pull the exterior door handles to confirm that the doors are locked.

If the issue persists, consult a retailer/ authorised repairer for rectification as soon as possible.

In the event of the 12 V battery discharging, each of the doors must be locked manually.

Using the emergency key in the event of 12 V battery failure:

Note: *For vehicles with an exposed lock barrel, skip steps 2-5.*

1. Open the driver's door.
2. Locate the emergency lock access cover on the edge of the driver's door. The cover has an embossed lock icon.
3. Insert the emergency key blade into the cover's slot at the base of the door lock cover.
4. Lever the key blade upward to release the cover from its securing lugs.
5. Rotate the cover upward to remove it from the door, then retain the lock's access cover safely.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

6. Insert the emergency key blade firmly into the emergency lock.
7. A firm push activates the door's locking mechanism.
8. Remove the emergency key blade.
9. Rotate the access cover clockwise to refit. Make sure that the access cover is secure.
10. Close the door and confirm that it is locked.

Repeat the procedure for all other unlocked doors.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Front seats

FRONT SEAT SAFETY

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings and cautions before using the features in this section.

Failure to observe warnings and cautions may result in vehicle damage, injury, or DEATH in the event of an accident.

Never adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is moving. Any sudden or unexpected movement of the seat could cause a loss of vehicle control, resulting in an accident or personal injury.

Take care when retrieving items that have fallen down the side, back, front or underneath the seat. Sharp objects may be present in these areas, which could present a risk of injury. Always stop the vehicle before retrieving items.

Riding with a reclined seatback increases the chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop. Reclining the seat greatly reduces the protection of the restraint system, i.e., the seat belts and airbags. Seat belts must be snug against the hips and chest to work properly. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance of an occupant's hips sliding under the lap section of the seat belt. The occupant's neck could also strike the shoulder belt. Drivers and passengers should always sit well back in the seat, be properly belted, and have the seatbacks in an upright position.

Make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions before activating the seat memory function. All occupants should be clear of moving parts to avoid personal injury.

Make sure to keep any part of the body away from moving components. Failure to do so could potentially result in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

After using the rear seat access function of front seats, make sure that the seatback is returned and locked into its previous position before entering the vehicle.

If seat movement stops unexpectedly during adjustment, check for, and remove, any obstructions. An obstruction may cause damage to the seat mechanism.

Note: *If no obstructions can be seen, but normal adjustment cannot be carried out without stalling, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer.*

MANUAL FRONT SEATS

Make sure that you have read and fully understood the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 26, FRONT SEAT SAFETY.

Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. Doing so could cause a loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Take care when retrieving items that have fallen down the side, back, front or underneath the seat. Sharp objects may be present in these areas, which could present a risk of injury. Always stop the vehicle before retrieving items.



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Adjust the position of the manual front seats as follows:

1. Forward and rearward adjustment.
2. Height adjustment.
3. Seatback angle adjustment.

The position of the head restraints can also be adjusted. See **43, MANUAL FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS**.

Front seats

ELECTRIC FRONT SEATS

Make sure that you have read and fully understood the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 26, FRONT SEAT SAFETY.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Front seats



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

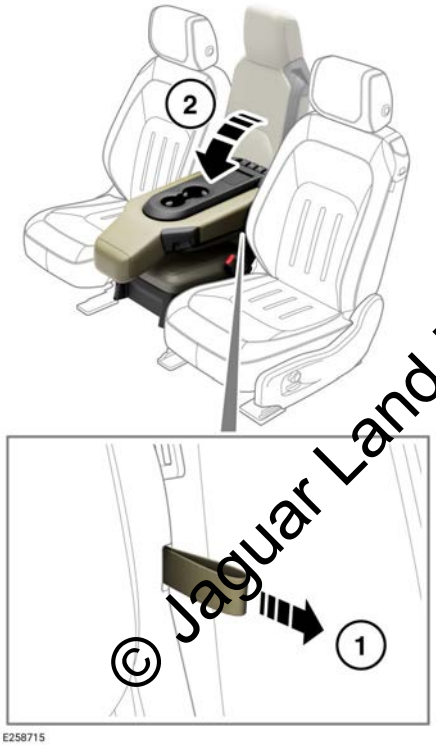
Adjust the position of the electric front seats as follows:

1. Bolster inflate and deflate.
2. Lumbar support.
3. Seatback angle.
4. Seat height.
5. Forward and rearward position.
6. Cushion tilt.

JUMP SEAT

Make sure that you have read and fully understood the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 26, FRONT SEAT SAFETY.

The jump seat is located between the driver and passenger seat, and can be folded to use the cup holders.



To fold the jump seat:

1. Pull the strap downwards.
2. Move the seatback forward until it locks into the lowered position.

RESTRICTED FRONT SEAT TRAVEL

Make sure that you have read and fully understood the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 26, FRONT SEAT SAFETY.

If front seat travel is restricted or obstructed, remove the obstruction and reset the seat adjustment mechanism, as follows:

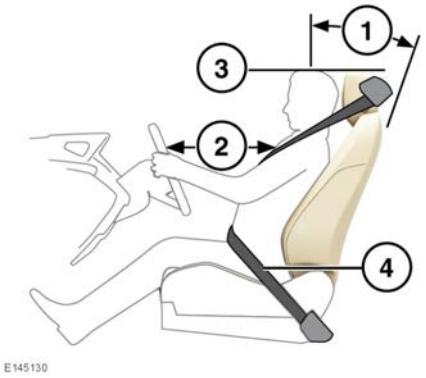
1. Operate the seat switch again to continue the stalled adjustment.
2. When seat movement resumes, hold the seat switch until the end of travel in that direction has been reached.
3. Seat adjustment can now be carried out as normal.

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

Make sure that you have read and fully understood the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 26, FRONT SEAT SAFETY.

The seat, head restraint, seat belt, and airbags all contribute to the protection of the user. Correct use of these components gives greater protection. Therefore, always observe the following points:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



1. Sit in an upright position, with the base of the spine as far back as possible. To achieve optimum benefit of the seat belt in the event of an accident, do not recline the seat excessively.
2. Do not move the driver's seat too close to the steering wheel. Ideally, a minimum distance of 254 mm is recommended between the breastbone and the airbag cover of the steering wheel. Hold the steering wheel in the correct position with arms slightly bent.
3. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centreline of the head.
4. Position the seat belt so that it is midway between the neck and shoulder. Fit the strap tightly across the hips, not across the stomach.

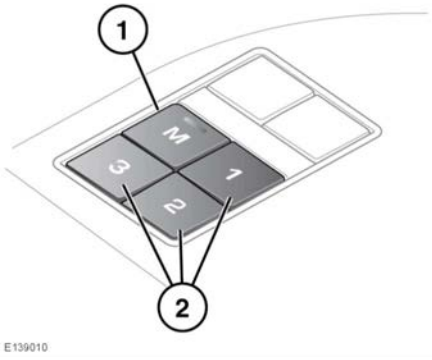
Make sure that the driving position is comfortable, enabling full control of the vehicle.

SEAT POSITION MEMORY

Make sure that you have read and fully understood the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 26, FRONT SEAT SAFETY.

Before activating the seat memory, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions. All occupants should be clear of moving parts to avoid personal injury.

When a preferred driving, door mirror and steering wheel position has been reached, the settings can be stored for future use. See **46, ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL** and **106, DOOR MIRRORS**.



1. Press the memory store button (**M**) to activate the memory function.
2. Press one of the preset buttons within 5 seconds to store the current settings. The message **MEMORY** (**1**, **2** or **3**) **SETTINGS SAVED** displays in the instrument panel and a chime sounds to confirm the settings have been stored.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *A driving position only stores during the 5 second active period.*

Note: *Any existing settings are over-written when storing a new memory position.*

3. Press the relevant preset button to recall a stored position.

Note: *The memory function for all passenger seats does not trigger any messages in the instrument panel.*

REAR SEAT ACCESS

Make sure that you have read and fully understood the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 26, FRONT SEAT SAFETY.

Take care not to damage the seatbacks while gaining access to the rear seats.

The front seats tilt and power-slide forward to enable entry and exit of the rear seats.



To pivot the seatback forward, lift the locking lever (**1**).

Depending on vehicle specification, to move the seat forward or backward, use the switch (**2**) or slide manually.

To return the seatback, manually pivot the seatback until it locks into its previous position.

Note: *The previous position can be a memory position or an adjusted position. If the seat is required to move further rearward and there is still adjustment available, push and hold the switch (**2** again).*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

REAR SEAT SAFETY

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using the features in this section.

Failure to observe warnings and cautions may result in vehicle damage, injury, or DEATH in the event of an accident.

Always make sure that objects carried in the vehicle are secured properly. Unsecured items can cause death or serious injury in the event of an impact or sudden manoeuvre.

Never allow passengers to travel in the loadspace under any circumstances. All vehicle occupants should be seated correctly and wear a seat belt at all times when the vehicle is in motion.

Make sure the locking mechanism is fully engaged when the seatback is raised. An unsecured seatback may not properly support an occupant during a collision or sudden stop.

Make sure the seat belts are correctly routed and not trapped behind the seats when raising the rear seatbacks. An incorrectly routed seat belt may not properly restrain an occupant during a collision or sudden stop.

Make sure the head restraints are raised to the correct position before the seats are used by a passenger. The head restraint must be positioned correctly to restrain rearward movement of the head in a collision.

Always take note of the safety warnings and labels attached to the rear seats. The labels give advice on safely folding and raising the rear seats.

Before folding a rear seat, make sure that the seat is not occupied. Make sure that no other occupant has any part of the body on the seat cushion. Make sure no one reaches into the area of the seat being folded. Pay particular attention when one seat is already folded. Reaching into this area creates a risk of entrapment and serious injury.

Beware of trapping fingers when raising and lowering the rear seatbacks.

Take care when retrieving items that have fallen down the side, back, front, or underneath the seat. Sharp objects may be present in these areas, which could present a risk of injury. Always stop the vehicle before retrieving items.

Always make sure that objects carried in the vehicle are secured properly. In a collision or sudden stop, unsecured objects could be thrown inside the vehicle, striking and injuring occupants.

Never allow passengers to travel in the loadspace under any circumstances. In a collision, people riding in this area are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Make sure the seat belts are correctly routed and not trapped behind the seats when raising the rear seatbacks. An incorrectly routed seat belt may not properly restrain an occupant during a collision or sudden stop.

Before folding the rear seats, make sure that all objects have been removed from the seat being folded.

FOLDING AND RAISING THE SECOND ROW SEATS

Make sure that you have read and fully understood the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 33, REAR SEAT SAFETY.

Make sure the locking mechanism is fully engaged when the seatback is raised. During an accident or sudden manoeuvre an unsecured seatback could cause an injury to the seat occupant.

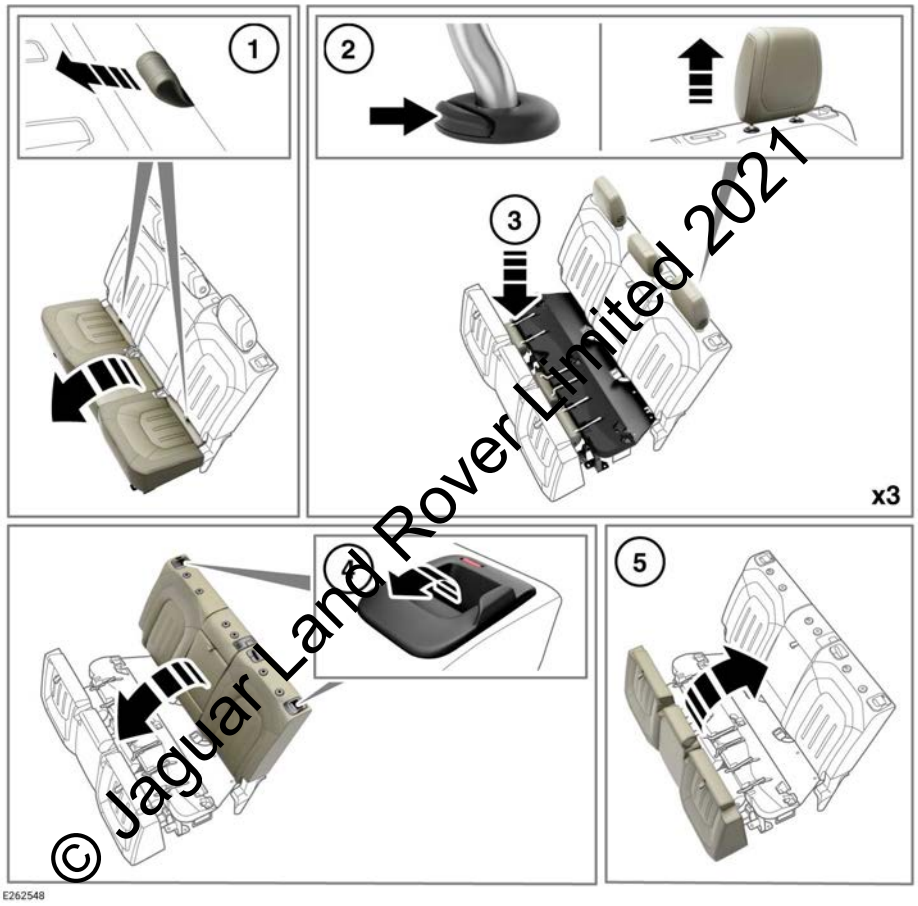
Note: *Before folding or raising a rear seat, make sure the rear seat belts are fully retracted and positioned against their respective side of the vehicle.*

Note: *Before folding or raising rear seats, make sure any rear-mounted screens are not in the movement path of the folding seat. Damage may occur to the seat or the screen as a result of the two colliding.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Folding and raising the second row seats (110 5 seat vehicles only)

The rear seatbacks can be folded flat.



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

To fold the rear seats flat:

1. Pull the tab to lift the seat.
2. Remove all three head restraints. See **44, REAR HEAD RESTRAINT REMOVAL**.

Note: *Tilt the head restraints fully forward before removal.*

3. Stow the head restraints under the seats.
4. Pull the lever to fold down the seat backs flat.

5. When returning the seats to the raised position make sure to replace the head restraints before use.

Folding and raising the second row seats (All vehicles except 110 5 and 7 seat vehicle)

The split-folding rear seatbacks can both be folded to accommodate large loads, or partially folded to accommodate large loads and still retain seating for passengers.



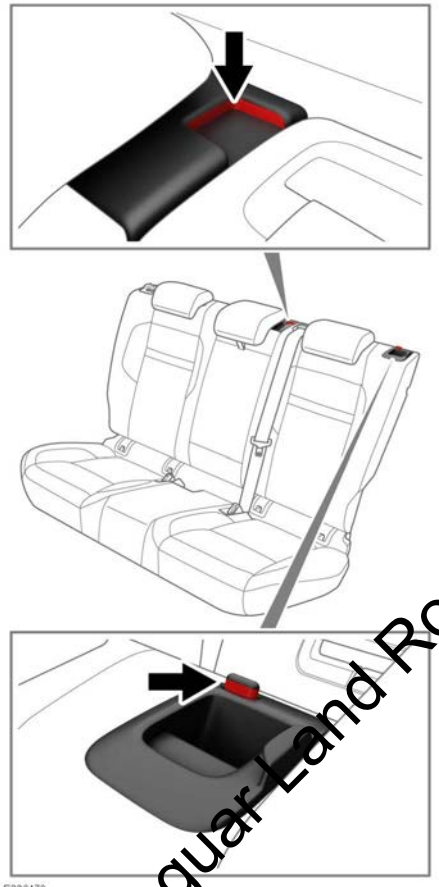
E258716

To fold a second row seatback:

1. Push the button on the side of each head restraint. Fold the head restraints forward.
2. Depending on the specification of your vehicle:
   - For 7 seat vehicles, pull the lever on the top of the seatback upward to release the locking mechanism.
   - For 5 seat vehicles, lift the lever on the side of the seat.
3. Move the seatback forward until it is in the lowered position.

Note: *For 5 seat vehicles, a red indicator is visible beside the release mechanism if either the rear or rear centre seatback is not fully locked into place.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



Raising and reclining the second row seats (7 seat vehicle)



To raise a second row seatback:

1. Lift the lever on the side of the seat.
2. Raise the seatback into the upright, locked position. Make sure that the seatback firmly locks into the upright position.
3. Raise the head restraints to the upright, locked position.

To recline the second row seatback: Lift the lever on the side of the seat and push the seatback into the reclined position.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Rear seats

To reset the seatback into the upright position: Lift the lever and pull the seatback forward into the upright position. Make sure the seatback firmly locks into the upright position.

Sliding the second row seats (7 seat vehicle)

The second row seats can be moved forward.



To slide the seat forward:

1. Pull up on the lever at the front of the seat.
2. Pull the seat forward into the required position and release the lever.

Third row seat access position

The vehicle must not be driven with the second row seats in the access position. Vehicle motion could cause the seatback to fall forward suddenly, potentially causing injury.

Make sure nothing is trapped beneath a seat when returning it from the access position. During an accident or sudden manoeuvre an unsecured seatback could cause an injury to the seat occupant.

When the seat and seatback are returned from the access position, make sure the locking mechanisms are fully engaged. Physically test to make sure that the seat and seatback are secure before driving. During an accident or sudden manoeuvre an unsecured seatback could cause an injury to the seat occupant.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 202



To access or exit the third row seats:

1. Pull the lever on the top of the seatback upward to release the locking mechanism. Move the seatback forward into the tilt position.
2. Pull the seat into the fully forward position.

FOLDING THE CENTRE SEATBACK

Make sure that you have read and fully understood the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 33, REAR SEAT SAFETY.

Note: *The second row centre seat belt incorporates a locking feature. The locking feature prevents the seat belt from being pulled out too far when the seatback is folded flat. To reset the feature, when returning the seatback to the upright position, extract the seat belt webbing until it stops. Return the seat belt webbing a small amount. The seat belt then operates as normal.*

Note: *Head restraints need to be removed to achieve the maximum cargo space. See* ***43, HEAD RESTRAINTS SAFETY****.*



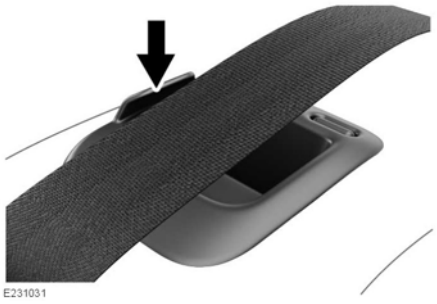
The centre rear seatback can be released separately. To release the centre rear seatback, press and hold the release button. Simultaneously fold the seatback forward.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

To fold the centre seatback: Press the release button on the top of the seatback. Fold the centre seatback forward into the lowered position.

To raise the centre seatback: Lift the centre seatback until it firmly locks into the upright position.

Note: *In an emergency, use the centre seatback to exit the third row seats.*



Note: *A latch hook is positioned beside the release catch to guide the seat belt away from the seat edge when lowering and raising the seatback.*

FOLDING AND RAISING THE THIRD ROW SEATS

Make sure that you have read and fully understood the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 33, REAR SEAT SAFETY.

The head restraint must always be raised when using the third row seats. The head restraint must be positioned correctly to restrain rearward movement of the head in a collision or sudden stop.

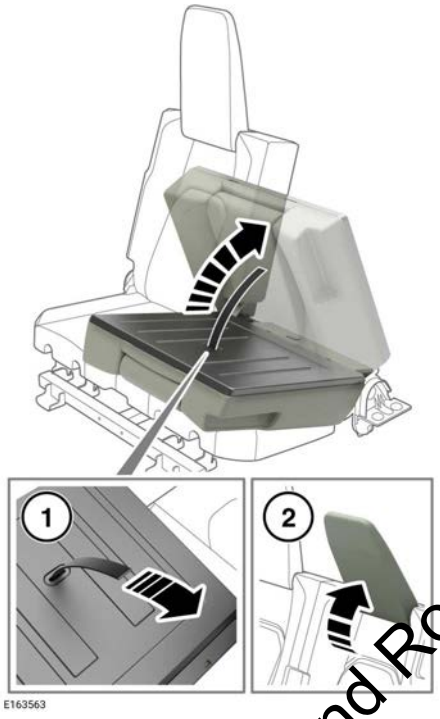
Do not allow passengers to travel in the third row seats when the second row seats are in the folded or third row access position.

Make sure the seat belts are correctly routed and not trapped behind the seats when raising the rear seatbacks. An incorrectly routed seat belt may not properly restrain an occupant during a collision or sudden stop.

Beware of trapping fingers when raising and lowering a third row seat. Failure to do so creates a risk of entrapment and serious injury.

Take care when retrieving items that have fallen down the side, back, front or underneath the seat. Sharp objects may be present in these areas, which could present a risk of injury. Always stop the vehicle before retrieving items.

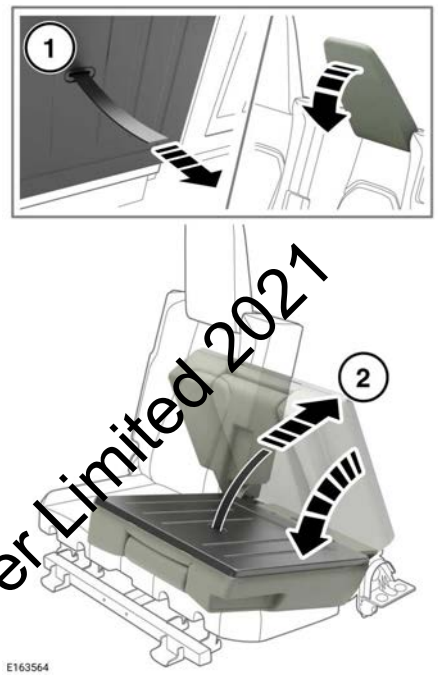
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



The seat is heavy, so care should be taken when raising the seat.

To raise a third row seat:

1. Make sure the second row seats are not fully reclined. See **34, FOLDING AND RAISING THE SECOND ROW SEATS**.
2. From inside the loadspace, pull the strap on the rear of the seatback. Lift the seat into the raised position.
3. From inside the passenger compartment, lift the head restraint, until it locks in the upright position.



The seat is heavy, so care should be taken when lowering the seat.

To fold a third row seat:

1. From inside the loadspace, pull the strap on the rear of the seat to release the head restraint locking mechanism. Fold the head restraint forward.
2. Pull the strap to release the seat locking mechanism. Fold the seat forward.

RESTRICTED REAR SEAT TRAVEL

If electric seat movement stops unexpectedly during folding or raising, check for and remove any obstructions.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Rear seats

Once any obstructions have been removed, continue the seat movement by pressing the appropriate button.

Note: *If no obstructions can be seen, and normal movement cannot be carried out, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

HEAD RESTRAINTS SAFETY

Head restraints are designed to support the head, not the back of the neck. The head restraint must be positioned correctly to restrain rearward movement of the head in a collision. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.

While stationary, adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centreline of the head. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.

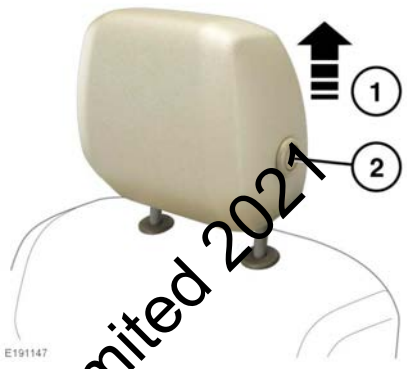
Do not drive or carry passengers with the head restraints removed from occupied seats. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.

Never adjust the head restraints while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so could potentially cause a loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

Always stow a removed head restraint securely. In the event of an accident, an unsecured object could potentially cause serious injury or death.

Head restraints are fitted to all front and rear seats.

MANUAL FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS



To adjust the manual front head restraints:

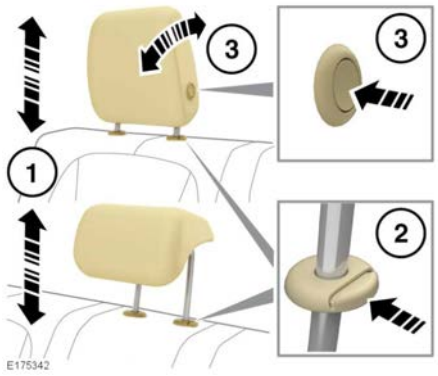
1. To raise the head restraint, pull it upward.
2. Press the button on the side of the head restraint to move the head restraint downward. Simultaneously press down on the head restraint.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Head restraints

REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating any features in this section. See **43, HEAD RESTRAINTS SAFETY**.



To adjust the rear head restraints:

1. To raise the head restraint, pull it upward until it clicks and locks into position.
2. To lower the head restraint, press the button on the stem collar. Simultaneously press down on the head restraint.
3. Press the button on the side of the head restraint to change the angle. Simultaneously move the head restraint to the required position.

   Note: *The rear head restraint must be in the upright position when the seat is occupied.*

REAR HEAD RESTRAINT REMOVAL



The manual rear head restraints can be removed, if required, e.g., to fit larger child seats.

Note: *Two people are required to carry out this operation.*

To remove a manual rear head restraint, first move it to the fully raised position. Then:

1. Press the release tag* below the stem collar and simultaneously press the button on the other stem collar.
   *To locate the release tag, press down on the seat material in the area shaded on the illustration.
2. A second person is now required to lift out the head restraint.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Head restraints

Always store a removed head restraint securely. In the event of an accident, an unsecured object could cause serious injury or death.

To refit a head restraint, make sure it is facing in the correct direction. Insert the stems of the head restraint into the stem collars and push the head restraint downward.

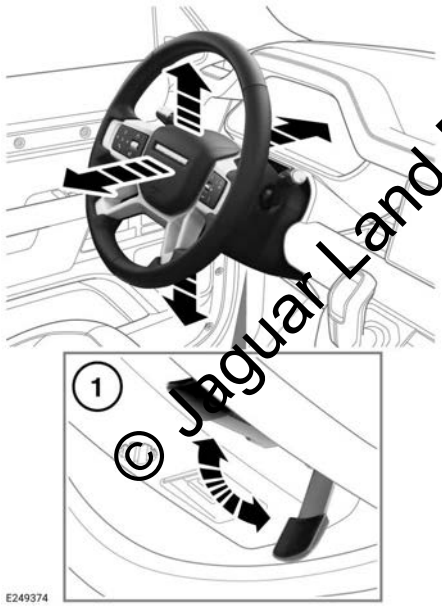
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

⚠ **Never adjust the steering column while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so may cause a loss of control, potentially resulting in an accident.**

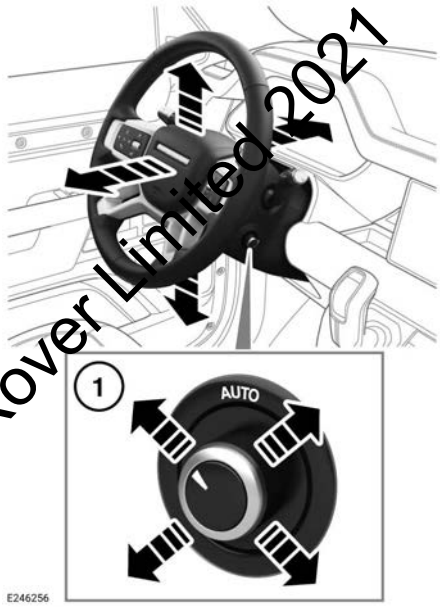
⚠ **Do not use steering wheel mounted security devices on vehicles with electrically adjustable steering columns. Movement of the steering column could result in damage to the vehicle or possible serious injury or death to the occupant.**

Manually adjustable steering column:



1. Move the steering column lever (**1**) downwards.
2. Move the steering column to the desired position.
3. Return the steering column lever to the home position, flush with the column cowl, to lock the column in the desired position.

Electrically adjustable steering column:



Move the steering column control (**1**) up or down to adjust the tilt or height position. Move the steering column control forward or rearward to adjust reach.

ENTRY AND EXIT MODE

With the steering column control in the **AUTO** position, the steering column and driver's seat move to provide easier entry and exit from the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

On opening the driver's door, the system raises the steering column to the highest position. The system lowers the driver's seat to a lower position, assisting with exit from the vehicle. When the driver's door is closed and the ignition is switched on, the system returns the driver's seat and steering column to the previous positions.

Note: *If the driver's seat or steering column are adjusted during entry or exit operation, automatic movement stops.*

To prevent automatic movement of the driver's seat and steering column, turn the control clockwise to the manual position.

Note: *If the steering column control is moved away from AUTO when the driver's seat and steering column are in the exit position, the system resets. The driver's seat and steering column move back to their previous positions when the driver's door is closed and the ignition is switched on.*

POWER STEERING

The instrument panel displays a warning message and an amber warning lamp to indicate a fault with the power steering system. See **86, GENERAL WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)**.

Power assistance may be reduced to protect the system if overheating is detected. Overheating can be caused by excessive steering inputs or high ambient temperatures.

Full steering assistance should return when the system has cooled.

The steering wheel may vibrate to protect against freezing caused by water around the steering system.

If full steering assistance does not return, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

HEATED STEERING WHEEL



To activate the heated steering wheel, press the button **(1)**. Press again to switch off.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Seat belts

SEAT BELT SAFETY

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section.

Failure to observe warnings and cautions may result in vehicle damage, injury, or DEATH in the event of an accident.

Always replace a seat belt if it becomes frayed, contaminated, doesn't work properly, or after the vehicle has been involved in an accident.

Always avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils, chemicals, and especially battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water.

Always make sure the seat belts are not damaged, or exposed to sharp edges when using them to restrain items other than occupants.

Always wear seat belts low across the front of the pelvis, chest and shoulders.

Always adjust seat belts and positioning sliders as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort.

Always sit well back in the seat, with the seatback in an upright position.

Always wear seat belts, for every journey, no matter how short. The airbag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) adds to the overall effectiveness of the seat belts, but does not replace them.

Never place hard, sharp, or fragile items between the occupant and the seat belt.

Never use comfort clips, or any devices that create slack in the seat belt system.

Never modify the seat belt adjusting devices or assembly, in any way that prevents the assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

Never wear seat belts with the straps twisted.

Never place a seat belt around a child being carried on an occupant's lap. Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant.

Never independently wear the lap belt or shoulder belt portion of the seat belt.

Never attempt to cushion the impact of an accident by placing anything between an occupant and the seat belt.

Make sure the seat belts are correctly routed and not trapped behind the seats when raising the rear seatbacks.

Note: *Always contact a retailer / authorised repairer before attempting to carry out a repair on a vehicle. Only approved replacement parts should be used for any repairs that are carried out.*

SEAT BELT OPERATION

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 48, SEAT BELT SAFETY.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Each seat in the vehicle has a dedicated seat belt, designed for an occupant older than 12 years of age or weighing more than 36 kg (80 lb). Occupants with a lower age, or a lower body mass, should use an appropriate child restraint. See **55, CHILD SEAT REFERENCE TABLES**.

To fasten a seat belt:

1. Make sure that the seat, and occupant's sitting position, are correct.
2. Draw the belt out smoothly across the collar bone at the mid-point between the shoulder and neck, and down to the appropriate buckle.
3. Press the metal tongue into the buckle until a click is heard.

Note: *When releasing the seat belt, hold the belt before pressing the release button. Doing so prevents the belt from retracting too quickly.*

Note: *A seat belt slider may be fitted to this vehicle. When the seat belt is not in use, the belt slider allows for optimal positioning of the metal tongue.*

To unfasten a seat belt:

1. Hold the belt.
2. Press the red button on the buckle.
3. Guide the seat belt back to its original resting position.

If a seat belt height adjuster is fitted, to operate:

1. Press and hold the button to release the locking mechanism.
2. Slide the mechanism up or down to the required height.
3. Release the button to re-engage the locking mechanism.

Always make sure the height is correctly adjusted and the mechanism is locked in place before driving. Maladjustment of the seat belt could reduce its effectiveness in a crash.

Never attempt to adjust the seat belt height once the vehicle is in motion. Doing so may cause incorrect seat belt adjustment, or loss of vehicle control.

SEAT BELT USE DURING PREGNANCY

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 48, SEAT BELT SAFETY.


E184191

Always position the seat belt correctly for the safety of a pregnant mother and unborn child. Failure to observe this may increase the risk of serious injury during emergency braking or in the event of an accident.

To adjust the seat belt for use during pregnancy:

1. Position the lap strap comfortably across the hips, beneath the abdomen.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

2. Place the diagonal part of the seat belt across the chest, and to the side of the abdomen.

SEAT BELT CHECKS

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 48, SEAT BELT SAFETY.

Regularly inspect seat belts for wear and damage. Regularly check for fraying, cuts, or wear to the webbing. Also check the condition and security of the mechanism, buckles, adjusters, and mounting points.

To inspect the condition of the seat belts:

1. With the seat belt fastened, give the webbing near the buckle a quick upward pull. The buckle must remain securely locked.
2. With the seat belt unfastened, unreel the seat belt to the limit of its travel. Check that it unreels smoothly with no snags. Allow the belt to fully retract with a smooth action.
3. Partially unreel the seat belt. Hold the tongue plate and give a quick forward pull. The mechanism must lock and prevent any further unreeling.

If any seat belt fails to meet the above criteria contact a retailer/authorised repairer immediately.

Note: *If the vehicle is parked on an incline, the seat belt mechanism may lock. If locking occurs, ease the belt out from the upper anchorage. If the belt does not ease out from the anchorage, return the vehicle to level ground before attempting to release the seat belt again.*

Note: *If the rear seats are returned to the upright position quickly, the seat belt mechanism may lock. If locking occurs, ease the belt out from the upper anchorage.*

SEAT BELT REMINDER

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 48, SEAT BELT SAFETY.

An audible warning sounds, and a warning lamp illuminates when the following conditions occur:

- The driver seat, or the front seats are occupied.
- The front seat belts have not been fastened.
- The vehicle accelerates from a low speed.
- A front seat belt is unfastened while the vehicle is moving.
- A rear seat belt is unfastened.

If a front seat belt has not been fastened, the audible and visual warnings turn off after a short period of time.

Note: *There may be a short delay at the start of the journey before the passenger side reminder operates.*

Note: *If a heavy object is placed on the front passenger seat, it may activate the seat belt reminder system. If any objects are placed on the front passenger seat, make sure they are secured using the seat belt.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

SEAT BELT MONITOR

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 48, SEAT BELT SAFETY.

The instrument panel displays a graphic to indicate which rear seat belts are fastened at the start of a journey. The graphic also indicates when a seat belt is fastened or unfastened during a journey.

Note: *In all cases the graphic covers all rear seating positions and may also display front row positions.*

SEAT BELT PRE-TENSIONERS

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 48, SEAT BELT SAFETY.

Always check and replace the seat belt pre-tensioners after any activation. Failure to replace the pre-tensioners reduces the effectiveness of the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS).

Seat belt pre-tensioners are fitted to the front, and the rear outboard seats.

The seat belt pre-tensioners activate in conjunction with the SRS to provide additional protection in the event of a severe frontal impact. The seat belt pre-tensioners automatically reduce any slack in a seat belt. As a result, forward movement of an occupant on a seat fitted with a pre-tensioner is reduced.

Note: *The rear centre seat is not fitted with a seat belt pre-tensioner.*

Load limiters are fitted to all seats, except the second row centre seats.

Load limiters help to regulate tension of a seat belt in a severe impact.

Note: *On some derivatives the centre second row seat is also fitted with a pre-tensioner and load limiter*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Child safety

CHILD SEAT SAFETY

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings before using any of the features in this section.

Failure to observe warnings and cautions may result in vehicle damage, injury, or DEATH in the event of an accident.

Always follow the instructions that accompany the child seat carefully.

Always use a child restraint or booster seat appropriate to the age and size of a child.

Always wear seat belts or use suitable child restraints, for every trip, no matter how short.

Always securely store a head restraint, if removing it in order to fit a child restraint.

Always refit a removed head restraint after a child restraint is removed.

Always make sure the child restraint is correctly anchored.

Never use a forward-facing child restraint until the child using it is above 9 kg (20 lb), and able to sit up unaided. Up to the age of two, a child's spine and neck are not sufficiently developed to avoid injury in a frontal impact.

Never allow a baby or infant to be held or carried on the lap. The force of a crash can increase effective body weight by as much as thirty times, making it impossible to hold onto the child.

Never use a child seat that only hooks over the seatback. A child seat of this type cannot be satisfactorily secured and is unlikely to be safe for a child.

CHILD SEAT OVERVIEW

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 52, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.

All infants and children should be restrained in a suitable child safety seat. The child safety seat should be appropriate to the age and size of the infant or child.

CHILD SEAT POSITIONING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 52, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.

Crash statistics show that children are safest when properly secured in a child restraint system appropriate for the age and weight of the child, in a rear seating position. Failure to use an appropriate restraint system greatly increases the risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

Note: *Ages given are approximate. If in doubt, the child's weight, not age, should be used when considering an appropriate child seat.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *The legislation which governs how and where children should be carried when travelling in a vehicle is subject to change. The driver is responsible for making sure that all regulations in force are complied with.*

BOOSTER SEATS

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 52, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.

A child may be too large to fit into a child safety seat, but too small to safely fit the vehicle's seat belt. In these circumstances it is recommended that a booster seat is used for maximum safety. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for the fitting and use of the booster seat. Adjust the vehicle's seat belt accordingly.

If the booster seat is fitted with i-Size or ISOFIX connectors, these should be used to secure the seat in conjunction with the rear seat belt.

CHILD RESTRAINT CHECK LIST

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 52, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.

Every time a child travels in the vehicle, observe the following:

- Use appropriate child restraints.
- Carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the restraint system.
- Adjust the harness for every child on every journey.
- Make sure that all slack is removed from the adult seat belt.
- Make sure that any seat belt positioning sliders are adjusted so there is no slack in the belt after fastening.
- Always attach the top tether when fitting an i-Size or ISOFIX child seat, if applicable to the seat type.
- Always check the security of the child restraint.
- Avoid dressing the child in bulky clothing. Do not place any objects between the child and the restraint system.
- Regularly check the fit and condition of the child seat. If the fit is poor, or wear or damage is visible, replace the restraint immediately.
- Set a good example and always wear a seat belt.
- For child seats fitted with a support leg, adjust the leg so that it rests firmly on the floor of the vehicle.
- The centre rear seat may not be suitable for use with child seats that feature a support leg that rests on the floor. Refer to the child seat manufacturer's information.
- The third row seat is not suitable for the use with child seats that feature a support leg that rests on the floor.
- If the vehicle's head restraints interfere with the fitment of a child restraint, remove the head restraint and stow securely. Always replace the head restraint when the child restraint is removed.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Care must be taken not to load any part of the child seat when repositioning the front seat. The space available for front seat occupants is reduced by the fitment of a rearward-facing child seat in the rear.

CHILD SAFETY INFORMATION

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 52, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.

Children should travel in the rear of the vehicle at all times. Front passenger seat travel is not recommended.

Extreme hazard! Never place a rearward facing child restraint on the front passenger seat. The infant could be seriously injured or killed if the airbag deploys.

A child should only travel in the front passenger seat if it is essential and national or state legislation permits it. If this is the case, it is recommended that the following preparations are made before fitting the child restraint:

- Disable the front airbag. See **69, DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG**.
- Adjust the seat to the rearmost position.
- Adjust the seat cushion to the highest position.
- Adjust the seatback to the optimum upright position to support the child seat.
- Adjust any lumbar support to the minimum support position.
- Adjust any cushion extenders to the fully retracted position.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 52, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.



The rear door interior handles should be disabled if children are to be carried in the rear seat positions.

Press the button located on the driver's door to activate the child door locks and inhibit the rear windows. The LED indicator illuminates when active. The instrument panel displays a confirmation message.

To switch off, press the button again. The LED extinguishes. The instrument panel displays a confirmation message.

WARNING LABELS

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 52, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.

Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.



The above label is affixed to the passenger side sun visor. The label warns against the use of a rearward-facing child seat in the front passenger's seat, when a front passenger airbag is fitted and operational.

Never let a child's head rest near to a front seat side airbag, as an inflating airbag can cause serious or fatal injury.



E187567

The above label is affixed to both B pillars. The label warns against a child sitting too close to the front seat side airbag.

Taiwan only

DO NOT carry babies, infants or children in the front passenger seat. NEVER use rearward facing child restraint systems on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD may occur.



The above label is affixed to the passenger's side sun visor. The label warns against the use of a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger's seat, when a front passenger airbag is fitted and operational.

CHILD SEAT REFERENCE TABLES

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 52, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.

Note: *The information contained within the tables is correct at the time of going to press. However, availability of child restraints may change. Please consult a retailer/authorised repairer for the latest recommendation.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *The information contained in the following tables may not be applicable to all countries. If there is any doubt regarding the type and fitment of child seats, seek advice from a retailer/ authorised repairer.*

Non-ISOFIX and non-i-Size child seat positioning

Seating positions	Mass group				
	0 = Up to 10 kg 0 to 9 months	0+ = Up to 13 kg 0 to 18 months	I = 9 to 18 kg 9 months to 4 years	II = 15 to 25 kg 4 to 9 years	III = 22 to 36 kg 8 to 12 years
Front passenger seat with airbag ON	X	X	UF	UF	UF
Front passenger seat with airbag OFF*	U	U	U	U	U
Front centre seat	X	X	X	X	X
Second row outboard seats**	U	U	U	U	U
Second row centre seat**	U	U	U	U	U
Third row seats***	X	X	UF	UF	UF

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

U = Suitable for universal category restraints, approved for this mass group.

X = Not suitable for the use of child restraints in this mass group.

UF = Suitable for universal forward-facing child restraints in this mass group. However, it is recommended that children are secured in an approved child seat, secured in a rear seating position.

* Always make sure the passenger airbag has been disabled before using a child restraint in this seating position. See **69, DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG**.

When using a child restraint in the front passenger seat:

- The seat should be positioned fully rearward.
- The seat cushion should be raised to its highest position.
- The seat back should be adjusted to an upright position to support the child restraint.

**For vehicles fitted with adjustable second row seats:

- Adjust the seatback to the upright position to support the child restraint.
- Adjust the seat to the mid fore-aft position. The seat can however be adjusted to provide space for third row seat occupants, or to accommodate a large child seat, if required.

***For vehicles fitted with third row seats:

- Adjust the second row seatback to the upright position. Move the seat forward to give sufficient clearance to allow fitment of the third row child restraint.
- Child seats fitted with a support leg are not suitable for use in the third row.

ISOFIX child seat positioning

Mass group as shown on child restraint	Fixtures and size class	Front passenger with airbag ON	Front passenger with airbag OFF*	Front centre seat	Second** row outboard seats	Second row centre seats	Third row seats	Recommended child restraint system
Carrycot	ISO/L1 F	X	X	X	X	X	-	
	ISO/L2 G	X	X	X	X	X	-	
0 Up to 10 kg (0-9 months)	ISO/R1 E	X	IL	X	IL	X	X	Jaguar Land Rover - Group 0+ child seat with ISOFIX base or Britax Römer Baby-Safe Plus with ISOFIX base.
0+ Up to 13 kg (0-18 months)	ISO/R1 E	X	IL	X	IL	X	X	
	ISO/R2 D	X	IL	X	IL	X	X	-
	ISO/R3 C	X	IL	X	IL	X	X	-

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Mass group as shown on child restraint	Fixtures and size class	Front passenger with airbag ON	Front passenger with airbag OFF*	Front centre seat	Second** row outboard seats	Second row centre seats	Third row seats	Recommended child restraint system
I 9-18 kg (9 months to 4 years)	ISO/R2 D	X	IL	X	IL	X	X	-
	ISO/R3 C	X	IL	X	IL	X	X	-
	ISO/F2 B	IUF	IUF	X	IUF	X	X	Jaguar Land Rover - Group I child seat or Britax Römer TRIFIX.
	ISO/ F2X B1	IUF	IUF	X	IUF	X	X	
	ISO/F3 A	IUF	IUF	X	IUF	X	X	

IUF = Suitable for ISOFIX forward-facing child restraint systems of a universal category, approved for use in this mass group.

IL = Suitable for installation of an ISOFIX child seat in the Semi-Universal category providing that the vehicle is included on the approved list of vehicles supplied by the child seat manufacturer.

X = ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems in this mass group and/or this size class.

*Always make sure the passenger airbag has been disabled before using a child restraint in this seating position. See **69, DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG**.

When using a child restraint in the front passenger seat:

- The seat should be positioned fully rearward.
- The seat cushion should be raised to its highest position.
- The seat back should be adjusted to an upright position to support the child restraint.

**For vehicles fitted with adjustable second row seats:

- Adjust the seatback to the upright position to support the child seat.
- Adjust the seat to the mid fore-aft position. The seat can however be adjusted to provide space for third row seat occupants, or to accommodate a large child seat, if required.

Note: *ISOFIX anchor points are not provided in the second row centre seating position.*

Note: *ISOFIX child restraints should be securely attached, following the manufacturer's instructions.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

i-Size child seat positioning

	Seating positions					
	Front passenger with airbag ON	**Front passenger with airbag OFF***	**Front centre seat**	**Second** row outboard seats**	**Second row centre**	**Third row seats**
i-Size child restraint systems	i-UF	i-U	X	i-U	X	X

i-UF = Suitable for forward-facing i-Size universal child restraint systems only.

i-U = Suitable for forward or rearward-facing i-Size universal child restraint systems.

X = Not suitable for i-Size universal child restraint systems.

*Always make sure the passenger airbag has been disabled before using a child restraint in this seating position. See **69, DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG**.

When using a child restraint in the front passenger seat:

- The seat should be positioned fully rearward.
- The seat cushion should be raised to its highest position.
- The seatback should be adjusted to an upright position to support the child restraint.

**For vehicles fitted with adjustable second row seats:

- Adjust the seatback to the upright position to support the child seat.
- Adjust the seat to the mid fore-aft position. The seat can however be adjusted to provide space for third row seat occupants, or to accommodate a large child seat, if required.

Note: *i-Size anchor points are not provided in the second row centre seating position.*

Note: *i-Size child restraints should be securely attached, following the manufacturer's instructions.*

FITTING ISOFIX AND I-SIZE CHILD RESTRAINTS

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 52, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.

Do not attempt to fit ISOFIX or i-Size child restraints to the centre second row seating position. The anchor bars are not designed to hold an ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint in this position. The child could be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

If removing a head restraint in order to fit a child restraint, always secure the head restraint when storing it. Always refit a removed head restraint after the child restraint is removed. The child could be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.

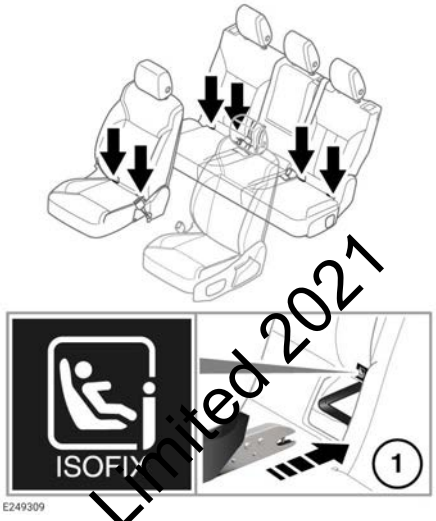
WARNING: child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

If the child restraint is not correctly anchored, there is a significant risk of injury to the child in the event of a collision or emergency braking.

Note: *The front seat ISOFIX and i-Size fitment is not standard and is market derivative specific.*

ISOFIX and i-Size child restraints can be fitted in the following locations:

- The front passenger seat (not available in all markets).
- The outer seating positions on the second row seats.



To install an ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint:

1. A label displaying the ISOFIX and i-Size symbol is sewn into the flaps covering the lower anchor bars, or on the seats close to the lower anchor bars. The label indicates the position of the ISOFIX or i-Size anchorages. Slide the child seat into position and attach the locking mechanism to the ISOFIX or i-Size anchor bars.

Some child restraints are fitted with an upper tether anchorage. See **61, FITTING TETHER ANCHORAGE CHILD RESTRAINTS**.

Test the security of the child restraint. To do this, attempt to pull the restraint away from the vehicle's seat and twist the restraint from side to side. Even if the restraint appears secure, the anchor points should be checked visually, to make sure they are correctly attached.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *Always make sure that if an upper tether is provided, it is fitted and tightened correctly.*

Note: *For child restraints fitted with a support leg, adjust the leg so that it rests firmly on the floor.*

Note: *After removing a child restraint, always make sure the lower anchor bar flap is fully closed. Failure to fully close a flap could hinder a seat fold manoeuvre.*

FITTING TETHER ANCHORAGE CHILD RESTRAINTS

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 52, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.

Always follow the child seat or restraint system manufacturer's instructions when fitting tether straps. The child could be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured.

If removing a head restraint in order to fit a child restraint, always secure the head restraint when storing it. In the event of an accident, an unsecured object could cause serious injury.

If a child seat or restraint system is to be fitted to the centre seating position, the centre armrest must be in the stored position (folded into the seat). In the event of an accident, an unsecured object could cause serious injury.

Tether anchorage points are fitted to the back of all passenger seating positions. Each tether anchorage point is for the sole use of a child restraint fitted to the same seat.

Note: *Do not attach a tether strap to an anchorage point on a folded seat.*

Always use the tether anchorage provided with your child seat or restraint system. The tether anchorage should be correctly routed and tightened.

Front passenger seat


E267019

1. Fit the child restraint securely in the front passenger seat.
2. Raise the head restraint.
3. Pass the tether strap(s) under the head restraint, between the two head restraint stems.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

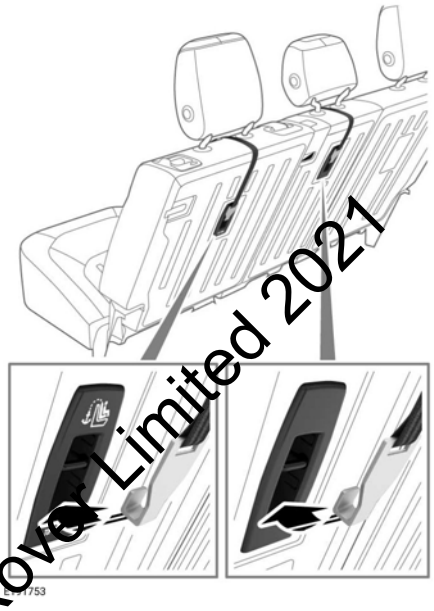
4. Attach the tether strap hook to the anchor point on the back of the same seat. Make sure the strap is not twisted, and that the hook is facing towards the back of the seat.

   Note: *The anchor point is located behind a flap in the seat trim. The flap is identified by a label. When fitting a child restraint for the first time, the perforations around the flap must be broken to allow access to the anchor point.*

   Note: *In certain cases, depending on the design of the tether strap hook, it may be necessary to fit the tether strap hook from above. This may result in a single twist in the strap which is acceptable.*

5. Tighten the tether strap(s) according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

Second row seats



1. Fit the child restraint securely in a second row seat.
2. Pass the tether strap(s) under the head restraint, between the two head restraint stems.
3. Attach the tether strap hook to the anchor point on the back of the same seat. Make sure the strap is not twisted, and that the hook is facing toward the back of the seat.
4. Tighten the tether strap(s) according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

RECOMMENDED CHILD SEATS

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 52, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.

Child size and age	Recommended seats	
	i-Size and ISOFIX positions	**Non-i-Size and non-ISOFIX positions**
Groups 0 and 0+	Jaguar Land Rover - Group 0+ child seat with ISOFIX base or Britax Römer Baby Safe Plus SHR II with ISOFIX base.	Jaguar Land Rover - Group 0+ child seat or Britax Römer Baby Safe Plus SHR II.
Group I	Jaguar Land Rover - Group I child seat or Britax Römer TRIFIX.	Britax Römer Duo Plus.
Groups II and III	Jaguar Land Rover - Group II and III child seat or Britax Römer KIDFIX XP SICT.	Jaguar Land Rover - Group II and III child seat or Britax Römer KIDFIX XP SICT.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Airbags

AIRBAG SAFETY

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings before using any of the features in this section.

Failure to observe warnings and cautions may result in vehicle damage, injury, or DEATH in the event of an accident.

High speed impacts may cause serious injury or death, irrespective of safety features fitted to a vehicle.

Always wear seat belts, for every journey, no matter how short, in all seating positions. The airbag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) adds to the overall effectiveness of the seat belts, but it does not replace them.

Always make sure the roof lining and door pillar trims are correctly fitted, in good condition, and free from obstruction.

Always wear correctly positioned seat belts, and sit as far back as practically possible from the airbag. Airbags inflate at high speeds and can cause facial abrasions or other injuries.

Always maintain a gap between the side of the vehicle, and the head and torso to enable unobstructed inflation of the airbags.

AIRBAG SAFETY (SOUTH KOREA ONLY)

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings. See **52, CHILD SEAT SAFETY** for more information.

Children under the age of 13 may be hurt or injured by the expansion and impact of the airbag.

Children must sit in the back seat.

Child seats should not be installed in the front seats.

Children must use seat belts and child restraint systems.

Children should sit as far away from the airbag as possible.

AIRBAG OPERATION

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 64, AIRBAG SAFETY.

The airbag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) inflates instantaneously, and cannot provide protection in secondary or some other types of impact. Under these circumstances, the only protection is provided by a correctly worn seat belt.

Airbag deployment is dependent on the rate at which the passenger compartment changes velocity following a collision. Circumstances affecting different collisions, vehicle speed, angle of impact, type and size of object hit, etc. vary considerably and affect the rate of vehicle deceleration accordingly.

The airbags and SRS are not designed to operate as a result of:

- Rear impacts.
- Minor front impacts.
- Minor side impacts.
- Heavy braking.
- Driving over bumps and pot holes.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Therefore, it follows that considerable superficial damage to the vehicle can occur, without causing the airbags to deploy.

AIRBAG OBSTRUCTION

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 64, AIRBAG SAFETY.

Never obstruct the operation of the airbags by placing any part of the body or any objects in contact with, or close to, an airbag module.

Note: *Unauthorised modifications of the vehicle or parts may invalidate the vehicle's warranty.*

Examples of obstructions include:

- Any part of an occupant's body in contact with, or close to, an airbag cover.
- Objects placed on, or close to, an airbag cover.
- Clothing, sun screens, or other material hanging from grab handles.
- Clothing, cushions, or other material covering seat mounted airbags.
- Seat covers which are not approved by the vehicle manufacturer, or specifically designed for use with seat-mounted airbags.

AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT EFFECTS

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 64, AIRBAG SAFETY.

Warning: When the airbag inflates:

A fine powder is released. The powder may cause irritation to the skin and should be thoroughly flushed from eyes and any cuts or abrasions. The powder can also cause breathing difficulty for people who suffer from asthma or other respiratory problems.

A loud noise is emitted. The noise may cause temporary discomfort and loss of hearing.

Some airbag components become very hot. Do not touch the airbag components until they have cooled sufficiently.

If any of these problems occur, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. If breathing problems persist, seek medical attention.

After inflation, the front and seat mounted side airbags deflate immediately. Deflation provides a gradual cushioning effect for the occupants and also makes sure the driver's forward vision is not obscured.

AIRBAG WARNING LAMP

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 64, AIRBAG SAFETY.

The warning lamp indicates a potential fault with the vehicle restraint system. Never use a child restraint on the front passenger seat if the warning lamp indicates a potential fault with the vehicle restraint system.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Airbags

The instrument panel displays an illuminated airbag warning lamp as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on. See **84, AIRBAG (AMBER)**.

If any of the following airbag warning lamp conditions occur, the vehicle should be checked by a retailer/authorised repairer immediately.

- Fails to illuminate when the ignition is switched on.
- Fails to extinguish within 6 seconds of the ignition being switched on.
- Illuminates at any time, other than during the bulb check, when the ignition is on.

When the ignition is switched on, a diagnostic control unit monitors the readiness of the system's electrical circuits. Elements of the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) being monitored include:

- SRS warning lamp.
- Rotary coupler.
- Airbag modules.
- Seat belt pre-tensioners.
- Airbag diagnostic control unit.
- Crash and rollover sensors.
- Airbag status indicator.
- Front seat belt buckle switches.
- Front seat track position sensor.
- Airbag wiring harness.

Note: *Not all of the SRS Elements listed are fitted to all specifications of vehicle.*

AIRBAG SERVICE INFORMATION

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 64, AIRBAG SAFETY.

Never attempt to service, repair, replace, modify, or tamper with any part of the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS). Do not attempt to service, repair, replace, modify, or tamper with any wiring or components in the vicinity of the SRS. Doing so may cause the system to trigger or render the system inoperative.

Never use any electrical test equipment or devices in the vicinity of any SRS components or wiring. Doing so may cause the system to trigger or render the system inoperative.

Warning: The following operations should only be carried out by a retailer/authorised repairer or a qualified person:

Fitment of electrical, or electronic, equipment and accessories.

Modification to the front or sides of the vehicle's exterior.

Attachment of accessories to the front or sides of the vehicle.

Note: Always consult a retailer/authorised repairer if:

- An airbag inflates.
- The front or sides of the vehicle are damaged.
- Any part of the airbag SRS shows signs of cracking or damage, including trim covering airbags.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- The amber airbag warning lamp illuminates.

DISABILITY MODIFICATIONS

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 64, AIRBAG SAFETY.

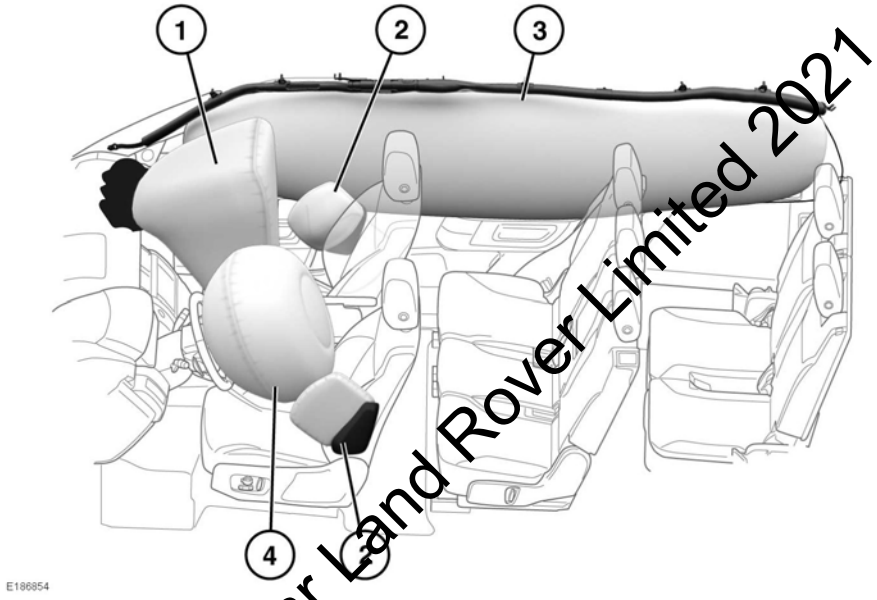
Occupants with disabilities which may require the vehicle to be modified must contact a retailer/authorised repairer before any modifications are made. Incorrect modifications may result in death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Airbags

AIRBAG LOCATIONS

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 64, AIRBAG SAFETY.

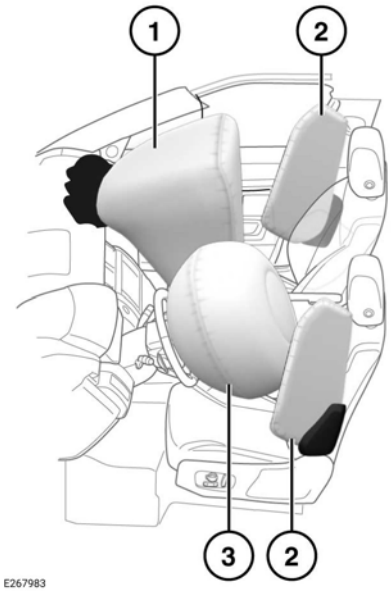


Airbag locations:

1. Front passenger's airbag.
2. Front seat side airbags.
3. Curtain airbags.
4. Driver's airbag.

Commercial vehicles:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



Airbag locations:

1. Passenger's airbag.
2. Seat-mounted head and thorax airbags.
3. Driver's airbag.

Note: *The general location of airbags fitted to the vehicle are marked by the word* ***AIRBAG****.*

FRONT AIRBAGS

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 64, AIRBAG SAFETY.

The front passenger and driver airbags deploy depending on the severity of the frontal impact.

SIDE AIRBAGS

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 64, AIRBAG SAFETY.

The side airbags are designed to protect the thorax region of the torso. In general, the side airbags deploy in the event of a side impact, and then only on the side of the impact.

Commercial vehicles: The side airbags are designed to protect the head and torso of the occupant. In general, the side airbags deploy in the event of a side impact, and then only on the side of the impact. In addition, the side airbags may also deploy in some frontal impacts.

CURTAIN AIRBAGS

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 64, AIRBAG SAFETY.

The curtain airbags are deployed in side impact and rollover events, providing greater protection from serious head injuries.

Note: *Curtain airbags do not only inflate as a result of side impacts and rollover events. The curtain airbags may deploy in some frontal impacts.*

DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 64, AIRBAG SAFETY.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Airbags

(Not Australia)

The passenger airbag should only be disabled when a child restraint is fitted to the front passenger seat. Incorrect usage of the passenger airbag presents a high risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

Crash test data and statistics show that a correctly fitted child seat in a rear seat is the safest place to restrain a child.

Do not use a child restraint on a seat protected by an operational airbag in front of it. Doing so presents a high risk of death or serious injury to the child in the event of an accident.

Before checking the operational status of the front passenger airbag, switch the vehicle's ignition on. Wait until the warning lamp bulb check period of 8 seconds has elapsed before carrying out any checks. Incorrect usage of the passenger airbag presents a high risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

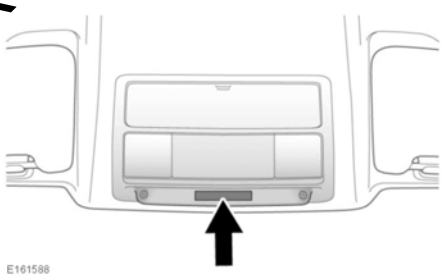
As soon as the child seat is removed from the front passenger seat, the airbag must be switched on. Failure to do so will put any front seat passengers at greater risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

Do not fit a child restraint to the front passenger seat if the airbag warning lamp illuminates continuously with the ignition switched on. An inflating airbag could impact with the seat and could cause serious injury.

The passenger airbag must be disabled when a rearward-facing child restraint is fitted to the front passenger seat. Failure to do so presents a high risk of death or serious injury to the child in the event of an accident.

Note: *Disabling the passenger airbag is market dependent.*

When the vehicle is stationary, the front passenger airbag can be switched on and off via the vehicle instrument panel menu. See **72, INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW**.



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

An airbag status indicator lamp, mounted in the overhead console, displays the operational status of the passenger airbag, as shown in the following table:

Setting	Passenger airbag status	Airbag status indicator
Off.	Disabled.	**PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF**
On.	Activated.	**ON PASSENGER AIRBAG***

* Displays for 60 seconds, then extinguishes.



A status lamp also illuminates in the overhead console to confirm that the passenger airbag is disabled.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Instrument panel

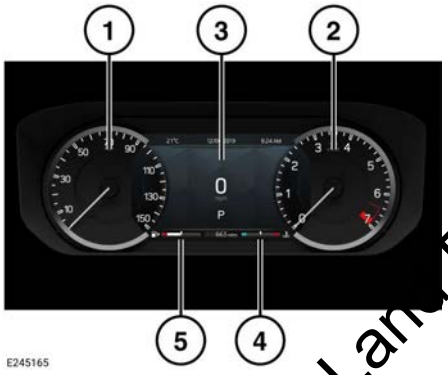
INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW

The instrument panel displays information, warnings, and menu options to the driver.

The vehicle has one of the following instrument panels:

- Standard instrument panel. See **72, STANDARD INSTRUMENT PANEL**.
- Virtual instrument panel. See **72, VIRTUAL INSTRUMENT PANEL**.

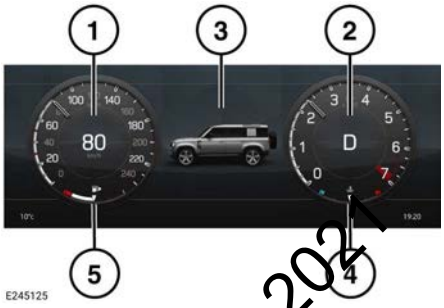
STANDARD INSTRUMENT PANEL



The standard instrument panel comprises permanent speedometer and tachometer dials (**2**). The information panel (**3**) is only visible when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

The information panel displays the engine temperature (**4**) and the fuel level (**5**).

VIRTUAL INSTRUMENT PANEL



The virtual instrument panel comprises a speedometer (**1**), a tachometer (**2**), and an information panel (**3**). The engine temperature (**4**) is displayed within the tachometer. The fuel level (**5**) is displayed within the speedometer.

All instruments are only visible when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

The virtual instrument panel can be configured to meet personal preferences. See **72, CONFIGURING A VIRTUAL INSTRUMENT PANEL**.

CONFIGURING A VIRTUAL INSTRUMENT PANEL

The virtual instrument panel can be configured using the steering wheel controls. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION** and **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPTIONS**.

To configure the virtual instrument panel:

1. Select **Display**.
2. Select **Layout**.

The following options are available:

- **Two dial**: Displays the speedometer and tachometer either side of the information panel.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- **One dial**: Displays two information panels either side of a central tachometer.
- **Full map**: Displays the navigation system information over the entire instrument panel.
- **Media**: Displays the current media source information over the entire instrument panel.
- **Driver assistance**: Displays the currently enabled driver assistance features over the entire instrument panel.

The selected option is retained after the vehicle's ignition is switched off.

Note: *Driving status information, e.g., the vehicle's speed, is always displayed in the instrument panel, irrespective of the option selected.*

HYBRID VEHICLE INFORMATION



Hybrid powertrain information is displayed as follows:

1. Instantaneous electric power usage is displayed in blue.
2. Regenerated electrical energy is displayed in green. See **160, HYBRID SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.
3. If instantaneous electric power usage reaches 100%, the engine starts to provide additional power.

   Note: *The engine may start before electric power usage reaches 100%. This is less likely when Electric Vehicle (EV) mode is selected. See **161, ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV) MODE**.*
4. Hybrid vehicle mode selection confirmation. See **160, HYBRID SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.
5. Battery gauge: Displays the current charge level of the high voltage battery.
6. **READY** displays when the vehicle is stationary, and ready to drive. **OFF** displays when the vehicle is stationary, and not ready to drive. See **160, HYBRID SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.

State of charge



The **state of charge** icon is visible within the instrument panel and supplements the battery gauge (**5**).

SPEEDOMETER

The speedometer displays the current vehicle speed. Depending on market specification, the speedometer can be configured to display in km/h or mph.



To configure the speedometer, touch the **settings** icon on the touchscreen.

©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

From the settings menu:

1. Select **ALL**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Units**.
4. Select **Trip**.

TACHOMETER

The tachometer displays the current engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

INFORMATION PANEL

The information panel displays information and menu selection options. The information panel can be configured to meet personal preferences. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPTIONS**.

FUEL GAUGE

The fuel gauge displays the current fuel tank level. An arrow-head symbol, next to the fuel pump symbol, indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located.



The low fuel warning lamp illuminates to indicate that the vehicle should be refuelled in the near future.

The approximate driving distance for the current fuel level can be viewed via the trip computer. See **77, TRIP COMPUTER**.

Never allow the engine to run out of fuel. Doing so may cause serious damage to the vehicle's fuel system.

ENGINE TEMPERATURE GAUGE

The temperature gauge displays the current engine temperature.



If the pointer moves into the red segment, the engine is overheating. In this event, the engine temperature warning lamp illuminates.

If the engine overheats, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits. Allow the engine to idle until the temperature reduces. If the temperature does not reduce after several minutes, switch the engine off and allow it to cool.

If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.

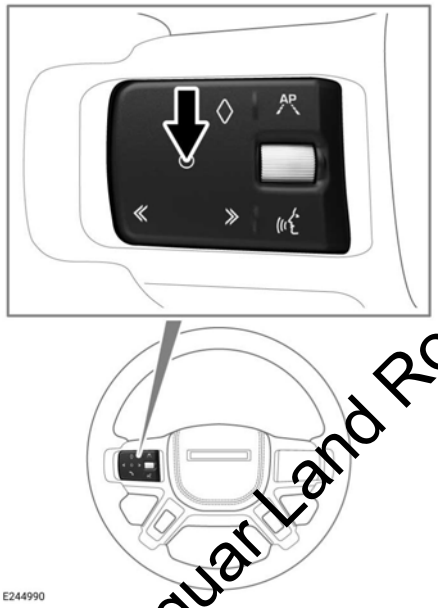
Serious engine damage occurs if the vehicle is driven while the engine is overheating.

Note: *Engine performance may be reduced, and some vehicle systems may stop working, if the engine overheats.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

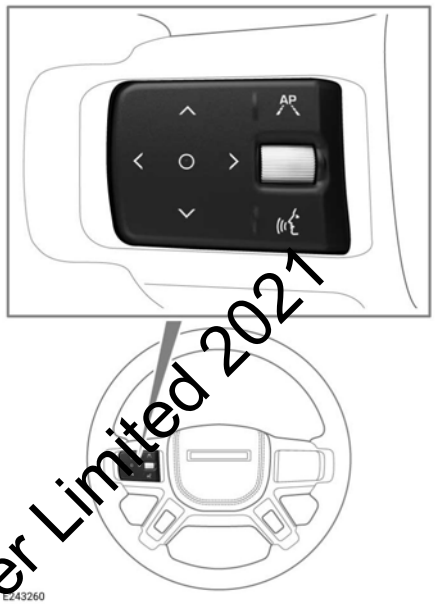
INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION

Do not operate the instrument panel menu controls while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause driver distraction. Driver distraction may cause an accident, leading to serious injury or death.



E244990

The instrument panel's display settings and some vehicle features can be configured using the instrument panel menu. The instrument panel menu is operated via the left-side steering wheel controls. Press the **O** icon to display the instrument panel menu and the instrument panel menu controls.



E243260

To operate the instrument panel menu:

- Press the **^** and **v** icons to scroll through the menu items.
- Press the **>** icon or the **O** icon to enter a sub-menu.
- Press the **O** icon to confirm a selection.
- Press and release the **<** icon to return to a higher-level menu.
- Press and hold the **<** icon to exit the menu.

INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPTIONS

Do not operate the instrument panel menu controls while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause driver distraction. Driver distraction may cause an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Instrument panel menus do not display until any messages are read and cleared. Do not ignore any warning or information messages displayed in the instrument panel. Take appropriate action as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in serious damage to the vehicle, serious injury, or death. See 76, WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES.

The following main menu options are available:

- **Phone**: Contains a list of recent phone contacts.

  Note: *The phone menu only displays when a smartphone is paired and connected.*
- **Media**: Displays information on the current media source.
- **Trip**: Displays trip meter information and settings. See **77, TRIP COMPUTER**.
- **Info panel**: Standard instrument panel only. Contains sub-menus and settings to allow the driver to configure the instrument panel's display.
- **Display**: Virtual instrument panel only. Contains sub-menus and settings to allow the driver to configure the instrument panel's display. See **72, CONFIGURING A VIRTUAL INSTRUMENT PANEL**.
- **Head-up display**: Displays Head-Up Display (HUD) sub-menus and settings. See **78, ADJUSTING THE HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD)**.
- **Vehicle**: Contains sub-menus and settings for the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) and the passenger airbag.

Note: *Not all menu options are available in all markets.*

Note: *Some menu options are not available once the engine is started.*

WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES

Do not ignore any warning or information messages displayed in the instrument panel. Take appropriate action as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in serious damage to the vehicle, serious injury, or death.

The instrument panel displays warning and information messages to the driver.

Warning messages require the driver to take action as soon as safely possible. Warning messages are accompanied by a warning lamp.

Information messages provide the driver with vehicle information, or actions to be taken.

Press the **O** icon on the left-side steering wheel controls to clear a message. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION**.

Note: *Clearing a warning message does not rectify the fault. The associated warning lamp remains illuminated until the fault is rectified.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

If a persistent fault is detected, the instrument panel displays the relevant message each time the vehicle's ignition is switched on. The messages are displayed in order of importance, with the highest priority message being displayed first. Each message is displayed for 4 seconds. Some messages may be accompanied by an audible tone.

Some messages may also display an Owner's Handbook symbol. Further information on the message can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook.

TRIP COMPUTER

The trip computer displays and stores trip information. The information panel displays the information.

The following information can be displayed:

- **Date**.
- **Trip distance**.
- **Average speed**.
- **Average economy**.
- **Instantaneous economy**.
- **Range**.



E197183

Press and release the trip button, located on the end of the lighting control, to scroll through the available options.

Some trip computer information can be reset to zero. Press and hold the trip button for 2 seconds, when the instrument panel displays the required information.

Two trip computers are available: **Trip A** and **Trip B**. Both display the same information. To switch between the trip computers:

1. Select the **Trip** instrument panel menu. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION** and **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPTIONS**.
2. Select **Trip bank**.
3. Select **Trip A** or **Trip B**.

A third option, **Trip Auto**, is also available. **Trip Auto** allows the driver to add or remove data from either **Trip A** or **Trip B** for a running total.

To add data for the last journey to **Trip Auto**:

1. Select **Trip Auto** from the **Trip bank** menu.
2. Press the trip button for longer than 1 second.
3. The instrument panel displays either **Adding last journey** or **Removing last journey**. Press the trip button for longer than 1 second to select the desired option.

The trip computer can be configured to display in km or miles in the same way as the speedometer. See **73, SPEEDOMETER**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD)

Do not operate or adjust the Head-Up Display (HUD) while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause driver distraction. Driver distraction may cause an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

The HUD projects some instrument panel information onto the windscreen.

Note: *The HUD must be correctly adjusted to match the driver before use. See* ***78, ADJUSTING THE HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD)****.*

To switch the HUD on or off:

1. Select the **Head-up display** instrument panel menu. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPTIONS**.
2. Select **Enable HUD**.

To select which items the HUD displays:

1. Select the **Head-up display** instrument panel menu.
2. Select **HUD content**.
3. Select the options to be displayed from the list.

Note: *The HUD can only display information that is also currently displayed in the instrument panel.*

Note: *The position and format of the displayed information is dependent on the priority and number of options selected.*

If the HUD requires cleaning, follow the recommended procedure. See **381, CLEANING SCREENS AND DISPLAYS**.

ADJUSTING THE HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD)

Do not operate or adjust the Head-Up Display (HUD) while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause driver distraction. Driver distraction may cause an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

The position and brightness of the HUD can be adjusted. The position of the HUD must be correctly set before use. The correct position is dependent on the height of the driver and the seat position.

To set the HUD to the correct position:

1. Set the driver's seat to the correct position. See **30, SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION**.
2. Select the **Head-up display** instrument panel menu. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPTIONS**.
3. Select **Position**.
4. Follow the on-screen positioning instructions, using the **arrow** icons on the left-side steering wheel controls.
5. When correctly adjusted, press the **O** icon on the left-side steering wheel controls.

The position of the HUD can be stored using the seat memory function. See **31, SEAT POSITION MEMORY**.

To adjust the brightness of the HUD:

1. Select the **Head-up display** instrument panel menu.
2. Select **Brightness**.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions, using the **arrow** icons.
4. When correctly adjusted, press the **O** icon.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD) LIMITATIONS

The Head-Up Display (HUD):

- Takes longer to display information in extreme temperatures.
- Does not operate correctly if items are placed between the top of the instrument panel and the windscreen.
- May not view correctly if the driver is wearing polarised sunglasses.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Warning and information lamps

OVERVIEW

The following warning and information lamps may illuminate in the instrument panel:


See **82, BATTERY CHARGE (RED)**.


See **82, BRAKE (RED)**.


See **83, CHARGING STATUS (RED)**.


See **83, CRITICAL WARNING MESSAGE (RED)**.


See **83, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (RED)**.


See **83, ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB) (RED)**.


See **83, ENGINE TEMPERATURE (RED)**.


See **83, EXHAUST FILTER (RED)**.


See **84, HYBRID SYSTEM BATTERY FAULT (RED)**.


See **84, LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (RED)**.


See **84, LOW OIL PRESSURE (RED)**.


See **84, SEAT BELT (RED)**.


See **84, AIRBAG (AMBER)**.


See **85, ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS) (AMBER)**.


See **85, BRAKE (AMBER)**.


See **85, CHECK ENGINE (AMBER)**.


See **85, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (AMBER)**.


See **86, DRIVER CONDITION MONITOR (AMBER)**.


See **86, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)**.



See **86, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)**.


See **86, EXHAUST FILTER (AMBER)**.


See **86, EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE (AMBER)**.


See **86, GENERAL WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)**.


See **86, GLOW PLUGS (AMBER)**.


See **86, LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)**.


See **87, REAR FOG LIGHTS (AMBER)**.


See **87, TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (AMBER)**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Warning and information lamps


See 87, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ACTIVE (GREEN).



See 87, ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER (GREEN).


See 87, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) (GREEN).



See 87, AUTO STOP/START (GREEN).



See 87, BRAKE HOLD (GREEN).


See 87, CHARGING STATUS (GREEN).


See 87, CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN).


See 88, DIPPED BEAM (GREEN).


See 88, DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN).


See 88, EXHAUST FILTER (GREEN).


See 88, FOLLOW MODE (GREEN).


See 88, FRONT FOG LIGHTS (GREEN).



See 88, GEARSHIFT (GREEN).


See 88, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) (GREEN).


See 88, LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (GREEN).



See 89, LOW RANGE (GREEN).


See 89, SIDE LIGHTS (GREEN).



See 89, SPEED LIMITER (GREEN).


See 89, STEERING ASSIST ACTIVE (GREEN).


See 89, TRAILER DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN).



See 89, AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (BLUE).


See 89, HIGH BEAM (BLUE).


See 89, TIMED CHARGING (BLUE).


See 89, STEERING ASSIST NOT ACTIVE (GREY).



See 89, AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (WHITE).



See 89, AUTO LIGHTS (WHITE) .


See 90, AUTO STOP/START INHIBIT (WHITE).



See 90, AUTO STOP/START OFF (WHITE).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



See **90, CHARGING STATUS (WHITE)**.



See **90, DRIVER CONDITION MONITOR (WHITE)**.



See **90, LOW TRACTION LAUNCH (WHITE)**.

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

Do not ignore warning lamps or indicators. Take appropriate action as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury, or serious damage to the vehicle.

Red warning lamps are for primary warnings. A primary warning must be investigated immediately by the driver or qualified assistance, before continuing.

Amber and yellow warning lamps are for secondary warnings. Some indicate that a vehicle system is active, and others indicate that the driver must take action and seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

Green and blue lamps within the instrument panel indicate a system's status.

LAMP CHECK

Note: *Not all warning lamps are included in the check, e.g., high beam headlights and direction indicators.*

Note: *If a trailer with LED lights is connected to the trailer socket, the bulb check may not be performed.*

A warning lamp bulb check is initiated when the vehicle's ignition system is switched on. The check lasts for 3 seconds, except for the airbag warning lamp which remains on for 6 seconds. If any warning lamp remains on after this period, investigate the cause before driving.

Some warning lamps have associated messages displayed in the instrument panel.

BATTERY CHARGE (RED)



The 12V battery charge warning lamp illuminates, as a bulb check, when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

The lamp extinguishes when the engine is started.

If the lamp remains on or illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the battery charging system. The instrument panel displays a warning message. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

BRAKE (RED)

Do not drive if the instrument panel displays a message indicating a low brake fluid level. Check the brake fluid level and top up, as necessary. If necessary, seek qualified assistance before continuing. Driving with low brake fluid can cause increased braking distance or brake failure, and may lead to a collision. A collision can potentially result in serious injury or death.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



The brake warning lamp illuminates briefly, as a bulb check, when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

If the lamp illuminates red while driving, suspect low brake fluid level or a fault with the braking system.

Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits. Check and top up the brake fluid, if necessary. If the lamp remains illuminated, seek qualified assistance before continuing.

CHARGING STATUS (RED)



The charging status warning lamp illuminates red and flashes to indicate a charging fault.

In this event, check for correct connection of the charging cable. If the fault persists, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

CRITICAL WARNING MESSAGE (RED)



The critical warning message lamp illuminates when a relevant message displays in the instrument panel.

Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits, and investigate the cause of the warning.

DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (RED)



The Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) warning lamp illuminates red to warn the driver that the level of DEF is seriously low.

The warning lamp also illuminates red if the incorrect fluid has been added to the system, or if there is a fault with the system.

The instrument panel displays messages when the warning lamp illuminates. Follow the on-screen messages, if safe to do so. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB) (RED)



The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) warning lamp illuminates if the EPB is correctly applied.

If the lamp flashes, a fault has been detected. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

ENGINE TEMPERATURE (RED)



The engine temperature warning lamp illuminates when the engine's temperature is too high.

The instrument panel also displays a warning message.

Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits. Seek qualified assistance before continuing.

EXHAUST FILTER (RED)



The exhaust filter warning lamp illuminates red when the exhaust filter is full or there is a fault with the exhaust filter system.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Depending on severity, the instrument panel may also display a warning message and a warning tone may sound. Seek qualified assistance at the earliest opportunity.

HYBRID SYSTEM BATTERY FAULT (RED)



The hybrid system battery fault warning lamp illuminates red if the hybrid high voltage system is unable to shut down.

A warning message in the instrument panel accompanies the lamp. See **163, HYBRID SYSTEM WARNING MESSAGES**.

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (RED)



The red lane departure warning lamp illuminates if the vehicle crosses a lane marking without the appropriate direction indicator being operated.

Illumination of the lamp is accompanied by a vibration, felt through the steering wheel.

The left or right lane illuminates, depending on which lane boundary is being crossed.

LOW OIL PRESSURE (RED)



If the low oil pressure warning lamp flashes or illuminates while driving, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits. Switch off the engine immediately.

Check and top up the oil level, if necessary. Start the engine. If the lamp remains illuminated, switch the engine off immediately. Seek qualified assistance before continuing.

SEAT BELT (RED)

Note: *Objects on the front passenger seat may activate the seat belt reminder feature. It is recommended that any objects placed on the front passenger seat are secured using the seat belt. See* ***48, SEAT BELT OPERATION****.*



When the vehicle is in motion and seats are occupied, the warning lamp illuminates, accompanied by a chime if the seat belt is unbuckled.

The lamp extinguishes when the relevant seat belt is buckled.

AIRBAG (AMBER)



The airbag warning lamp illuminates, as a bulb check, when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

The lamp extinguishes after 6 seconds.

If the lamp illuminates again, after the bulb check or while driving, there is a fault with the airbag system. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS) (AMBER)

If the Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) and brake warning lamps illuminate at the same time, do not drive the vehicle until the fault is rectified. The braking system may not be functioning correctly, which may, in turn, lead to a loss of control, potentially causing an accident. Seek qualified assistance immediately.

The driver is responsible for operating the vehicle in an appropriate manner for the prevailing conditions at all times. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.



The ABS warning lamp illuminates briefly, as a bulb check, when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

If the lamp remains on, or illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the ABS system. Drive with care, avoiding heavy brake pedal application. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

BRAKE (AMBER)



The brake warning lamp illuminates briefly, as a bulb check, when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

If the lamp illuminates amber after starting the engine, or while driving, suspect worn brake pads or a fault with the braking system. The vehicle can still be driven with care. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

CHECK ENGINE (AMBER)



The check engine warning lamp illuminates when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

The lamp remains illuminated until the engine starts. If the lamp illuminates when the engine is running, an emissions-related fault has been detected. The vehicle remains safe to drive with the lamp illuminated, although qualified assistance should be sought as soon as possible.

With the lamp illuminated, the vehicle may enter limp-home mode. Limp-home mode reduces vehicle performance to safeguard against any further damage to the vehicle. See **174 LIMP-HOME MODE**.

If the check engine warning lamp flashes when the engine is running, reduce the vehicle's speed as soon as it is safe to do so. Seek qualified assistance immediately.

DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (AMBER)



The Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) warning lamp illuminates amber to warn the driver that the level of DEF is starting to run low.

The warning lamp also illuminates amber if the incorrect fluid has been added to the system, or if there is a fault with the system.

The instrument panel also displays a warning message. Follow the on-screen messages, if safe to do so.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

DRIVER CONDITION MONITOR (AMBER)



The driver condition monitor warning lamp illuminates amber when the driver condition monitor system determines that the driver is presenting signs of tiredness.

The instrument panel also displays a warning message.

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)



The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) lamp flashes when the system is active.

If there is a fault with the system, it remains illuminated and the instrument panel displays a warning message.

The vehicle can still be driven, but without DSC assistance. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)



The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) OFF warning lamp illuminates when the system is switched off.

The lamp is accompanied by a chime and a confirmation message in the instrument panel.

EXHAUST FILTER (AMBER)



The exhaust filter warning lamp illuminates amber when the filter has failed to regenerate and is starting to become full.

The instrument panel also displays a warning message. Follow the on-screen messages, if safe to do so.

EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE (AMBER)



The external temperature lamp illuminates when the external temperature is low enough that ice may be present on the road.

GENERAL WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)



The general warning and information message lamp illuminates when a non-critical warning message, or an information message, is available in the instrument panel.

GLOW PLUGS (AMBER)



The glow plug lamp illuminates when the vehicle's ignition is switched on, to indicate that the glow plugs are active.

LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)



The low fuel warning lamp illuminates when the fuel level is low. Refuel at the earliest opportunity.

The arrow shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

REAR FOG LIGHTS (AMBER)



The rear fog lights indicator lamp illuminates when the rear fog lights are switched on.

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (AMBER)



The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) lamp illuminates amber to warn that one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.

The instrument panel also displays a warning message. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, when safe to do so. Check the tyre pressures. Inflate to the recommended pressure.

The lamp flashes to indicate a system fault.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ACTIVE (GREEN)



The adaptive cruise control lamp illuminates when the adaptive cruise control feature is active.

ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER (GREEN)



The adaptive speed limiter lamp illuminates when the adaptive speed limiter feature is switched on.

ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) (GREEN)



The All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) lamp illuminates to confirm that the ATPC system is enabled.

AUTO STOP/START (GREEN)



The auto stop/start lamp illuminates when the engine is shut down by the auto stop/start system.

Note: *Other warnings normally associated with an engine shutdown do not illuminate during an engine shutdown by the auto stop/start system.*

BRAKE HOLD (GREEN)



The brake hold lamp illuminates when a brake hold function is activated.

CHARGING STATUS (GREEN)



The charging status lamp illuminates green and flashes to indicate that the vehicle is charging.

The lamp constantly illuminates when the vehicle is fully charged.

CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)



The cruise control lamp illuminates green when cruise control is active.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

DIPPED BEAM (GREEN)



The dipped beam lamp illuminates when the dipped beam headlights are switched on.

DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)



The appropriate direction indicator lamp, left or right, flashes when the direction indicators are operated.

If a direction indicator bulb fails, the visual and audible warnings flash and sound, respectively, at twice the normal rate.

EXHAUST FILTER (GREEN)



The exhaust filter lamp briefly illuminates green when a successful filter regeneration process has been carried out.

FOLLOW MODE (GREEN)



The follow mode lamp illuminates green when the adaptive cruise control system is in follow mode.

FRONT FOG LIGHTS (GREEN)



The front fog lights lamp illuminates when the front fog lights are switched on.

GEARSHIFT (GREEN)

The warning indicator is only a guide. The driver is responsible for operating the vehicle in an appropriate manner for the prevailing conditions at all times. Failure to do so may result in an accident, potentially leading to serious injury or death.



The gearshift indicator lamp illuminates briefly at the recommended gear change point (up-shift).

The gearshift indicator lamp does not illuminate while cruise control is active and is not being overridden by pressing the accelerator pedal.

HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) (GREEN)



The Hill Descent Control (HDC) lamp illuminates continuously when the HDC system is selected and HDC operating conditions are met.

If the lamp flashes, HDC has been selected, but the operating conditions are not being met or HDC fade-out is occurring.

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (GREEN)



The green lane departure warning lamp illuminates if the feature is enabled and the system is tracking the lanes.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

LOW RANGE (GREEN)



The low range lamp illuminates when low range is selected.

SIDE LIGHTS (GREEN)



The side lights lamp illuminates when the side lights are switched on.

SPEED LIMITER (GREEN)



The speed limiter lamp illuminates when the speed limiter feature is active.

STEERING ASSIST ACTIVE (GREEN)



The steering assist active lamp illuminates green when the feature is active.

TRAILER DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)



The trailer direction indicator lamp illuminates, as a bulb check, when the vehicle's ignition is switched on. The lamp extinguishes when the engine is started.

If a trailer is attached, the warning lamp flashes in conjunction with the direction indicator warning lamp. If the lamp fails to flash, the direction indicator bulb on the trailer may be faulty.

Note: *If a connected trailer is fitted with LED lights, the bulb check may not be performed.*

AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (BLUE)



The Auto High Beam Assist (AHBA) lamp illuminates blue when the AHBA feature has activated the high beam headlights.

HIGH BEAM (BLUE)



The high beam lamp illuminates when the high beam headlights are switched on or flashed.

TIMED CHARGING (BLUE)



The timed charging lamp illuminates and flashes to indicate that a timed charging event is scheduled.

STEERING ASSIST NOT ACTIVE (GREY)



The steering assist not active lamp illuminates grey when the feature is not active.

AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (WHITE)



The Auto High Beam Assist (AHBA) lamp illuminates white when the AHBA feature is active.

AUTO LIGHTS (WHITE)



The auto lights warning lamp illuminates white when the vehicle's exterior lights are operating in auto mode.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

AUTO STOP/START INHIBIT (WHITE)



The auto stop/start inhibit lamp illuminates when the auto stop/start system is active but a vehicle system requires the engine to run.

AUTO STOP/START OFF (WHITE)



The auto stop/start OFF lamp illuminates white when the auto stop/start system is switched off.

CHARGING STATUS (WHITE)



The charging status lamp illuminates white and flashes to indicate the vehicle is connected to an external charger and the charging process is initiating, or if charging is paused.

DRIVER CONDITION MONITOR (WHITE)



The driver condition monitor warning lamp illuminates white when the driver condition monitor system determines the driver is presenting signs of tiredness.

The lamp is accompanied by a message in the instrument panel.

LOW TRACTION LAUNCH (WHITE)



The low traction launch lamp illuminates white to confirm that the low traction launch system is active.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

EXTERIOR LIGHTS OVERVIEW

The lighting system operates automatically depending upon the ambient lighting conditions. The system selects the appropriate lighting function, dipped beam or Daytime Running Lights (DRL), for the conditions that the system detects. In some circumstances, it may be necessary to manually override automatic operation. Some manual operations are not possible due to vehicle activity or legislative requirements.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Exterior lights

LIGHTING CONTROL



1. Neutral position: The lighting system operates automatically, dependent on the ambient level of light. During daylight, the Daytime Running Lights (DRL) automatically switch on. During low ambient light, the headlights switch on automatically. To manually switch on any lighting functions, rotate the lighting control to the required position and release. After being released, the lighting control returns to the neutral position.
2. Side lights: Rotate the lighting control to this position to switch the side lights on. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See **89, SIDE LIGHTS (GREEN)**.
3. Headlights **OFF**: Rotate the lighting control to this position to switch the headlights off.
4. Headlights: Rotate the lighting control to this position to switch the headlights on. See **88, DIPPED BEAM (GREEN)**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

5. **AUTO**: Rotate the lighting control to this position to select **AUTO** lights. When ambient light fades and the ignition is switched on, the side lights, rear lights, dipped beam headlights, and number plate lights switch on automatically. Headlight courtesy delay, Auto High Beam Assist (AHBA), Adaptive Driving Beam (ADB), the Adaptive Front lighting System (AFS), and wiper detection may also be activated.

   Note: *Low ambient light levels, caused by adverse weather conditions, may also cause the auto lights to activate.*

6. High beam: With the headlights on, push and release the lighting control to select high beam. See **89, HIGH BEAM (BLUE)**.
   Push and release the lighting control again to deselect high beam.

   Note: *Do not use high beam when it may distract other road users.*

7. High beam flash: Pull the lighting control toward the steering wheel and release to flash the high beam on and off. High beam remains on for as long as the lighting control is held.

8. Front fog lights: Turn the lighting control away from the steering wheel, and release to switch on the front fog lights. The instrument panel warning light illuminates. See **88, FRONT FOG LIGHTS (GREEN)**.
   Turn the lighting control away from the steering wheel again, and release to switch off the front fog lights.

9. Rear fog lights: Operate only while the headlights or front fog lights are selected. Turn the lighting control toward the steering wheel and release to switch on the rear fog lights. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See **87, REAR FOG LIGHTS (AMBER)**.
   Turn the lighting control toward the steering wheel again, and release to switch off the rear fog lights.

DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHTS (DRL)

Note: *The Daytime Running Lights (DRL) option is dependent on the vehicle's specification.*

During normal daylight operation, the DRL operate automatically, with the lighting control in the **AUTO** or neutral position.

The DRL switch on automatically under the following conditions:

- The engine is running.
- The gear selector is out of Park (**P**).
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is not applied. Market dependent.
- Auto lights are selected and high ambient light levels are detected.

Turn the lighting control to the **OFF** position to switch off the DRL. The DRL can be manually switched off only when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.

HEADLIGHT COURTESY DELAY

Headlight courtesy delay operates whenever the lighting control is in the **AUTO** position, ambient light levels are low, and the vehicle's ignition is switched off.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The time delay for illumination can be changed via the **Exterior Lights** settings.

To access the time options for headlight courtesy delay via the touchscreen:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch the **Vehicle** soft key.
4. Touch the **Exterior Lights** soft key.
5. Touch the forward arrow in the box below **Home lights** to open the options menu.
6. Choose a time delay option.
7. Touch the **exit** icon[2] to return to the previously displayed screen.

Press the smart key's headlight button to switch the courtesy lights off.



Settings icon.[1]



Exit icon.[2]

AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA)

The Auto High Beam Assist (AHBA) system cannot be relied upon to activate or deactivate high beam in all potential circumstances. The driver remains responsible for the correct use of the headlights at all times. Incorrect use of the headlights may cause an accident, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.

The forward-facing sensors are mounted on the rear of the rear-view mirror. Keep this area of the vehicle clean and free from obstructions, e.g., stickers, debris, mud, snow, or ice. Failure to do so can lead to accidents, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.

The AHBA system automatically selects and deselects high beam, under specific conditions of road lighting and in the absence of other vehicle lights. The system is only active when the ambient light drops below a predetermined level. AHBA is enabled when the lighting control is in the **AUTO** position.

The driver can disable and re-enable the AHBA system at any time via the touchscreen:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch **Vehicle**.
4. Touch **Exterior Lights**.
5. **Automatic high beam assist**: Toggle on or off. Toggle on to activate and view the available options.
6. Touch the **exit** icon[2], after selection, to return to the previously displayed screen.

The AHBA system only activates when the vehicle's speed exceeds 40 km/h (25 mph). The system deactivates when the vehicle's speed drops below 24 km/h (15 mph).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Push and release the lighting control to manually override to dipped beam from high beam. Rotate the collar to **AUTO** to return to AHBA. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See **89, AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (BLUE)**.

Push and release the lighting control to manually select high beam. Rotate the lighting control to **AUTO** to return to AHBA.

The following may affect the operation of the AHBA system:

- Highly reflective road signs.
- Dimly lit road users, e.g., cyclists or pedestrians.
- Adverse weather conditions, e.g., rain or fog.
- A dirty or obscured sensor.
- A dirty, damaged, or misted windscreen.
- Oncoming vehicles, partially obscured by a central motorway barrier.
- An icy or frosted windscreen.



Settings icon.



Exit icon.

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING SYSTEM (AFS)

The Adaptive Front lighting System (AFS) is active when the lighting control is in the **AUTO** position and dipped beams are switched on.

The AFS is deactivated when high beam is selected or dipped beam is not operating in **AUTO** mode, or when the vehicle is in Park (**P**).

While operating as an AFS, the dipped beams are automatically adjusted to suit the vehicle's speed and weather conditions:

- Country mode: A standard headlight beam that operates at vehicle speeds between 0 and 110 km/h (0 to 70 mph) when an urban environment is not detected. If an urban environment is detected, country mode operates from 48 km/h (30 mph).
- City mode: A wider headlight beam that operates at vehicle speeds up to 48 km/h (30 mph) when an urban environment is detected.
- Highway mode: A raised headlight beam that operates at vehicle speeds above 110 km/h (70 mph).
- Adverse weather mode: Operates when the windscreen wipers are active for more than 2 minutes and the vehicle's speed is below 64 km/h (40 mph).

If a system fault is detected, the headlights attempt to adopt the default beam pattern and then remain there. The instrument panel displays a message to indicate that a fault is present.

ADAPTIVE DRIVING BEAM (ADB)

The Adaptive Driving Beam (ADB) system cannot be relied upon to activate or deactivate high beam in all possible circumstances. The driver remains responsible for the correct use of the headlights at all times. Incorrect use of the headlights may cause an accident, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The forward-facing sensors are mounted on the rear of the rear-view mirror. Keep this area of the vehicle clean and free from obstructions, e.g., stickers, debris, mud, snow, or ice. Failure to do so can lead to accidents, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.

ADB activates automatically once the vehicle's speed reaches 40 km/h (25 mph) and the camera does not detect an urban environment. ADB automatically deactivates when the vehicle's speed slows to 24 km/h (15 mph), when ambient light exceeds a predetermined level or when the gear selector is in Reverse (**R**).

ADB is defined as a system that evaluates the road scene ahead of the vehicle. ADB automatically adapts the light distribution according to the position of the preceding and oncoming traffic. ADB is enabled when the lighting control is in the **AUTO** position and the ambient light level is below a predetermined level.

Note: *When ADB is active, the blue high beam indicator lamp remains illuminated, as the headlights will deploy partial or full high beam at this time. See* ***89, HIGH BEAM (BLUE)****.*

The driver can disable and re-enable the ADB system at any time via the touchscreen.

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch **Vehicle**.
4. Touch **Exterior Lights**.
5. **Adaptive Driving Beam**: Toggle on or off.
6. Touch the **exit** icon[2], after selection, to return to the previously displayed screen.

Pull and release the lighting control to manually override to dipped beam from ADB. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates.

Push and release the lighting control to return to ADB. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See **88, DIPPED BEAM (GREEN)**.

Repeated pushing of the lighting control toggles the operation of the high beam between automatic and manual.

Rotate the lighting control to the dipped beam position to switch the ADB system off.

The following may affect operation of the ADB system:

- Highly reflective road signs.
- Dimly lit road users, e.g., cyclists or pedestrians.
- Adverse weather conditions, e.g., rain or fog.
- A dirty or obscured sensor.
- A dirty, damaged, or misted windscreen.
- Oncoming vehicles, partially obscured by a central motorway barrier.
- An icy or frosted windscreen.



Settings icon.[1]



Exit icon.[2]

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

EXTERIOR LIGHTS CONDENSATION

Condensation in the headlights, direction indicators, or rear lights is a natural phenomenon.

Condensation can occur under certain atmospheric conditions or after washing the vehicle. The performance and life expectancy of the lights is not affected.

Condensation should partially or completely clear, with regular use of the lights, within 48 hours of dry atmospheric conditions.

LED lights distribute less heat towards the outer lens than halogen or xenon lights. In extreme conditions, LED lights may take longer to clear, but this is not detrimental to the performance of the light.

DRIVING ABROAD

The requirement to adjust the headlights for temporarily driving abroad is dependent on the type of headlight fitted.

Legal requirements apply when a vehicle is to be driven in a country where the direction of traffic is on the opposite side of the road.

To avoid dazzling oncoming drivers, action must be taken to limit the distribution of the headlight dipped beam.

Vehicles with LED and Premium LED headlights

Vehicles with LED and Premium LED headlights have a beam pattern that eliminates the need to adjust the lights.

Vehicles with matrix LED headlights

Matrix LED headlights require the road driving side option to be changed within the system settings menu.

Note: *If the vehicle is fitted with a navigation system and traffic sign recognition feature, the headlights adapt automatically.*

Note: *For vehicles fitted with a navigation system, for each ignition cycle, the hand of traffic resets according to the region in which the vehicle is being driven.*

To change the road driving side option via the touchscreen:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **All** soft key.
3. Touch the **Vehicle** soft key.
4. Touch the **Exterior Lights** soft key.
5. Touch the forward arrow in the box below **Driving side** to open the options menu.
6. Select **Drive on left** or **Drive on right**, for the driving side of the road.
7. Touch the **exit** icon[2] to return to the previously displayed screen.



Settings icon.[1]



Exit icon.[2]

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

HEADLIGHT LEVELLING

LED headlights with manual headlight levelling have a rotary control switch on the fascia panel.



E164607

The rotary control switch should be used for laden conditions, as described:

Loading condition	Switch position
Driver or driver and front passenger.	0
Driver and all passengers.	1
Driver and all passengers and luggage to the max.	2
Driver only and luggage to the max.	3

Premium and matrix LED headlights with automatic headlight levelling do not require manual adjustment. The vehicle does not have a rotary control on the fascia panel.



Headlight levelling icon.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

INTERIOR LIGHTS



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *5-door vehicle is illustrated, 3-door vehicles are similar.*

Interior lighting locations and operation:

1. Front reading lights: Move a finger close to, or touch, the relevant lens to switch on or off.
2. Front interior courtesy light: To switch on or off, touch the centre of the lens briefly. To switch automatic illumination on or off, touch the lens until the light flashes. In auto mode, the lights illuminate when a door is opened.
3. Second row reading lights: Press the lens to operate.

4. Upper loadspace lights: Illuminate when the taildoor is opened.
5. Lower loadspace lights: Illuminate when the taildoor is opened.
6. Vanity mirror lights: Lift the cover to switch on.
7. Front seat footwell lights: Automatically illuminate when the doors are opened.
8. Glovebox light: Illuminates when the glovebox is opened.

INTERIOR LIGHTS INTENSITY

Use the interior illumination control to adjust the intensity of the instrument illumination. The exterior lights must be switched on while changes are being made. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

AMBIENT INTERIOR LIGHTING

Note: *Vehicles without configurable interior mood lighting illuminate the standard white light for the interior lights.*

To adjust the configurable interior mood lighting for colour and intensity, select the VEHICLE menu in the touchscreen. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**. The exterior lights must be switched on while changes are being made.

STEALTH MODE

Note: *The interior illumination control does not operate while stealth mode is active.*

Stealth mode lowers the level of interior illumination to aid with night time driving. Stealth mode can be enabled through the touchscreen's **Vehicle** menu. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

Once enabled, activate stealth mode by switching the touchscreen off, using the power button on the touchscreen. If night time conditions exist when the touchscreen is switched off, interior switch illumination and instrument panel back-lighting automatically reduce to the minimum light levels. Stealth mode deactivates if night time conditions no longer exist, or if the touchscreen is switched back on.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

WIPER OPERATION

- Do not operate the wipers on a dry screen as the wipers may cause damage to the windscreen. Failure to do so can damage the wiper arms, blades and the windscreen.
- Remove any snow, ice, or frost from the screen, around the wiper arms and blades, and the cowl area, before operating the wipers. Failure to do so can damage the wiper arms, blades and the windscreen.
- Make sure the wipers do not stick to the glass during freezing or hot conditions. Use the winter park position during extreme temperatures. Attempting to use the wipers while they are stuck to the glass could cause damage to the wiper blades and mechanism. See **104, WINTER PARK POSITION**.
- To avoid damage to the wiper blade, do not lift the wiper by the wiper blade. Always lift the wiper by the wiper arm.
- Make sure the wipers are not in automatic rain sensing mode and are switched off before entering a car wash. If the wipers operate during the car washing process, damage may occur to the wiper mechanism.

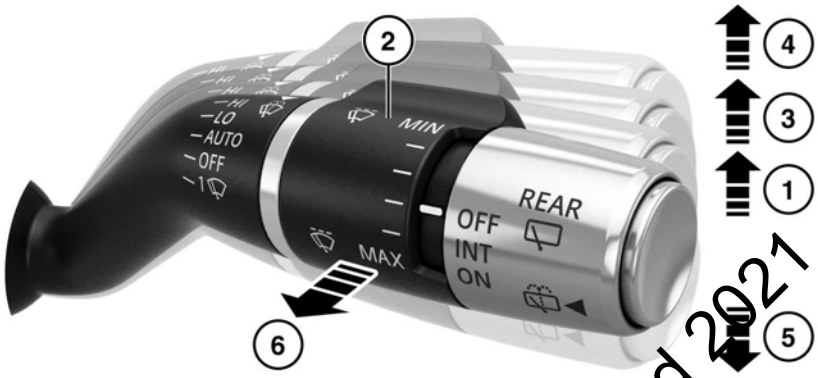
Note: *If the wipers leave smears on the glass after the vehicle has been washed, this may be due to wax or other residue. Should this occur, clean the glass with the recommended screen washer fluid. See* ***446, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS****.*

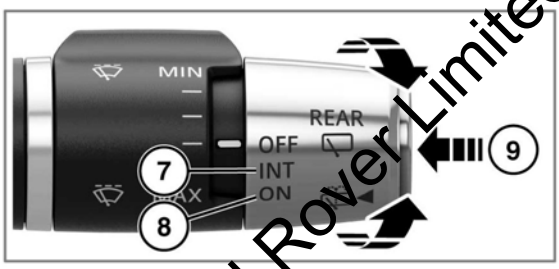
Note: *The windscreen is no longer wiped effectively and the automatic rain sensing mode degrades if the wipers become worn. Always replace worn or damaged wiper blades as soon as possible. The wipers service position moves the wipers to allow wiper blade replacement. See* ***374, WIPERS SERVICE POSITION****.*

Note: *If the wipers become stuck or jammed, an electronic cut-out temporarily halts operation of the wipers. If this happens, switch off the wipers and the vehicle's ignition, when safe to do so. Clear any obstructions and free the wiper blades before attempting to switch on the vehicle's ignition.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Wipers and washers





© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

To operate the washers and wipers:

1. Vehicles with a rain sensor: Automatic rain sensing mode. The front wipers respond and adapt automatically to the ambient rain conditions. The appropriate wipe frequency is selected for the prevailing conditions. Rotate the collar (**2**) to adjust sensitivity. When rain sensing mode is disabled: Intermittent wipe. Rotate the collar (**2**) to adjust the time delay between wipes.
2. Vehicles with a rain sensor: Rotate the collar to adjust the sensitivity of the automatic rain sensing mode when position (**1**) is selected. The higher the setting, the more responsive the system becomes. When automatic rain sensing mode is selected, or when sensitivity is increased, the system performs a single wipe. When auto wipe is disabled: Rotate the collar to adjust the time delay between wipes when position (**1**) is selected. The higher the setting, the more frequently wipes occur.

   Note: *Wipe frequency increases with vehicle speed.*
3. **LO**: Low speed continuous wipe.
4. **HI**: High speed continuous wipe.

5. Single wipe of the windscreen. Hold down for further continuous wipes.
6. Windscreen wash and wipe: Pull and release to operate the program timed front wash wipe. After a few seconds, a drip wipe function clears any residual washer fluid from the windscreen. If more washer fluid is required, pull and hold the control's position.

   Note: *The front wipers do not operate while the bonnet is open.*
7. **INT**: Rear wiper, intermittent operation. Wiper frequency increases with vehicle speed.
8. **ON**: Rear wiper, continuous operation.
9. Rear screen wash and wipe: Press and release to operate the rear washer and wiper. The wiper operates in a set cycle to minimise drips when the button is released. If more washer fluid is required, push and hold the button.

   Note: *The rear wiper activates when Reverse (**R**) is selected and the front wipers are operating.*

   Note: *The rear wiper does not operate while the taildoor is open.*

RAIN SENSOR

Note: *Static droplets may not be detected when the vehicle is first started. A single wipe should be used to clear the windscreen.*

Note: *If the wash/wipe control is in the **AUTO** position, the wipers do not operate if either of the front doors are open. See **101, WIPER OPERATION**.*

Note: *In dry and often sunny conditions, optical influences and dirt accumulation on the windscreen may result in the windscreen wipers activating inadvertently. To prevent this, it is recommended that, under these conditions, the wash/wipe control is returned to the **OFF** position.*

The rain sensor is mounted on the inside of the windscreen, behind the rear-view mirror. The sensor detects the presence and amount of water on the windscreen and automatically activates the windscreen wipers, accordingly.

To activate the rain sensitive wipers, move the wash/wipe control to the **AUTO** position. Rotate the collar (**2**) to adjust the behaviour of the system to suit the driver's preference. See **101, WIPER OPERATION**.

The driver can disable and re-enable the rain sensing at any time via the touchscreen:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch the **Vehicle** soft key.
4. Touch the **Convenience** soft key.
5. Touch the **Wipers** soft key.
6. Touch the **Rain sensing wipers** toggle.
7. Touch the **exit** icon[2] to return to the previously displayed screen.



Settings icon.[1]



Exit icon.[2]

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

SPEED-DEPENDENT MODE

Front wipers

If the vehicle's speed drops below 8 km/h (5 mph) with the wipers operating, the wipers switch to the next lowest speed. When the vehicle's speed increases to over 8 km/h (5 mph), the original wiper speed setting is automatically restored.

Vehicles without a rain sensor fitted also increase the frequency of the intermittent front wipe when the vehicle's speed increases.



The front wipers speed-dependent mode feature can be enabled or disabled by a retailer/authorised repairer.

Rear wiper

The frequency of the intermittent rear wiper increases when the vehicle's speed increases.



The rear wiper speed-dependent mode feature can be enabled or disabled by a retailer/authorised repairer.

DRIP WIPE

If the drip wipe feature is configured, the wipers operate a few seconds after a wash and wipe cycle has finished. The drip wipe feature clears any remaining drips from the windscreen.



The drip wipe feature can be enabled or disabled by a retailer/authorised repairer.

WINTER PARK POSITION

Make sure that the wiper arms are in the winter park position before lifting the wiper blades away from the windscreen. Failure to do so, may result in damage to the bonnet.

When the vehicle is parked, the wipers can be set to park in a higher position than normal. The wiper blades can be lifted from the windscreen to limit the possibility of the blades sticking to the glass. Lifting the wiper blades from the windscreen aids the removal of snow, mud, and leaves, etc.

The wipers move to the winter park position when the vehicle's ignition is switched off. The wipers remain in the winter park position until one of the following occurs:

- The vehicle's speed is above 8 km/h (5 mph).
- The wipers are operated.

The driver can disable and re-enable winter park at any time via the touchscreen:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch the **Vehicle** soft key.
4. Touch the **Convenience** soft key.
5. Touch the **Wipers** soft key.
6. Touch the **Winter wiper park** toggle.
7. Touch the **exit** icon[2] to return to the previously displayed screen.



Settings icon.[1]

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



Exit icon.[2]

HEADLIGHT WASHERS

Note: *The headlight washers operate only if the headlights are switched on and there is sufficient washer fluid in the reservoir.*

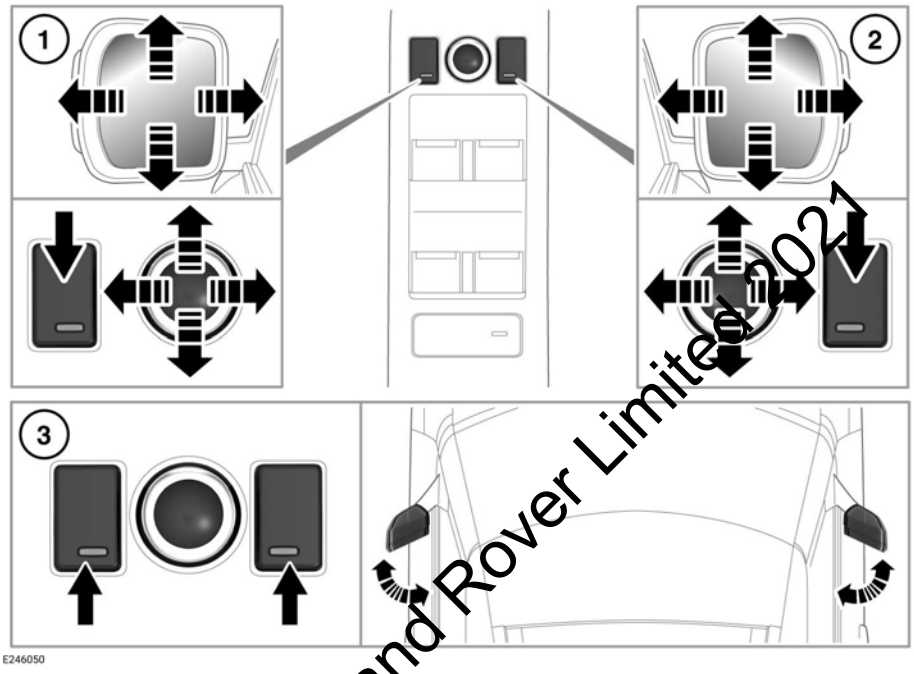
The headlight wash feature operates automatically with the windscreen wash. The feature operates every fourth operation of the screen washers. The feature operates if the headlights are switched on and approximately 10 minutes has elapsed since the last headlight wash.

Switching the headlights or the vehicle's ignition off and back on again resets the cycle. See **92, LIGHTING CONTROL** and **166, SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Mirrors

DOOR MIRRORS



Press the appropriate button to select the relevant door mirror to be adjusted. The button's LED indicator lamp illuminates to confirm which side is active. Use the joystick control to adjust the mirror's glass.

1. Left door mirror adjustment.
2. Right door mirror adjustment.
3. Power-fold or unfold: Press both buttons simultaneously.

   Note: *The power-fold feature operates only if the vehicle's speed is below 113 km/h (70 mph). Power-folding is a vehicle specific feature.*

Note: *An amount of knock protection is designed into the door mirrors. If a mirror is accidentally knocked or manually folded inwards or outwards, the mirror head disengages from the folding mechanism. To re-engage the mechanism, manually return the mirror to its central position, then fold and unfold the door mirror using the button.*

Note: *The door mirror heaters operate automatically, according to the external temperature and the heated rear screen operation.*

Note: *Depending on the type of lens used, distances may be difficult to judge accurately when only using the mirrors.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The door mirrors can be adjusted for up to 5 minutes after the ignition is switched off, provided the driver's door is not opened.

Garage mode

If the door mirrors are folded when the vehicle is locked, the mirrors do not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Garage mode prevents the mirrors from being damaged when unfolding, e.g., in a tight garage spot. If the mirrors remain folded, they automatically unfold when the vehicle exceeds 40 km/h (25 mph).

MIRROR DIP WHEN REVERSING

Mirror dip can be enabled or disabled via the **Vehicle** settings menu.

To access the **Mirror Dip on Reverse** settings:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch **Vehicle**.
4. Touch **Convenience**.
5. Touch **Mirrors**.
6. **Mirror Dip on Reverse**. Toggle on or off.
7. Touch the **exit** icon[2], after selection, to return to the previously displayed screen.

Selecting Reverse (**R**) causes the door mirrors to automatically adjust, providing an improved viewing angle for reversing.

The dipped position of the door mirrors is a preset position. In **R**, the door mirrors can be adjusted and the new position can be saved.

Note: *The new door mirror dip position can only be saved in **R**.*

With **R** selected, press the memory save button (**M**). Select either memory **1**, **2**, or **3** to save the reverse mirror dip position to the corresponding memory. See **31, SEAT POSITION MEMORY**.

Three different reverse mirror dip positions can be saved. Use the memory recall feature to recall the saved positions.

When the gear selector is moved out of **R**, the door mirrors return to the previous position.

Note: *Mirror dip is a vehicle specific feature. If the vehicle's speed exceeds 12 km/h (7 mph) in **R**, the mirrors return to the normal position for enhanced visibility.*



Settings icon.[1]



Exit icon.[2]

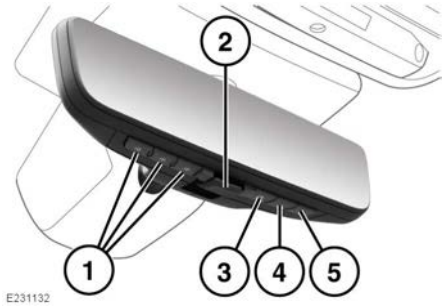
CLEARSIGHT REAR-VIEW MIRROR

The ClearSight rear-view mirror has a limited view. The driver is responsible for detecting obstacles and estimating the vehicle's distance from them when manoeuvring the vehicle. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

When cleaning the ClearSight rear-view mirror's glass, use a paper towel, or similar material, dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on to the mirror, as that may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror's housing and damage the mirror.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The ClearSight rear-view mirror uses a camera and a mirror-integrated display. The ClearSight rear-view mirror's camera mode displays a wide-angle camera view of the area behind the vehicle. Alternatively, use the ClearSight rear-view mirror as a conventional mirror.



1. HomeLink® buttons. See **109, RADIO FREQUENCY (RF) TRANSCEIVER**.
2. ClearSight rear-view mirror mode switch.
3. ClearSight rear-view mirror settings button.
4. ClearSight rear-view mirror settings adjuster button - Down.
5. ClearSight rear-view mirror settings adjuster button - Up.

To enable the ClearSight rear-view mirror's camera mode, pull the ClearSight rear-view mirror mode switch (**2**) rearward.

Push the mode switch (**2**) forward to disable.

The user can adjust the following ClearSight rear-view mirror settings:

- Brightness: Press the settings button (**3**). Adjust the brightness levels using the up (**5**) and down (**4**) buttons.
- Height: Press the settings button twice. Adjust the height using the up (**5**) and down (**4**) buttons.

If a ClearSight rear-view mirror system fault is detected, the rear-view mirror displays a **camera disabled** icon.[1] If the camera display is not available, place the ClearSight rear-view mirror in to mirror mode, and contact a retailer/authorised repairer.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.



Camera disabled icon.[1]

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR REAR VIEW MIRROR

***Note:** The operation of the centre sun visor may affect the operation of the auto-dimming interior rear view mirror.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

RADIO FREQUENCY (RF) TRANSCEIVER

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using the garage door opener. Failure to use the garage door opener safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

Do not use the Radio Frequency (RF) transceiver with any garage door opener that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature, as required by safety standards.

When programming the RF transceiver to a garage door opener or entry gate, make sure that the area is clear of people and objects.

Do not attempt to program the garage door opener with the vehicle inside the garage.

The device may suffer from interference, if operated in the vicinity of a mobile or fixed station transmitter. Interference is likely to affect the hand-held transmitter, as well as the RF transceiver. See **111, INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE**.

The RF transceiver is also known as HomeLink®.

The HomeLink device is located in the rear-view mirror.

The hand-held transmitter is also known as a garage door remote.

The RF transceiver can be programmed to transmit the signals of up to three different hand-held transmitters. The RF transceiver can be used to operate garage doors, entry gates, home lighting, security systems, or other RF-operated remote devices.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

BEFORE PROGRAMMING

Unplug the remote device during programming if repeated operation of the remote control is required. Repeated operation of the remote control during programming may result in damage to the remote device.

Note: *HomeLink® is compatible with a wide range of remote devices. For information on compatible devices and instructional videos, visit:* ***www.HomeLink.com***.

For the best results, fit a new battery to the remote control before programming. If the remote device's receiver is equipped with an antenna, make sure the antenna is extended.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

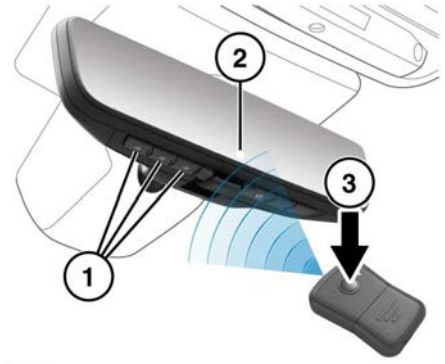
PROGRAMMING

Note: *The instructions below apply to the majority of HomeLink® compatible systems. However, there are some HomeLink applications, or HomeLink compatible systems, that require slightly different instructions. For more information and instructional videos, visit:* ***www.HomeLink.com***.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Garage door opener

Note: *Garage door openers manufactured after 1995 may be equipped with rolling code protection. In this case, a stepladder, or other sturdy, safe device, may be required to reach the learn or smart button on the garage door opener.*



E226961

1. HomeLink buttons.
2. LED indicator.
3. Remote control for the device, e.g. garage door opener.

Note: *Dependent on the vehicle's specification, the location of the Homelink buttons may differ from that illustrated above.*

If required, erase the previous programming from the HomeLink device. See **111, TO ERASE ALL PROGRAMMING**.

To program the HomeLink device:

1. With the ignition switched on, press and release the required HomeLink button (**1**). The LED indicator (**2**) flashes orange.
2. Position the end of the remote control (**3**) 2 to 8 cm from the HomeLink button.
3. Press and hold the button on the remote control until the LED indicator changes from flashing orange to flashing or solid green.

   Note: *Some remote device systems require the operator to cycle the remote control button every 2 seconds during programming. Refer to the additional information in* ***Cycling the remote control*** *at the end of the* ***PROGRAMMING*** *instructions.*
4. Firmly press and release the programmed HomeLink button up to three separate times to activate the device.

   Note: *The device should now be programmed. If not, carry out the following additional steps:*
5. Locate the **learn** or **smart** button on the garage door opener's motor-head unit.

   Note: *The* ***learn*** *or* ***smart*** *button can usually be found directly on the motor-head unit. If in doubt, refer to the garage door opener's manual to identify the button.*
6. Firmly press and release the **learn** or **smart** button. There are typically 30 seconds to initiate Step **7**.
7. Return to the vehicle. Firmly press and release the programmed HomeLink button up to three separate times to activate the device. If the device activates, programming is complete.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Cycling the remote control

Some remote device systems have a remote control signal that only operates for a short period of time. The signal times-out before programming is complete. The operator is required to cycle the remote control button every 2 seconds during programming.

If experiencing difficulties while programming the remote device, carry out the following:

During programming of the remote device, replace programming step **3** with the following:

1. Press and release the HomeLink button. Simultaneously, press and release the remote control button every 2 seconds, until the LED indicator rapidly flashes green or continuously illuminates green. Release the HomeLink and remote control buttons.
2. Continue the programming process from step **4**.

If the HomeLink LED indicator does not rapidly flash green or continuously illuminate green after performing these steps, contact HomeLink at: **www.HomeLink.com**.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

REPROGRAMMING A SINGLE GARAGE DOOR OPENER BUTTON

To program a remote device to a previously programmed HomeLink® button:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press and hold the required HomeLink button. After approximately 20 seconds, the LED indicator starts to flash orange. See **109, PROGRAMMING**.
3. Release the button.
4. Follow the programming instructions from step **3** onwards, as described in **PROGRAMMING**.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

TO ERASE ALL PROGRAMMING

To erase all programming from the HomeLink® device:

1. Switch the vehicle's ignition on.
2. Press and hold the outer two HomeLink buttons until the LED indicator changes from continuously illuminated orange to flashing green. See **109, PROGRAMMING**.

   Note: *Do not press and hold the buttons for longer than 20 seconds.*
3. Release the buttons. HomeLink is initialised and the previous settings of all three buttons are erased.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE

If the vehicle is sold, it is recommended that all programming is erased from the HomeLink® device. See **111, TO ERASE ALL PROGRAMMING**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Garage door opener

Note: *Retain the original remote device's remote control handset for future programming requirements.*

Note: *The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorised modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

For information on the range of compatible remote devices, or for assistance, contact a retailer/authorised repairer. Alternatively, visit the HomeLink website: **www.HomeLink.com**.

For Genie and Sommer garage door openers, go directly to the HomeLink website.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

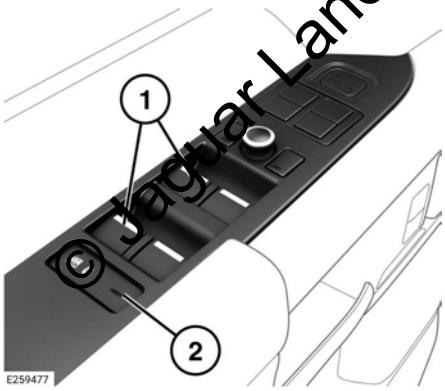
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ELECTRIC WINDOWS

To prevent accidental operation, never leave the smart key inside the vehicle if children or animals are also left inside the vehicle. Removal of the smart key prevents unsupervised operation of the windows, and the panoramic or canvas roof, which may result in serious injury or death.

If children are carried in the rear seats, the isolator button should be used to prevent operation of the windows and doors. If the windows or doors are operated by children, there is a risk of serious injury or death.

Any ice must be removed from the windows before operating. Operating icy windows can cause damage to the windows' operating system.



Note: *5-door vehicle is illustrated, 3-door vehicles are similar.*

Note: *Each switch has a two-stage operation. Lightly press or pull and hold to manually operate to the required position. Alternatively, press or pull fully and release for one-touch operation. Press the switch again to halt the one-touch operation at any time.*

To operate the windows:

1. Window switches:
   - Briefly pull a switch fully up, and release to close a window.
   - Briefly press a switch fully down, and release to fully open a window.
   - Press or pull a switch again to stop movement of the window.

   Note: *The windows operate for 5 minutes after the engine is switched off, as long as none of the doors are opened.*

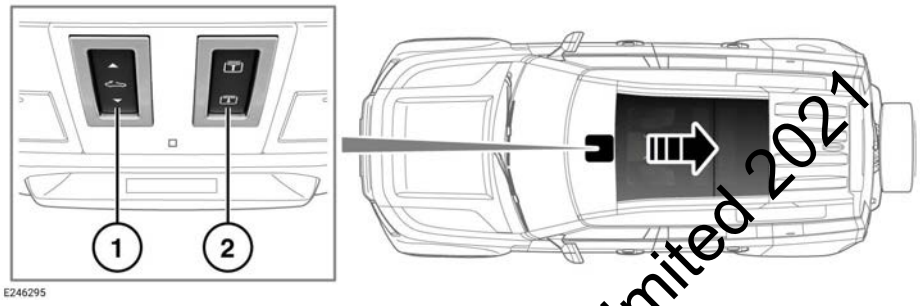
   Rear windows have a short drop feature for passenger comfort. The first press of a switch lowers the window a short distance, to give a flow of air. A second press lowers the window to its full extent. If a resonance or booming sound occurs when a rear window is open, lowering an adjacent front window by approximately 25 mm eliminates the condition.
2. Rear window isolator and child safety locks. See **54, CHILD SAFETY LOCKS**.

For information on global opening or closing of the windows see the relevant section in the Owner's Handbook. See **14, GLOBAL OPENING** or **23, GLOBAL CLOSING**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Vehicles with sliding panoramic roof

To prevent accidental damage, make sure any roof rack load does not interfere with the opening of the panoramic roof.



1. Panoramic roof:

   Note: *The front and rear of the switch has a two-stage operation. Lightly press and hold to manually operate to the required position. Alternatively, press fully and release for one-touch operation. Press the switch again to halt the one-touch operation at any time.*

   - With the panoramic roof closed, press the rear of the switch to partially or fully raise the roof to the tilt position. Press the rear of the switch again to partially or fully open the roof.

     Note: *If the roof blind is closed, the panoramic roof switch also opens the roof blind while operating the panoramic roof.*

   - With the panoramic roof open, press the front of the switch to partially or fully close the panoramic roof.

2. Roof blind:

   The roof blind can be opened whenever required, but it can only be closed when the panoramic roof is closed. If the panoramic roof is partially closed, the roof blind only partially closes to the same position.

   Note: *The front and rear of the switch has a two-stage operation. Lightly press and hold to manually operate to the required position. Alternatively, press fully and release for one-touch operation. Press the switch again to halt the one-touch operation at any time.*

   - Press the rear of the switch to partially or fully open.
   - Press the front of the switch to partially or fully close.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

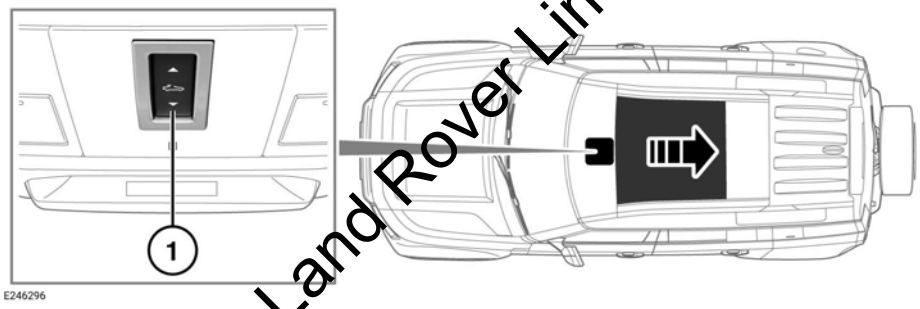
Vehicles with sliding canvas roof

The sliding canvas roof does not have an anti-trap facility. The canvas roof must be clear of obstruction to allow safe operation. If the canvas roof motion is blocked by body parts, there is a risk of serious injury or death.

The sliding canvas roof is not compatible with lateral cross-bars or roof rack equipment. Using unapproved roof mounted equipment could result in damage to the sliding canvas roof.

To prevent accidental damage, make sure any roof accessories do not interfere with the opening of the sliding canvas roof. The sliding canvas roof requires a minimum of 180 mm clearance between any roof accessories and the top of the roof.

Operation of the sliding canvas roof is not recommended in temperatures below -10˚C. Damage may occur if the canvas roof is operated below -10˚C.



Note: *The front and rear of the switch has a two-stage operation. Lightly press and hold to manually operate to the required position. Alternatively, press fully and release for one-touch operation. Press the switch again to halt the one-touch operation at any time.*

- With the sliding canvas roof closed, press the rear of the switch to partially or fully open the sliding canvas roof.
- With the sliding canvas roof open, press the front of the switch to partially close the sliding canvas roof.
- Press and hold the front of the switch to fully close the sliding canvas roof.

  Note: *One-touch operation does not fully close the sliding canvas roof.*

Note: *Varying resonance noises can occur in the cabin when the sliding canvas roof is open, due to pressure fluctuation. To reduce or eliminate these noises, the sliding canvas roof can be closed slightly.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ANTI-TRAP PROTECTION

Windows

Before closing a window, make sure that no occupants have any body part in a position where it could be trapped. Even with an anti-trap system, death or serious injury could occur.

Note: *If the power supply is lost, when a window is partially open, or is failing to operate correctly, a window reset may be required. See* ***375, WINDOW RESET****.*

Anti-trap protection is designed to stop window movement if an obstruction or resistance is detected. Check the window and its aperture, and remove any obstructions, e.g., ice.

If it is still necessary to raise the window, the override procedure is as follows:

1. Attempt to close the window. Anti-trap prevents closure and lowers the window slightly.
2. Within 10 seconds, attempt to raise the window again. Anti-trap prevents closure and lowers the window slightly.
3. Attempt to close the window for a third time. Hold the switch in the close position. Hold until closed.

Note: *If this procedure fails to remove the blockage, the window operation may need to be reset. See* ***375, WINDOW RESET****.*

Panoramic roof

Before closing the panoramic roof, make sure that no occupants have any body part in a position where it could be trapped. Even with an anti-trap system, death or serious injury could occur.

The anti-trap mechanism does not operate when closing the panoramic roof from the tilted position. The panoramic roof can cause serious injury should a body part become trapped. Always make sure that the panoramic roof is free from obstructions before closing.

Anti-trap protection is designed to stop panoramic roof movement if an obstruction or resistance is detected. Check the panoramic roof and its aperture, and remove any obstructions, e.g., ice.

To prevent serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle, the panoramic roof has an anti-trap mechanism. If the panoramic roof encounters a resistance when closing, it stops. Dependent on the panoramic roof's current position, the panoramic roof partially or fully opens to allow the removal of any obstruction.

If the panoramic roof's anti-trap mechanism has been activated a manual reset of the panoramic roof needs to be performed. Press and hold the front of the switch until the panoramic roof is fully closed. Continue to hold the switch in the closed position for a minimum of 10 seconds.

Note: *If the power supply is lost, when the panoramic roof is partially open, or is failing to operate correctly, a panoramic roof reset may be required. See* ***375, PANORAMIC ROOF RESET****.*

Roof blind

Before closing the roof blind, make sure that no occupants have any body part in a position where it could be trapped. Even with an anti-trap system, death or serious injury could occur.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

To prevent serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle, the roof blind has an anti-trap mechanism. If the roof blind encounters a resistance when closing, it stops. Dependent on the roof blind's current position, the roof blind partially or fully opens to allow the removal of any obstruction.

If the roof blind's anti-trap mechanism has been activated, a manual reset of the roof blind needs to be performed. Press and hold the front of the switch until the roof blind is fully closed.

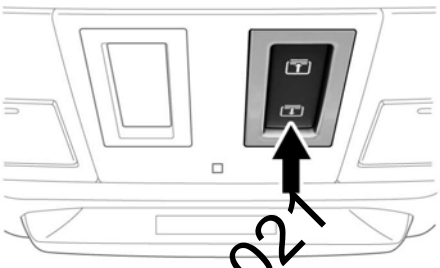
Note: *If the power supply is lost, when the roof blind is partially open, or is failing to operate correctly, a roof blind reset may be required. See* ***375, PANORAMIC ROOF BLIND RESET****.*

Sliding canvas roof

Vehicles with a sliding canvas roof do not have an anti-trap system. Make sure that no occupants have any body parts in a position where they could become trapped. Serious injury or death could occur.

Note: *If the power supply is lost, when the sliding canvas roof is partially open, a reset may be required. See* ***374, FOLDING FABRIC ROOF RESET****.*

ROOF BLIND



E246326

To operate the roof blind:

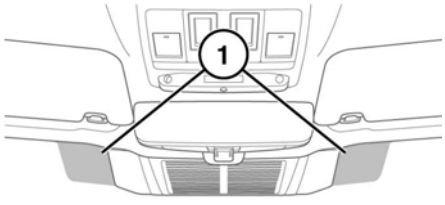
Press the rear of the roof blind switch to the second position and release. The blind fully opens. A further press stops movement of the blind.

Alternatively, press the rear of the roof blind switch to the first position and hold until the blind reaches the desired position. Release the switch.

Press the front of the roof blind switch to the second position and release. The blind fully closes. A further press stops movement of the blind.

Alternatively, press the front of the roof blind switch to the first position and hold until the blind reaches the desired position. Release the switch.

SOLAR ATTENUATING GLASS



E248214

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Windows

The solar attenuating glass windscreen filters sunlight passing through a special laminated layer.

Electronic actuating cards, such as toll road payment cards or Radio Frequency (RF) ID tags, can be fixed at the dedicated locations. The locations are on the inside of the windscreen. If the cards are located at any other part of a solar attenuating windscreen, the electronic scanners may not recognise them.

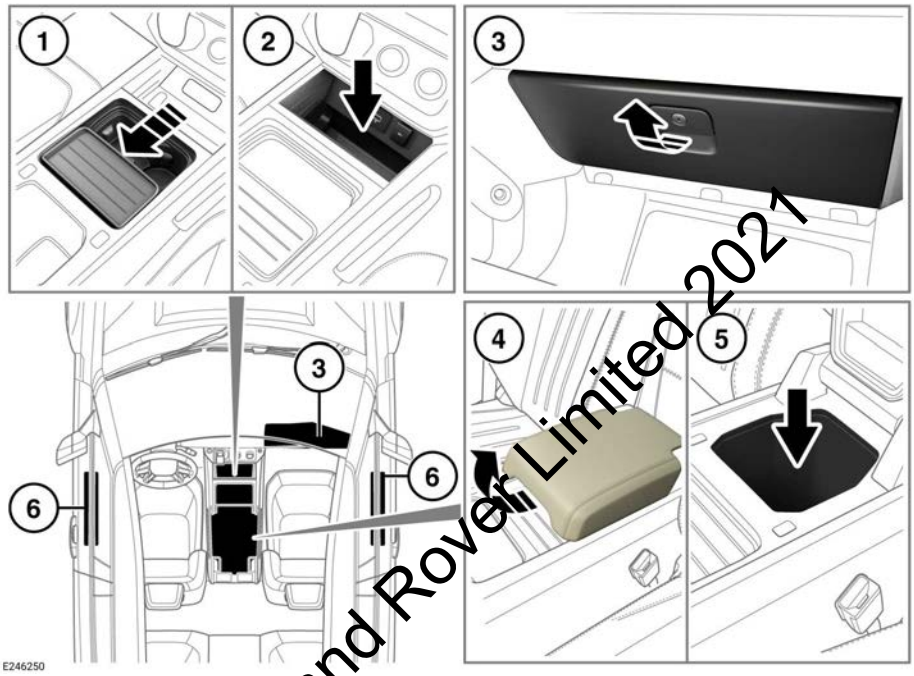
The fixing location is at the top of the windscreen, as shown at (**1**), close to the forward-facing camera cover.

Note: *The electronic actuating card should be in the size appropriate location on the driver's side of the windscreen.*

Note: *Transponders, mounted on the front number plate plinth, can be used as an alternative, dependent on the market and availability.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

STORAGE COMPARTMENTS



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

⚠ **Make sure any items stored in the vehicle are secure and cannot move. If the vehicle is involved in an accident or is subject to sudden braking or a change of direction, loose items can cause serious injury.**

⚠ **Do not drink while driving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

⚠ **Do not remove items from, or place items in, the cup holders while driving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

Front storage locations:

1. Front cup holders.
2. Deep storage area.
3. Glovebox: Pull the catch to release the glovebox. Pull rearward to open.
4. Centre console storage and fridge: Pull the catch to release the armrest, then pull upwards.
5. Centre console storage and fridge: Press the button at the rear of the box to operate the fridge.
6. Door bins.

The fridge button on the inside rear lip operates two cooling modes:

- Press the button once for fast cooling. The fast cooling mode is indicated by two LEDs illuminating on the button.
- Press the button twice for normal mode. The normal mode is indicated by one LED illuminating.

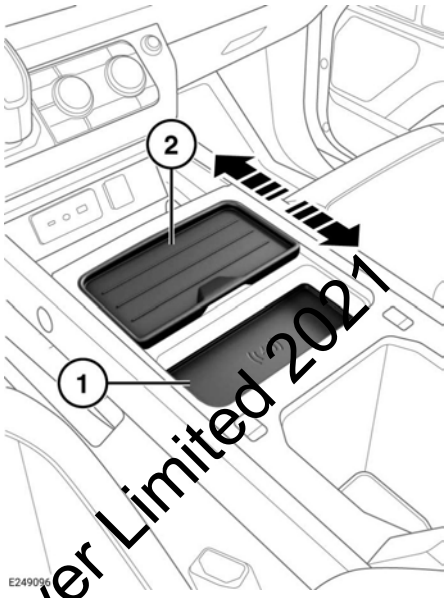
Note: *If fast cooling mode is selected, the refrigerator automatically switches to normal mode when the operating temperature is reached. The refrigerator takes approximately 30 minutes to reach the operating temperature of approximately 5°C (40°F).*

Note: *The fridge only operates with the ignition switched on.*

Note: *Repeated or prolonged opening of the fridge reduces its ability to maintain temperature.*

Wireless charging and trinket tray:

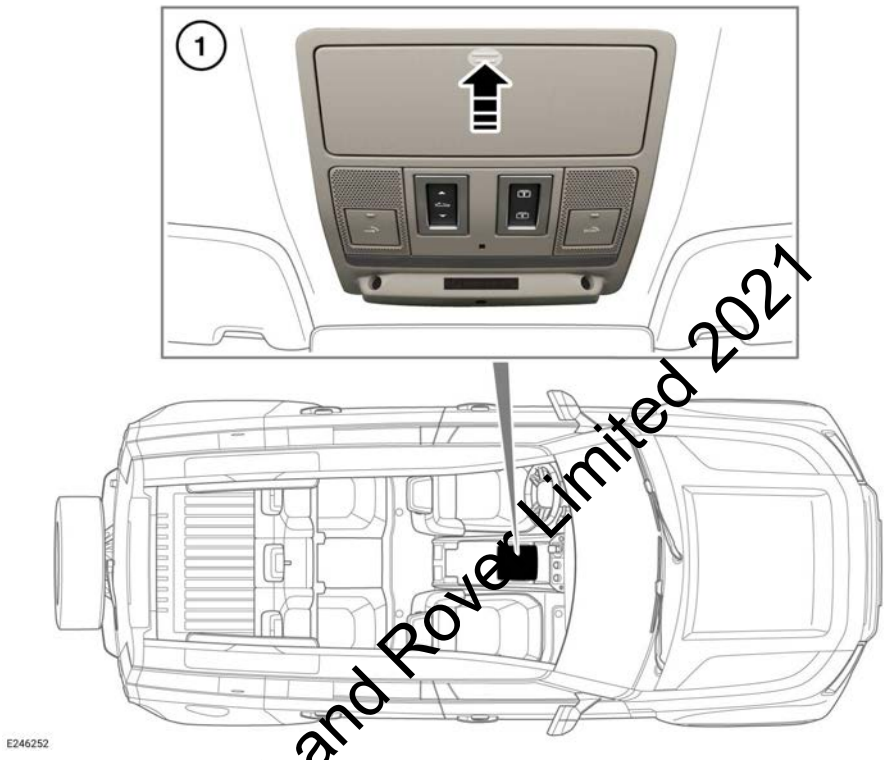
Metallic objects may become hot if they are placed between the mobile device and the charging mat, which may result in serious injuries.



1. Wireless charging area. See **125, WIRELESS CHARGER**.
2. Sliding tray.

Roof-mounted glasses storage:

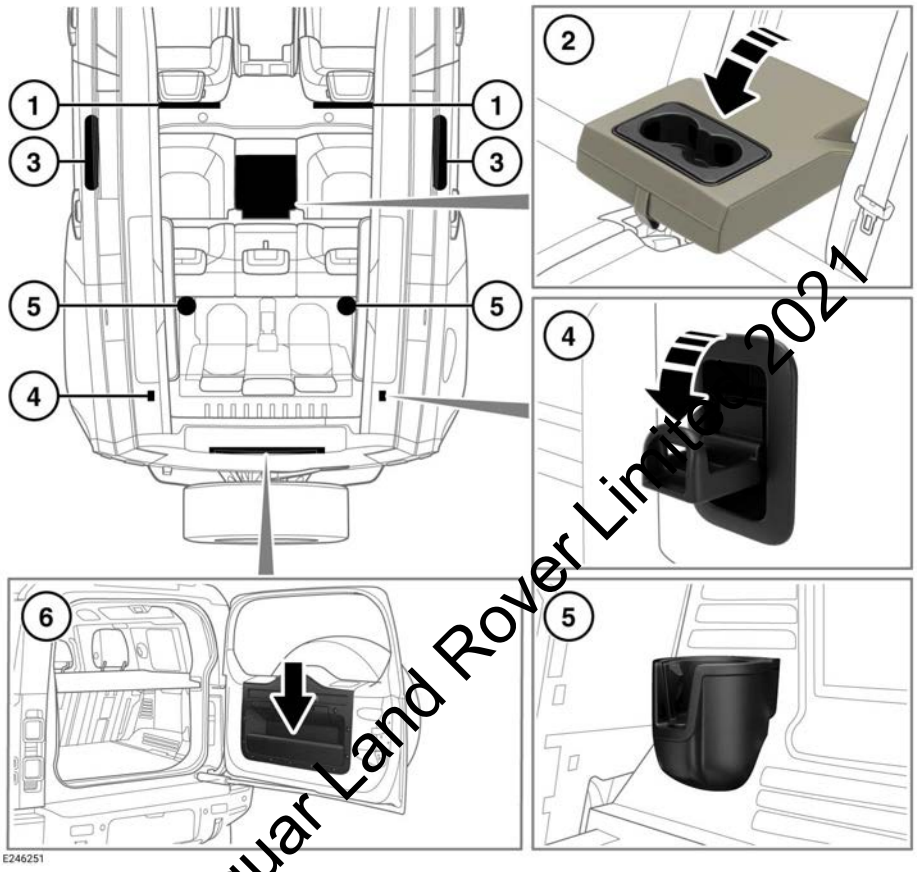
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



Push the glasses compartment **(1)** as illustrated to open, push again to close.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Storage compartments

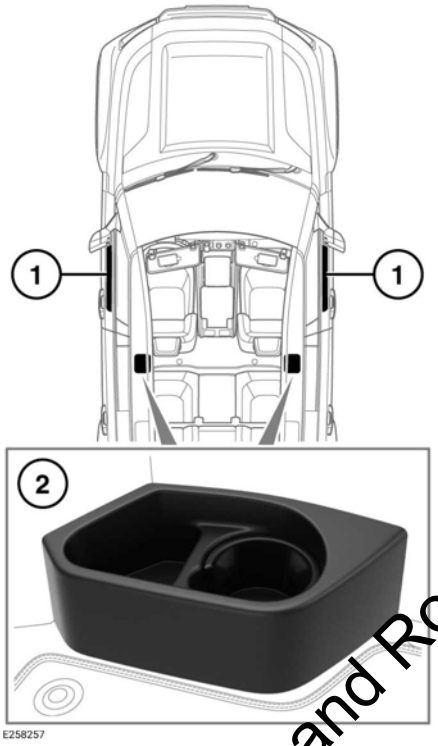


© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Rear storage locations (all vehicles):

1. Map pockets.
2. Rear seat cup holders: Fold the centre armrest down.
3. Rear door storage.
4. Storage hooks: Fold down to use.
5. Third row cup holders (110 wheelbase only).
6. Taildoor storage.

Storage compartments

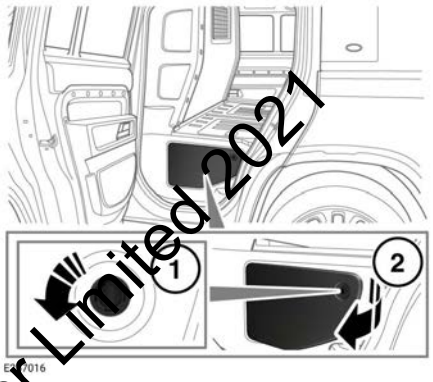


Rear storage locations (90" wheelbase)

1. Door pockets.
2. Rear seat cup holders: Vehicle side trims.

Commercial variant rear storage

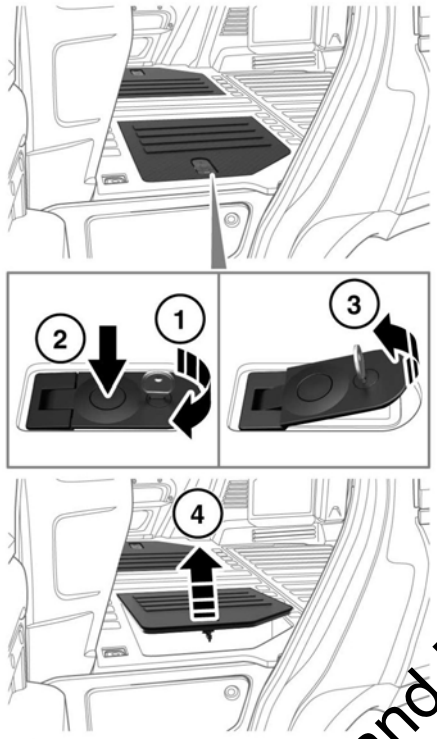
Additional storage are located below the loadspace floor. For locking and unlocking storage hatch catches, lock and unlock using the supplied storage key.



To access under floor storage at rear doors, release the catch (**1**) and pull the door open (**2**).

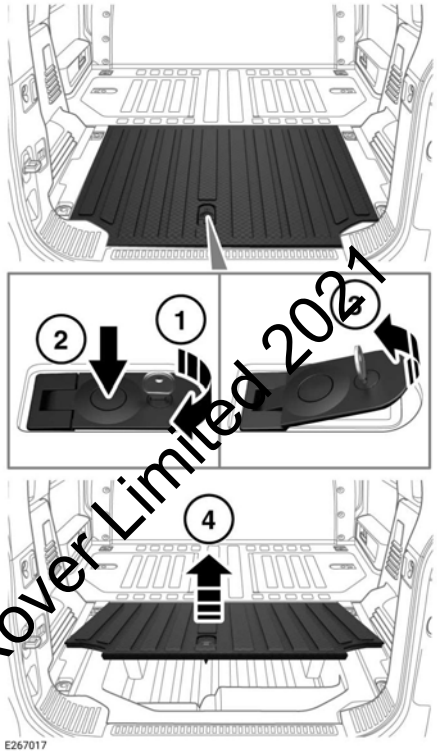
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Storage compartments



E267707

To access under floor storage behind front seats, unlock the catch (**1**) and press the release button (**2**). Pull the catch lever (**3**) and pull the hatch covers upwards (**4**).



E267017

To access under floor storage under boot floor, unlock the catch (**1**) and press the release button (**2**). Pull the catch lever (**3**) and pull the hatch cover upwards (**4**).

AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS

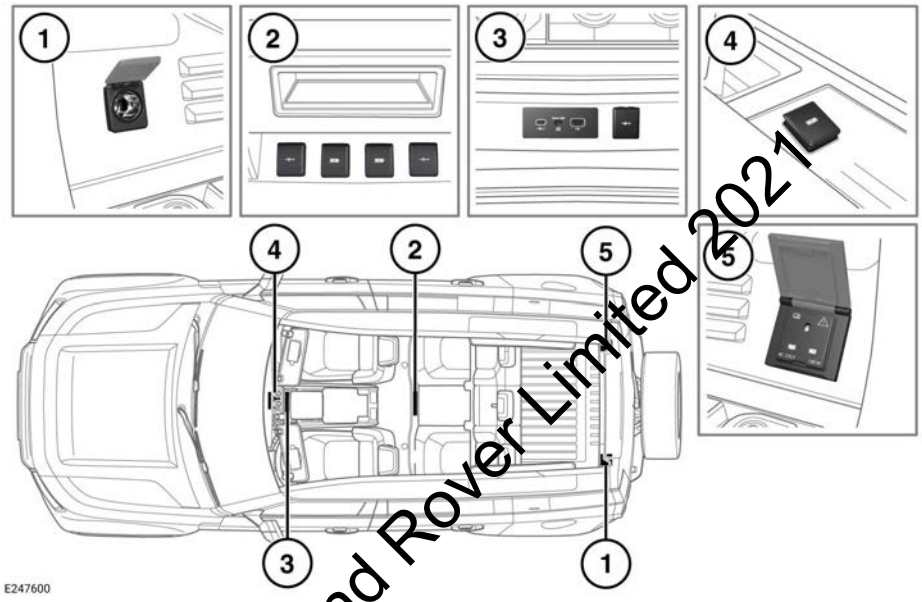
Only use approved accessories. Using any other equipment may damage the vehicle's electrical system. If in any doubt, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.

The engine should be running when using electrical accessories for long periods. Failure to do so can discharge the battery.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *12 V power sockets can be used to power approved accessories that use a maximum of 120 Watts.*

Auxiliary power sockets:



1. Rear loadspace 12V power socket.
2. Second row passenger 12V power sockets and USB type A sockets.
3. Front centre console 12V power socket, USB type A socket, USB type C socket and SIM card slot.

   Note: *Not all markets have a SIM card slot. If the vehicle has no SIM card slot, it has an non-removable SIM instead.*
4. Front passenger USB type A socket.
5. Loadspace 230V/120V power socket.

Do not use wet or damp power connectors. Wet or damp power connectors could result in injury or death via electric shock.

Do not exceed 180 Watts power consumption. Exceeding 180 Watts power consumption may result in vehicle damage.

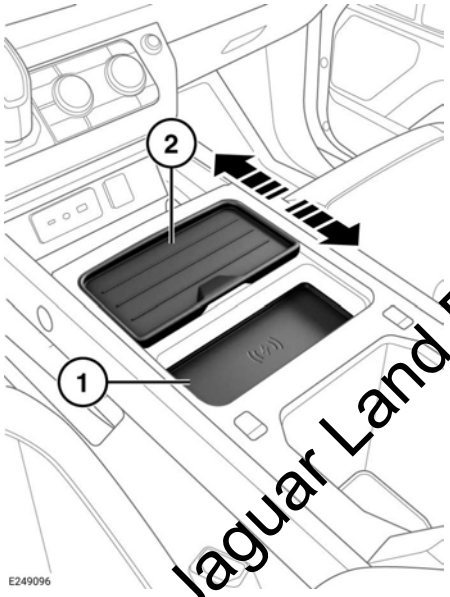
WIRELESS CHARGER

Metallic objects may become hot if they are placed between the mobile device and the charging mat, which may result in serious injuries.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *Do not place anything other than a Qi-compatible mobile device or accessory onto the charging mat. Items such as keys, key fobs, coins, jewellery, paperclips, or foil sweet wrappers may interfere with the wireless charger operation.*

The wireless charger is located on the centre console, behind the gear selector. Move the sliding tray forwards to access the wireless charging mat.



The wireless charger provides up to 15 Watts of power to charge Qi-compatible mobile devices. The wireless charger **1** is located under the sliding cover **2**.

To use the wireless charger:

1. Switch on the vehicle's ignition.
2. Place the Qi-compatible mobile device in the centre of the mat with the device's screen facing upward. Align the longer edge of the device with the longer edge of the wireless charging area. Charging commences after a short delay of up to 10 seconds.

Note: *Remove the mobile device from the wireless charger to stop the charging process.*

Note: *The amount of charging current supplied and the time taken for charging is entirely under the control of the mobile device.*

Note: *The wireless charger continues to charge during an engine stop/start event.*

Note: *Aftermarket device cases or enclosures can reduce wireless charging efficiency, or block it altogether. If a Qi-compatible device exhibits problems charging wirelessly, remove any aftermarket cases or enclosures.*

Note: *Removing the device from the wireless charging mat and replacing it will reset the connection.*

Note: *Dynamic driving could cause the device to move around on the wireless charging area. Dynamic driving may cause the wireless charge process to disconnect briefly. Make sure the device remains flat on the wireless charging mat.*

The wireless charger switches off automatically when the mobile device is fully charged.

The following icons appear on the touchscreen and relate to wireless charging status:

Charging: Indicates a device is on the charging mat and recognised by the system.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



Charged: Indicates the mobile device is fully charged.



Foreign object: Indicates a foreign object is detected on the charging mat. Occasionally, the wireless charging system may display this symbol while cooling down. Wireless charging will resume once the system's temperature has normalised.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Load carrying

LOAD CARRYING

Never allow passengers to travel in the loadspace under any circumstances. All vehicle occupants should be seated correctly and should wear a seat belt at all times when the vehicle is in motion. Failure to do so can lead to serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

All items carried in the vehicle should be properly secured. An accident, sudden braking, or change of direction can cause loose items to move. Loose objects in the vehicle can cause serious injury or death.

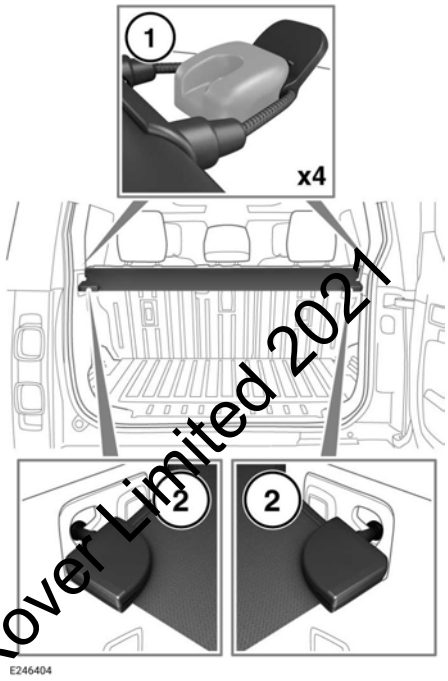
Do not stand on the chequer finishers. The chequer finishers are not load-bearing and should not be stood on or used to load the roof. Placing undue load on the chequer finishers may damage the vehicle.

LOADSPACE COVER

Never place objects on top of the loadspace cover. During an accident or sudden manoeuvre, loose objects could cause serious injury or death.

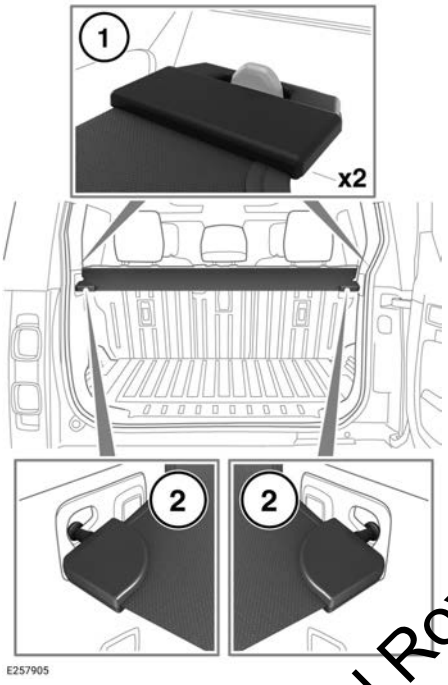
Remove the loadspace cover before moving the seats. Failure to do so may result in damage to the loadspace cover.

110 wheelbase loadspace cover



90 wheelbase loadspace cover:

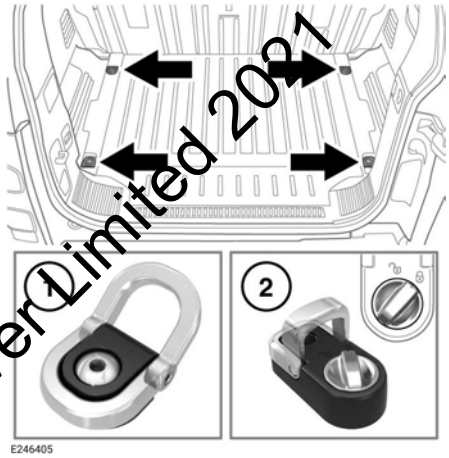
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



1. Attach one side of the loadspace cover to one of the anchor points next to the window. Stretch the loadspace cover across to the opposite side of the vehicle. Attach the anchor points next to the adjacent window.
2. Pull the cover rearward and insert the locating pegs into the attachment points on the rear pillars.

LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS

All items carried in the loadspace should be properly secured. If the vehicle is involved in an accident, subject to sudden braking or change of direction, loose items can cause serious injury or death.



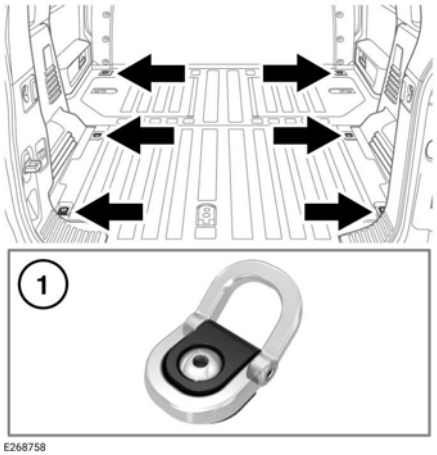
1. To assist in safely securing large items of luggage, lashing eyes (**1**) are located in the loadspace floor.
2. If adjustable lashing eyes are fitted (**2**) turn the locking mechanism counter-clockwise to unlock. Press the mechanism and slide to the required position in the luggage rail. Release the mechanism to latch into position. Move the lashing eye slightly, until a click is heard. The lashing eye is now secured. Turn the mechanism clockwise to lock.

Note: *In some markets, a range of approved luggage retention accessories is available from a retailer/authorised repairer.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Load carrying

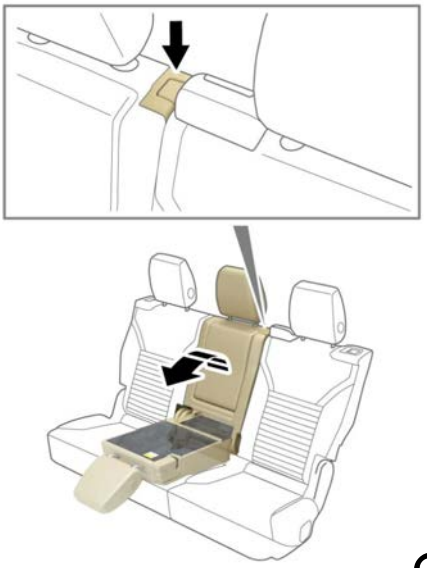
Commercial variant luggage anchor points



Additional anchor points are provided on commercial variants (**1**).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

SKI HATCH



E219237

The ski hatch, located in the seatback, can be used for transporting long objects.

Press the centre release button and fold down the ski hatch panel.

To close the ski hatch panel, push the panel up to the closed position.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Towing

TOWING SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before towing a trailer. Failure to follow the guidance could result in vehicle damage, serious injury, or death.

Do not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), maximum rear axle weight, or nose weight. Exceeding any of these limits adversely affects the vehicle's stability and braking. Increased braking distances and loss of vehicle control may be experienced.

Only fit approved towing accessories. Vehicle stability may be compromised if non-approved towing accessories are fitted.

Never use the vehicle's towing eyes or lashing points to tow a trailer.

The use of weight distribution hitches is not recommended.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TOWING WEIGHTS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 132, TOWING SAFETY.

Maximum permissible towing weights	Variant	kg
Maximum tow mass of an unbraked trailer.	All vehicles.	750
Maximum tow mass.	All except Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicles (PHEVs).	3 500
	PHEVs only.	3 000
Nose weight (Certified).[1]	All vehicles.	150
Maximum nose weight (Design).[2]	Detachable tow ball.	200
	Deployable tow ball.	350
	Tow hitch tow ball.	350
	Multi-height tow ball.	350
Tow ball mounted accessories.	All vehicles.	66.8

Make sure to never exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), the Gross Train Weight (GTW), or the front and rear axle weights. See **448, WEIGHTS**.

Note: *Include the trailer's nose weight when calculating the GVW and the rear axle weight.*

Note: *When calculating the vehicle's rear axle weight, the vehicle's payload weights must also be considered. Include the combined weights of all the rear passengers, the loadspace, roof rail, accessory equipment, and the trailer nose weight. The combined weights must never exceed the GVW or the maximum weights for the front and rear axles.*

Note: *Make sure to observe and comply with the legal requirements for the country in which the vehicle is travelling.*

Note: *[1]When towing in the European Union (EU), the maximum GVW can be increased by 100 kg. The vehicle's maximum road speed is then limited to 97 km/h (60 mph). In this event, the maximum trailer nose weight is 150 kg when the vehicle is in its fully laden condition.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *[2]The restricted maximum trailer nose weight only applies to trailers with overrun brakes. Make sure that the GVW, the GTW, and the maximum rear axle weight limits are not exceeded when applying the trailer nose weight. If required, reduce the weight of the vehicle's payload.*

For further information, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer and quote the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). See **443, LABEL LOCATIONS**.

2.0L engines

Engine power output always reduces with increased altitude. At 1 000 m above sea level, and for every extra 1 000 m, deduct 10% from the GTW.

Australia only

The trailer nose weight must not exceed 10% of the gross caravan or trailer weight.

TOW BAR OPTIONS

⚠ **Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 132, TOWING SAFETY.**

A number of different tow bar options are available for the vehicle.

Note: *Make sure that a breakaway cable, or breakaway chains, are used and connected as illustrated.*

⚠ **Do not loop a breakaway cable or safety chain over the tow ball. The cable or chain may slide off, preventing correct operation in the event that the trailer becomes disconnected. Failure to correctly secure a breakaway cable or chain could result in serious injury or death.**

Detachable tow ball



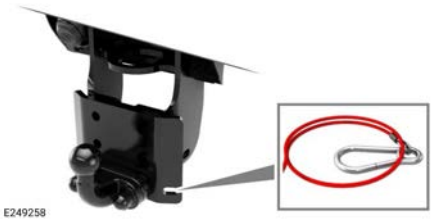
Deployable tow ball



Tow hitch



Multi-height tow ball



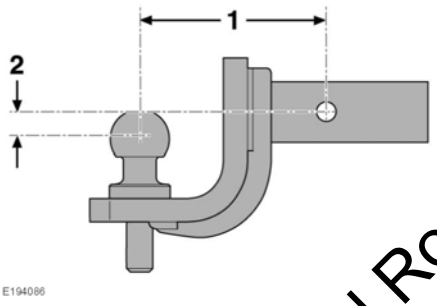
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TOW HITCH (Australia and New Zealand only)

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 132, TOWING SAFETY.

The fitting of a tow hitch is required for towing with the tow hitch receiver.

The following tow hitch dimensions must be adhered to:



1. The maximum recommended length is 175 mm.
2. The maximum recommended ball height is:
   - Coil suspension: -15 mm.
   - Air suspension: 35 mm.

Never leave the tow hitch loose in the vehicle. In the event of an accident, or during heavy braking, the tow hitch can become a projectile potentially causing serious injury or death.

If in any doubt about the fitment of a tow hitch, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

TOWING A TRAILER

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 132, TOWING SAFETY.

Before towing a trailer, make sure both the vehicle and the trailer are being used in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and any applicable legislation. See **133, TOWING WEIGHTS** and **448, WEIGHTS**.

Engage low range in order to achieve a smoother pull away from standstill when towing a trailer weighing more than 2 000 kg. Change to high range once the vehicle is moving. See **173, SELECTING HIGH AND LOW RANGE**.

To avoid overheating the transmission, it is not advisable to tow heavy loads at speeds of less than 32 km/h (20 mph) in high range. In these circumstances, select low range.

Note: *A reduction in the performance of the Air Conditioning (A/C) system is normal under high load towing conditions.*

The touchscreen can display a rear-view image to assist when reversing the vehicle with a trailer attached. See **139, TOW ASSIST** and **139, ADVANCED TOW ASSIST**.

HITCH ASSIST

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 132, TOWING SAFETY.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Towing

Hitch assist displays a rear camera image on the touchscreen, to aid in the process of connecting a trailer. Hitch assist overlays an approximation of the tow ball's position, and the intended steering direction.

The driver is responsible for calculating correct distances and manoeuvring the vehicle to a trailer's tow hitch. Failure to manoeuvre the vehicle accurately may result in damage to the vehicle and trailer.

Note: *The accuracy of hitch assist is affected by the height of the trailer's tow hitch compared to the vehicle's tow ball. The maximum height difference should be no more than 3 cm (1.2 in).*

To activate hitch assist:

1. Select Reverse (**R**). The touchscreen automatically displays a rear-view camera image.
2. Select **TOWING**.
3. Reverse the vehicle towards the trailer.

The rear camera zooms in to enlarge the view as the vehicle closes to within 500 mm of the trailer's tow hitch.

Manoeuvre the vehicle until it is in the required position.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TRAILER ELECTRICAL CONNECTION

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 132, TOWING SAFETY.

The information in the following table should be used to confirm if a trailer or lighting board is compatible with the vehicle. The vehicle is unable to detect a trailer or lighting board that does not meet the specifications given.

Function	Minimum load		Maximum load	
	Amps	Watts	Amps	Watts
Brake lights.	0.1	1.2	10	120
Direction indicators.	0.05	0.6	5	60
All side marker lights combined.	-	-	10	120
Reverse lights.	-	-	5	60
Fog light.	-	-	5	60
All lights combined.	-	-	25	300
Permanent battery feed.	-		15	180
Ignition feed.	-	-	15	180

Note: *Only use equipment that requires a 12-volt supply from the vehicle.*

Note: *Only attach appropriate electrical connectors, which are in good condition, to the trailer socket. Using inappropriate or sub-standard towing equipment may adversely affect the accuracy and performance of the vehicle's towing features.*

The trailer direction indicator lamp flashes alongside the relevant direction indicator lamp in the instrument panel when:

- An electrical connection is present between the vehicle and the trailer.
- The vehicle's direction indicators are used.

If the trailer direction indicator lamp does not flash, check the trailer's electrical connection. Take appropriate action to make sure the trailer's direction indicators are functioning correctly.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Australia and New Zealand only

An electric trailer brake module connector is located near the driver's position. The information in the following table should be used to confirm if an electric trailer brake module is compatible with the vehicle. If in doubt, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer.

Function	Maximum load
Permanent battery feed.	30 A
Brake signal.	100 mA
Electric brake connection to tow bar electrical socket.	30 A

TRAILER STABILITY ASSIST (TSA)

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 132, TOWING SAFETY.

Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) automatically detects when sway is developing on a correctly attached trailer. When active, TSA gradually reduces the vehicle's speed to help regain control of the trailer.

TRAILER STABILITY ASSIST (TSA) LIMITATIONS

Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) does not operate if:

- The trailer is jack-knifing.
- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is switched off.

TSA performance may be reduced when travelling on slippery surfaces.

TRAILER CALIBRATION

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 132, TOWING SAFETY.

The tow assist features do not operate until a trailer profile has been created, and the corresponding trailer is connected and calibrated. A trailer profile must be created before the trailer can be calibrated.

Note: *The trailer does not need to be connected to the vehicle to create a profile. The trailer must be connected to the vehicle in order to be calibrated.*

To create a trailer profile:

1. Touch the **apps** icon on the driver side lower screen. See **240, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.
2. Select **TOWING & TRAILERS**.
3. Select **+**.
4. Select the trailer type from the available options.
5. Enter the trailer dimensions.

Follow the on-screen instructions to calibrate the trailer, if it is already connected.

The trailer calibration process may not perform accurately in low ambient light levels. Always attempt to calibrate a trailer in good ambient light levels. Failure to accurately carry out the calibration process may result in damage to the vehicle or trailer.

The **tow assist** icon displays on the touchscreen when a trailer is connected. Select the appropriate trailer profile.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

If the trailer has yet to be calibrated:

1. Touch the **tow assist** icon.
2. Select the appropriate trailer profile.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to calibrate the trailer.

TOW ASSIST

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 132, TOWING SAFETY.

Note: *Tow assist only operates if the connected trailer has had a profile created and has been calibrated. See* ***138, TRAILER CALIBRATION****.*

Tow assist displays camera views of the rear or side of the vehicle, to assist the driver when reversing a trailer. Trajectory lines are overlaid onto the images, depicting the predicted path of the trailer. Different camera views can be selected via the touchscreen. See **293, CAMERA SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.

Tow assist can be configured to use either the surround camera system or the rear camera system.



The **tow assist** icon displays on the touchscreen passenger side bar when a trailer is connected. See **293, CAMERA SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.

To activate tow assist:

1. Touch the **tow assist** icon.
2. Select the appropriate profile for the connected trailer.
3. Select Reverse (**R**).

The trajectory lines change colour based on the angle of the trailer in relation to the vehicle. Red trajectory lines indicate that damage may occur to the vehicle or trailer if the steering is turned further in the same direction.

Note: *The vehicle's ignition must be switched off before disconnecting a trailer.*

TOW ASSIST LIMITATIONS

The following may have an affect on tow assist performance:

- Varying ambient light conditions: If varying light conditions are experienced, the trajectory lines are removed from the touchscreen image.
- If a door or taildoor is opened: In this event, the corresponding camera view is replaced with a black screen.
- If the camera wash feature is used: In this event, the rear camera view becomes unclear.

ADVANCED TOW ASSIST

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 132, TOWING SAFETY.

Note: *Advanced tow assist only operates if the connected trailer has had a profile created, and has been calibrated. See* ***138, TRAILER CALIBRATION****.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Advanced tow assist displays camera views of the rear and side of the vehicle, to assist the driver when reversing a trailer. Trajectory lines are overlaid onto the images, depicting the predicted path of the trailer. Different camera views can be selected via the touchscreen. See **293, CAMERA SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.

Advanced tow assist also operates the steering wheel when the vehicle is reversing, and all conditions are met.

Note: *The vehicle's speed and brakes must be controlled by the driver.*

The driver is responsible for detecting obstacles, and for estimating both the trailer and vehicle's distance from the obstacles, when manoeuvring. Failure to do so can result in vehicle or trailer damage, serious injury, or death.

The tow assist icon displays on the touchscreen passenger side bar when a trailer is connected.

To enable advanced tow assist:

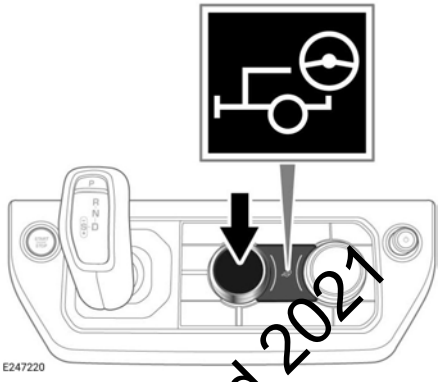
1. Touch the **tow assist** icon.
2. Select the appropriate profile for the connected trailer.

The **advanced tow assist** icon displays on the touchscreen passenger side bar once a trailer profile is selected.

Select Reverse (**R**).

To activate advanced tow assist:

1. Touch the **advanced tow assist** icon on the touchscreen.
2. Select **START**.



An **advanced tow assist** icon on the front control panel now illuminates. The driver's side rotary climate control can now be used to control the path of the trailer when reversing.

Note: *Press and hold the driver's side rotary climate control for approximately a second to align the trailer straight in relation to the vehicle.*

When the required path has been set using the rotary climate control, use the accelerator and brake pedals to manoeuvre the trailer.

Note: *The driver can take control of the steering wheel if required. In this event, advanced tow assist is cancelled.*

The trajectory lines change colour as follows:

- Green lines indicate that the trailer is reversing in a straight line.
- Magenta lines indicate that the trailer is reversing at an angle.
- Red lines indicate that the trailer's reversing angle is too tight. Red lines are accompanied by a warning message on the touchscreen.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *The vehicle's ignition must be switched off before disconnecting a trailer.*

ADVANCED TOW ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Advanced tow assist does not operate if:

- Any gear other than Reverse (**R**) is selected.
- The steering wheel is used to manoeuvre the vehicle.
- The taildoor is open, or unlatched.
- Any of the doors are opened, or unlatched.
- All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) is enabled.
- The vehicle's speed exceeds 8 km/h (5 mph).

Advanced tow assist performance is adversely affected if non-approved towing equipment is used.

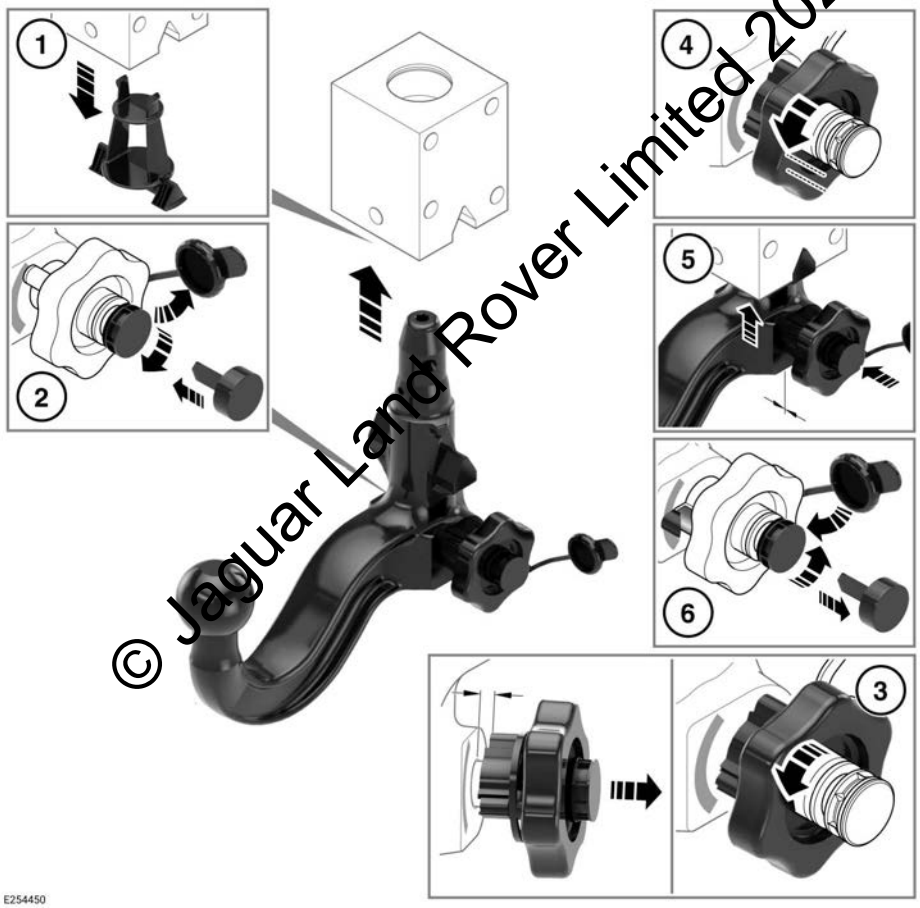
The touchscreen displays messages to inform the user of any conditions that have not been met in order for the system to operate. The touchscreen also displays messages regarding system faults or performance issues.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

FITTING THE DETACHABLE TOW BALL

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 132, TOWING SAFETY.

The detachable tow ball is very heavy. Extreme care must be taken when manoeuvring the tow ball. Use two hands to safely manoeuvre the tow ball. Make sure that no body part is below the tow ball during fitment or removal. Failure to safely manoeuvre the tow ball could result in serious injury or death.



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The detachable tow ball is stored under the loadspace floor.

To fit the detachable tow ball:

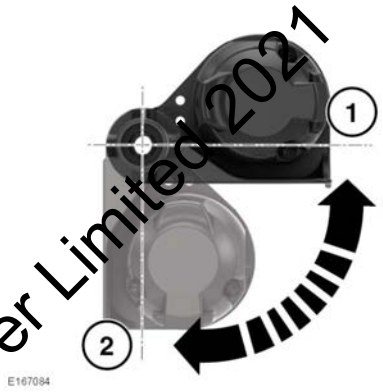
1. Remove the protective cover from the mounting bracket. Store in a safe place.

   Note: *Take note of the orientation of the cover to aid refitting.*
2. Insert the key and turn clockwise to unlock the handwheel.
3. Pull the handwheel away from the tow ball. Simultaneously turn the handwheel approximately half a turn counter-clockwise. The red lug on the handwheel should enter the green indicator scale.
4. Rotate the handwheel counter-clockwise until it locks into position. The red lug should remain in the green indicator scale.
5. Using both hands, push the tow ball up into the mounting bracket. A click is heard when the tow ball is fitted correctly. The handwheel returns to sit flush against the tow ball. The green indicator lug should be aligned with the green indicator scale.
6. Insert the key and turn counter-clockwise to lock the handwheel.

Once the tow ball is fitted, replace the keyhole cover and safely store the key below the loadspace floor.

The detachable tow ball should be removed if it is not required for immediate use. See **143, REMOVING THE DETACHABLE TOW BALL**.

Make sure the detachable tow ball is stored safely in its bag using the lashing eyes on the loadspace floor. In the event of an accident, or under heavy braking, the tow ball can become a projectile, potentially causing serious injury or death.



The trailer electrical socket is mounted on the tow bar.

Move the electrical socket into the deployed position (**2**). Make sure to move the electrical socket back into the stored position (**1**) once the tow ball is removed.

REMOVING THE DETACHABLE TOW BALL

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 132, TOWING SAFETY.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The detachable tow ball is very heavy. Extreme care must be taken when manoeuvring the tow ball. Use two hands to safely manoeuvre the tow ball. Make sure that no body part is below the tow ball during fitment or removal. Failure to safely manoeuvre the tow ball could result in serious injury or death.

To remove the detachable tow ball:

1. Remove the keyhole cover.
2. Insert the key.
3. While supporting the tow ball, turn the key clockwise to unlock the handwheel.
4. Pull the handwheel away from the tow ball. Simultaneously rotate the handwheel approximately half a turn counter-clockwise until it locks into position. The red lug on the handwheel should enter the green indicator scale.
5. Using both hands, lower the tow ball from the mounting bracket.
6. Fit the top cover to the tow ball. When correctly fitted a click is heard, and the handwheel returns inwards to sit flush against the tow ball. The green indicator lug should be aligned with the green indicator scale.

   Note: *Repeat step **2** if there is insufficient gap between the tow ball and the handwheel to fit the top cover.*
7. Turn the key counter-clockwise to lock the handwheel.
8. Remove the key.

   Note: *The key can only be removed if the top cover has been fitted correctly.*
9. Refit the keyhole cover.
10. Securely store the tow ball and key in the loadspace.

Make sure the tow ball is stored safely in its bag using the lashing eyes on the loadspace floor. In the event of an accident, or under heavy braking, the tow ball can become a projectile, potentially causing serious injury or death.

11. Fit the protective cover to the mounting bracket.

DEPLOYABLE TOW BALL OVERVIEW

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 132, TOWING SAFETY.

The deployable tow ball is stowed out of view, underneath the centre of the rear bumper.

The deployable tow ball can be deployed in one of two ways:

- Via the touchscreen. See **145, DEPLOYABLE TOW BALL OPERATION**.
- Via buttons located on the left side of the loadspace. See **145, DEPLOYABLE TOW BALL OPERATION**.

Before deploying the tow ball it is important to make sure that:

- The vehicle is stationary.
- Park (**P**) or Neutral (**N**) is selected.
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- There are no obstructions within close proximity of the tow ball.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Additionally, before stowing the tow ball it is important to make sure that:

- The trailer is disconnected.
- The trailer's electrical connection is disconnected.

Failure to disconnect the trailer or the trailer's electrical connection before stowing the tow ball could lead to vehicle and trailer damage.

The deployable tow ball incorporates a measure load feature. See **147, MEASURE LOAD**.

DEPLOYABLE TOW BALL OPERATION

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 132, TOWING SAFETY.

It is recommended to keep the deployable tow ball in the stowed position when not in use. Failure to do so could lead to vehicle damage or personal injury.

The deployable tow ball can be operated using either the touchscreen or by using buttons located on the left side of the loadspace.

Note: *Operating the tow ball many times in quick succession may cause the system to stop working. Operation is resumed after approximately 90 minutes. If operation is not resumed, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.*

Touchscreen operation

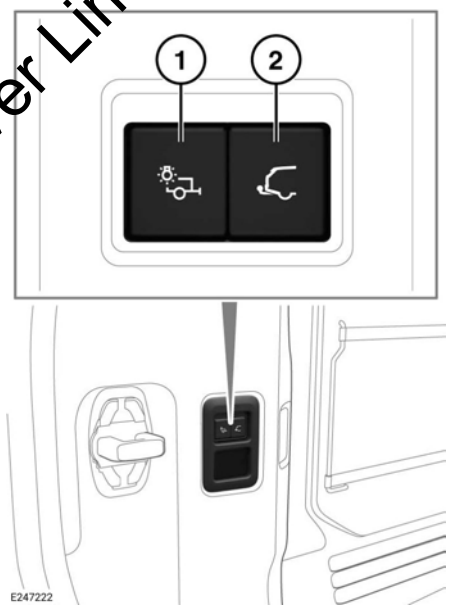
To deploy the tow ball using the touchscreen:

1. Touch the **Apps** icon on the driver side bar. See **240, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.
2. Select **TOW BAR**.
3. Select **Deploy**.
4. Select **Start**.

Once moving, the **Deploy** soft key is replaced with a **Stop** soft key. Once fully deployed, the **Stop** soft key is replaced with a **Stow** soft key.

If the tow ball stops halfway, or the system cannot determine the position of the tow ball, **Reset to Deploy** is displayed.

Loadspace button operation



1. Bulb check button. See **146, BULB CHECK**.
2. Deploy and stow button.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Press the button (**2**) to deploy the tow ball. Press the button a second time to stow to tow ball.

An LED located above the button confirms tow ball status as follows:

- Flashes slowly while the tow ball is being deployed or stowed. An audible tone also sounds.
- Stops flashing and remains illuminated once the tow ball is fully deployed.
- Stops flashing and extinguishes after 2 seconds once the tow ball is fully stowed.
- Flashes quickly if an obstruction is encountered. An audible tone also sounds.

If the LED continues to flash, the tow ball is neither fully deployed nor fully stowed. An audible tone is also heard for 10 seconds if the vehicle is subsequently driven. Press button 2 to reset the system. If the problem persists, consult a retailer/authorised repairer. Do not tow a trailer with the tow bar partially deployed. Serious injury or death may result.

Press button **2** to stop operation of the tow ball. Press the button again to resume operation.

BULB CHECK

A bulb check on both the vehicle and connected trailer lights can be carried out via the touchscreen. Alternatively, the buttons located on the left side of the loadspace can be used.

Prior to carrying out a bulb check:

- Switch off all of the vehicle's lights.
- Apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB).
- Switch off the vehicle's ignition.
- Press the media power button to power the touchscreen. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

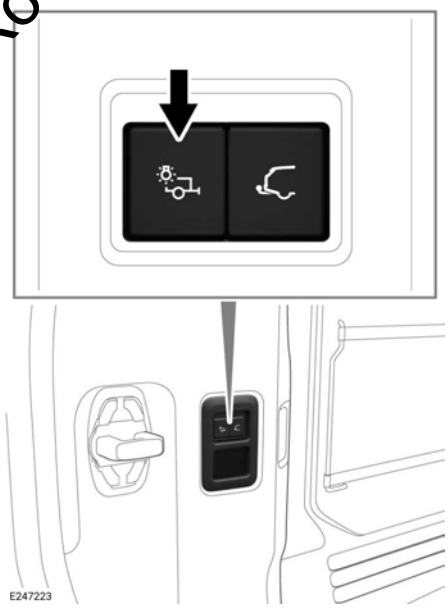
The bulb check illuminates all of the vehicle's lights, and the corresponding trailer lights, in turn. The sequence automatically stops after 3 minutes.

Touchscreen operation

To carry out a bulb check using the touchscreen:

1. Touch the **Apps** icon on the driver side bar. See **240, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.
2. Select **TOW BAR**.
3. Select **TRAILER BULB CHECK**.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions.

Loadspace button operation



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Press the button on the left side of the loadspace to carry out a bulb check. Press the button a second time to stop the bulb check.

MEASURE LOAD

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 132, TOWING SAFETY.

The deployable tow bar incorporates a measure load feature. The measure load feature allows the user to view an indicated nose weight range for a connected trailer.

Note: *The displayed weights are for guidance only, and are not accurate weight calculations.*

To activate the measure load feature:

1. Touch the **apps** icon on the driver side bar. See **240, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.
2. Select **TOW BAR**.
3. Select **MEASURE LOAD**.

The measure load feature only operates for up to 60 minutes after the deployable tow ball is deployed.

MEASURE LOAD LIMITATIONS

The measure load feature only operates correctly if:

- The normal suspension height is selected. See **176, NORMAL HEIGHT**.
- The vehicle and connected trailer are parked on level ground.
- The connected trailer is not tilted forward or rearward.

The measure load feature may not operate if:

- The ambient temperature is below -20°C, or above 60°C.
- The vehicle and connected trailer are parked on excessive inclines.

The touchscreen displays messages to inform the user of any system performance issues.

ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 132, TOWING SAFETY.

The following checks must be carried out before towing:

Do not exceed the maximum permissible towing weights. See **132, TOWING SAFETY**.

- When towing a trailer with more than one axle, load the trailer to achieve an even weight distribution between the axles.
- When calculating the laden weight of the trailer, remember to include the weight of the trailer, plus the weight of the load.
- If possible, spread the load of any cargo between the vehicle's loadspace and the trailer. Loading more weight into the vehicle generally improves stability. Make sure not to exceed the vehicle's weight limits.
- Check that the tyre pressures are correct for the current loading condition of the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

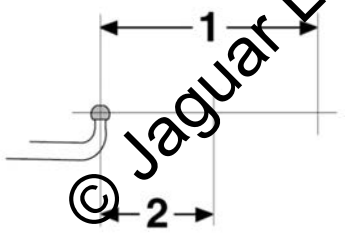
- Make sure that a suitable breakaway cable or chain, or safety coupling, is used and correctly connected. Refer to the trailer manufacturer's guidelines. See **134, TOW BAR OPTIONS**.
- Make sure that the tow ball is secure.
- Check the operation of all the trailer lights.

TOW BALL MOUNTED ACCESSORIES

Only use Jaguar Land Rover approved tow ball mounted accessories. The use of unapproved tow ball accessories may result in severe damage to the tow ball and the tow bar.

Note: *Tow ball mounted accessories must be removed when not in use.*

Note: *It is not permitted to fit a non-removable, non-adjustable mounting that obscures the rear lights or the vehicle's number plate.*



E178990

Observe the following before fitting an accessory to the tow ball:

1. The attached accessory must not protrude more than 700 mm from the tow ball.
2. The centre of gravity of the attached accessory and its load must not exceed a distance of 370 mm from the tow ball. The maximum weight at this distance should not exceed 69.1 kg.

Note: *The forces exerted by a trailer's nose weight and tow ball mounted accessories are different in nature, so different limits apply.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

VEHICLE CHARGING SAFETY

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings and cautions before attempting to charge the vehicle. Failure to observe cautions and warnings may result in vehicle damage, injury, or death in the event of an accident.

Never disassemble, remove, or replace high voltage components, cables, or connectors. High voltage cables and connectors are coloured orange for identification purposes.

Never use a charging cable if there is any damage to the unit.

Never use an extension lead or multiple socket in order to extend the reach of a charging cable.

Never connect a plug adaptor to a charging cable when travelling abroad.

Always fully unwind the charging cable. Failure to fully unwind the charging cable could lead to overheating of the cable.

Before initially connecting a charging cable, make sure the electricity supply has been checked and approved by a suitably qualified person.

Never attempt to pull the cable from the charging port once it is locked. Damage to the cable's locking mechanism will result. If disconnection is required, press the unlock button on the smart key once for AC charging, twice for DC charging. The cable's locking mechanism re-engages after a short time.

Always select the correct charging cable for the vehicle when using a public charging station, with a connector that matches the vehicle's charging port.

Always contact a retailer/authorised repairer if the charging cable fails to release regularly.

Note: *Before attempting to perform any repairs on a vehicle, consult a retailer/ authorised repairer.*

VEHICLE CHARGING OVERVIEW

Make sure all relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before charging the vehicle. See 149, VEHICLE CHARGING SAFETY.

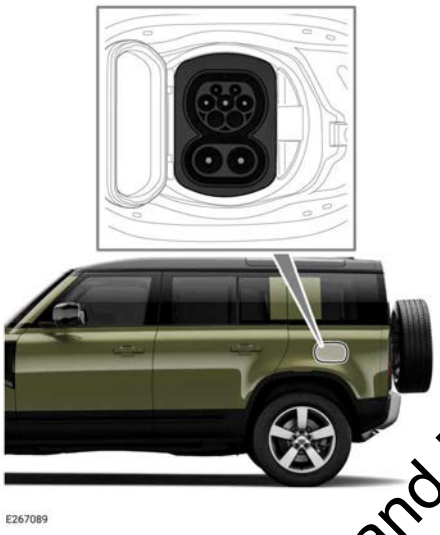
A charging cable is supplied with the vehicle. The cable should be:

- Stored securely in the luggage compartment when not in use.
- Used if a public charging cable is not available.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

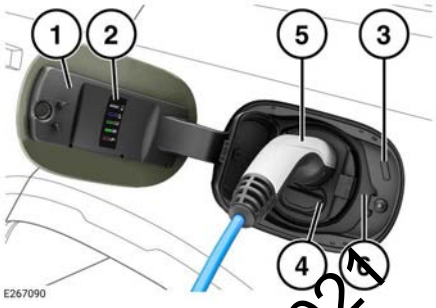
CHARGING PORT LOCATION

Make sure all relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before charging the vehicle. See 149, VEHICLE CHARGING SAFETY.



The charging ports are located as shown above.

Press the middle of the flap on the right side to gain access to the charging port. Once open, move the flap aside to gain access to the charging port.



For AC and DC charging:

1. Charging flap.
2. Charging indicator label.
3. Charging status lights. See **151, CHARGING PORT INDICATORS**.
4. DC Charging port cap. For DC charging only.
5. Charging cable.
6. Charge flap catch.

CONNECTING A CHARGING CABLE

Make sure all relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before charging the vehicle. See 149, VEHICLE CHARGING SAFETY.

Make sure to select the correct charging cable for the vehicle when using a public charging station. The vehicle supports both AC and DC charging providing the correct cable is used.

Note: *Make sure that the AC charging cable meets standard IEC62196-2.*

Note: *Always connect the charging cable to the electricity supply before connecting to the vehicle. See **149, VEHICLE CHARGING OVERVIEW**.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

To connect a charging cable to the vehicle, first prepare the vehicle, and then connect the charging cable.

To prepare the vehicle:

1. Unlock the vehicle.
2. Make sure Park (**P**) is selected.
3. Make sure the vehicle's ignition is switched off.
4. Open the charging flap. If using the DC charge port, remove the cap. See **150, CHARGING PORT LOCATION**.

To connect the charging cable at home:

1. Plug in the domestic connector to the electricity supply.
2. Connect the charging cable to the appropriate vehicle charging port.

To connect the charging cable at a public charging facility:

1. Connect a public charging cable to the applicable vehicle charging port socket.
2. Follow the instructions on the charging post.

The charging cable is locked into position once connected.

The charging process starts automatically, if all conditions have been met. See **151, CHARGING PORT INDICATORS** and **154, CHARGING CABLE INDICATORS**.

When charging is complete, unplug and store the charging cable. See **155, DISCONNECTING A CHARGING CABLE**.

Note: *During AC charging, if a power cut occurs, the charging process stops. Once power is restored, the AC charging process resumes automatically.*

Note: *If a power cut occurs during DC charging, the charging process must be manually resumed.*

Note: *A power cut may affect the vehicle's ability to fully charge before embarking on a journey.*

Note: *The vehicle is unable to start with the charging cable connected. See* ***165, STARTING THE ENGINE****.*

CHARGING PORT INDICATORS

Make sure all relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before charging the vehicle. See 149, VEHICLE CHARGING SAFETY.



A label adjacent to the charging port provides a quick reference to the behaviour of the charging indicator LED in relation to charging status. See **72, INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

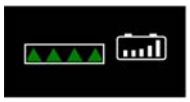
A charging status light next to the charging port illuminates to aid connecting the cable in dark conditions and to show the current charging status. The instrument panel also shows the charging status. Both are illuminated as follows:



A white flashing light indicates that a cable has been detected and the vehicle is attempting to start charging with an initialisation process. If the flashing wihte light is shown for longer than 10 seconds, check connections at both ends of the cable and check for any incomplete steps at the charge post. The instrument panel flashes a white cable symbol.



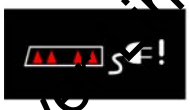
A blue pulsing light indicates that the initialisation process has been completed and timed charging has been set. The vehicle is not currently charging but will charge prior to the set departure time. The instrument panel flashes the clock symbol shown above. See **158, PRECONDITIONING SETTINGS**.



A green pulsing light indicates that the initialisation process has been completed and the vehicle is charging. The instrument panel flashes a green cable symbol.



A continuous green light indicates that the vehicle charging is completed. The instrument panel displays a green cable symbol.



A flashing red light indicates a charging fault with the vehicle. The instrument panel displays a red charging symbol. If the charging fault persists, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.

Charging status can also be viewed via the **MY EV** touchscreen menu. See **245, APPS SCREEN**.

UNLOCKING THE CHARGING PORT

To unlock the charging port when the vehicle is locked:

1. When DC charging, press the unlock button on the smart key twice. If 2-stage unlocking is active, press the unlock button 3 times to unlock the charging port. See **11, 2-STAGE UNLOCKING** .

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *When AC charging, unlock the vehicle as normal, either using the smart key or keyless entry. See* ***9, SMART KEY OPERATION*** *and* ***12, KEYLESS ENTRY****.*

2. Wait for the charging port lock to release. The charge port is unlocked when the status light displays continuous white or continuous green.
3. Remove the charging cable within 60 seconds.

   Note: *If the cable is not released within 60 seconds, the charging port relocks.*

   Note: *If the smart key's unlock button is pressed once during DC charging, the vehicle unlocks without disrupting the charging process or unlocking the charging port.*

Refer to the charging cable's emergency release procedure if the charging port does not release. See **155, CHARGING CABLE EMERGENCY RELEASE**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

CHARGING CABLE INDICATORS

Make sure all relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before charging the vehicle. See 149, VEHICLE CHARGING SAFETY.

The home charging cable contains four indicators to inform the user of its status.

Power	Charging	Temperature	Fault	Description
Off.	Off.	Off.	Off.	No electrical supply detected.
On.	Off.	Off.	Off.	Ready for operation.
On.	Flashing.	Off.	Off.	Charging in progress.
On.	On.	On.	On.	Self-test procedure in progress.
On.	Flashing.	On.	Off.	Slow charging due to increased temperature.
On.	Off.	On.	Off.	Charging inhibited due to temperature out of range. Protect cable and wallplug from excessive temperature and direct sunlight.
On.	Off.	Flashing.	Off.	Charging procedure interrupted. Check all connections.
Off.	Off.	Off.	Flashing.	Charging fault.
Off.	Off.	Off.	On.	The power supply to the vehicle has failed.

PREFERRED CHARGING PERIOD

The preferred charging period feature allows a time window to be set in order to charge the vehicle. The time window, also known as the preferred charging period, allows a cheaper electricity tariff to be used for the charging process, if required.

If a departure time is also set, the preferred charging period feature makes sure the vehicle has an optimum level of charge prior to departure. To achieve the optimum level of charge prior to departure, the feature may also charge the vehicle outside of the preferred charging period.

Note: *If neither a preferred charging period nor a departure time is set, the vehicle will commence charging as soon as a charging cable is connected.*

To set a departure time:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

1. Touch the **apps** icon on the touchscreen driver side bar.
2. Select **VEHICLE DEPARTURES**.
3. Touch the calendar display.
4. Select **Preferred Charging Period**.
5. Select a day from the options displayed on the touchscreen.
6. Set a time using the up and down arrows.
7. Select **Repeat every** or **Once only**.
8. Select **Timed Climate** if a preconditioned cabin environment is required.
9. Select **OK**.

To set a preferred charging period:

1. Touch the **settings** icon on the touchscreen.
2. Select **Preferred Charging Period**.
3. Touch the time entry box.
4. Set a **Start** and **End** time using the up and down arrows.
5. Touch the **back** icon.

DISCONNECTING A CHARGING CABLE

Make sure all relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before charging the vehicle. See 149, VEHICLE CHARGING SAFETY.

To disconnect a charging cable:

1. Make sure that the charging cable is unlocked from the charging port. See **152, UNLOCKING THE CHARGING PORT**.
2. If the charging cable is fitted with a release button, press the release button, and disconnect the charging cable from the vehicle.

   Note: *Always disconnect the charging cable from the vehicle first.*
3. If DC charging, replace the DC charging port cap.
4. Fully close the charging flap.
5. If AC charging, remove the connector from the electricity supply.

CHARGING CABLE EMERGENCY RELEASE

Make sure all relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before charging the vehicle. See 149, VEHICLE CHARGING SAFETY.

If the charging cable does not release, carry out the following:

1. Open the taildoor.
2. Locate the lower left-hand trim panel near the taildoor latch.
3. Pull the trim panel section to one side to access the emergency release ring.
4. Pull the emergency release ring to allow the charging cable to be removed from the charge port.

If the charging cable cannot be removed following operation of the emergency release, consult a retailer/authorised repairer. Do not apply force or attempt to remove any components.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Vehicle preconditioning

VEHICLE PRECONDITIONING SAFETY

Make sure to have read and fully understood the following warnings before using vehicle preconditioning or any of its features. Failure to observe warnings and cautions may result in vehicle damage, injury, or death in the event of an accident.

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents.

Note: *Before attempting to perform any repairs on a vehicle, consult a retailer/ authorised repairer.*

VEHICLE PRECONDITIONING OVERVIEW

Make sure all relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 156, VEHICLE PRECONDITIONING SAFETY .

The timed climate preconditioning system, when in operation, provides a comfortable temperature inside the cabin in advance of using the vehicle. It also assists vehicle start in low temperatures. When leaving the vehicle for a short period of time, using the **Precondition now** option can also maintain temperature.

Timed departure preconditioning can be controlled via the touchscreen controls. Additionally, it can be operated via a remote climate app. See **156, DEPARTURE TIMES**.

The manual preconditioning can be controlled via the lower touchscreen controls. Additionally, it can be operated via a remote climate app or by using the timed climate remote. See **158, PRECONDITIONING SETTINGS** or **282, USING THE TIMED CLIMATE REMOTE**.

The timed climate system may not operate, or switches off automatically, in the following scenarios:

- If the fuel level is low.
- If the vehicle's high voltage battery charge is low.
- If the coolant temperature is subjected to extreme cold climate conditions. In extreme cold climate conditions, if an engine pre-heater is fitted, it overrides a vehicle preconditioning program.
- If the system has been in operation for 30 minutes.
- If a timed event has been activated within the previous 30 minutes.

DEPARTURE TIMES

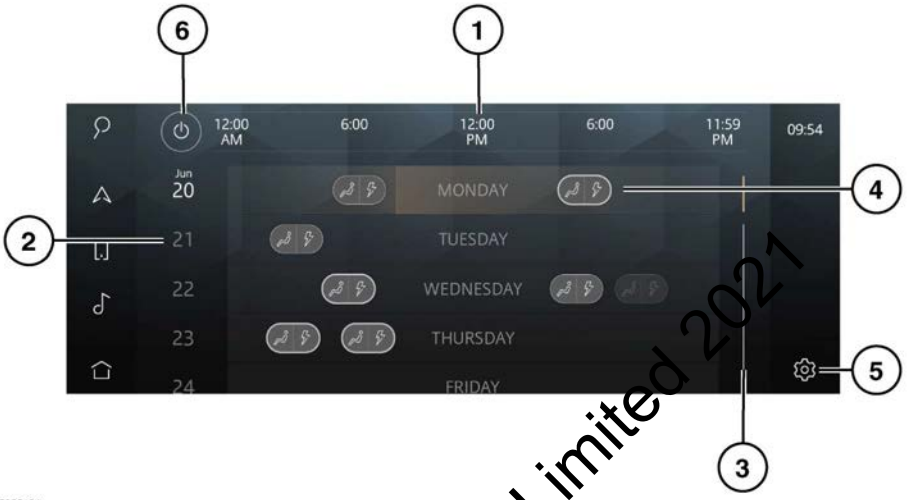
Make sure all relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 156, VEHICLE PRECONDITIONING SAFETY .

The touchscreen can be used to either preset activation times or to operate the system manually.

When the system is operating, the **Maximum defrost** icon's LED flashes. The choice of operation is automatically determined by the system, depending on the external temperature.

Note: *The system ceases operation if the engine is started.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



E255404

To access the **VEHICLE DEPARTURES** screen, select **Vehicle Departures** from the **APPS** page. See **245, APPS SCREEN**.

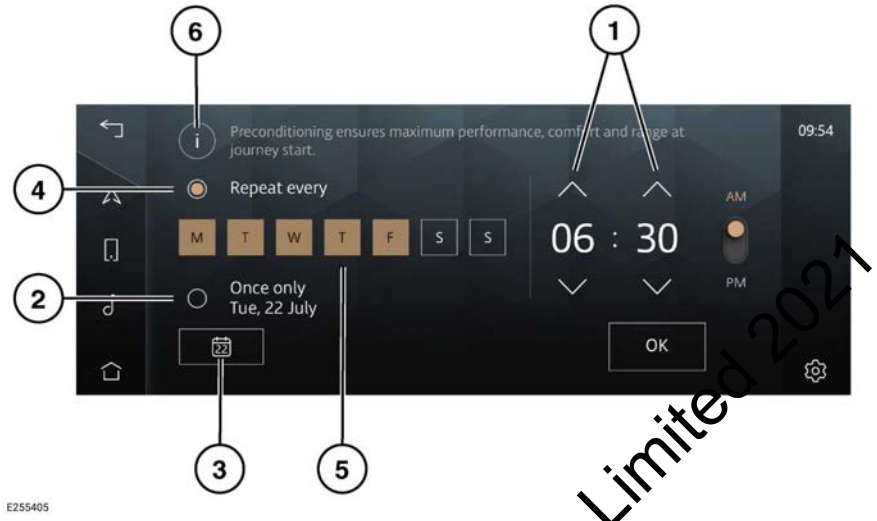
The vehicle departures screen consists of the following:

1. Time.
2. Date.
3. Current time.
4. Departure times. Touch to select a departure time and day within the calendar panel.
5. **Settings** icon: Touch to select the preconditioning departure settings. See **158, PRECONDITIONING SETTINGS**.
6. **Power** icon: Touch to switch on or off.

Note: *When the power is switched off, the settings are maintained and will be available again when the power is switched back on.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Vehicle preconditioning



To access the preconditioning **NEW DEPARTURE** screen, select a day and time in the **VEHICLE DEPARTURES** screen. Select the **Timed Climate** soft key.

To set a single or repeated departure time:

1. Time: Up or down. The AM/PM toggle is shown to the right of the time selection counter.
2. Once only: To select a date for a single event.
3. Calendar icon: To access the calendar view.
4. Repeat every: To repeat in a series.
5. Weekday(s): To select the preferred day(s). A filled-in square indicates the day is selected.
6. Information icon: For an overview of vehicle preconditioning.

Note: *The time format, 12 or 24 hour clock, is determined by the time settings currently selected in the touchscreen's system settings. See* ***247, SYSTEM SETTINGS****.*

PRECONDITIONING SETTINGS

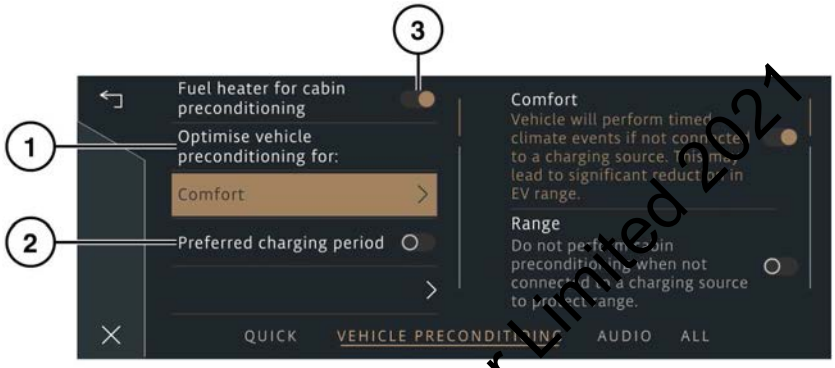
Make sure all relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 156, VEHICLE PRECONDITIONING SAFETY .

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Departure settings

To access the **DEPARTURE SETTINGS** screen, select the **settings** icon. Select **Departure Settings** from the **SETTINGS** menu. See **156, DEPARTURE TIMES**.

The **DEPARTURE SETTINGS** screen allows the customisation of the departure settings.



E259459

Timed climate preconditioning settings may be adjusted as follows:

1. **Optimise vehicle departures for**: Select between cabin **Comfort** or vehicle **Range** as a preconditioning preference.
   - **Comfort**: Select to perform timed climate preconditioning events, even if the vehicle is not connected to a high voltage battery charging source. The high voltage battery range is reduced when this option is selected.
   - **Range**: Select to save battery charge. Timed climate preconditioning events are not performed if the vehicle is not connected to a high voltage battery charging source.
2. **Preferred charging period**: Select to set the charge time to benefit from off-peak tariffs when charging. Once selected, touch the up and down arrow keys to manually adjust the time further. For further information on vehicle charging, see the My Electric Vehicle (My EV) topic. See **164, MY ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV)**.
3. **Delete all departures**: Select to delete all saved departures.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Hybrid system

HYBRID SAFETY

WARNINGS FOR ELECTRIC AND HYBRID VEHICLES
In the event of a fault, damage, or fire affecting an electric or hybrid vehicle:
1. Always remember that the high voltage battery, subsystems, and components are energised and fully charged.
2. The high voltage battery, cables, and exposed electrical component pose a potential risk of electric shock.
3. The fumes from the ventilated and/or released high voltage battery are potentially toxic and inflammable.
4. Physical damage to the vehicle or to the high voltage battery may result in the immediate or delayed release of toxic and/or inflammable gases and in fire.

Never disassemble, remove, or replace high voltage components, cables, or connectors. Tampering with the high voltage system can cause severe burns or electric shock, which may potentially result in serious injury or death.

The hybrid system has no serviceable parts. The high voltage cables and connectors are coloured orange for identification purposes. If maintenance or repair is required, always consult a retailer/ authorised repairer. Failure to do so, may affect the vehicle's warranty.

The hybrid system is insulated and protected with covers and shields. The result is that:

- The system is insulated from the vehicle.
- The system is protected from the environment.
- Access is prevented by unqualified personnel.

The vehicle monitors the integrity of the hybrid system. If a hybrid system fault is detected, the instrument panel displays a relevant warning message and may also illuminate a warning lamp. See **153, HYBRID SYSTEM WARNING MESSAGES**.

HYBRID SYSTEM OVERVIEW

The hybrid system uses an internal combustion engine and an electric motor to drive the vehicle. Operation of the electric motor and the engine is controlled to improve the vehicle's performance and fuel economy. The hybrid system is capable of sustained driving using only the electric motor, without producing any exhaust emissions.

The hybrid system automatically determines when it is appropriate to operate the electric motor and the engine based on driver demand and driving conditions.

The electric motor is powered via the hybrid battery. The instrument panel displays the current charge level of the hybrid battery and the remaining driving range.

Note: *The electric motor does not operate if there is insufficient charge in the hybrid battery.*

The hybrid battery is charged in the following events:

- Using the vehicle's charging cable to connect to an external charging station. **150, CONNECTING A CHARGING CABLE**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- Regenerative braking: Occurs during light to moderate braking and when the vehicle is decelerating with the engine off. In these events, the electric motor recovers energy and recharges the hybrid battery. Under heavy braking the vehicle's braking system is also used to slow the vehicle. The instrument panel's power gauge displays the regenerated energy.

The energy save function stores energy in the hybrid battery for use at a later time. See **162, SAVE**.

ACOUSTIC VEHICLE ALERT SYSTEM (AVAS)

The Acoustic Vehicle Alert System (AVAS) automatically emits an external synthesized sound to enable pedestrians to be audibly aware of the vehicle's presence. AVAS operates when only the electric motor is driving the vehicle at speeds less than 20 km/h (12 mph). See **160, HYBRID SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV) MODE

Note: *The Electric Vehicle (EV) mode does not enable if the ambient temperature is too cold.*

The EV mode uses the electric motor. The engine restarts if it is required to support high driving demands.

Deactivating the auto stop/start system also deactivates the EV mode. See **170, DEACTIVATING AUTO STOP/START**.

Make sure to deactivate the auto stop/start system if the vehicle is to be driven through water, i.e., wading. In this event, the engine should be used at all times. Failure to do so can result in damage to the vehicle.

EV modes

Press the **EV** button on the centre console to cycle through the EV modes.

The EV modes available are:

- **HYBRID**: Operation of the electric motor and the engine is automatically determined by the vehicle, depending on the driving conditions and driver demand. The predictive energy optimisation feature automatically operates if a navigation route is set. See **164, PREDICTIVE ENERGY OPTIMISATION**.
- **EV**: Electric vehicle mode.
- **SAVE**. See **162, SAVE**.

When the EV mode is selected, confirmation is displayed in the instrument panel. See **73, HYBRID VEHICLE INFORMATION**.

Operation of the engine suspends operation of the EV mode. In this event, the **EV** message illuminates grey in the instrument panel to confirm the status change.

The following conditions may prevent the EV mode being enabled, or may prompt an engine restart if the EV mode is already active:

- Selecting Sport (**S**). See **172, AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION**.
- A steering wheel paddle shift is used to select a gear. See **172, AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- The auto stop/start system is deselected. See **170, DEACTIVATING AUTO STOP/START**.
- The vehicle's battery charge levels are too low.
- The vehicle's batteries are not at the required operating temperature.
- The vehicle's current power demand exceeds the electrical power capability, displayed in the instrument panel's power gauge. See **73, HYBRID VEHICLE INFORMATION**.
- High demand from the heating and ventilation systems.
- The bonnet is opened.
- The ambient temperature is less than -4°C.

In all of the previously listed events, the instrument panel displays a relevant message. Also, the instrument panel does not illuminate the **EV** message.

SAVE

Selecting the energy save mode holds the current charge level in the hybrid battery. Minor variations in charge level may occur. The driver determines when to use the saved battery charge level by deselecting the energy save mode, e.g., driving in urban areas. See **170, ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV) MODE**.

Manually selecting the Electric Vehicle (EV) hybrid mode, exits the energy save mode. If required, the energy save mode has to be selected again.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

HYBRID SYSTEM WARNING MESSAGES

If the instrument panel displays a hybrid system related critical warning message, the critical message warning lamp illuminates. An audible tone also sounds. See **83, CRITICAL WARNING MESSAGE (RED)**.

The critical warning messages are as follows:

Critical warning message	Action
Electric Drive Only. Performance And Range Reduced	The vehicle can only be powered by the electric motor and has a limited range. Stop the vehicle when it is safe to do so. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer.
Stop Safely. Electrical Fault Detected	The vehicle has a limited range, stop the vehicle at the nearest safe location. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer.
OK to Drive with Caution Hybrid System Fault Detected	The vehicle can still be driven. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.
Charge Hybrid Battery. Hybrid Battery Too Cold[1]	Find a safe location, warmer conditions or a charging source before stopping.

[1] Extremely cold climate conditions can affect the hybrid battery and limits the ability of the car to restart.

If the instrument panel displays a hybrid system related general warning message, observe the required action in the following table:

General warning message	Action
OK to Drive with Caution Hybrid System Fault Detected	The vehicle can still be driven. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer if the warning is still present at the end of the journey.
Hybrid Battery Fault	The vehicle can still be driven, but the hybrid system's functionality may be reduced. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

MY ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV)

The My Electric Vehicle (**My EV**) extra feature displays information for operation of the hybrid system.

Select **My EV** from the touchscreen's **APPS** menu. See **245, APPS SCREEN**.

The **My EV** menu screen displays the following information:

- The hybrid system energy flow is dynamically represented via a vehicle image. Operation of the hybrid system is graphically displayed during driving. The active components and the energy flow between them are highlighted.
- The current total driving range for the vehicle.
- The current driving range for the electric motor.

Swipe the **My EV** menu screen to access the **CHARGING** screen, to display information for the current charging status of the hybrid battery.

Select the **Preferred Charging Period** soft key to view and change a current timed charging event. See **154, PREFERRED CHARGING PERIOD**.

Select the **Charge now** soft key to override a timed charging event.

PREDICTIVE ENERGY OPTIMISATION

The predictive energy optimisation feature uses the current route information from the vehicle's navigation system to enhance the hybrid system operation. Use of the stored hybrid battery charge is balanced across the route, to help improve the potential fuel economy. For example, electric motor use is maximised during the low speed sections of the route.

Automatic operation of the predictive energy optimisation feature occurs when:

- The route for the current journey is entered into the vehicle's navigation system. See **318, SETTING A DESTINATION**.
- Either the ECO or the comfort driving program is enabled. See **192, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.

  Note: *The predictive energy optimisation feature also operates if the **AUTO** driving program is enabled and the vehicle detects on-road driving.*

The **My EV** menu screen displays a green light ahead of the vehicle image when the predictive energy optimisation feature is available. See **164, MY ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV)**.

The predictive energy optimisation feature is suspended in the following events:

- Insufficient hybrid battery charge.
- The transmission is engaged in Sport (**S**).
- Gear changes via the steering wheel gearshift paddles.
- The vehicle detects off-road driving.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

STARTING SAFETY

Never start the engine and leave it running when the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Exhaust gases are poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and death if inhaled.

Do not sleep or rest with the vehicle switched on or left in a driveable condition. Unintentional operation can cause serious injury or death.

If the engine fails to start, do not continue cranking, as this discharges the battery. The catalytic converter may also be damaged due to unburnt fuel passing through the exhaust.

Note: *The smart key may not be detected if placed within a metal container, or shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example, a smartphone, laptop, including when inside a laptop bag, or a games console. Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting keyless entry, an engine start, or the engine start backup procedure.*

STARTING THE ENGINE

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before starting the vehicle. See 165, STARTING SAFETY.

To start the engine:

1. Make sure a valid smart key is inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure Park (**P**) is selected.
3. Press the brake pedal firmly.
4. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

Once the engine starts, release the brake pedal, if it is safe to do so.

Note: *Petrol engines only: When starting the engine, the idle speed may rise. The rise in idle speed helps the engine reach its optimum operating temperature quickly, improving fuel efficiency.*

Note: *Diesel engines only: The delay period before cranking begins is longer in low ambient temperatures. The extended delay period is due to extended glow plug operation. During this extended delay period, the brake pedal must remain firmly pressed.*

Note: *Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicles (PHEVs) only: In extreme cold climate conditions, below -30°C, the engine must be run at idle speed for at least 5 minutes before selecting Drive (**D**). Selection of **D** may be inhibited during this period.*

Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that safe driver exit conditions are met. See **171, DRIVER EXIT**.

Note: *It is not possible to start a Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) if it is plugged into a charging point and charging. The vehicle is also locked in P while charging. The instrument panel displays the message to inform the driver that starting has been inhibited. See **155, DISCONNECTING A CHARGING CABLE**.*

Failure to leave the vehicle in a safe condition may cause an accident, leading to injury or death.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *For vehicles with a diesel engine, a different starting procedure may be required if the vehicle has ran out of fuel. See* ***361, RUNNING OUT OF FUEL****.*

SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

Before switching off the engine, it is recommended that the vehicle is stationary. Make sure the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied and the transmission is in Park (**P**).

Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button. The engine now stops. The vehicle's ignition system also switches off.

To switch off the engine while the vehicle is moving:

⚠ **When the vehicle is moving it is not advisable to switch off the engine. Driving with due care and attention remains the driver's responsibility. Always drive in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.**

If a situation arises where engine switch-off is urgent, the following procedure applies:

1. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button for longer than 2 seconds; or
2. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button twice within 3 seconds.

With either method, the instrument panel displays the message **Engine Stop button pressed**.

SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION

To switch on the vehicle's ignition system without starting the engine:

1. Make sure that a valid smart key is inside the vehicle and that the brake pedal is not pressed.

   Note: *If the brake pedal is pressed when the engine* ***START/STOP*** *button is pressed, the engine starts.*
2. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button until the instrument panel warning lamps illuminate.
3. Release the engine **START/STOP** button.

ROLLING RESTART

If the engine is switched off while the vehicle is moving, a rolling restart can be initiated. Select Neutral (**N**) and press the engine **START/STOP** button.

Note: *The engine* ***START/STOP*** *button is inhibited for 2 seconds after the engine has been switched off.*

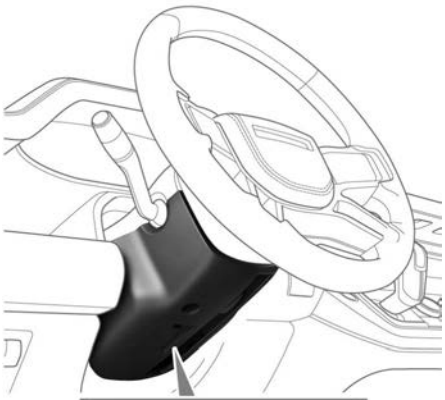
ENGINE START BACKUP

The engine start backup feature is required to disarm the alarm and start the engine if either of the following occur:

- The vehicle is unlocked using the emergency key blade.
- The smart key is not detected by the vehicle.

The engine start backup feature can only be used when the instrument panel displays **Place Smart Key as shown, and press start button**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



E246822

To carry out the engine start backup procedure:

1. Position the smart key flat against the side of the steering column.

   Note: *There are markings on the steering column to help locate the correct position.*

2. While holding the smart key in position, firmly press the brake pedal.
3. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button.

Once the engine starts, release the brake pedal, if it is safe to do so.

If the smart key is not recognised, or the engine fails to start, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

IF THE ENGINE FAILS TO START

All vehicles

Seek qualified assistance if the vehicle has been in a recent collision and the engine fails to start when the **START/STOP** button is pressed. Damage to the vehicle may have occurred.

If the engine fails to start, and a valid smart key is inside the vehicle, a check must be made to determine the cause. To do this:

1. Switch on the vehicle's ignition. See **166, SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION**.
2. Check the instrument panel for any illuminated warning lamps and messages. Seek qualified assistance, if necessary. See **82, WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS** and **76, WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES**.
3. Switch off the vehicle's ignition.

Alternatively, if the engine fails to start, the alarm system may need to be reset. To reset the alarm system, lock and unlock the vehicle. See **11, 2-STAGE UNLOCKING** .

If the engine still fails to start, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

Petrol vehicles only

If the engine persistently fails to start, carry out the following steps:

1. Make sure that a valid smart key is inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure that Park (**P**) or Neutral (**N**) is selected.
3. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button until the warning lamps in the instrument panel illuminate.
4. Firmly press the brake pedal.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

5. Slowly press the accelerator pedal, and hold it in the fully pressed position.
6. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button. The engine begins to crank.
7. Release the accelerator pedal when the engine starts.

Once the engine starts, release the brake pedal, if it is safe to do so.

If the engine still fails to start, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

ENGINE PRE-HEATER

The fitting of an engine pre-heater does not eliminate the need for antifreeze. Damage may be caused to the engine if the correct mixture of antifreeze is not present.

Engines are more difficult to start when the ambient temperature is very low. In geographical areas where temperatures below -10°C are experienced frequently it is advisable to fit an engine pre-heater. The pre-heater has an insulated connector at the front of the vehicle, which is connected to a mains supply using a suitable extension cable. The pre-heater can remain in use overnight, if required. Typically, an engine pre-heater uses between 0.4 and 1.2kW.

For further information, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

AUTO STOP/START

Always disable the auto stop/start system before wading. Failure to do so could cause damage to the vehicle.

The auto stop/start system is designed to improve fuel efficiency. The system automatically activates when the vehicle's ignition is switched on. Unless it is required to support other vehicle systems, the engine switches off when the vehicle is stationary, e.g., at traffic lights. When the engine stops, it is referred to as an auto stop.

When **On demand hold** is not active and the brake pedal is released, or a drive gear is selected, the engine automatically restarts. When the engine restarts, it is referred to as an auto start. See **182, ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS)**.

Operation of the auto stop/start system is indicated by a status icon in the instrument panel. See **87, AUTO STOP/START (GREEN)**.

Note: *When activated, the auto stop/start system does not always stop the engine when the vehicle is stationary. The system may also restart the engine before setting off.*

Under certain conditions, the auto stop/start system also switches off the engine while the vehicle is moving. See **170, AUTO STOP ON THE MOVE**.

TRIGGERING AN AUTO STOP

To trigger an auto stop, drive forward with Drive (**D**) or Sport (**S**) selected, and stop the vehicle. Fully press the brake pedal to make sure the vehicle is stationary.

The following conditions inhibit an auto stop:

- The external temperature is less than approximately -4°C.
- The external temperature is more than approximately 40°C.
- The engine or other vehicle systems have not reached their optimum operating temperatures.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
- Demand from the climate control system requires the engine to be running, e.g., when in defrost mode.
- The vehicle's battery charge is low.
- The auto stop/start system is deactivated.
- After reversing, the vehicle's speed has not exceeded 16 km/h (10 mph).

The instrument panel displays an information lamp when the vehicle is stationary and the auto stop/start system is active, but operation is inhibited. See **90, AUTO STOP/START INHIBIT (WHITE)**.

TRIGGERING AN AUTO START

To trigger an auto start, release the brake pedal with Drive (**D**) or Sport (**S**) selected.

The engine also restarts if one of the following occurs:

- The auto stop/start system is deactivated.
- Reverse (**R**) is selected.
- Demand from the climate control system increases.
- The vehicle begins to move.
- The vehicle's battery charge becomes low.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

DEACTIVATING AUTO STOP/START

Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicles (PHEV) only

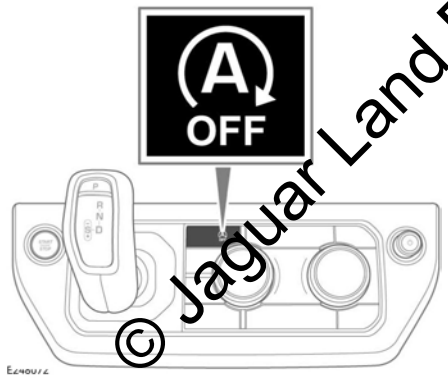
To deactivate the auto stop start:

1. Select the **QUICK** settings menu. See **247, TOUCHSCREEN DISPLAY SETTINGS**.
2. Touch the **Auto Stop/Start** icon to toggle on and off

The instrument panel displays the message **Auto Stop/Start not available** if the icon is touched while the system is unable to operate.

Note: *The auto stop/start system automatically reactivates the next time the vehicle's ignition is switched on.*

Non-hybrid vehicles and Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicles (MHEVs) only



Press the auto stop/start button to deactivate the auto stop/start system.

Note: *The auto stop/start system is automatically deactivated if low range, All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC), or Hill Descent Control (HDC) is selected. The system is also deactivated if certain terrain response special programs are selected by the driver, or selected by the **AUTO** driving program.*

When the auto stop/start system is deactivated, a status icon is displayed. See **90, AUTO STOP/START OFF (WHITE)**.

The instrument panel displays the message **Auto Stop/Start not available** if the icon is selected while the system is unable to operate.

Note: *The auto stop/start system automatically reactivates the next time the vehicle's ignition is switched on.*

AUTO STOP ON THE MOVE

Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicles (MHEVs) are equipped with an auto stop on the move feature. The auto stop on the move feature switches off the engine while the vehicle is moving if:

- The vehicle is travelling at less than approximately 2 km/h (1 mph), and:
- The brake pedal is pressed.

When the brake pedal is released, the engine automatically restarts.

Operation of the auto stop on the move feature is indicated by a status icon in the instrument panel. See **87, AUTO STOP/START (GREEN)**.

The auto stop on the move feature is deactivated if auto stop/start is deactivated. See **170, DEACTIVATING AUTO STOP/START**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

DRIVER EXIT

During an auto stop, the driver exit feature prevents the vehicle from being inadvertently left in a driveable condition. If the feature detects that the driver is not present, it automatically switches off the vehicle's ignition system. Once the vehicle's ignition is switched off, the vehicle can be locked, if required. See **19, SINGLE LOCKING**.

If the vehicle is left in a driveable condition with the engine running, the driver exit feature does not prevent the vehicle from moving. Failure to make sure the vehicle is left in a safe condition could lead to serious injury or death.

Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicles (PHEVs) only

If Park (**P**) is selected, the driver exit feature switches the vehicle's ignition off when all the following conditions exist:

- The vehicle is operating in Electric Drive Mode.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
- All foot pedals are released.
- The driver's door is opened.

Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicles (MHEVs) only

If Park (**P**) is selected, the driver exit feature switches the vehicle's ignition off when all the following conditions exist:

- The vehicle is in an auto stop.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
- All foot pedals are released.
- The driver's door is opened.

Non-hybrid vehicles

If Park (**P**) is selected, the driver exit feature switches the vehicle's ignition off when all the following conditions exist:

- The vehicle is in an auto stop.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that the vehicle is stationary. Select Park (P). Apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB). Switch the engine off. The vehicle can move unexpectedly with any other gear position selected, which may result in death or serious injury.

Do not allow the vehicle to remain stationary for a prolonged period, with a drive gear selected and the engine running. In this event, always select P or Neutral (N) and apply the EPB. The vehicle may move unexpectedly with any other gear position selected which may result in serious injury in death.

Never select **P** while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

Never select Reverse (**R**) while the vehicle is in forward motion. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

Never select a forward gear while the vehicle is moving backward. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

Do not press the accelerator pedal when making a gear selection. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

Note: *In certain markets it is required to have an audible warning while reversing. Therefore, depending on the market specification, an audible warning may sound when the vehicle is reversing.*



The instrument panel displays the current gear selection status. The appropriate indicator lamp, on top of the gear selector, illuminates to confirm selection.

Note: *When the gear selector is released after normal operation, it returns to the central position, except for when in the Sport (**S**) position.*

Note: *If transmission is engaged in **R**, **D** or **S** while the driver's door is opened and the brake pedal is pressed and released, then **P** is automatically selected.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

1. Press to select **P**. The **P** indicator lamp illuminates to confirm. Select **P** before switching the engine off.

   Note: *P can be selected from any gear selector position.*

   Note: *P cannot be selected by manually moving the gear selector.*

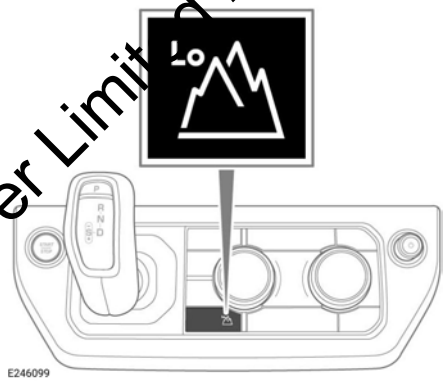
   Note: *If the engine is switched off with **N** selected, the system waits for 10 minutes before selecting **P**. The procedure allows for the vehicle to be conveyed through a car wash and should not be used for vehicle recovery purposes.*
2. When the vehicle is stationary, press the brake pedal before selecting **D**, **N**, or **R**.
3. With the brake pedal still applied, press the button to allow the gear selector to be moved:
   - Rearward to select **D**.
   - Forward a short way to select **N**.
   - Forward a long way to select **R**.

   Note: *The button must be pressed in order to make most gear selections. A button press is not required when selecting **N** from **D** or **R**. A button press is also not required when moving between **S** and **D**.*
4. While in **D**, move the gear selector one side movement to select **S**.

   Note: *Reverse this action to return to **D**.*
5. To select manual gear changes while in **S**, pull the gear selector backward for up-shifts and forward for down-shifts. The instrument panel displays the manual gear selection status.

   The relevant gear selector indicator shows the status of the manual gear selection:
   - Continuous illumination confirms the driver's gear change request has been recognised and selected.
   - On or off flashing confirms the driver's gear change request has been recognised but not selected.

SELECTING HIGH AND LOW RANGE



Do not change from high range to low range while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so can result in damage to the transmission.

The **Lo** button is used to alternate the engagement of the transfer box between low range and high range.

Note: *The **Lo** button only operates with the engine running.*

Note: *Low range should only be used in situations where low speed manoeuvring is necessary, including more extreme off-road conditions. High range should be selected for normal road driving.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Press the **Lo** button, located on the front control panel, to engage the transfer box into low range. The button's LED indicator flashes during the change and then remains illuminated to confirm selection. The instrument panel briefly displays the **Low range selected** message. The instrument panel also illuminates the low range warning lamp. See **89, LOW RANGE (GREEN)**.

Press the **Lo** button again to engage the transfer box into high range. The button's LED indicator lamp flashes during the change and then extinguishes to confirm selection. The instrument panel briefly displays the **High range selected** message. The low range warning lamp also extinguishes.

The vehicle should be stationary, with the engine running, during a transfer box range change selection.

Operate as follows:

1. Select Neutral (**N**).
2. Press the **Lo** button to engage the transfer box into high or low range, as required.

   Note: *If the **Lo** button is pressed when the vehicle's speed is too high, the instrument panel displays the maximum speed for the range change.*

   Note: *If the **Lo** button is pressed before (N) is selected, the instrument panel displays a warning message.*
3. Select Drive (**D**).

LIMP-HOME MODE

If a transmission system fault is detected, the instrument panel displays a warning message and only limited gears are available. If possible, the vehicle should be carefully driven to the nearest place of safety. In this event, seek qualified assistance.

Note: *The driver should be aware that the vehicle's performance is also reduced and must take this into account when driving.*

Some transmission faults may cause gear selector softlock. In this event, the gear selector can be moved but it does not allow a gear request to be made until the ignition is switched off and on again. A flashing gear status in the instrument panel indicates that the driver's gear request cannot be engaged. In this event, select Neutral (**N**) and then select the required gear change again.

If the transmission is still unable to engage the requested gear, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before adjusting the electronic air suspension. Failure to follow the guidance could result in vehicle damage, serious injury, or death.

Make sure the vehicle is clear of people and obstacles before adjusting the suspension height.

Make sure the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied, and the brake pedal released, if the suspension height is adjusted while the vehicle is stationary.

Take care when adjusting the suspension height if a trailer is attached to the vehicle.

ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION OVERVIEW

Make sure the relevant warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before adjusting the electronic air suspension. See 175, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION SAFETY.

The electronic air suspension system raises or lowers the height of the vehicle, based on a number of conditions and driver selections.

The electronic air suspension system comprises a number of features, including:

- Normal height. See **176, NORMAL HEIGHT**.
- Off-road height. See **176, OFF-ROAD HEIGHT**.
- Extended mode. See **177, EXTENDED MODE**.
- Access height. See **177, ACCESS HEIGHT**.
- Auto access height. See **178, AUTO ACCESS HEIGHT**.
- Locked access height. See **179, LOCKED ACCESS HEIGHT**.
- Rear height adjust. See **179, REAR HEIGHT ADJUST**.
- Adaptive dynamics. See **181, ADAPTIVE DYNAMICS**.

Instrument panel messages and indicator lamps on the front control panel inform the driver of system status. See **72, INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW** and **175, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.

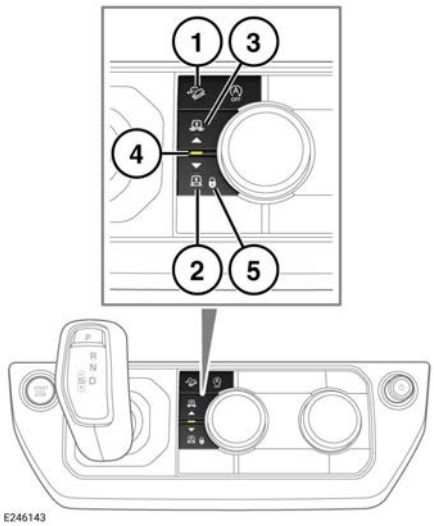
Note: *Under certain circumstances, the electronic air suspension system may not perform a height change. See **181, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION LIMITATIONS**.*

ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS

Make sure the relevant warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before adjusting the electronic air suspension. See 175, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION SAFETY.

The electronic air suspension controls are located on the front control panel.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



1. Off-road mode indicator lamp.
2. Down button.
3. Up button.
4. Normal height indicator lamp.
5. Locked access height indicator lamp.

The rear suspension height can also be adjusted using buttons located in the loadspace, or by using the smart key. See **179, REAR HEIGHT ADJUST** and **180, OPERATING REAR HEIGHT ADJUST WITH THE SMART KEY**.

Note: *The vehicle height may raise or lower automatically. For example, if the vehicle is travelling at high speed or a request is received from the terrain response system.*

NORMAL HEIGHT

Make sure the relevant warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before adjusting the electronic air suspension. See 175, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION SAFETY.

Normal height should be used when driving on-road.

Vehicle height changes to and from normal height can be made manually via the air suspension buttons in the front control panel. See **175, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.

If the vehicle is in access mode, press the up button (**3**) on the front control panel to return to normal height. If the vehicle is in off-road or extended mode, press the down button (**2**) to return to normal height.

OFF-ROAD HEIGHT

Make sure the relevant warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before adjusting the electronic air suspension. See 175, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION SAFETY.

Off-road height raises the vehicle to provide greater ground clearance when driving off-road.

To select off-road height:

1. Make sure the vehicle is in the normal height setting. See **176, NORMAL HEIGHT**.
2. Press the up button (**3**) on the front control panel. See **175, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The instrument panel displays a message to confirm off-road height has been selected.

Off-road height has two settings, as follows:

- The **Off-Road 1** setting raises the vehicle 40 mm above the normal height. **Off-Road 1** operates at speeds of up to 80 km/h (50 mph). The **Off-Road 1** setting can be selected at speeds of up to 70 km/h (44 mph).
- The **Off-Road 2** setting raises the vehicle 75 mm above the normal height. **Off-Road 2** operates at speeds of up to 50 km/h (31 mph). The **Off-Road 2** setting can be selected at speeds of up to 40 km/h (25 mph).

Note: *Hong Kong vehicles only: The* ***Off-Road 2*** *setting raises the vehicle 54 mm above the normal height.*

The suspension system automatically selects the most appropriate of the two settings, based on a number of conditions. The current off-road height setting can be viewed via the touchscreen as follows:

1. Touch the **Apps** icon on the touchscreen driver side bar. See **240, TOUCHSCREEN - HOME MENU**.
2. Select **VEHICLE DIMENSIONS**.
3. Select **OFF-ROAD**.

EXTENDED MODE

Make sure the relevant warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before adjusting the electronic air suspension. See 175, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION SAFETY.

Extended mode is an automatic suspension height setting that raises the vehicle to assist manoeuvring in the event that the vehicle is:

- Grounded in severe off-road conditions.
- Lowered onto an obstacle.
- Wading in deep water.
- Driving in narrow ruts.

The instrument panel displays a message and the off-road indicator lamp on the front control panel flashes to confirm the vehicle is in extended mode. See **175, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.

Note: *Extended mode cannot be selected manually.*

The vehicle can be raised higher when in extended mode, if required. To further raise the vehicle:

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Press and hold the up button (**3**) on the front control panel for longer than 3 seconds.

ACCESS HEIGHT

Make sure the relevant warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before adjusting the electronic air suspension. See 175, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION SAFETY.

The vehicle can be lowered to allow easier access. To lower the vehicle to access height:

1. Make sure the vehicle is in the normal height setting. See **176, NORMAL HEIGHT**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

2. Press the down button (**2**) on the front control panel. See **175, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.

The instrument panel displays a message to confirm the vehicle is moving to access height.

Access height can be requested while the vehicle is moving. The suspension does not lower until the vehicle's speed is reduced sufficiently. If the vehicle's speed isn't reduced sufficiently within 1 minute, the request is cancelled.

Access height can also be selected:

- Up to a minute after the vehicle's ignition is switched off.
- For a few seconds after the driver's door is opened.

The vehicle can be configured to enter access height automatically. See **178, AUTO ACCESS HEIGHT**.

The normal height setting is automatically resumed once the vehicle is driven. To manually select the normal height setting, press the up button (**3**) on the front control panel.

AUTO ACCESS HEIGHT

Make sure the relevant warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before adjusting the electronic air suspension. See 175, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION SAFETY.

The vehicle can be configured to enter access height automatically via the touchscreen. To enable the auto access feature:

1. Press the **settings** icon. See **240, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.
2. Select **ALL**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Convenience**.
5. Select **Vehicle access**.
6. Touch the **Auto access height** toggle.

The auto access feature lowers the vehicle by up to 20 mm when either:

- The vehicle's ignition is switched off.
- The vehicle is stationary and an occupied seat belt is unbuckled.

  Note: *The vehicle does not lower if the second row centre seat belt is unbuckled, but the second row outer seat belts remain buckled.*

The vehicle is lowered by a further 20 mm when a door is opened.

The vehicle returns to normal height if a door is not opened and the vehicle's speed reaches 40 km/h (25 mph).

Note: *The auto access feature operates more efficiently and smoothly with the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) applied and the brake pedal fully released.*

AUTO ACCESS HEIGHT LIMITATIONS

The auto access feature is only available once every time the vehicle is stationary.

The auto access feature is only available for 90 seconds after the vehicle is stationary.

The auto access feature only operates if:

- The vehicle is in the normal suspension height setting. See **176, NORMAL HEIGHT**.
- The transmission is in high range. See **173, SELECTING HIGH AND LOW RANGE**.
- One of the following terrain response driving programs is selected:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- **AUTO**.
- Comfort.
- Grass gravel snow.

See **192, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.

The auto access feature does not operate if the vehicle is parked on excessive slopes or on a very uneven surface.

LOCKED ACCESS HEIGHT

Make sure the relevant warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before adjusting the electronic air suspension. See 175, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION SAFETY.

Locked access height is useful when manoeuvring the vehicle in confined areas, e.g., multi-storey car parks.

To enter locked access mode:

1. Make sure the vehicle is travelling at less than 35 km/h (22 mph).
2. Make sure the vehicle is in the access height setting. See **177, ACCESS HEIGHT**.
3. Press and hold the down button (**2**) on the front control panel for longer than 1 second. See **175, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.

The indicator lamp (**5**) on the front control panel flashes to confirm the vehicle is locked in access height.

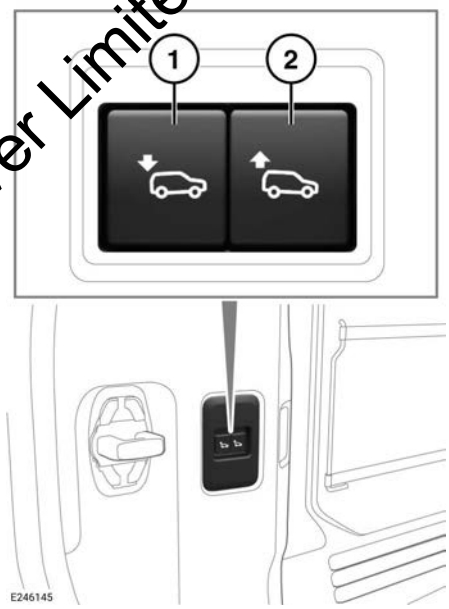
To exit locked access mode, either:

- Press the up button (**3**) on the front control panel for longer than 1 second.
- Raise the vehicle's speed to over 40 km/h (25 mph).

REAR HEIGHT ADJUST

Make sure the relevant warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before adjusting the electronic air suspension. See 175, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION SAFETY.

The height of the rear suspension can be adjusted manually via the buttons located on the left side of the loadspace. The rear height adjust feature is useful when loading or unloading the vehicle, or when connecting or disconnecting a trailer, etc.



To manually lower the rear suspension, first unlock the vehicle and open the taildoor. Then:

1. Press and hold to lower the rear of the vehicle.
2. Press and hold to raise the rear of the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Press and hold both buttons to return the vehicle to the normal height setting.

The rear height adjust feature operates for a short period of time with the vehicle's ignition switched off. Switch the vehicle's ignition on if the feature stops operating. See **166, SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION**.

The indicator lamps on the front control panel inform the user of the status of the rear suspension, as follows:

- Both the normal height (**4**) and off-road height indicator lamps (**1**) illuminate if the rear suspension is above normal height. See **175, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.
- Both the normal height (**4**) and access mode indicator lamps (**5**) illuminate if the rear suspension is below normal height.

The rear height adjust feature can also be operated via the smart key. See **180, OPERATING REAR HEIGHT ADJUST WITH THE SMART KEY**.

Note: *The amount of rear height adjustment is dependent on the current suspension height setting and whether any doors are open.*

Note: *The front of the vehicle may also lower in order to maintain the correct headlight alignment.*

Note: *There may be a slight delay between pressing a button and the suspension system responding to the request.*

OPERATING REAR HEIGHT ADJUST WITH THE SMART KEY

⚠ **Make sure the relevant warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before adjusting the electronic air suspension. See 175, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION SAFETY.**

The rear height adjust feature allows the rear of the vehicle to be manually raised and lowered. See **179, REAR HEIGHT ADJUST**.



E210928

To adjust the rear suspension height via the smart key:

1. Safely stop the vehicle.
2. Press the hazard warning lights button on the fascia. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.
3. Simultaneously press and hold the headlights button (**1**) and the taildoor button (**2**) to lower the vehicle.
4. Simultaneously press and hold the headlights button (**1**) and the unlock button (**3**) to raise the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

5. Simultaneously press and hold the headlights button (**1**) and the lock button (**4**) to return the vehicle to the normal height setting.

ADAPTIVE DYNAMICS

Adaptive dynamics continuously monitors the current road conditions and driving style, and automatically adjusts the suspension settings accordingly. Adaptive dynamics also detects rough road and off-road conditions, and adjusts the suspension settings for greater ride comfort.

The instrument panel displays a message, and may also illuminate the general or critical warning lamps, if adaptive dynamics develops a system fault. See **80, OVERVIEW**.

In the event of a system fault, some reduction in ride comfort may be experienced. If the fault persists, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION LIMITATIONS

The electronic air suspension system:

- Does not operate if there are insufficient air reserves in the system. Insufficient air reserves may occur due to frequent height adjustments within a short period of time. Run the engine without making further suspension height requests to replenish the air in the system.
- May not operate if the engine is not running.
- Operates without the engine running if:
  - The auto stop/start system switches off the engine.
  - A request to lower the suspension is made within one minute of the vehicle's ignition being switched off.
  - Vehicles fitted with the rear height adjust feature: A request is made to raise the rear suspension from the lowered to the normal height setting.
  - The rear height adjust feature is operating.
- Stops operating shortly after a door is opened. If the door is closed within 90 seconds, operation resumes if sufficient air reserves are available.
- Only lowers the vehicle when a door is open if sufficient air reserves are available to return it to its original height.
  - May not lower the vehicle to its lowest position while a door is open.

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any system or performance issues.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Brakes

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood. Failure to follow the guidance given could affect vehicle safety, leading to serious injury or death.

If the red brake warning lamp illuminates, safely bring the vehicle to a stop as quickly as possible. Seek qualified assistance.

If the amber brake warning lamp illuminates, drive with care, avoiding heavy brake pedal application. Seek qualified assistance.

Do not rest a foot on the brake pedal while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so can damage the braking system and reduce braking efficiency.

Never allow the vehicle to coast (freewheel) with the engine switched off. The engine must be running to provide full braking assistance. The brakes still function with the engine switched off, but far more brake pedal pressure is required to operate them.

Never place non-approved floor matting or any other obstructions under the brake pedal. The result can be restricted pedal travel and reduced braking efficiency.

Driving through heavy rain or water can have an adverse effect on braking efficiency. Under such circumstances, it is recommended to lightly apply the brakes intermittently, to dry the brakes.

Do not pump the brake pedal at any time. Doing so interrupts the operation of the braking system and may increase stopping distances.

Repeated or prolonged heavy braking can cause the brakes and the brake fluid to overheat, resulting in reduced braking efficiency and brake failure.

Do not drive if the instrument panel displays the Brakes Overheating message. Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits. Allow the brakes to cool. If necessary, seek qualified assistance before continuing. Driving with overheated brakes can cause increased braking distance or brake failure.

The red brake warning lamp and a continuous chime accompanies the **Brakes Overheating** message. The chime ceases when the vehicle is stationary. See **82, BRAKE (RED)** and **85, BRAKE (AMBER)**.

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS)

The Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) on this vehicle does not create a pulsing sensation under heavy braking, unlike previous systems.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

STEEP SLOPES

If the vehicle is stationary on a steep, slippery slope, it may begin to slide, even with the brakes applied. Without wheel rotation, the Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) cannot determine vehicle movement. To counteract this, briefly release the brake pedal, allowing wheel rotation. Re-apply the brake pedal to allow the ABS to gain control.

Note: *The vehicle needs to be in Neutral (**N**) or an appropriate gear to descend the slope. The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) must not be applied.*

EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (EBA)

If the brakes are rapidly applied, the Emergency Brake Assist (EBA) system automatically boosts the braking force to its maximum. The result is that the EBA system helps to bring the vehicle to a stop as quickly as possible.

The EBA system stops operating as soon as the brake pedal is released.

The amber brake warning lamp indicates an EBA system fault and the instrument panel displays a warning message. In this event, drive with care, avoiding heavy brake pedal application. Seek qualified assistance. See **85, BRAKE (AMBER)**.

Note: *In the event of heavy braking, the hazard warning lights automatically enable.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ELECTRONIC BRAKE-FORCE DISTRIBUTION (EBD)

The Electronic Brake-force Distribution (EBD) system controls the balance of braking forces supplied to the front and rear wheels. The result is that the EBD system helps to maintain maximum braking efficiency and stability.

If the vehicle has a light load, e.g., driver only and no luggage, the EBD system reduces the braking force applied to the rear wheels. If the vehicle is heavily laden, e.g., passengers and luggage, the EBD system increases the braking force to the rear wheels.

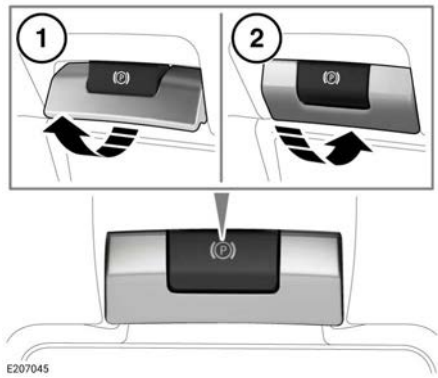
The red brake warning lamp indicates an EBD system fault and the instrument panel displays a warning message. In this event, safely and safely stop the vehicle. Seek qualified assistance. See **82, BRAKE (RED)**.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB)

Do not rely on the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to hold the vehicle stationary if the brake warning lamp is illuminated or the EPB warning lamp is flashing. Seek qualified assistance urgently. A faulty EPB system can lead to personal injury or death.

The EPB operates on the rear wheels, therefore, secure parking of the vehicle is dependent on being on a hard and stable surface. Operating the EPB on wet or loose surfaces may lead to damage to the vehicle or personal injury.

Do not rely on the EPB to operate effectively, if the rear wheels have been immersed in mud or water. Doing so may result in damage to the vehicle or personal injury.



The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) switch is located on the switch pack between the steering wheel and the driver's door. Operate as follows:

1. With the vehicle's electrical system switched on, press the brake pedal, and pull the EPB switch out to release the EPB.
2. Push the EPB switch in to apply the EPB. The EPB warning lamp illuminates to confirm. See **ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB) (RED)**.

   Note: *The red EPB warning lamp continues to illuminate for at least 10 seconds after the vehicle's electrical system has been switched off.*

The EPB automatically applies when Park (**P**) is selected.

Note: *To prevent automatic operation, when the vehicle is stationary, pull out the EPB switch to the release position before selecting **P**.*

The EPB applies automatically if the vehicle's electrical system is switched off and the vehicle's speed is below 3 km/h (2 mph).

Note: *To prevent automatic operation, when the vehicle is stationary, pull out and hold the EPB switch. Within 5 seconds, switch off the vehicle's electrical system and continue to hold the EPB switch for a further 2 seconds.*

If the EPB is operated when the vehicle's speed is less than 3 km/h (2 mph), the vehicle is brought to an abrupt stop. The stop lights do not illuminate.

Driving the vehicle with the EPB applied will cause serious damage to the braking system.

When stationary, with the EPB applied and the transmission engaged in a forward or reverse gear, press the accelerator pedal to gradually release the EPB. The vehicle can now be driven away smoothly.

When shifting from **P** with the EPB applied, the EPB automatically releases to allow a smooth drive away.

Note: *Automatic EPB release for pulling away from a standstill is only possible when the driver's door is closed or the driver's seat belt is buckled.*

To override the EPB automatic release, push the EPB switch in and hold.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

In an emergency, apply and hold the EPB switch to give a controlled reduction in the vehicle's speed. The vehicle can also be brought to a complete stop. The vehicle must be travelling at more than 3 km/h (2 mph), and the accelerator pedal must also be released. The EPB warning lamp flashes, a warning chime sounds, and the instrument panel displays a warning message. The stop lights illuminate. Release the EPB switch, or press the accelerator pedal, to release the EPB.

If an EPB fault is detected, the instrument panel displays a warning message. The amber brake warning lamp also illuminates. See **85, BRAKE (AMBER)**.

If a fault is detected during EPB operation, the instrument panel displays a warning message. The red EPB warning lamp also flashes. See **82, BRAKE (RED)**.

To protect against unintentional vehicle movement, the EPB is automatically applied when the driver is detected to be exiting the vehicle. The EPB is applied when Drive (**D**), Neutral (**N**), Reverse (**R**) or Sport (**S**) is selected and all the following conditions exist:

- The vehicle is stationary.
- The driver's door is opened.
- The brake pedal is released.

The EPB drive-away feature operates if:

- The EPB is applied.
- A forward or reverse gear is selected.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened or the driver's door is closed.*
- The accelerator pedal is pressed.

* If it is believed the driver has left the vehicle, only the driver's seat belt is monitored.

Note: *The vehicle may move briefly before the EPB is applied. On a steep gradient, the EPB does not apply if significant vehicle speed is reached as the brake pedal is released.*

Note: *If the EPB is released and the driver exit conditions are still met, the EPB will automatically re-apply after a short period of time.*

EMERGENCY STOP SIGNAL (ESS)

The Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) system automatically activates the hazard warning lights during emergency braking. Activation of the hazard warning lights warns other road users of a potential hazard and reduces the risk of a collision.

Note: *ESS applicability is dependent on the market.*

BRAKE HOLD

The brake hold functions act on all four wheels. Under the specified conditions, the brake hold functions apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) automatically on the rear wheels only. On steep or slippery slopes, especially when facing downhill, applying the EPB may cause the vehicle to skid. Re-apply the brake pedal to secure the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death.

To avoid damage to the vehicle it is recommended to disable all brake hold functions when using an automated car wash that propels the vehicle. Failure to do so could cause damage to the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The brake hold functions maintain the vehicle in a standstill position without the brake pedal having to be pressed continuously.



When a brake hold function is active, the instrument panel illuminates the brake hold lamp.

The brake hold functions operate in Reverse (**R**), Neutral (**N**), Drive (**D**) and Sport (**S**). Brake hold maintains hydraulic brake pressure in the braking system until the accelerator pedal is applied.

The engine may auto stop while on demand hold is active. When driving away, there is a slight delay after the accelerator is pressed, while the engine restarts.

The brake hold functions can be manually deactivated by pressing the brake pedal and pulling the EPB switch to the release position.

The brake hold functions apply the EPB and then deactivate if:

- The brake hold function has been active for more than 5 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled while a brake hold function is active.
- The driver's door is opened while a brake hold function is active.

The brake hold functions are unavailable if:

- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled or the driver's door is opened.
- If Park (**P**) is selected.
- The EPB is applied. See **183, ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB)**.
- Hill Descent Control (HDC) is active.
- All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) is active and the vehicle is being driven downhill.
- Adaptive cruise control queue assist is active.
- The vehicle's engine is switched off manually.

The brake hold functions do not operate if there is a fault with:

- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC).
- The braking system.
- The EPB system.

Auto hold

The auto hold function applies the brakes automatically to prevent the vehicle rolling back downhill. The auto hold function also holds the vehicle on uphill or downhill gradients whenever it is brought to a stop using the brake pedal.

The auto hold function is unavailable if the vehicle is engaged in **N** or **P**.

To disable and re-enable auto hold:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **QUICK** soft key.
3. Touch the **Autohold** soft key.
4. Touch the **exit** icon[2] to return to the previously displayed screen.

Note: *To disable the auto hold function while it is holding the vehicle on the brakes, press the brake pedal and touch the* ***Autohold*** *soft key.*

On demand hold

To activate on demand hold, the vehicle must be at a standstill and the driver must give the brake pedal a quick firm press. On demand can be activated in any gear except **P**.

On demand hold operates in **R**, **N**, **D** and **S** and maintains hydraulic brake pressure in the braking system until the accelerator pedal is applied.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *On demand hold is still available when auto hold has been disabled via the touchscreen.*



Settings icon.[1]



Exit icon.[2]

HILL START ASSIST

When pulling away uphill, hill start assist briefly holds the vehicle after the brake pedal is released, to allow time for the driver to press the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is pressed, hill start assist smoothly releases the brake pressure, allowing the vehicle to pull away without rolling backward.

Hill start assist is not available if there is a Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) fault. See **86, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before driving the vehicle. Failure to follow the guidance could result in vehicle damage, serious injury, or death.

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) does not compensate for driver error or misjudgement. The vehicle should be driven with due care and attention at all times. Always drive in a manner that is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users. Failure to do so can potentially result in a loss of control of the vehicle.

The vehicle may initially have reduced stability and braking performance in extremely low temperatures. In these conditions, drive with extra caution.

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OVERVIEW

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 188, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) SAFETY.

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) helps maintain the vehicle's stability in critical driving situations, e.g., during unstable driving conditions such as understeer and oversteer. If required, DSC controls the engine's power output and applies the brakes at individual wheels.

Note: *Noise from the braking system may be heard during DSC operation.*

DSC may also activate if wheel spin is detected, to help improve the vehicle's acceleration performance.

DSC automatically enables when the vehicle's ignition is switched on. To switch DSC off, press and briefly hold the DSC **OFF** button. See **188, SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF**.

DCS works in conjunction with the terrain response system. When operational, the terrain response system automatically adjusts DSC to suit the current driving program selection. See **192, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.

The amber DSC lamp flashes in the instrument panel when DSC is active. See **86, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)**.

The amber DSC lamp illuminates permanently if the system develops a fault. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer if the fault persists.

SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 188, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) SAFETY.

The vehicle's stability and safety may be reduced by inappropriately switching Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) off. Switching DSC off could result in a loss of control of the vehicle, potentially leading to serious injury or death.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



Press and briefly hold the DSC **OFF** button on the front control panel to switch DSC off.

A tone sounds and the DSC **OFF** amber warning lamp illuminates. See **86, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)**.

Note: *Switching DSC off reduces the level of traction and stability control intervention. An increase in wheel spin and a reduction in the vehicle's stability may be experienced.*

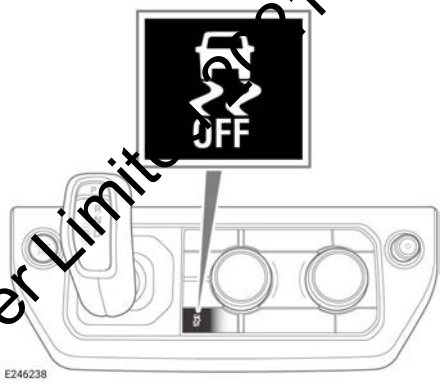
Note: *In the majority of driving situations, and particularly on-road, it is recommended that DSC is not switched off.*

Note: *DSC cannot be switched off if the comfort, **ECO** or **AUTO** terrain response driving programs are selected. See **191, TERRAIN RESPONSE OVERVIEW**.*

Note: *Make sure DSC is switched back on at the earliest opportunity. See **189, SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) ON**.*

SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) ON

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 188, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) SAFETY.



Press the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) **OFF** button on the front control panel to switch DSC on.

The DSC **OFF** warning lamp extinguishes to confirm DSC has been switched on. See **86, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)**.

Note: *DSC automatically enables when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.*

ACTIVE REAR LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 188, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) SAFETY.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The active rear locking differential improves traction on uneven surfaces.

Make sure the following guidance is followed, to avoid causing damage to the active rear locking differential.

During the vehicle's first 1 600 km (1 000 miles):

- Avoid fully pressing the accelerator pedal.
- Do not exceed a vehicle speed of more than 190 km/h (120 mph).

  Note: *Always observe the national speed limits for the country in which the vehicle is travelling.*
- Avoid prolonged periods of driving at speeds in excess of 160 km/h (100 mph).

ALL WHEEL DRIVE (AWD)

The All Wheel Drive (AWD) system enhances the vehicle's traction and stability on uneven and slippery roads and in adverse conditions.

The AWD system automatically varies the status between AWD and Rear Wheel Drive (RWD) to suit the current driving style and prevailing conditions. The status can viewed via the DIM feature. See **299, 4X4i OVERVIEW**.

The instrument panel displays a message if a fault is detected with the AWD system. Reduced vehicle performance may also be experienced. In this event, the vehicle can still be driven, but with extra care. If the fault persists, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer at the earliest opportunity.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TERRAIN RESPONSE OVERVIEW

Terrain response comprises a number of different driving programs that can be selected to suit the current terrain, driving conditions, or driving style.

Each driving program alters various vehicle settings, including suspension height, engine speed, and the amount of steering effort required.

The following driving programs are available:



See **192, COMFORT**.



See **192, GRASS GRAVEL SNOW**.



See **193, MUD RUTS**.



See **193, SAND**.



See **193, ECO**.



See **194, DYNAMIC**.



See **194, ROCK CRAWL**.



See **194, WADE**.



See **194, CONFIGURABLE TR**.



See **195, AUTO**.

Depending on the specification of the vehicle, either the comfort or **AUTO** driving program is automatically selected when the vehicle's ignition is switched on. An alternative driving program can be selected via the front control panel. See **192, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.

To view additional information on the selected driving program:

1. Touch the **apps** icon on the touchscreen driver side bar. See **240, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.
2. Select **4x4i**.
3. Select **TR INFO**.

Terrain response works in conjunction with the Hill Descent Control (HDC) and Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) systems to further enhance the vehicle's capabilities. See **195, DRIVER OVERRIDE OPTIONS**.

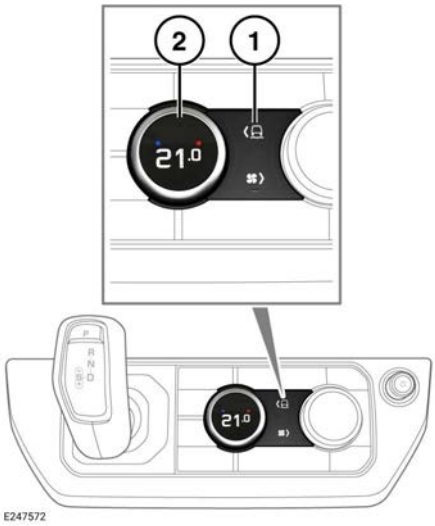
To view further information on off-road driving techniques, visit the website at **www.landrover.com**.

TERRAIN RESPONSE - PLUG-IN HYBRID VEHICLES (PHEVs) ONLY

Note: *It is recommended that the hybrid battery is in a high state of charge before selecting an off-road driving program, or driving off-road. This is particularly important when attempting to drive on sand. A high state of charge makes sure of a high level of off-road performance and that the vehicle remains in 4 Wheel Drive (4WD). See* ***160, HYBRID SYSTEM OVERVIEW****,* ***191, TERRAIN RESPONSE OVERVIEW*** *and* ***193, SAND****.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION



To select a terrain response driving program:

1. Press the terrain response button. The touchscreen displays the available driving programs.
2. Rotate the driver's-side heater control to select an appropriate driving program.

   Note: *The driver's-side heater control automatically returns to being a climate and comfort control after a period of non-use.*

   Note: *A different procedure is required to select the* ***AUTO*** *driving program. See* ***195, AUTO****.*

The touchscreen displays a confirmation message and the appropriate icon for the selected driving program. The instrument panel also displays the same icon.

Note: *The driving program icon flashes if a program change is requested, but the change is inhibited due to Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) being active. The selection takes place once DSC is inactive.*

Do not become distracted by the terrain response system while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

Make sure the correct driving program for the prevailing conditions is selected. Failure to select the correct driving program could result in vehicle damage.

COMFORT

Select the comfort driving program when driving on-road and on surfaces which are similar to a hard road surface. For example, dry cobbles and dry wooden planks.

Select the comfort driving program when the need for any other terrain response driving program has passed.

Note: *Hill Descent Control (HDC) remains active if it was previously selected manually.*

GRASS GRAVEL SNOW

Select the grass gravel snow driving program when driving on a firm surface that is covered with loose or slippery material.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

In the event that traction control systems restrict the vehicle's progress, switch off Dynamic Stability Control (DSC). Switch DSC on again once the difficulty is overcome. See **188, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OVERVIEW**.

Note: *It is recommended that the sand driving program is selected for deep snow or gravel. See* ***193, SAND****.*

MUD RUTS



Select the mud ruts driving program when driving on terrain that is muddy, rutted, soft, or uneven.

Vehicle performance is further enhanced if low range is also selected. See **173, SELECTING HIGH AND LOW RANGE**.

Note: *In some instances, an instrument panel message may prompt the driver to select low range.*

The suspension height raises automatically if the mud ruts driving program and low range are both selected.

SAND



Select the sand driving program when driving on terrain that is predominantly soft. For example, dry sand, deep gravel, or deep unpacked snow.

Do not select the sand driving program when driving on packed snow or ice. Selecting the sand driving program in these circumstances could result in reduced vehicle stability and braking performance, potentially leading to personal injury and vehicle damage.

Vehicle performance is further enhanced if low range is also selected. See **173, SELECTING HIGH AND LOW RANGE**.

In the event that automatic braking systems restrict the vehicle's progress, switch off Dynamic Stability Control (DSC). DSC should be switched on again as soon as the difficulty is overcome. See **188, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OVERVIEW**.

Note: *It is recommended that the mud ruts driving program is selected if conditions become wet and deep enough to cause the wheels to sink. See* ***193, MUD RUTS****.*

ECO



The **ECO** driving program adjusts various vehicle systems and features in order to increase fuel economy.

The **ECO** driving program can be used in conjunction with the **ECO DATA** feature. The **ECO DATA** feature comprises a number of touchscreen displays designed to encourage a more efficient driving style. See **245, APPS SCREEN**.

When selected, the **ECO** driving program:

- Switches off the heated or climate seats.
- Switches off the heated steering wheel.
- Sets the auto blower speed to low.
- May reduce the audio volume.

In addition:

- The heated windscreen does not automatically switch on when the engine is started, if configured to do so. See **272, CLIMATE SETTINGS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- The performance of the climate system may be affected.

The **ECO DATA** feature monitors, displays, and records the driver's manual inputs on the touchscreen. Automatic inputs, e.g., adaptive cruise control acceleration, are not monitored, displayed, or recorded. Items not being monitored or recorded are greyed out.

Note: *The **ECO DATA** feature only begins recording data after the vehicle has travelled at least 1 km (1 mile).*

ROCK CRAWL



Select the rock crawl driving program for low speed control on extreme terrain.

Use the rock crawl driving program when traversing uneven rocky terrain, including inclines and declines.

Note: *Make sure that the transmission is in low range before selecting the rock crawl driving program. The instrument panel displays a message if rock crawl is selected when the transmission is in high range. Follow the on-screen instructions to select low range. See **171, SELECTING HIGH AND LOW RANGE.***

The suspension height raises automatically if the rock crawl driving program and low range are both selected.

WADE



Select the wade driving program when driving through deep water. When selected, the **WADE AID** feature becomes active. See **302, WADE SENSING**.

The suspension height raises to the off-road height when the wade driving program is selected. The suspension height lowers back to normal height if the vehicle's speed exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph).

Follow the guidance given on the touchscreen to make sure the system limitations are not exceeded. Failure to follow the guidance could result in vehicle damage, serious injury, or death. See 301, WADE SENSING SAFETY.

CONFIGURABLE TR



The configurable terrain response feature allows the user to create a unique off-road terrain response profile.

To create a profile:

1. Select the **CONFIGURABLE TR** driving program via the front control panel. See **192, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.
2. Follow the on-screen instructions to create, save, or edit a profile.

Up to four profiles can be created.

A unique terrain response profile can be selected in the same way as a standard terrain response driving program. The last used profile is automatically selected. A pop-up menu allows the user to select an alternative profile, or to edit the current profile.

DYNAMIC



Select the dynamic driving program to coordinate the vehicle's control systems to contribute to a more dynamic driving experience.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

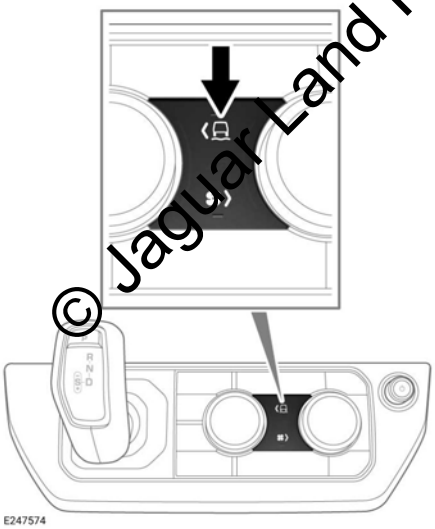
Note: *The dynamic driving program is a driving style setting, rather than a terrain response setting.*

When the dynamic driving program and Sport (**S**) are selected, and manual gear changes are being made, transmission up-shifts are fully controlled by the driver. The transmission does not up-shift automatically, even if the engine's revolutions per minute (rpm) limit is reached.

The instrument panel briefly illuminates the gearshift indicator warning lamp at the recommended up-shift gear change point. See **88, GEARSHIFT (GREEN)**.

AUTO

The **AUTO** terrain response setting automatically selects the most appropriate driving program for the prevailing conditions.



To select the **AUTO** terrain response setting, press and hold the terrain response button for longer than 2 seconds.

The touchscreen displays a confirmation message to confirm that the **AUTO** terrain response setting has been selected.

Note: *The **ECO**, wade, dynamic and configurable terrain response driving programs are not selected by the **AUTO** terrain response setting.*

Note: *The performance of the **AUTO** setting is limited if a trailer is connected to the vehicle.*

DRIVER OVERRIDE OPTIONS

The terrain response driving programs automatically enable Dynamic Stability Control (DSC). If required, DSC can be manually disabled. See **188, SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF**.

Note: *DSC cannot be disabled if the **AUTO** terrain response setting is selected.*

Some terrain response driving programs automatically select Hill Descent Control (HDC). If required, HDC can be manually deselected. See **197, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC)**.

The instrument panel displays the DSC and HDC status.

TERRAIN RESPONSE LIMITATIONS

If the terrain response system develops a system fault:

- The instrument panel displays a warning message.
- The comfort driving program is automatically selected.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- All other driving program icons grey out and are unavailable for selection.

The instrument panel displays a message if the fault was temporary and has since passed. In this instance, the comfort driving program remains active, but the other driving programs become available for selection.

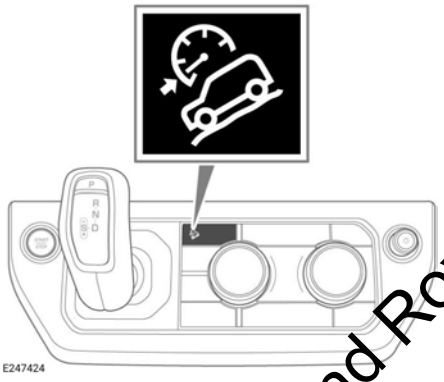
The instrument panel also displays a message if the fault is permanent. Follow the on-screen guidance and contact a retailer/authorised repairer at the earliest opportunity.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC)

Hill Descent Control (HDC) restricts the vehicle's speed to a set limit when travelling downhill.

Do not attempt a steep descent if HDC is inoperative or warning messages are displayed. Doing so could lead to loss of vehicle control, resulting in vehicle damage, personal injury, or death.



Press the button to select HDC. The instrument panel displays a confirmation message and illuminates the HDC information lamp to confirm HDC selection. See **88, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) (GREEN)**.

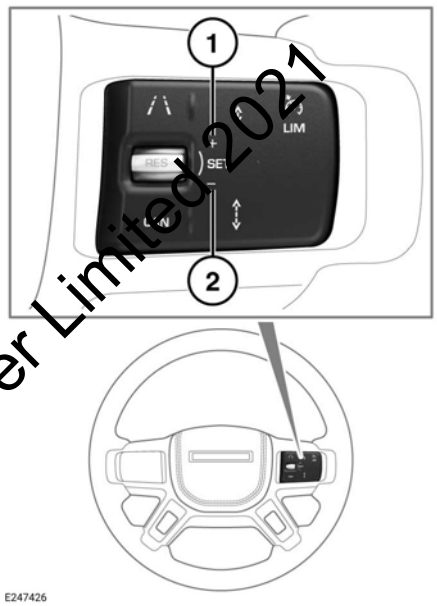
Note: *HDC is automatically selected by some Terrain response driving programs. See* ***112, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION****.*

HDC remains selected for up to 6 hours after the vehicle's ignition is switched off.

Pressing the button a second time deselects HDC and selects All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC). See **227, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) OVERVIEW**.

Pressing the button a third time deselects both systems.

If HDC is deselected while it is active, operation fades out, allowing the vehicle's speed to increase. The HDC information lamp extinguishes.



To adjust the vehicle's rate of descent:

1. Move the switch to the **SET+** position to increase the vehicle's speed in increments of 1 km/h (0.6 mph). Move and hold the switch in the **SET+** position for larger increases, up to the maximum permissible speed.
2. Move the switch to the **SET-** position to decrease the vehicle's speed in increments of 1 km/h (0.6 mph). Move and hold the switch in the **SET-** position for larger increases, down to the minimum permissible speed.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The instrument panel displays the current set speed and the range of set speeds available.

Note: *The maximum and minimum permissible speeds are dependent on the gear selected.*

Note: *The vehicle's speed only increases on a slope steep enough to increase momentum. Using the* ***SET+*** *button may not increase the vehicle's speed on a gentle slope.*

Note: *A pulsation may be felt through the brake pedal if the brakes are used when HDC is active. HDC operation resumes when the brake pedal is released.*

HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) LIMITATIONS

Hill Descent Control (HDC) does not operate when Park (**P**) is selected.

HDC operation is suspended if the vehicle's speed exceeds 30 km/h (19 mph).

HDC operation disables if the vehicle speed increases to between 30 km/h (19 mph) and 80 km/h (50 mph). In this instance, the instrument panel display turns grey and warning messages are displayed. The HDC information lamp also flashes.

If a fault is detected while HDC is active:

- HDC operation gradually fades out.
- The instrument panel displays a warning message.
- The HDC information lamp flashes.

GRADIENT RELEASE CONTROL (GRC)

Gradient Release Control (GRC) improves the vehicle's ability to smoothly pull away from a standstill when on an incline or decline. GRC achieves this by automatically controlling brake operation once the brake pedal is released. No driver intervention is required.

GRC operates when forward or reverse gears are selected.

GRC also operates if the brakes are applied while Hill Descent Control (HDC) is active. See **197, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC)**.

GRC does not operate if the terrain response and driving program is selected. See **193, SAND**.

BRAKE TEMPERATURE

In extreme circumstances, prolonged use of the Hill Descent Control (HDC) system may cause excessive brake temperatures. In this event, the instrument panel displays a warning message, indicating that the HDC system is temporarily unavailable. HDC operation fades out and becomes temporarily inactive.

When the brake temperatures have returned to normal, the instrument panel warning message extinguishes and HDC operation resumes.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

SPEED LIMITER SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using a speed limiter. Failure to use the speed limiter safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠ **Speed limiters are driving aids only. Always drive with due care and attention, and in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users. The driver should still observe all road signs, road markings, and situations that are not detected or recognised by the speed limiter systems. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.**

⚠ **In certain conditions, such as a steep downhill gradient, the vehicle's speed may exceed the set speed limit. Driver intervention may be required. Driving at speeds above the set speed limit may infringe on local laws.**

Note: *Speed limiters are convenience features only. Speed limiters do not remove the driver's responsibility to adhere to the legal road speed limit.*

SPEED LIMITER OVERVIEW

⚠ **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 199, SPEED LIMITER SAFETY.**

Two types of speed limiter are available:

- Speed limiter.
- Adaptive speed limiter.

The speed limiter allows the driver to manually restrict the maximum vehicle speed. When a maximum speed limit is set, the vehicle responds normally until the set speed is approached. At this point, the vehicle stops accelerating.

The adaptive speed limiter works in conjunction with the traffic sign recognition system and the navigation system to restrict the maximum vehicle speed. If the system cannot determine a valid maximum speed, the last known set speed limit is used.

To activate the speed limiter, see **200, SPEED LIMITER**.

To activate the adaptive speed limiter, see **201, ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER**.

Press and hold the **CAN** button on the steering wheel to switch between the speed limiter and the adaptive speed limiter.

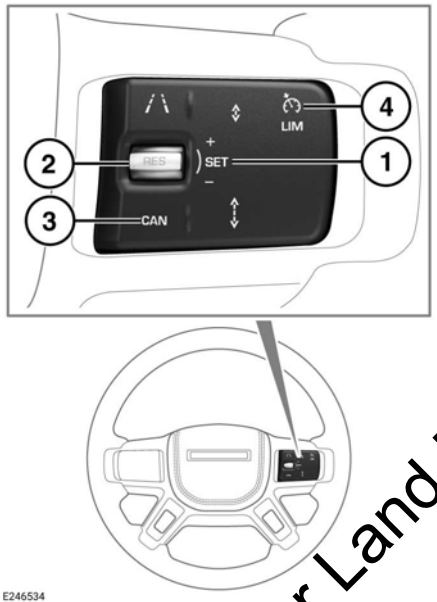
The touchscreen can also be used to toggle between speed limiter and adaptive speed limiter.

Note: *Speed limiters are not available when cruise control or adaptive cruise control is in operation. When the vehicle is first switched on, the vehicle defaults to both systems OFF.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

SPEED LIMITER

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 199, SPEED LIMITER SAFETY.



1. Speed control rocker switch. Push the rocker switch upwards to select **SET+**. Push the rocker switch downwards to select **SET-**.
2. Push the speed control rocker switch inwards to select **RES**.
3. **CAN** button.
4. **LIM** button.

Press the **LIM** button on the steering wheel controls to toggle between speed limiter and cruise control. The instrument panel displays the information lamp for the selected system. See **89, SPEED LIMITER (GREEN)** and **87, CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)**.

The speed limiter does not operate until activated.

To activate the speed limiter, push the rocker switch (**1**) upwards to the **SET+** position. The vehicle's speed is now limited to the speed it was travelling at when the switch was pressed. If the vehicle is stationary when **SET+** is selected, the system sets the speed limit to 16 km/h (10 mph).

Push the rocker switch (**1**) upwards and hold in the **SET+** position to increase the speed limiter's set speed in 10 km/h (or 5 mph) steps. Push the rocker switch (**1**) briefly upwards to the **SET+** position to increase the speed limiter's set speed by 2 km/h (1 mph).

Push and hold the rocker switch (**1**) down to the **SET-** position to reduce the speed limiter's set speed in 10 km/h (or 5 mph) steps. Push the rocker switch (**1**) briefly down to the **SET-** position to lower the speed limiter's set speed by 2 km/h (1 mph).

Push the **CAN** button (**3**) to suspend speed limiter operation. Select either the **RES** or the **SET+** positions to resume speed limiter operation.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *In speed limiter mode, pushing the rocker inwards to the* ***RES*** *position will activate the system at the previously used set speed. In adaptive speed limiter mode, pushing the rocker inwards to the* ***RES*** *position will set the speed limiter to the traffic sign recognition system's detected speed limit.*

Pushing the rocker (**1**) to the **SET+** position limits the vehicle's speed to the speed it is travelling at when the switch is pressed.

The speed limiter's set speed can be overridden if a higher level of acceleration is required. Fully press the accelerator pedal to accelerate past the speed limiter's set speed. When the vehicle's speed drops below the speed limiter's set speed, any speed limitations are reapplied.

SPEED LIMITER LIMITATIONS

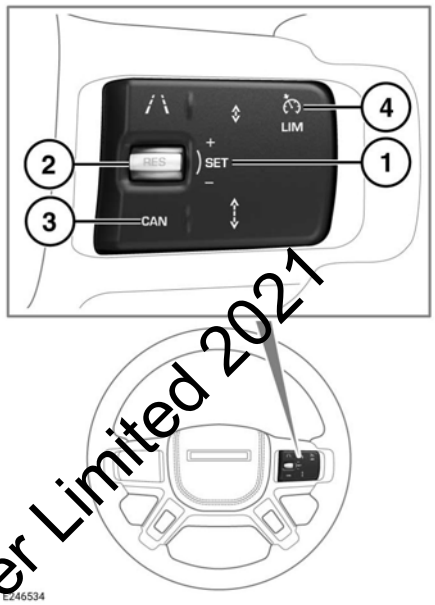
The driver may notice the speed limiter's effects as the vehicle speed approaches the set speed limit.

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 199, SPEED LIMITER SAFETY.

Note: *The adaptive speed limiter does not operate if the traffic sign recognition system is not operating. See* ***236, TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION****.*



1. Speed control rocker switch. Push the rocker switch upwards to select **SET+**. Push the rocker switch downwards to select **SET-**.
2. Push the speed control rocker switch inwards to select **RES**.
3. **CAN** button.
4. **LIM** button.



Press the **LIM** button (**4**) on the steering wheel to toggle between adaptive speed limiter and cruise control. Depending on vehicle status, the instrument panel displays either the speed limiter or the adaptive speed limiter information lamp. See **89, SPEED LIMITER (GREEN)** and **87, ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER (GREEN)**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Speed limiter

If the speed limiter information lamp is displayed, press and hold the **CAN** button (**3**). The adaptive speed limiter information lamp replaces the speed limiter information lamp to confirm that the adaptive speed limiter has been selected.

The adaptive speed limiter does not operate until activated. Push the set speed rocker switch (**1**) upwards (**SET+**) or inwards (**RES**) to activate the adaptive speed limiter. The Head-Up Display (HUD) and instrument panel display the detected speed limits as icons.

If the adaptive speed limiter detects a speed limit lower than the current vehicle speed, it automatically slows the vehicle to meet the speed limit.

If the system detects a speed limit higher than the current vehicle speed, it allows the driver to accelerate up to the speed limit.

Note: *Adaptive speed limiter only activates if the vehicle's speed is less than 30 km/h (20 mph) over the set speed. If the vehicle's speed is 30 km/h (20 mph) above the set speed, the instrument panel displays a warning message and the system does not activate.*

Press the **CAN** button to suspend adaptive speed limiter operation. Push the set speed rocker switch (**1**) inwards (**RES**) or upwards (**SET+**) to resume adaptive speed limiter operation.

The adaptive speed limiter's detected speed limit can be overridden if rapid acceleration is required. Fully press the accelerator pedal to accelerate past the adaptive speed limiter's set speed. When the vehicle's speed drops below the adaptive speed limiter's detected speed limit, any speed limitations are reapplied.

The system's detected speed limit can be adjusted, if required, to control the vehicle's speed at just above or below the detected speed limit. To adjust the detected speed limit:

1. Push the set speed rocker (**1**) upwards (**SET+**) to raise the maximum vehicle speed 2 km/h (1 mph) above the detected speed limit. The maximum increase available is 10 km/h (6 mph) above the detected speed limit. Push and hold the set speed rocker switch (**1**) (**SET+**) to raise the maximum vehicle speed in larger increments above the detected speed limit.
2. Push the set speed rocker switch (**1**) downwards (**SET-**) to reduce the maximum vehicle speed 2 km/h (1 mph) below the detected speed limit. The maximum decrease available is 10 km/h (6 mph) below the detected speed limit. Push and hold the set speed rocker switch (**1**) downwards (**SET-**) to reduce the maximum vehicle speed in larger increments below the detected speed limit.

Note: *Any adjustments to the system's detected speed limit are lost if the speed limiter is deactivated, or if the vehicle's ignition is switched off.*

ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER LIMITATIONS

The adaptive speed limiter:

- Does not apply speed limits below 16 km/h (10 mph). For detected speed limits below 16 km/h (10 mph), the system sets a speed limit of 16 km/h (10 mph).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- Displays **---** in the instrument panel if the traffic sign recognition system cannot determine a valid speed limit. The last known valid speed limit is applied if this occurs.
- May allow vehicle speed to increase in certain conditions, e.g., when travelling downhill. If the vehicle's speed rises by more than 3.5 km/h (2 mph) above the detected speed limit, the instrument panel displays a warning message. If the vehicle's speed rises by more than 7 km/h (4 mph) above the detected speed limit for 4 seconds, a chime also sounds.
- Performance and accuracy are only as good as the information provided by the traffic sign recognition system.
- Performance and accuracy are only as good as the information provided by the navigation system. Always make sure the navigation system is operating correctly and is using the latest software.
- Does not operate if the traffic sign recognition system is unavailable. If the adaptive speed limiter is unavailable the system reverts to standard speed limiter operation using the last detected speed limit.

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Cruise control

CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using cruise control. Failure to use cruise control safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

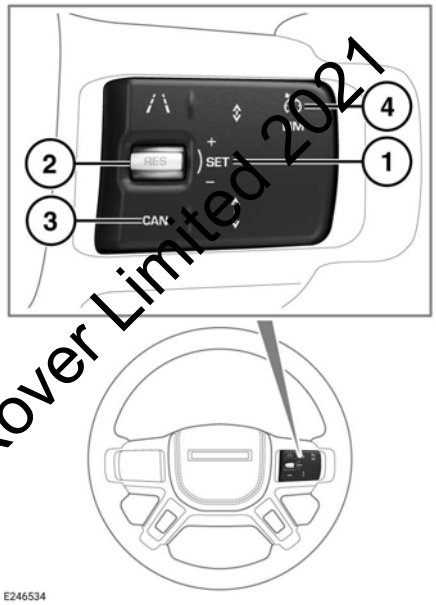
The driver must always make sure that a safe speed is maintained within the speed limit, taking account of traffic and road conditions. Driving at unsafe speeds increases the risk of an accident.

In certain conditions, such as a steep downhill gradient, the vehicle's speed may exceed the set cruising speed. Driver intervention may be required. Driving at speeds above the set cruising speed may infringe on local laws.

Do not use cruise control in heavy traffic, or conditions where a constant road speed cannot be safely maintained. For example, cruise control should not be used on roads that are winding, wet with rain or snow, slippery, or unpaved.

USING CRUISE CONTROL

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 204, CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.



E246534

Cruise control allows the vehicle to automatically maintain a set vehicle speed. Controls mounted on the steering wheel are used to operate the system. The driver can also intervene, at any time, by using the brake or accelerator pedals.

1. Speed control rocker switch. Push the rocker switch upwards to select **SET+**. Push the rocker switch downwards to select **SET-**.
2. Push the speed control rocker switch inwards to select **RES**.
3. **CAN** button.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

4. LIM button.

Press the **LIM** button (**4**) on the steering wheel to toggle between cruise control and adaptive speed limiter. Depending on vehicle status, the instrument panel displays either the cruise control or the speed limiter information lamp. See **199, SPEED LIMITER OVERVIEW**.

While driving at the desired speed, push the speed control rocker switch (**1**) upwards to the **SET+** position to activate cruise control. The instrument panel displays an information lamp to confirm that the system is operational. See **87, CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)**



The cruise control icon on the steering wheel controls also illuminates to confirm that the system is operational.

Note: *Do not use cruise control when driving off-road.*

To increase the set speed, press the speed control rocker switch (**1**) upwards to the **SET+** position. A single brief push of the rocker raises the vehicle's speed by 2 km/h (1 mph). A sustained push-and-hold will increase vehicle speed by 10 km/h (5 mph). Alternatively, press the accelerator pedal to increase the set speed. When the new desired speed is reached, push the rocker switch upwards (**1**) to the **SET+** position.

Note: *Cruise control cancels if the accelerator pedal is pressed to override the system for more than 1 minute.*

Push the speed control rocker (**1**) downwards briefly to the **SET-** position to reduce the set speed. A single press of the switch reduces the vehicle's speed by 2 km/h (1 mph). Push and hold the speed control rocker (**1**) to the **SET-** position to reduce the set speed in 10 km/h (5 mph) increments.

Push the speed control rocker (**1**) inwards to the **RES** position to resume cruise control if it has been cancelled, e.g. by use of the brake pedal. The set speed is retained in the system's memory until the ignition is switched off.

Press the **CAN** button to cancel the cruise control.

The cruise control system can be engaged from stationary:

1. Press the footbrake.
2. Select **D** (Drive) or **S** (Sport) using the gear selector.
3. If the set speed has already been set, push the speed control rocker inwards (**1**) to the **RES** position to recall the set speed.
4. If the set speed has not already been set, push the speed control rocker upwards to the **SET+** position and release to initially select 16 km/h (10 mph).
5. The desired set speed can now be adjusted with the set control rocker switch (**1**) upwards **SET+** or downwards **SET-**.
6. Release the brake pedal. The vehicle will pull away from stationary and accelerate to the selected set speed.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The RES switch should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it. Pressing the RES switch inadvertently may lead to a loss of control of the vehicle, vehicle damage, or personal injury.

CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The cruise control set speed cannot be lower than 16 km/h (10 mph).

Cruise control does not operate when:

- The speed limiter or adaptive speed limiter is in operation. When the vehicle is first switched on, the vehicle reverts to whichever system was used previously. Press the **LIM** button **4** to switch between cruise control and the speed limiter. See **204, USING CRUISE CONTROL**.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The gear selector is in Neutral (**N**), Reverse (**R**), or Park (**P**).
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) requests a cruise control cancellation.
- Hill Descent Control (HDC) is activated.
- All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) is activated.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using adaptive cruise control or any of its features. Failure to use adaptive cruise control or any of its features safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠ **Adaptive cruise control is not a substitute for driving safely, with due care and attention. Staying alert, driving safely, and being in control of the vehicle at all times is the responsibility of the driver.**

⚠ **Adaptive cruise control may not function properly under all weather and road conditions. Do not use adaptive cruise control in poor visibility, specifically fog, heavy rain, spray, or snow. Using adaptive cruise control in these conditions increases the risk of a loss of control of the vehicle.**

⚠ **Adaptive cruise control does not react to pedestrians, objects in the roadway or oncoming vehicles in the same lane. Additionally, the system may not react to stationary or slow moving vehicles (e.g. cyclists and motorcyclists).**

⚠ **Adaptive cruise control uses a radar sensor and camera to monitor the area in front of the vehicle. The radar sensor is mounted on the front of the vehicle. The camera is mounted on the rear of the rear-view mirror. Keep these areas of the vehicle clean and free from obstructions, e.g. stickers, debris, mud, snow, or ice. Failure to do so may result in the system failing to identify objects ahead.**

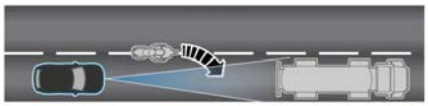
The driver should remain alert and intervene, if necessary, when adaptive cruise control is in operation.

The adaptive cruise control system may operate unexpectedly in certain conditions. For example:



E214263

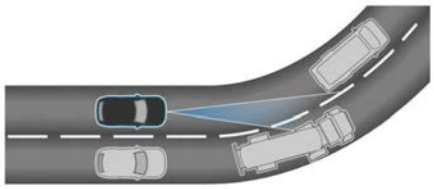
When driving on a different line to the vehicle in front.



E214264

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

When a vehicle edges into the same lane as the vehicle being driven. The vehicle is only detected once it has moved fully into the same lane.



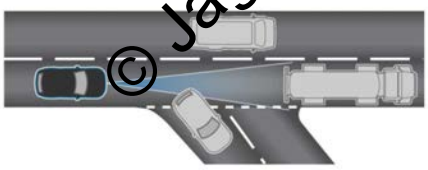
E214265

When entering or exiting a bend. Vehicles in front may not be detected.



E214266

When moving around a stationary vehicle. The detection beam may become uncertain as to which vehicle should be followed.



E214267

When the vehicle in front turns out of the same lane as the vehicle being driven. The detection beam may become uncertain as to which vehicle should be followed.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 207, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.

Adaptive cruise control allows the driver to set a cruising speed for the vehicle. The vehicle's speed automatically reduces if a slower moving vehicle is detected in the lane ahead. The system then maintains a constant gap to the vehicle ahead. If the system detects that the slower moving vehicle is no longer present, it automatically raises the vehicle's speed back to the set speed. In some scenarios, adaptive cruise control also brings the vehicle to a standstill, if required.

Note: *The adaptive cruise control system illuminates the brake lights when it applies the brakes. A noise may also be heard.*

Adaptive cruise control comprises a number of different sub-features including:

- Follow mode. See **211, FOLLOW MODE**.
- Queue assist. See **213, QUEUE ASSIST**.
- Stop and go. See **214, STOP AND GO**.

Note: *Adaptive cruise control is not available when the speed limiter is in operation. When the vehicle is first switched on, the vehicle reverts to whichever system was used previously.*

Push the **LIM** switch (**4**) on the steering wheel controls to toggle between speed limiter and adaptive cruise control functions.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The instrument panel displays a message if a fault occurs in the adaptive cruise control system or in any of its sub-features. If this occurs, adaptive cruise control does not operate. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer at the earliest opportunity.

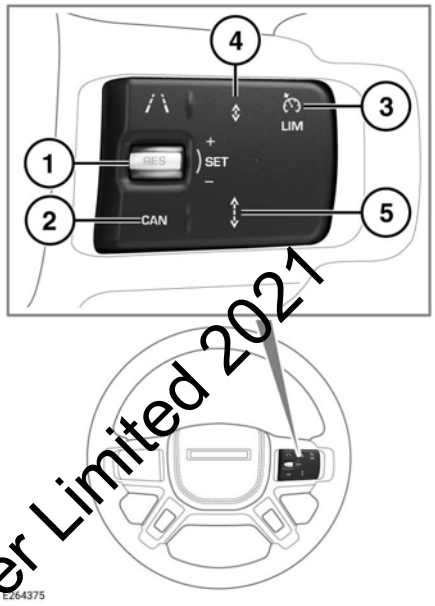
ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

⚠ **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 207, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.**

⚠ **The RES (resume) switch should only be pressed if the driver is aware of the set cruising speed and intends to return to it. Pressing the RES switch when not aware of the set cruising speed may lead to a loss of control of the vehicle and personal injury.**

When adaptive cruise control is operating, it monitors the area in front of the vehicle to identify any vehicles which are in its path. The vehicle's cruising speed is controlled accordingly. See **211, FOLLOW MODE**.

Adaptive cruise control may also react to stationary vehicles that it previously recognised as travelling in the same direction. See **213, QUEUE ASSIST**.



1. Set rocker switch: Use to activate the system and to adjust set speed. Push upwards to the **SET+** position to increase set speed, or downwards to the **SET-** position to decrease set speed. Push the rocker switch inwards for the **RES** command.
2. **CAN**: Cancels the cruise control.
3. **LIM**: Switches between speed limiter and cruise control. See **200, SPEED LIMITER**.
4. Adaptive cruise control: reduce gap control.
5. Adaptive cruise control: increase gap control.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Push the set rocker switch (**1**) upwards to set a desired cruising speed. The vehicle's cruising speed is set at the speed it was travelling when the switch was pressed. Use the gap control switches (**4**) and (**5**) to adjust the set gap between the vehicle in front when follow mode is engaged. See **211, FOLLOW MODE**.



The instrument panel displays a green information lamp to inform the driver that adaptive cruise control is engaged.

The steering wheel icon also illuminates green when adaptive cruise control is active.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Clear front bumper/windscreen Driver Assistance feature performance limited may be displayed if adaptive cruise control is in standby and an obstruction is detected over a period of time. If the message is displayed, clear any obstruction (e.g. ice/ mud in front of the manufacturer badge or the windscreen). Seek retailer/authorised repairer assistance if the message persists. The instrument panel may also display **Clear front bumper/windscreen Driver Assistance feature performance limited** temporarily if the radar sensor or camera's vision is disrupted for a long period. For example, in poor weather conditions, when travelling through a tunnel, or in complex traffic situations.

Adaptive cruise control does not operate if:

- Neutral (**N**), Reverse (**R**) or Park (**P**) are selected.
- The speed limiter is in operation.

Adaptive cruise control automatically deactivates, but does not clear its memory, when:

- The **CANCEL** command is requested. See **209, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL**.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) requests a cruise control cancellation.
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
- Any passenger door is opened.
- An off-road terrain response program is selected.

Adaptive cruise control automatically deactivates, and its memory is cleared, when:

- All Surface Progress Control (ASPC) is selected.
- Hill Descent Control (HDC) is selected.
- The ignition is switched off.
- A fault occurs in the adaptive cruise control system.
- The driver's door is opened.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL DRIVER INTERVENTION

The amount of braking applied by the adaptive cruise control system is limited. The system sounds an audible warning and the instrument panel displays a message if the system's braking limits are reached. The driver should intervene immediately and apply a higher level of braking force using the brake pedal.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Adaptive cruise control cancels when the brake pedal is pressed, or if the vehicle becomes stationary. Press the **RES** button on the steering wheel to resume adaptive cruise control operation. See **209, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL**.

Pressing the accelerator pedal inhibits adaptive cruise control braking. The follow mode amber warning lamp extinguishes to confirm the system has been overridden. Adaptive cruise control operation resumes when the accelerator pedal is released.

FOLLOW MODE

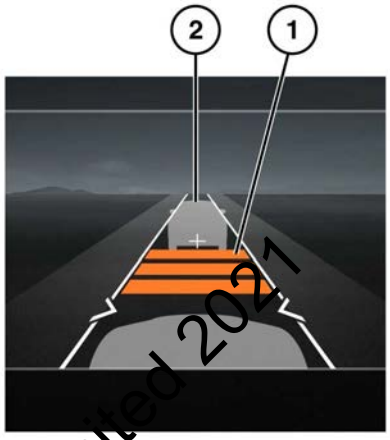
Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 207, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.

When adaptive cruise control identifies a moving vehicle in the lane ahead, it automatically enters follow mode. Adaptive cruise control adjusts the vehicle's speed by controlling acceleration and braking to maintain a set gap to the vehicle ahead.

When in follow mode, the vehicle may not decelerate automatically to a stop, or does the vehicle always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a collision. Always maintain a safe gap to the vehicle ahead to reduce the risk of an accident.



The instrument panel displays the following graphic to confirm that follow mode has detected a target vehicle.



E267111

1. Follow mode gap setting.
2. Targeted vehicle.

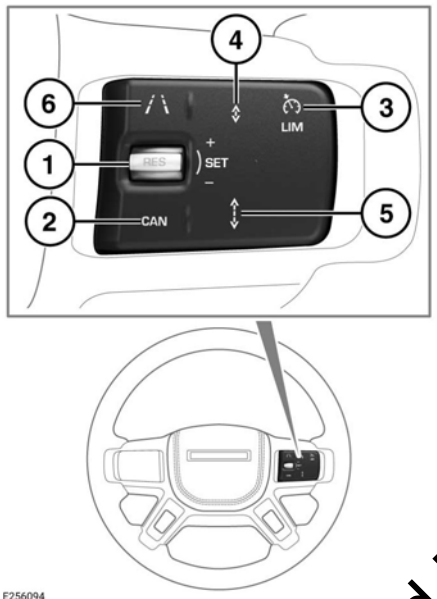
If the direction indicators are used, follow mode may reduce the gap to the vehicle ahead in anticipation of a manoeuvre. If a manoeuvre is not carried out, follow mode restores the previous gap setting after a few seconds.

Note: *Follow mode may not reduce the gap to the vehicle ahead if it is deemed inappropriate. For example, the vehicle ahead is already too close, or the manoeuvre has already been completed.*

The follow mode gap to the vehicle ahead can be adjusted. See **212, CHANGING THE FOLLOW MODE GAP**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

SWITCHING FOLLOW MODE OFF



Switching follow mode off allows the driver to take control of the vehicle's speed. When follow mode is switched off, the adaptive cruise control system does not provide any vehicle braking. Vehicle braking must be applied by the driver.

To switch follow mode off, press and hold the gap reduce button (4). The cruise control icon illuminates to confirm the feature has been switched off.

To switch follow mode back on, press and release gap increase button (**5**) button. If adaptive cruise control is active and tracking a vehicle, the follow mode off white warning lamp extinguishes. The adaptive cruise control icon illuminates in grey (standby) or green (active) to confirm that the feature has been switched back on. The previous follow mode gap setting is resumed.

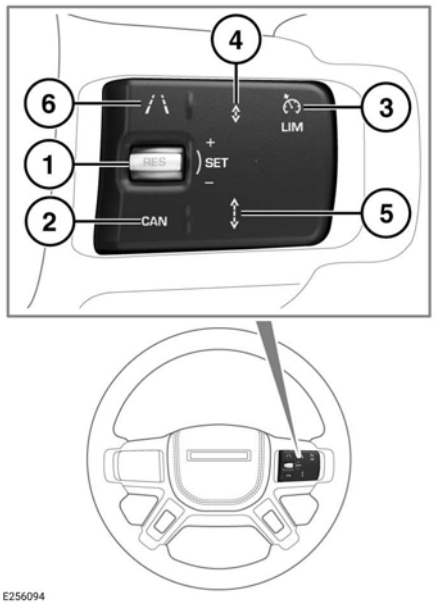
CHANGING THE FOLLOW MODE GAP

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 207, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.

The driver is responsible for selecting options appropriate for the driving conditions. Always drive with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.

Follow mode has four different gap settings. Gap 3 is the default gap setting when the vehicle is switched on.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



To decrease the follow mode gap, press the follow mode gap decrease button (**4**) on the steering wheel. To increase the follow mode gap, press the follow mode gap increase button (**5**) on the steering wheel.

The instrument panel displays a vehicle image with a number of bars when the follow mode gap is adjusted. The number of bars displayed in front of the vehicle image reflects the follow mode gap setting.

FOLLOW MODE LIMITATIONS

Follow mode maintains a constant gap to the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle ahead accelerates to a speed above the adaptive cruise control set speed. If this occurs, the vehicle stops accelerating when the set speed is reached.
- The vehicle ahead moves out of the lane or out of view. If this occurs, the vehicle accelerates to the adaptive cruise control set speed.

QUEUE ASSIST

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 207, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.

Queue assist enhances the adaptive cruise control follow mode feature. See **211, FOLLOW MODE**.

Queue assist operates at lower speeds than follow mode, allowing the feature to be used in slow-moving lines of traffic.

When the targeted vehicle slows to a standstill, queue assist brings the vehicle to a standstill. When the targeted vehicle moves off, briefly press the accelerator pedal, or press the **RES** button, if safe to do so. Queue assist now maintains a constant gap to the vehicle ahead.

Queue assist may not recognise a stationary vehicle or object. To avoid an impact, it is important that the driver is prepared to press the brake pedal when approaching stationary vehicles or objects, if necessary.

At standstill, queue assist applies the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) when:

- Adaptive cruise control is cancelled by the driver.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
- The driver's door is opened.

Adaptive cruise control deactivates when the EPB is applied.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

STOP AND GO

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 207, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.

In certain circumstances, adaptive cruise control is able to follow a targeted vehicle down to a standstill. See **213, QUEUE ASSIST**.

The stop and go feature automatically accelerates the vehicle away from a standstill, if the targeted vehicle pulls away within a few seconds. A short press of the accelerator pedal, or a press of the **RES** button is required if the targeted vehicle is stationary for longer than a few seconds.

The instrument panel displays a warning message if adaptive cruise control detects an object in its immediate path when accelerating away from a standstill. Adaptive cruise control does not apply the brakes. Braking in order to avoid an impact remains the responsibility of the driver. Failure to drive without due care and attention can lead to injury or death.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings and notes have been read and fully understood before driving the vehicle. Failure to use the collision avoidance systems safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

Collision avoidance systems are not a substitute for driving safely, with due care and attention. Staying alert, driving safely, and being in control of the vehicle at all times is the responsibility of the driver.

Blind spot driving aids are a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style.

The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention, and in a safe manner for the vehicle, the occupants and other road users. The driver is responsible for detecting obstacles, and estimating the vehicle's distance from them, when manoeuvring the vehicle. The driver should observe all road signs, road markings and any potential braking situations, and act appropriately.

Always use the door and rear-view mirrors. Drive safely at all times, and use the door and rear-view mirrors to help avoid accidents.

Blind spot driving aids may not function at all speeds, or in all weather conditions.

Blind spot driving aids do not correct errors of judgement when driving.

The radar and camera sensors used by the blind spot driving aids may become impaired by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow, and road spray. The blind spot driving aids ability to detect a vehicle in the driver's blind spot may subsequently be affected and may give false indications.

Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper or to the windscreen. Operation of the blind spot sensors and camera may subsequently become impaired. The blind spot driving aids ability to detect a vehicle in the driver's blind spot may subsequently be affected and may give false indications.

Do not attach stickers or other objects to the door mirrors, as the blind spot icons and indicators may become obscured. Obscuring the icons and indicators could increase the risk of a collision during a vehicle manoeuvre.

The blind spot monitor system may not be able to give adequate warning of vehicles approaching very quickly from behind.

The blind spot monitor system may not be able to detect all vehicles and may also detect objects such as roadside barriers.

Do not use blind spot assist when a trailer is connected. The trailer may provide miscalculations or false indications. False indications could increase the risk of a collision during a vehicle manoeuvre.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The radar sensor must be calibrated if it is replaced, its mounting is replaced, or it becomes misaligned, e.g., as a result of impact damage. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer.

Note: *The radar sensor is approved for use in all member countries covered under the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment (RTTE) directive.*

FORWARD ALERT

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and notes have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 215, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.

Forward alert may not react to slow-moving vehicles. Always drive with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.

Note: *The driver is recommended to switch off the forward alert system when driving off-road, using a car wash, or when the vehicle is being towed.*

Forward alert monitors an area in front of the vehicle. The driver is warned if forward alert detects an object within the detection area. The instrument panel also displays a warning message if the vehicle is travelling between 30 km/h (18 mph) and 80 km/h (50 mph). The driver is responsible for taking appropriate action.

Four forward alert sensitivity settings are available:

- **Off**
- **Very Early**
- **Early**
- **Normal**.

Warnings sound and the instrument panel displays a warning message if forward alert detects an object in front of the vehicle.

Note: *Additionally, haptic alerts are used to notify the driver if forward alert detects an object in front of the vehicle.*

Forward alert can be switched on or off and the sensitivity settings can be adjusted via the **Driver Assistance** menu. See **216, CHANGING THE FORWARD ALERT SENSITIVITY**.

CHANGING THE FORWARD ALERT SENSITIVITY

Forward alert has four different sensitivity settings. The default setting is **Normal**.

If required, the sensitivity of the forward alert feature can be changed. To change the sensitivity settings, complete the following steps:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Driver Assistance**.
4. Select **Collision avoidance**.
5. Touch to select the required setting:
   - **Off**
   - **Very Early**
   - **Early**
   - **Normal**.

The forward alert sensitivity setting is retained in the vehicle's memory after the vehicle is switched off.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB) SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings and notes have been read and fully understood before driving the vehicle. Failure to understand the Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) system could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

The AEB system is a driving aid only. The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention, and in a safe manner for the vehicle, the occupants, and other road users. The driver should observe all road signs, road markings and any potential emergency braking situations, and act appropriately.

The AEB system uses forward-facing cameras and forward-facing radars to detect real vehicles and pedestrians, plus other certified target objects. AEB is not designed to detect all other objects, including non-industry approved targets.

In order for AEB to operate, it must be able to detect a clear image of the object and be able to determine its movement. If either of these occur, the AEB system may not operate.

Seat belts should be worn by all vehicle occupants, for every journey, no matter how short. Failure to do so greatly increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

Make sure that the windscreen is kept clean and that the camera's line of sight is not obstructed by labels or stickers. Failure to do so can cause incorrect AEB operation.

Note: *AEB efficiency is dependent on the condition of the current driving surface and the vehicle's speed, tyres, and braking system.*

Note: *When a vehicle is parked outside, in full sunlight and in high ambient temperatures, the forward-facing camera may reach an internal temperature of 99°C. In this state, the instrument panel displays a warning message. When the forward-facing camera cools to less than 88°C, normal operation is resumed, and the warning message extinguishes.*

Note: *When the vehicle's electrical system is first switched on, AEB may require an initialisation period before it is fully functional. AEB efficiency is limited during this period.*

AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB)

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and notes have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 217, AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB) SAFETY.

Note: *Not all vehicles are fitted with Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB). Consult a retailer/authorised repairer for confirmation.*

Note: *The driver is recommended to switch off the AEB system when driving off-road, when using a car wash, or when the vehicle is being towed.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Collision avoidance

AEB uses forward-facing cameras, located above the rear-view mirror, and forward-facing radars, located on the front bumper, to help identify an imminent risk of collision with:

- Another vehicle travelling in front.
- An oncoming vehicle from adjacent lane while host vehicle turning left or right.
- A crossing pedestrian.
- A pedestrian moving in the same direction as the vehicle.
- An oncoming pedestrian from opposite direction while host vehicle turning left or right.
- A crossing cyclist.
- A cyclist travelling in the same direction as the vehicle.
- An oncoming cyclist from opposite direction while host vehicle turning left or right.

In most instances, AEB helps reduce the severity of an impact. In some cases, AEB helps to stop the vehicle before an impact takes place.

AEB automatically switches on, every time the vehicle's electrical system is switched on.

If required, the AEB feature can be switched off via the touchscreen. To switch AEB off, complete the following steps:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Driver Assistance**.
4. Select **Collision avoidance**.
5. **Emergency braking**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.

AEB operates at speeds above 5 km/h (3 mph).

The vehicle detection AEB system can detect:

- Vehicles travelling in the same road lane of speeds up to 130 km/h (80 mph).
- Vehicles travelling in the adjacent road lane of speeds up to 64 km/h (39 mph). The system only detects other vehicles when host vehicle is turning left or right, with a speed of up to 20 km/h (12 mph).

The pedestrian and cyclist detection AEB systems are able to operate at speeds of up to 60 km/h (37 mph).

If an imminent risk of a collision is detected, the system automatically applies the brakes. The instrument panel also displays a warning message while AEB is operating.

If AEB brings the vehicle to a stop, the brakes continue to hold the vehicle stationary for a few seconds. After this period, the driver must resume full control of the vehicle. Failure to take back full control of the vehicle could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

Note: *The brake lights are automatically operated in heavy braking situations.*

Note: *The distance required to slow or stop the vehicle is dependent on the condition of the vehicle's tyres and the road surface.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The driver can override AEB operation by turning the steering wheel, or pressing the accelerator pedal. When overridden, AEB cancels its request for braking to make sure that the driver remains in full control of the vehicle.

After AEB has been activated, a warning sounds and the instrument panel displays a warning message.

AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB) LIMITATIONS

Vehicle detection Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) does not operate if:

- The vehicle is negotiating a tight corner.
- The forward-facing cameras are dirty or obscured.
- The forward-facing radars are dirty or obscured.

  Note: *The fitting of forward-facing radars depends on the vehicle specification.*
- The vehicle's speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph), or above 80 km/h (50 mph).
- The vehicle's speed is above 130 km/h (80 mph).

  Note: *Dependant on the vehicle specification.*
- Visibility is impaired due to severe weather conditions, e.g., heavy rain, fog, or snow.
- The distance required to slow or stop the vehicle is dependent on the condition of the vehicle's tyres and the road surface.

In addition to the items listed for the vehicle detection AEB system, the junction assist feature when turning right or left does not operate if:

- Detected vehicles speed is above 64 km/h (39 mph).
- The host vehicle turning left or right speed is above 20 km/h (12 mph).
- The detected object is not identified as a vehicle, cyclist, or pedestrian.
- The height of the object is less than 1 m.
- The junction detection AEB system cannot determine that the target object is a pedestrian or cyclist. For example, if the pedestrian or cyclist is carrying a large object.
- The pedestrian detection AEB system cannot determine that the target object is a pedestrian. For example, if the pedestrian is carrying a large object.

In addition to the items listed for the vehicle detection AEB system, the pedestrian detection AEB system does not operate if:

- The vehicles speed is above 60 km/h (37 mph).
- The detected object is not identified as a pedestrian.
- The height of the object is less than 1 m.
- The pedestrian detection AEB system cannot determine that the target object is a pedestrian. For example, if the pedestrian is carrying a large object.

In addition to the items listed for the vehicle detection AEB system, the cyclist detection AEB system does not operate if:

- The vehicle's speed is above 60 km/h (37 mph).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- The detected object is not identified as a cyclist.
- The cyclist AEB detection system cannot determine that the target object is a cyclist. For example, if the cyclist is carrying a large object.

ADVANCED EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (AEBA)

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and notes have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 215, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.

Advanced Emergency Brake Assist (AEBA) prepares the braking system if it detects a collision is imminent. If the driver subsequently presses the brake pedal, full braking force is applied immediately.

AEBA still operates if forward alert is switched off.

ADVANCED EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (AEBA) LIMITATIONS

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before driving the vehicle. The Advanced Emergency Brake Assist (AEBA) feature does not take away the requirement to always drive with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

The AEBA feature may not react to slow-moving vehicles.

The AEBA feature does not react to vehicles travelling in the opposite direction.

In some circumstances, warnings may not display in the instrument panel. For example, if the distance to the vehicle ahead is very small. Another example includes when carrying out a collision avoidance manoeuvre by making large steering wheel and pedal movements.

AEBA operates at speeds above approximately 8 km/h (5 mph).

The distance required to slow or stop the vehicle is dependent on the condition of the vehicle's tyres and the road surface.

BLIND SPOT MONITOR

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and notes have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 215, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.



E210991

The blind spot monitor system monitors an area adjacent to, and approximately 8.5 m behind, the vehicle. When the system detects an overtaking vehicle, the amber warning icon (**1**):

- Flashes if the relevant direction indicator is being used.
- Illuminates continuously if the relevant direction indicator is not being used.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- Extinguishes when the system no longer detects a vehicle in the monitored area.

During initialisation, the warning icons flash in both door mirrors.

A warning indicator (**2**) illuminates in the door mirrors when the blind spot monitor system is disabled, not active, or there is a system fault.

The blind spot monitor system default mode is **ON** and the driver cannot switch the system off.

BLIND SPOT MONITOR LIMITATIONS

The blind spot monitor system does not operate when:

- Reverse (**R**) or Park (**P**) is selected.
- The vehicle's speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph).
- The radar sensors become blocked or stop working.
- The door mirrors stop working.
- An electrical connector is connected to a Jaguar Land Rover approved trailer socket.

  Note: *The blind spot monitor system remains disabled if a trailer is disconnected from the trailer socket while the vehicle is still running. Switch the vehicle's electrical system off, then back on again, to enable the blind spot monitor system.*

The blind spot monitor system:

- Works most effectively on multi-lane roads.
- Monitors an area of approximately 3.3 m from the side of the vehicle, and approximately 8.5 m behind the vehicle.
- May register false targets if travelling along a narrow lane.
- Does not work accurately if the sensors are misaligned due to bumper modifications or impact damage.

The instrument panel display messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

CLOSING VEHICLE SENSING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and notes have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 215, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.

The closing vehicle sensing system monitors an area adjacent to, and up to approximately 70 m behind, the vehicle. Closing vehicle sensing is automatically switched on when the blind spot monitor system is on. See **220, BLIND SPOT MONITOR**.



E210991

An amber warning icon (**1**) is located in each door mirror. The icon:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- Illuminates continuously if the detected vehicle enters the area monitored by the closing vehicle sensing system, and the relevant direction indicator is not being used. See **220, BLIND SPOT MONITOR**.
- Flashes if the detected vehicle enters the area monitored by the closing vehicle sensing system, and the relevant direction indicator is being used. See **220, BLIND SPOT MONITOR**.

A warning indicator (**2**) illuminates in the door mirrors when the closing vehicle sensing system is disabled, not active, or there is a system fault.

CLOSING VEHICLE SENSING LIMITATIONS

The closing vehicle sensing system does not operate when:

- Reverse (**R**) or Park (**P**) is selected.
- The vehicle's speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph).
- The sensors become blocked.
- The blind spot monitor system is not operating.
- The vehicle is travelling around a tight bend.
- An electrical connector is connected to a Jaguar Land Rover approved trailer socket.

Note: *The closing vehicle sensing system remains disabled if a trailer is disconnected from the trailer socket while the vehicle is still running. Switch the vehicle's electrical system, then back on again, to enable the closing vehicle sensing system.*

The closing vehicle sensing system:

- Works most effectively on multi-lane roads.
- Monitors an area of approximately 3.3 m from the side of the vehicle, and approximately 70 m behind the vehicle.
- May register false targets if travelling along a narrow lane.
- Does not work accurately if the sensors are misaligned due to bumper modifications or impact damage.

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and notes have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 215, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.

Note: *Make sure the Blind Spot Assist (BSA) system is disabled when connecting a trailer.*

The Blind Spot Assist (BSA) system applies corrective steering inputs if:

- A vehicle is detected in the blind spot monitor area, and:
- A lane change manoeuvre is attempted.



If a lane change manoeuvre is initiated while a risk is detected, the relevant door mirror displays a flashing vehicle warning icon.

At the same time, a rotational force is applied to the steering wheel to counter the lane change. The instrument panel displays a warning icon with an audio alert when a rotational force is applied to the steering wheel.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *The Head-Up Display (HUD) also displays a warning.*

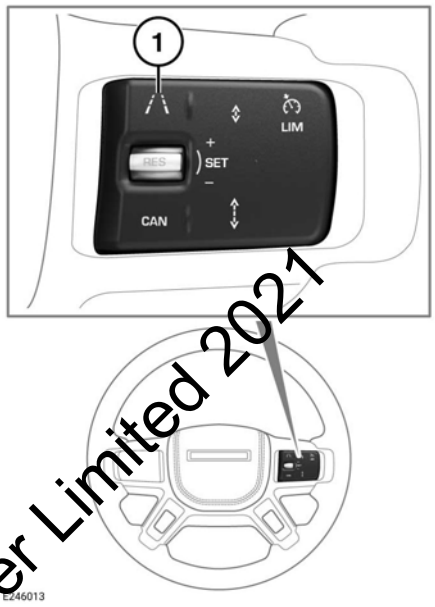
Note: *The BSA system operates irrespective of the use of direction indicators.*

If required, the steering input provided by the BSA system can be overridden in order to complete a lane change manoeuvre. To override the steering input, the driver must apply force to the steering wheel, to counter steer the steering input from the BSA system.

The Blind Spot Assist (BSA) system can be switched on and off via the driver assistance button (**1**). The button icon illuminates green to confirm system status.

Note: *The BSA system selection is retained in the vehicle's memory after the vehicle is switched off.*

A warning indicator (**2**) also illuminates in the door mirrors when the BSA and blind spot monitor system's are disabled, not active, or there is a system fault. See **220, BLIND SPOT MONITOR**.



Note: *The driver assistance button (**1**) also controls operation of the Lane Keep Assist (LKA) system. See **232, LANE KEEP ASSIST (LKA)**.*

BLIND SPOT ASSIST LIMITATIONS

The Blind Spot Assist (BSA) system does not operate when:

- Reverse (**R**) or Park (**P**) is selected.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The driver has applied excessive steering force.
- The vehicle's speed is approximately below 64 km/h (40 mph) or above 180 km/h (112 mph).
- Driving in lanes narrower than approximately 3 m or wider than approximately 4 m.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- The sensors in the rear bumper become blocked.
- The camera under the rear-view mirror becomes blocked.
- The blind spot monitor system is not operating.
- A fault occurs in the system.

The BSA system does not operate if:

- Adverse weather conditions exist. For example, heavy fog, rain, or snow.
- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is active.
- Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) is active.
- The driver has applied a counter steering input that is greater than the steering input from the blind spot assist system.

The BSA system:

- Works in conjunction with the blind spot monitor and closing vehicle sensing systems.
- May register false targets if travelling along a narrow lane.
- Does not work accurately if the sensors are misaligned due to bumper modifications or impact damage.

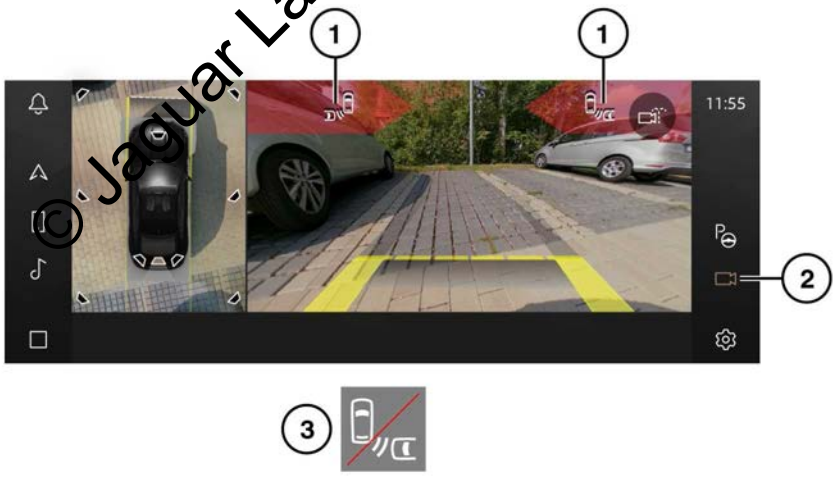
The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

REAR TRAFFIC MONITOR

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and notes have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 215, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.

Note: *The quality of the camera views may vary in different lighting conditions.*

Note: *Depending on the market in which the vehicle is used, an audible and visual warning is provided during a reversing manouevre.*



E246298

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

1. **Collision impact alert** icon.
2. **Camera** icon.
3. **Rear traffic monitor unavailable** icon.

The rear traffic monitor system consists of two features to assists the driver when carrying out a reversing manouevre:

- **Rear Traffic Warning**: The **Rear Traffic Warning** feature detects cross traffic moving target objects from speeds of approximately 3.6 km/h (2.2 mph) up to 70 km/h (43 mph). If activated, the touchscreen displays the **collision impact alert** icon (**1**) on the relevant side(s) of the screen. The **collision impact alert** icon informs the driver the vehicle is about to reverse into the path of a moving object. If a detected object is calculated to be a collision threat, a red coloured block displays. An audible warning also sounds when the collision threat is red.

  Note: *Audible warnings do not sound if the vehicle is stationary. Additionally, audible warnings are not repeated until the collision threat visual alert disappears.*

- **Rear Traffic Braking**: In the event of an imminent collision, the **Rear Traffic Braking** feature applies the brakes to try and prevent an accident. All emergency braking warnings are displayed via the instrument panel.

The **Rear Traffic Warning** feature is active when Reverse (**R**) gear is selected. The feature also becomes active from a stationary position and remains active up to speeds of approximately 16 km/h (10 mph).

If required, the **Rear Traffic Warning** feature can be switched on or off via the driver assistance menu. To switch the **Rear Traffic Warning** feature on or off, complete the following steps:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Driver Assistance**.
4. Select **Collision avoidance**.
5. **Rear Traffic Warning**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.

   Note: *If **Rear Traffic Warning** is switched off, the **collision impact alert** icon does not display, and no audio alert sound.*

The **Rear Traffic Braking** feature is active when the vehicle detects reverse movement and remains active up to speeds of approximately 10 km/h (5 mph).

The **Rear Traffic Braking** feature can also be switched on or off via the driver assistance menu. To switch the **Rear Traffic Braking** feature on or off, complete the following steps:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Driver Assistance**.
4. Select **Collision avoidance**.
5. **Rear Traffic Braking**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.

   Note: *If **Rear Traffic Braking** is switched off, the system does not apply the brakes if a imminent collision is detected.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The touchscreen displays the **Rear traffic monitor unavailable** icon (**3**) if either the **Rear Traffic Warning** or **Rear Traffic Braking** feature is not available, or if a fault is detected. The icon (**3**) also displays if both features are not available, or a fault is detected.

Note: *If a fault in a single sensor is detected, the entire rear traffic monitor feature is disabled.*

Note: *If the rear sensors are blocked, the rear traffic monitor's performance will be reduced, or the feature may be disabled all together. In the event that this occurs, the instrument panel displays a message requesting the rear bumper to be cleared of the obstacle and icon (**3**) displays on the touchscreen.*

If a fault is not rectified when the vehicle's electrical system is switched off and then on again, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

REAR PROTECTION MONITOR

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and notes have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 215, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.

The rear protection monitor system helps identify any potential collision risks from the rear of the vehicle.

The system monitors an area of approximately 80 m behind the vehicle for threats from other vehicles that are approaching the rear at high speeds.

The system warns the driver of the vehicle approaching behind, of any potential collision by flashing the hazards lights rapidly.

The rear protection monitor system default mode is **ON** and the driver cannot switch the system off.

REAR PROTECTION MONITOR LIMITATIONS

The rear protection monitor system does not operate when:

- Reverse (**R**) is selected.
- The relative speed between the host vehicle and threat vehicle is below 10 km/h (6 mph).
- The sensors in the rear bumper become blocked.
- A vehicle crash is detected.
- An electrical connector is connected to a Jaguar Land Rover approved trailer socket.

The rear protection monitor system:

- May register false targets if travelling along a narrow lane, or in stop and go traffic.
- Does not work accurately if the sensors are misaligned due to bumper modifications or impact damage.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC). Failure to follow the guidance could result in vehicle damage, serious injury, or death.

Use extreme care when manoeuvring the vehicle in challenging off-road conditions. The driver must maintain full control of the steering and be prepared to use the brakes at all times.

Do not attempt a steep descent if ATPC is not enabled, or if the instrument panel displays any warning lamps or messages.

Do not allow ATPC displays to distract the driver while the vehicle is moving.

ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) OVERVIEW

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before using All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC). See 227, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) SAFETY.

ATPC is an aid to off-road driving. When activated, the system attempts to maintain a constant vehicle speed when met with challenging off-road conditions. For example, when traversing snow, grass, gravel, sand, or mud.

Two levels of ATPC are available:

- Descent control mode. See **228, DESCENT CONTROL MODE**.
- Full function mode. See **229, FULL FUNCTION MODE**.

When ATPC is enabled, and the brake pedal is fully released, the system helps to provide controlled and progressive assistance to allow the vehicle to:

- Pull away from a standstill, in a forward or reverse direction, on level ground, uphill, or downhill.
- Perform low speed manoeuvring in a forward or reverse direction.
- Make progress and maintain a selected speed, up to a maximum of 30 km/h (19 mph).

ATPC also works in conjunction with the terrain response system, and applies different acceleration rates based on the selected driving program. For example, the grass gravel snow setting requires the ATPC system to apply gentle vehicle acceleration. The comfort setting requires the ATPC system to apply a greater rate of vehicle acceleration. See **192, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.

The instrument panel displays warning and information messages to make sure the full benefits of ATPC are realised.

Note: *The cruise control, speed limiter, and auto stop/start systems are disabled when ATPC is operating.*

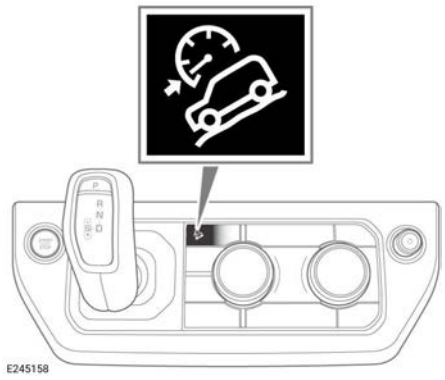
ENABLING ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before using All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC). See 227, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) SAFETY.

ATPC can be enabled when the vehicle is stationary or moving. When enabled, the system defaults to descent control mode. See **228, DESCENT CONTROL MODE**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC)



The ATPC button is located on the front control panel. The ATPC button also controls operation of the Hill Descent Control (HDC) system. See **197, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC)**.

The button operates as follows:

- A first press of the button enables the HDC system.
- A second press of the button disables the HDC system and enables ATPC.
- A third press of the button disables ATPC.



The instrument panel displays an information lamp, a speed gauge, and a message to confirm that ATPC has been enabled.

The instrument panel also displays a message prompting the driver to select a set speed for the vehicle.

To enter descent control mode, see **228, DESCENT CONTROL MODE**.

To enter full function mode, see **229, FULL FUNCTION MODE**.

ATPC remains enabled for 6 hours after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off.

DESCENT CONTROL MODE

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before using All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC). See 227, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) SAFETY.

Descent control mode attempts to maintain a constant vehicle speed when descending a slope.

To enter descent control mode:

1. Carefully position the vehicle at the top of a slope.
2. With the vehicle stationary, press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Enable ATPC. See **227, ENABLING ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)**.
4. Select an appropriate terrain response program. See **192, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.
5. Select Drive (**D**).
6. Release the brake pedal.

ATPC takes control of the vehicle's speed during the descent. The selected terrain response program determines the vehicle's speed during the descent. The vehicle's speed can be reduced by moving the **SET** rocker switch on the right side steering wheel controls downward.

ATPC suspends descent control mode operation if the accelerator pedal is pressed. Descent control mode resumes once the accelerator pedal is no longer being used.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

FULL FUNCTION MODE

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before using All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC). See 227, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) SAFETY.

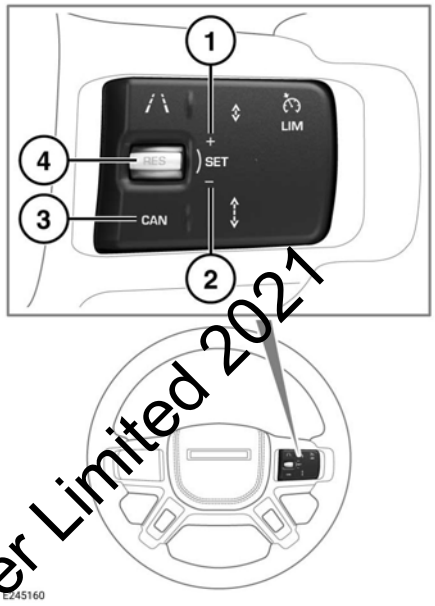
Full function mode builds on the features available in descent control mode, to further enhance the vehicle's ability to gain traction in challenging conditions. The benefits of full function mode include:

- Making a controlled ascent.
- Pulling away from a standstill.
- Driving on unstable and slippery surfaces.

Note: *Full function mode is only available if the driver's seat belt is buckled and all doors are closed. The instrument panel displays a warning message if these conditions are not met.*

To enter full function mode, first enable ATPC. See **227, ENABLING ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)**.

The vehicle is now in descent control mode.



To enter full function mode with the vehicle stationary, move the rocker switch (**4**) up to the **SET+** position (**1**) with the brake pedal firmly pressed.

To enter full function mode with the vehicle moving, move the rocker switch (**4**) up to the **SET+** position (**1**).

To adjust the vehicle's speed while full function mode is active:

- Move the switch (**4**) up to the **SET+** position (**1**) to raise the vehicle's set speed, or:
- Move the switch (**4**) down to the **SET–** position (**2**) to lower the vehicle's set speed.
- Press the **CAN** button (**3**) to cancel the speed adjustment, and revert back to descent control mode.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- Press the **RES** switch (**4**) to resume the set speed, if the vehicle's speed has been lowered through gentle application of the brake pedal.

The RES switch should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it. Pressing the RES switch when not aware of the set speed may lead to a loss of control of the vehicle. Loss of vehicle control could potentially lead to serious injury or death.

Incremental increases or decreases in the set speed vary depending on the vehicle's current set speed, as follows:

- 0.5 km/h (0.3 mph) increments if the vehicle's set speed is between 0 and 5 km/h (0 and 3 mph).
- 1 km/h (0.6 mph) increments if the vehicle's set speed is between 5 and 10 km/h (3 and 6 mph).
- 2 km/h (1 mph) increments if the vehicle's set speed is between 10 and 30 km/h (6 and 19 mph).

The minimum set speed is 3 km/h (2 mph) when the vehicle is in high range. The minimum set speed is 1.5 km/h (1 mph) when the vehicle is in low range. See **173, SELECTING HIGH AND LOW RANGE**.

ATPC reverts back to descent mode if:

- Park (**P**) or Neutral (**N**) is selected.
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The brake pedal is firmly pressed.
- The vehicle is brought to a standstill through light application of the brake pedal.

Light, gentle use of the brake pedal lowers the full function mode set speed. When the brake pedal is released, ATPC maintains the speed at which the vehicle was travelling when the brake pedal was released. A slight pulsation may be felt through the brake pedal when ATPC is actively braking.

ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) LIMITATIONS

All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) does not operate if the following systems are enabled:

- Advanced tow assist.
- Wade sensing.

ATPC may also not operate if a system fault is present.

ATPC operation is disabled if the vehicle's speed rises above 80 km/h (50 mph). In this event, the ATPC information lamp extinguishes.

ATPC operation is suspended if:

- The vehicle's speed rises above 30 km/h (19 mph). In this event, the ATPC information lamp flashes. ATPC operation resumes if the vehicle's speed drops below 30 km/h (19 mph).
- The brake or accelerator pedals are used. ATPC operation resumes when the pedals are no longer being used.

ATPC performance is affected:

- If a fault is present in the system. In some circumstances, ATPC may operate in descent control mode only. In this event, the **SET** rocker switch on the right side steering wheel controls can moved upward to increase the descent control mode set speed.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- If the vehicle's brakes become overheated. ATPC operation is suspended if brake temperatures continue to rise.

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

DRIVING AIDS SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings and notes have been read and fully understood before using a driving aid system. Failure to use the driving aids safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

Despite the vehicle being fitted with driving aids, the driver is still responsible for driving with due care and attention. The driver should also observe all road markings. Only drive in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users.

Driving aids are a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style.

Always use the door and rear-view mirrors. Drive safely at all times, and use the door and rear-view mirrors to help avoid accidents.

Driving aids may not function at all speeds, or in all weather conditions.

Driving aids do not correct errors of judgement when driving.

The sensors and camera used by the driving aids may become impaired by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow and road spray. The driving aids ability to detect a risk may subsequently be affected and may give false indications.

Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper or to the windscreen. Operation of the sensors and camera may subsequently become impaired. The driving aids ability to detect a risk may subsequently be affected, and may give false indications.

Do not attach stickers or other objects to the door mirrors, as the blind spot icons and indicators may become obscured. Obscuring the icons and indicators could cause system miscalculations and increase the risk of a collision during a vehicle manoeuvre.

The performance of the lane aid systems is affected by tyre pressures and steering alignment. Constant steering adjustment may be required if the tyre pressures are low, or if the steering is out of alignment. Constant steering adjustment increases the risk of an accident. Check the tyre pressures regularly. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer if it is believed that the steering is out of alignment.

Note: *The driving aids radar is approved in all RTTE countries.*

LANE KEEP ASSIST (LKA)

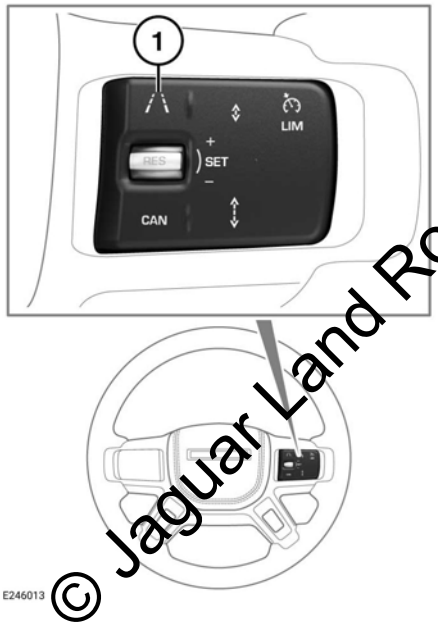
Make sure the relevant safety warnings and notes have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 232, DRIVING AIDS SAFETY.

Note: *Make sure the Lane Keep Assist (LKA) system is disabled when connecting a trailer.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Lane Keep Assist (LKA) monitors the road lane markings in the event of an unintentional road lane departure. If the vehicle is about to cross a lane boundary, a rotational force is applied to the steering wheel to counter the lane boundary crossing. The instrument panel displays a warning icon when a rotational force is applied to the steering wheel.

Note: *The LKA system does not assist the driver if road lane markings tracking is not available.*



The Lane Keep Assist (LKA) system can be switched on and off via the driver assistance button (**1**). The button icon illuminates green when the LKA system is switched on.

Note: *The driver assistance button (**1**) also controls operation of the Blind Spot Assist (BSA) system. See **222, BLIND SPOT ASSIST**.*

Note: *The LKA system selection is retained in the vehicle's memory after the vehicle is switched off.*

The instrument panel displays an icon when the LKA system is switched on. The icon changes colour as follows:

- Grey lines indicate:
  - The lane boundaries are not being tracked.
  - The driver is indicating on the same side.

    Note: *When indicating left, the left side only is greyed out. The same strategy applies when indicating right.*
  - One or more of the system limitations criteria may have been met. See **234, LANE KEEP ASSIST (LKA) LIMITATIONS**.
- Green lines indicate that the lane boundaries are being tracked.
- Red lines indicate when the LKA feature is intervening.

LKA status can also be viewed via the **Driver Assistance** instrument panel view. See **72, CONFIGURING A VIRTUAL INSTRUMENT PANEL**.

The **Driver Assistance** view displays a visual representation of the vehicle's position within a lane in the instrument panel. The lane boundaries change the same colour as the icon:

- Grey
- Green
- Red

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *The Head-Up Display (HUD) also displays a warning.*

LANE KEEP ASSIST (LKA) LIMITATIONS

The Lane Keep Assist (LKA) system is not active when:

- Reverse (**R**) or Park (**P**) is selected.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- A direction indicator is being used.
- The road lanes are not available or in poor condition.
- The road lane markings are not detected.
- The vehicle's speed is approximately below 64 km/h (40 mph) or above 180 km/h (112 mph).
- Driving in lanes narrower than approximately 3 m or wider than approximately 4 m.
- Turning in tight road bends.
- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is active.
- Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) is active.
- A fault occurs in the system.
- The driver has applied excessive steering force.

The LKA system does not operate if:

- The road edges are unmarked.
- The windscreen area in front of the rear-view mirror becomes blocked by stickers, mud, snow, or debris.
- Adverse weather conditions exist. For example, heavy fog, rain, or snow.
- The driver has applied a counter steering input that is greater than the steering input from the LKA system.

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

Note: *If a system fault has been detected with the instrument panel or Head-Up Display (HUD), the LKA continues to operate as intended.*

EMERGENCY LANE KEEP ASSIST

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and notes have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 232, DRIVING AIDS SAFETY.

Note: *Make sure the Emergency Lane Keep Assist (ELKA) system is disabled when connecting a trailer.*

Note: *Make sure the ELKA system is switched off before driving off-road.*

Note: *The ELKA system automatically switches on every time the vehicle's electrical system switched on.*

The Emergency Lane Keep Assist (ELKA) system attempts to provide corrective steering inputs if it determines the following:

- The vehicle is getting too close to horizontal road edges. For example, grass, mud, and snow.
- The vehicle is drifting towards adjacent lane where oncoming vehicles are detected.

Note: *ELKA operates irrespective of the use of the direction indicators.*

The ELKA system can be switched on or off via the touchscreen. To switch the system on or off, complete the following steps:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Driver Assistance**.
4. Select **Collision avoidance**.
5. **Emergency lane keeping**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.



The instrument panel displays visual warnings to inform the driver of the ELKA system's status. The vehicle's speakers also provide audio warnings for oncoming interventions only.

Note: *The Head-Up Display also displays a warning.*

EMERGENCY LANE KEEP ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Note: *ELKA feature detecting oncoming vehicles is only operational when detecting oncoming vehicle in adjacent road lane.*

The Emergency Lane Keep Assist (ELKA) system is not active when:

- Reverse (**R**) or Park (**P**) is selected.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The vehicle's speed is approximately:
  - Below 64 km/h (40 mph) or above 180 km/h (112 mph) when ELKA is detecting road edges.
  - Below 64 km/h (40 mph) or above 120 km/h (75 mph) when ELKA is detecting oncoming vehicles.
- The road edges are not detected.
- Turning in tight road bends.
- The driver has applied excessive steering force.
- Driving in lanes narrower than approximately 3 m or wider than approximately 4 m.
- A fault occurs in the system.

The ELKA system does not operate if:

- The windscreen area in front of the rear-view mirror becomes blocked by stickers, mud, snow, or debris.
- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is active.
- Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) is active.
- The driver has applied a counter steering input that is greater than the steering input from the ELKA system.

The ELKA system performance maybe significantly degraded if adverse weather conditions exist. For example, heavy fog, rain, or snow.

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

Note: *If a system fault has been detected with the instrument panel or Head-Up Display (HUD), the ELKA continues to operate as intended.*

DRIVER CONDITION MONITOR

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and notes have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 232, DRIVING AIDS SAFETY.

The driver condition monitor feature continuously evaluates driving technique for signs of fatigue. The feature determines fatigue in two levels:

1. Fatigued.
2. Highly fatigued.

In the event of the driver becoming fatigued:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



The instrument panel displays a white icon. The instrument panel also emits a chime.

The driver condition monitor feature may warn the driver every five minutes if the driver continues to be fatigued.

Note: *After 30 seconds the fatigued white icon extinguishes automatically.*

In the event of the driver becoming highly fatigued:



The instrument panel displays an amber icon. The instrument panel also emits a chime.

The driver condition monitor feature may warn the driver every five minutes if the driver continues to be highly fatigued.

Note: *The highly fatigued amber icon remains displayed until the driver has acknowledged the warning.*

The driver condition monitor feature can be switched on or off via the touchscreen. To switch the feature on or off, complete the following steps:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Driver Assistance**.
4. Select **Driver condition monitor**.
5. **Driver fatigue alert**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.

Note: *The **Driver fatigue alert** setting always returns to its default state **ON**, after the vehicle is switched off, even if the driver disabled the feature.*

The driver condition monitor feature can also find nearby rest areas, if selected, for when the driver becomes fatigued.

The instrument panel notifies the driver that rest areas are available nearby. The rest areas display on the touchscreen.

To switch the feature on or off, complete the following steps:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Driver Assistance**.
4. Select **Driver condition monitor**.
5. **Find rest areas**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.

Note: *The **Find rest areas** feature selection is retained in the vehicle's memory after the vehicle is switched off.*

DRIVER CONDITION MONITOR LIMITATIONS

The driver condition monitor is not active when the vehicle's speed is below 60 km/h (37 mph) or above 180 km/h (112 mph).

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and notes have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 232, DRIVING AIDS SAFETY.

The traffic sign recognition system is a driving aid only. The responsibility remains with the driver to follow the legal road speed limits.

Note: *The traffic sign recognition system default state is on and cannot be disabled.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The traffic sign recognition system uses a forward-facing camera, located in the rear-view mirror and the vehicle's navigation map data. The camera detects speed signs, no overtaking signs, and variable overhead speed signs.



The instrument panel displays symbols of recognised traffic signs. If no speed limit signs are visible, the instrument panel displays speed limit information taken from the navigation system.

The traffic sign recognition system also allows the driver to set a speed limit alert, e.g., when the vehicle speed goes past the speed limit set by the driver.

To access the speed limit alert menu, complete the following steps:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Driver Assistance**.
4. Select **Cruise and speed assistance**.
5. **Speed limit warning**. Touch to select the required setting:
   - **Off**.
   - **At limit**.
   - **Limit + 5 km/h (3 mph)**.
   - **Limit + 10 km/h (5 mph)**.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

The traffic sign recognition system does not operate to the optimum performance, if the windscreen area in front of the rear-view mirror becomes blocked. For example, by stickers, mud, snow, or debris. The traffic sign recognition continues to operate using the vehicle's navigation map information. In the event that the traffic sign recognition system becomes unavailable, the speed limit alert feature also becomes unavailable.

The traffic sign recognition system:

- Does not perform to the best of its ability in adverse weather conditions. For example, heavy fog, rain, or snow.
- May not perform, or may perform incorrectly, when the vehicle is travelling through an area not covered by the navigation system.
- May function incorrectly when driving toward bright lights.
- May not recognise concealed, covered, or non-conforming road signs.
- May not perform to the best of its ability if the navigation maps are out of date.

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver if the forward facing camera is blocked.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before using the touchscreen controls. Failure to use the touchscreen controls safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury, death or damage to the vehicle and its components.

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

Do not use excessive pressure when selecting items on the touchscreen. Using excessive pressure could cause the touchscreen to malfunction or even lead to complete failure.

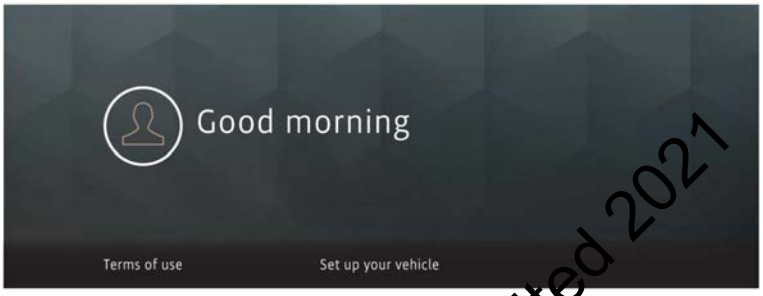
Do not use abrasive cleaners on the touchscreen. For approved cleaning products, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer.

Always run the engine during prolonged use of the touchscreen. Failure to do so may discharge the vehicle's battery and prevent the engine from starting.

Avoid spilling or splashing liquids onto the touchscreen. The spilling or splashing of liquids could cause the touchscreen to malfunction or even lead to complete failure.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

WELCOME SCREEN



E249201

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 238, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Note: *Creation of a profile can only be performed if the vehicle is stationary.*

The greetings screen is displayed upon screen start-up.

If a profile has not already been created, touch **Set up your vehicle**. Otherwise touch the stored profile to open the home screen.

To **Set up your vehicle**:

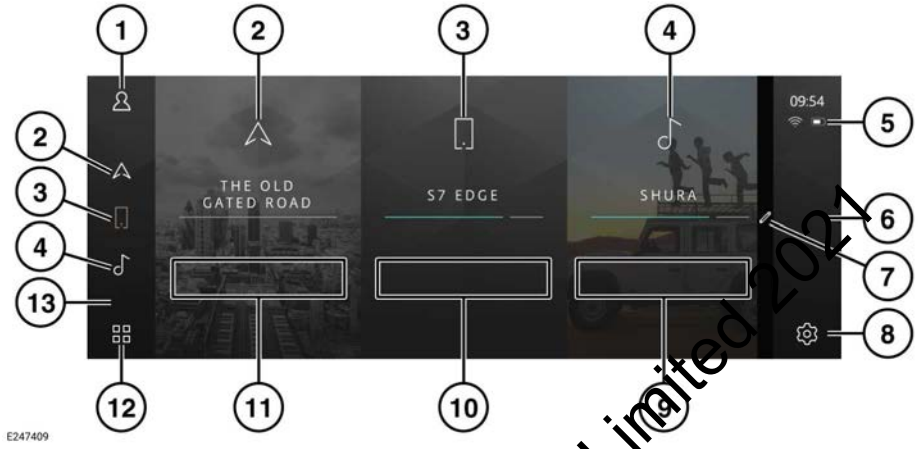
1. Touch **Set up your vehicle**.
2. Select a language from the drop-down menu.
3. Touch **Confirm**.
4. A **Welcome** message is displayed. Touch **Get started** to continue with the set up process.
5. Create a profile name and touch **Next**.
6. Complete the on-screen set-up option process.
7. On profile set-up completion, touch **Finish set up**.

For further information on profile settings, refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **248, PROFILE SETTINGS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Touchscreen home

TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU



Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 238, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Note: *A gloved hand may not operate the touchscreen. Remove glove(s) before selecting any touchscreen features.*

1. **Profile** icon: Touch to check for any received notifications. Notifications can only be received when the option has been activated. See **249, NOTIFICATIONS SETTINGS**.
2. **Navigation** icon and tile: Touch to select the **NAVIGATION** assistance map. See **317, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.
3. **Phone** icon and tile: Touch to select the **PHONE** screen. See **305, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.
4. **Media** icon and tile: Touch to select the media source select screen. See **252, MEDIA CONTROLS**.
5. **Status** icons: Display the status of a vehicle feature or application. See **241, TOUCHSCREEN STATUS ICONS**.
6. Passenger side bar: The passenger side bar icons displayed are dependent on the vehicle's market specification. See **242, PASSENGER SIDE BAR ICONS**.
7. **Edit** icon[1]: Swipe the home screen to the left or right to reveal the **edit** icon[1]. Touch the **edit** icon[1] to make changes to the home screen. The home screen can be edited to display a maximum of nine tiles. See **247, TOUCHSCREEN DISPLAY SETTINGS**.
8. **Settings** icon: Touch to select the settings screen. Select **HOME SCREEN** for settings. The **QUICK**, **AUDIO** and **ALL** soft keys are permanent options. See **247, TOUCHSCREEN DISPLAY SETTINGS**, **254, AUDIO SETTINGS**, and **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

9. Media shortcut icons: The media shortcut icons displayed are dependent on the vehicle's market specification. See **243, MEDIA SHORTCUT ICONS**.
10. Phone shortcut icons: The phone shortcut icons displayed are dependent on the vehicle's market specification. See **243, PHONE SHORTCUT ICONS**.
11. Navigation shortcut icons: The navigation shortcut icons displayed are dependent on the vehicle's market specification. See **242, NAVIGATION SHORTCUT ICONS**.
12. **Apps** icon: Touch to select the apps screen. See **245, APPS SCREEN**.
13. Driver side bar: The driver side bar can accommodate three shortcut icons, which can be customised. See **241, DRIVER SIDE BAR ICONS**.



Edit icon.[1]

TOUCHSCREEN STATUS ICONS

The status icons displayed on the passenger side bar provide information about the status of the vehicle feature or application. See **240, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.



Phone signal strength indicator.



Phone battery level indicator.



Traffic Alerts.



Wi-Fi signal.



Connecting.



Network connection status.



No mobile network connection.



Wireless charging.

DRIVER SIDE BAR ICONS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 238, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

The following icon options may be displayed on the driver side bar on the touchscreen:



Home icon: Touch to return to the home screen.

Note: *The* ***home*** *icon is replaced with the* ***apps*** *icon on the home screen.*



Apps icon: Touch to view the apps screen. See **245, APPS SCREEN**.

Note: *The* ***apps*** *icon is only available when the home screen is displayed.*



Profile icon: Touch to check for any received notifications.

The following icons are default icons which can be customised:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



Navigation icon: Touch to view the navigation screen. See **317, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.



Phone icon: Touch to view the phone screen. See **305, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.



Media icon: Touch to view the media source select screen. See **252, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

To customise the driver side bar icons:

1. Touch and hold the driver side bar icon to be customised.
2. An apps icon screen opens.
3. Touch and hold the desired replacement apps icon.
4. Drag the replacement apps icon to the driver side bar, and over the existing icon to be customised.
5. Release the icon to complete customisation.
6. Touch the screen **exit** icon[1], on completion, to return to the home screen.



Exit icon.[1]

PASSENGER SIDE BAR ICONS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 238, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

The following icon options may be displayed on the passenger side bar on the touchscreen:



Settings icon: Touch to view the system settings options. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.



Automatic parking aid icon: Touch to open the parking aid screen. See **287, SELECTING PARKING AID**.



Cameras feature icon: Touch to open the cameras feature screen. See **293, CAMERA SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.

NAVIGATION SHORTCUT ICONS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 238, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

The following navigation shortcut icon options may be displayed in the navigation pane:



Take me home icon: Touch to activate a stored home destination, or input the home destination details.



Search navigation icon: Touch to activate a navigation search.



Cancel guidance icon: Touch to cancel destination guidance.



Recent destinations icon: Touch to view a list of recent destinations.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

MEDIA SHORTCUT ICONS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 238, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

The following media shortcut icon options may be displayed in the media pane:

Search media icon: Touch to search for media within the current source.

Favourites icon: Touch to view the stored favourites list.

Playlist icon: Touch to view the stored playlist.

Play icon: Touch to play the selected media.

Pause icon: Touch to pause the selected media.

Mute icon: When displayed, the volume for the media device is muted. Touch to un-mute.

When any of the following media shortcut icons are displayed, touch the icon to open the source select options:

AM radio icon.

FM radio icon.

DAB radio icon.

Phone media icon.

USB icon.

PHONE SHORTCUT ICONS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 238, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Note: *If a phone is not paired to the vehicle, then no icons are displayed on the touchscreen's home menu phone pane.*

The following phone shortcut icon options may be displayed in the phone pane:

Swap phone icon: Touch to open and change the phone from the stored list. See **308, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE**.

Recent calls icon: Touch to view a list of recent calls.

Voicemail icon: When activated, touch to access received voicemails.

Mute icon: Touch to mute the microphone and initiate privacy mode. While selected, the caller cannot hear the conversation.

TOUCHSCREEN USE

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 238, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Touchscreen home

Definitions for the various button taps and touchscreen gestures used in this handbook:

- Touch: Briefly touch the screen's surface with a fingertip.
- Touch and hold: Touch the screen's surface for an extended period of time.
- Swipe: Move a fingertip over the screen's surface in a fast linear movement.
- Drag: Touch an object and move it with a fingertip over the screen's surface, without losing contact.
- Pinch: Spread two fingers apart on a map or image to zoom in. Pinch two fingers together on a map or image to zoom out.

TOUCHSCREEN CARE

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 238, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Follow the cleaning instructions. See **381, CLEANING SCREENS AND DISPLAYS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

APPS SCREEN

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 238, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Select the apps icon from the home screen. See **240, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.

The apps screen menu gives options for enabling, disabling, or adjusting the settings of available features. Scroll up or down to view the listed apps. Touch the apps feature to launch the required application or settings screen:

- **ACCOUNTS**.
- **CAMERAS**.
- **SEATS**.
- **CLIMATE**.
- **VALET MODE**.
- **VEHICLE DEPARTURES**.
- **ECO DATA**.
- **EV**.
- **LOW TRACTION LAUNCH**.
- **VOICE**.
- **4x4i**.
- **WADE SENSING**.
- **ANDROID AUTO**.
- **APPLE CARPLAY**.
- **TOWING & TRAILERS**.
- **TOW BAR**.
- **SIDE STEPS**.
- **VEHICLE DIMENSIONS**.
- **NAVIGATION**.
- **PHONE**.
- **MEDIA**.

Note: *The number of listed apps varies, depending on the specification of the vehicle.*

The order of the listed icons, in the apps screen, are able to be customised.

To customise the order of the listed icons:

1. Touch and hold the apps icon to be moved.
2. Drag the apps icon to the desired position in the list.
3. Release the icon to complete the move.
4. Touch the exit icon[1], on completion.



Exit icon.[1]

SELECTING VALET MODE

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 238, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Valet mode allows the vehicle to be driven and locked by a parking attendant, without giving access to the loadspace. Valet mode also prevents operation of the touchscreen, to prevent access to phone numbers or navigation addresses. Only essential driver assist features are available, such as cameras and parking aid.

To select valet mode:

1. Touch **VALET MODE** in the apps screen. See **245, APPS SCREEN**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

2. Enter the **Master PIN** or a memorable four digit temporary PIN. When a temporary PIN is used, it has to be entered a second time to confirm the PIN. To cancel the PIN, touch the **back** icon.[1] If the confirmation PIN is incorrectly entered, a prompt is displayed to re-enter the PIN.

   Note: *When set with the master PIN, only the master PIN can unlock valet mode. When set with a temporary PIN, the temporary PIN or the master PIN unlocks valet mode.*

3. The touchscreen displays **Valet Mode Enabled**, indicating that the PIN has been accepted. The touchscreen and loadspace are now securely locked in valet mode.

Access the master PIN update options via the **General** settings screen. See **249, GENERAL SETTINGS**.



Back icon.[1]

DESELECTING VALET MODE

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 238, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

To deselect valet mode:

1. When re-entering the vehicle, touch the touchscreen.
2. Enter the master PIN, or the temporary PIN if used to set.
3. The touchscreen opens at the previously displayed screen to indicate that the PIN has been accepted and valet mode has been deactivated. The touchscreen is enabled and the loadspace returns to the previously set security requirement.

Note: *If the master PIN is forgotten, valet mode can only be deactivated by a retailer/authorised repairer.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TOUCHSCREEN DISPLAY SETTINGS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 238, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

The touchscreen display settings can be adjusted via the quick settings screen.

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **QUICK** soft key.

The quick menu screen gives options for enabling, disabling, or adjusting the settings of the following available features:

- **Brightness** soft key: Touch the slider bar and drag left or right to adjust the backlight setting of the touchscreen display.
- **Screen off** soft key: Touch to power off the touchscreen.
- **Light theme**, **Dark theme**, or **Auto theme** soft key: Touching the relevant soft key should change the display to that setting.

  Note: *The screen remains in the selected mode, irrespective of the time of day.*
- **Home layout** soft key:
  - Touch the **Home layout** soft key.
  - Select either **App Tiles** or **App Icons** as the default home screen display.

Note: *The list varies, depending on the specification of the vehicle.*

The home screen can be edited to display, a minimum of two, and up to, a maximum of nine tiles.

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch the **Apps** soft key.
4. Touch the **Home Screen** soft key.
5. Touch the **Edit layout** soft key.
6. Touch and drag the desired app icon from the icon carousel to an empty home screen tile.

   Note: *The Navigation, Phone and Media tiles are default tiles but are also able to be edited.*

Settings icon.[1]

SYSTEM SETTINGS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 238, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

System settings allows for the adjustment of the selected features settings.

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.

The ALL settings menu is divided into categories:

- **Profiles**.
- **Connectivity**.
- **Vehicle**.
- **General**.
- **Languages and keyboards**.
- **Apps**.
- **Notifications**.
- **Software Updates**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Touchscreen settings

Touch to display the list of settings for the required system.

Note: *The list varies, depending on the specification of the vehicle.*



Settings icon.[1]

LANGUAGE AND KEYBOARD SETTINGS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 238, TOUCHSCHREEN SAFETY.

Languages and keyboard settings can be customised.

To customise the **Languages and keyboard** settings:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch **Languages and keyboards**.

To change the system **Languages**:

1. Touch the displayed language box below System languages.
2. Select the required language.
3. Touch the **back** icon[2] after selection.

To change the language box on **Keyboards**:

1. Touch the displayed language box below Keyboards.
2. Select the required language.

   Note: *A maximum of four languages can be selected and stored.*
3. Touch the **back** icon[2] after selection.

Keyboard Clicks can be toggled on or off.



Settings icon.[1]



Back icon.[2]

PROFILE SETTINGS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 238, TOUCHSCHREEN SAFETY.

Profiles gives the option to delete existing profiles or amend the detail of stored profiles.

To access the **Profile** settings:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch **Profiles**.

All profile settings:

1. Touch the forward arrow to open the option to **Delete all profiles**.
2. Touch the **exit** icon[2] after selection.

Existing profile editing:

1. Touch the forward arrow of the existing profile to be edited.
2. Follow the on-screen options to edit or remove the profile.
3. Touch the **exit** icon[2] after selection.

To add a profile account:

1. Touch **ACCOUNTS** in the apps screen. See **245, APPS SCREEN**.
2. Touch **Create Profile**.
3. Follow the profile creation option steps.
4. Touch the **Home** icon[3] to return to the home screen.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



Settings icon.[1]



Exit icon.[2]



Home icon.[3]

GENERAL SETTINGS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 238, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Accessing the touchscreen settings allows the adjustment of general system settings.

To access the **General** settings:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch **General**.

The **General** settings menu is divided into categories:

- **Voice Settings**.
- **Display**.
- **Master PIN**.

  Note: *Change the valet mode Master PIN to a personal PIN as soon as possible.*
- **Time and Date**.
- **Legal information**.

Touch to display the list of settings for the required system.

Touch the **back** icon[2] after selection.



Settings icon.[1]



Back icon.[2]

NOTIFICATIONS SETTINGS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 238, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Notifications settings gives the options to allow and manage notifications.

To access the **Notifications** settings:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch **Notifications**.

Allow Notifications: Toggle on or off.

Manage Notifications:

1. Touch the forward arrow to view all available settings options.
2. Touch the **back** icon[2] after selection.



Settings icon.[1]



Back icon.[2]

CUSTOMISABLE BUTTON SETTINGS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 238, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

To access the customisable button settings:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Touchscreen settings

2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch **Apps**.
4. Touch **Favourite Steering Wheel Switches**.
5. Select from the two customisable steering wheel button options:
   - **Short press**.
   - **Long press**.
6. Touch the forward arrow in the box below **Short press** or **Long press** to open the options menu.

There are four main feature options with sub options to choose from:

- **Navigation**.
  - **Cancel guidance**.
- **Media**.
  - **Next media source**.
  - **Mute Audio**.
  - **Play/pause**.
- **Phone**.
  - **Redial**.
  - **Voicemail**.
  - **Mute phone**.
  - **Hold**.
- **Other**.
  - **Upper screen off**.
  - **Traffic alerts**.

1. Select the main feature option.
2. Select the sub option.

Touch the **exit** icon[2] to return to the previously displayed screen.

A corresponding short press or long press of the steering wheel favourite button operates the stored feature. See **253, AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS**.



Settings icon.[1]



Exit icon.[2]

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

MEDIA SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before using any of the media controls or features. Failure to use the media controls or features safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury, death or damage to the vehicle and its components.

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

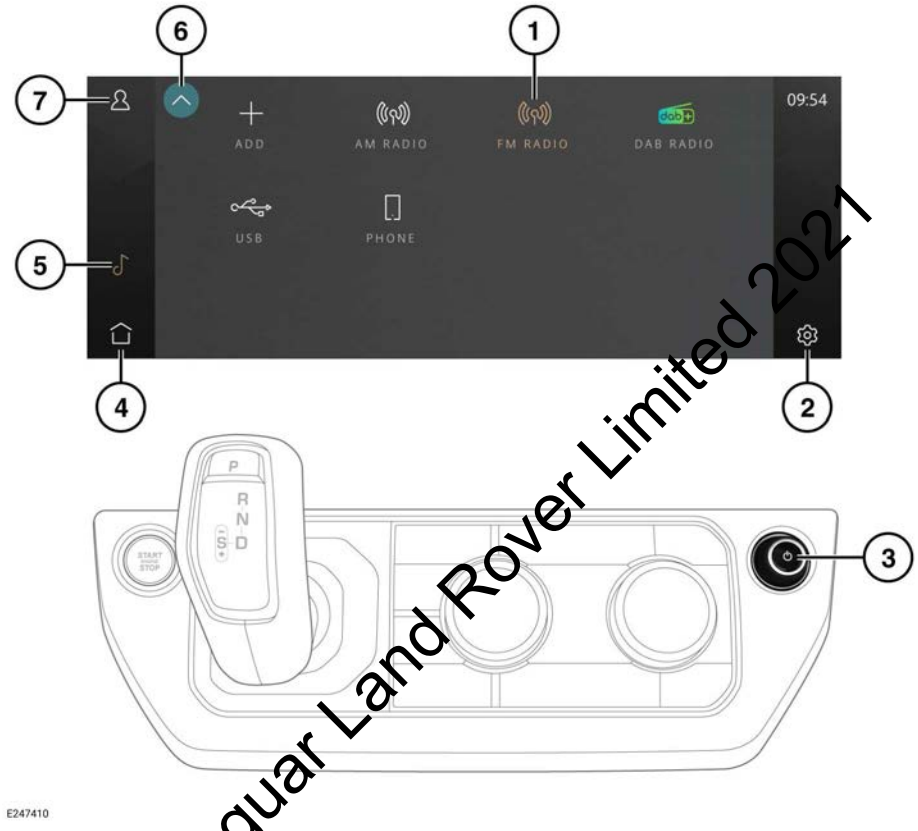
In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the audio steering wheel controls when it is safe to do so. Failure to do so can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

Sustained exposure to high sound levels, greater than 85 decibels, can damage hearing.

Avoid spilling or splashing liquids onto the touchscreen. The spilling or splashing of liquids could cause the touchscreen to malfunction or even lead to complete failure.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

MEDIA CONTROLS



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 251, MEDIA SAFETY.

From the home screen, select the **media** icon. See **240, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.

1. Media source: The source select screen displays the available media sources. Touch the desired source soft key to select it. The source soft key highlights when selected.
2. **Settings** icon: Select **AUDIO**, or the specific media settings, via the settings menu. See **254, AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Power and volume control:
   - Press to switch the media system on or off.

Note: *The media system operates with the ignition switched on or off, but always switches off when the ignition is switched off. Switch the media system on again, if required.*

- Rotate to adjust the volume level. The touchscreen displays the volume level.

  Note: *If the volume is turned to zero while a media source is playing, the media pauses play. Play resumes when a greater volume is selected.*

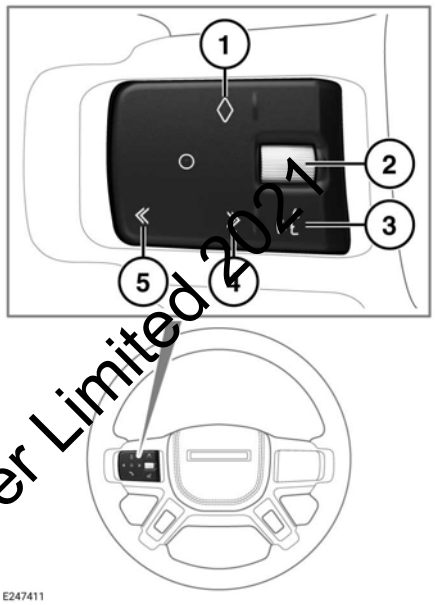
4. **Home** icon: Touch to return to the home screen.
5. **Media** icon: Touch to select the media system.
6. Return arrow: Touch to return to the previous selected media screen.
7. **Profile** icon: Touch to select the stored profile settings. See **248, PROFILE SETTINGS**. If notifications have been activated, upon a notification being received, an indicator is visible next to the **profile** icon. See **245, NOTIFICATIONS SETTINGS**.

ONLINE MEDIA

The media system allows access to media content from various online streaming platforms.

To access associated content from an online streaming provider, the user must pair a streaming account with a valid InControl account. See **342, INCONTROL ACCOUNT SET UP**.

AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 251, MEDIA SAFETY.

Note: *Customisation of the audio steering wheel controls can only be performed if the vehicle is stationary and valet mode is exited.*

Note: *If valet mode has been selected, no customised audio steering wheel selections are available.*

Note: *When a customised audio steering wheel function is selected, the instrument panel and touchscreen display a notification message.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *The* ***favourites*** *icon is set to a factory default setting until a customised function has been stored.*

1. **Favourites** button: Press to operate the stored steering wheel button favourites. See **249, CUSTOMISABLE BUTTON SETTINGS**.
2. Thumbwheel: Rotate upward to increase, or downward to decrease the volume level.
3. **Voice** button: Press to operate voice control. See **338, USING VOICE CONTROL**.
4. **>>** icon:
   Press and release to:
   - Select the next radio favourite.
   - Seek up the frequency to the next radio station.
   - Select the next track on the connected portable media source.
   - Scroll up lists of calls or contact entries, when the phone is in use.

   Press and hold to:
   - Fast forward the current playing track, on the connected portable media source.
5. **<<** icon:
   Press and release to:
   - Select the previous radio favourite.
   - Seek down the frequency to the next radio station.
   - Select the previous track, or the start of the current track, on the connected portable media source.
   - Scroll down lists of calls or contact entries, when the phone is in use.

   Press and hold to:
   - Rewind the current playing track, on the connected portable media source.

AUDIO SETTINGS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 251, MEDIA SAFETY.

To view or alter the audio settings, touch the **settings** icon[1] to access the settings menu and then select **AUDIO**.

To adjust the sound settings:

1. Touch **+** or **-** to adjust the **Bass**, **Treble**, or **Subwoofer** levels.
2. Alternatively, touch the slider bar and drag, or touch anywhere on the bar, and release.

To adjust the balance and fade settings:


Front.


Left.


Right.


Rear.


Home point.


Sound focal point.

1. Touch the arrows to move the sound focal point to the desired area of the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

2. Alternatively, touch the sound focal point and drag it to the required position, or touch anywhere on the vehicle graphic, and release.
3. To return to the default setting, touch the home point.

If **Meridian Surround** is available, adjust the surround sound settings by touching **Meridian** to select **Surround Sound**. Select **Stereo** to switch **Surround Sound** off.

Note: *Surround sound options are not available for certain sources where the surround sound mode is set automatically.*



Settings icon.[1]

GENRE ICONS

One of the following genre icons may be displayed on the FM or DAB radio **PLAYER** screen, when this media has been selected:



Default icon.



Classical icon.



Country icon.



Easy listening icon.



Folk icon.



Hip Hop icon.



Jazz icon.



News icon.



Oldies icon.



Other music icons.



Pop icon.



Rhythm and blues icon.



Rock icon.



Sport icon.



Talk icon.



Varied icon.



Weather icon.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

GRACENOTE® END USER LICENSING AGREEMENT

Gracenote Terms of Use

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to do disc or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

This application or device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licence to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licence terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote **Privacy Policy** for the Gracenote service.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licenced to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from the Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© 2013. Gracenote, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

LICENSING

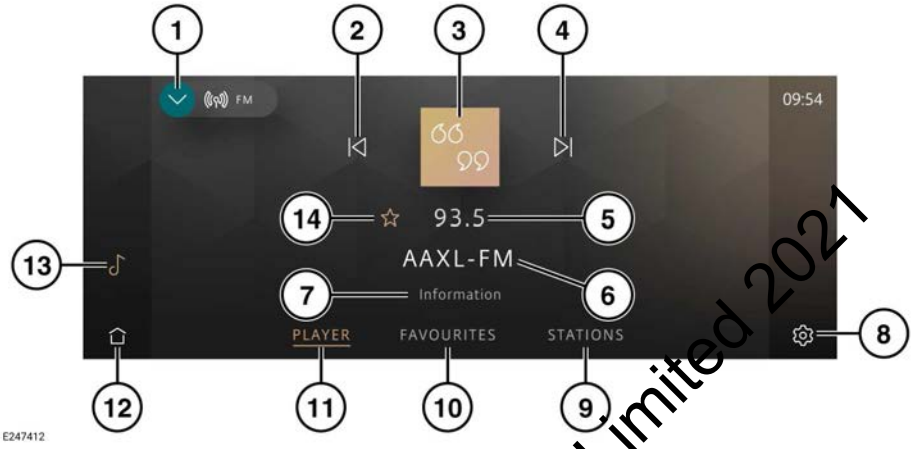
E132544

Music and video recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information, please visit **www.gracenote.com**.

CD, DVD, Blu-ray Disc, and music and video-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. One or more patents owned by Gracenote apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents. Gracenote, CDDB, MusicID, MediaVOCS, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

AM/FM RADIO CONTROLS



Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

Sustained exposure to high sound levels, greater than 85 decibels, can damage hearing.

Note: *The screen shown is in PLAYER mode.*

From the source select screen, select the **AM RADIO** or **FM RADIO** soft key. See **252, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

1. **Return** icon: Returns to the media source select screen.
2. Seek down: Touch to seek down to the previous radio station.
3. Station genre: Displays the genre icon for the currently selected station.

   Note: *Only available on supported FM radio stations.*
4. Seek up: Touch to seek up to the next radio station.
5. Current station frequency: Touch on the frequency to access the frequency input keypad. Enter the required frequency.

   Note: *The keypad only allows the input of possible frequencies valid for the vehicle's market.*
6. Station name display: Displays the current selected station name.

   Note: *Only available on supported FM radio stations.*
7. Station information display: Displays station information of the title/artist of the current song playing or a station slogan.

   Note: *Only available on supported FM radio stations.*

©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

8. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the system settings screen. Touch the **AM FM RADIO** soft key. Activate the **RDS** toggle to access the features list. See **259, RADIO DATA SYSTEM (RDS)**.
9. **STATIONS** soft key: Touch to display the stored station list. The **STATIONS** screen also gives the option to select a station from the frequency input keypad icon.[1]

   Note: *After a station has been selected from the **STATIONS** screen, the **STATIONS** screen continues to be displayed. To return to the AM/FM radio PLAYER screen, touch the **PLAYER** soft key.*
10. **FAVOURITES** soft key: Touch to display a carousel list of **AM**, **FM**, and **DAB** favourite stations. Touch the **favourites** icon to add or delete the selected station from the favourites list. Touch the station's icon to select that station and play it. To rearrange the list order, touch and hold the required station icon, then drag and drop to the desired position.

    Note: *The favourites list can store up to a maximum of 20 radio stations.*

    Note: *After selection of a stored favourite station the favourites screen continues to be displayed. To return to the AM/FM radio PLAYER screen, touch the **PLAYER** soft key.*

    Note: *DAB radio favourites being listed are dependent on the vehicle's market specification supporting DAB radio.*
11. **PLAYER** soft key: Touch to view the selected radio **PLAYER** screen when in other radio screen modes.
12. **Home** icon: Touch to return to the home screen.
13. **Media** icon: Touch to display all media in the source select screen.
14. **Favourites** icon: Touch to add stations to, or delete from, the favourites list. The icon highlights when the tuned station is set as a favourite.

Note: *Electronic devices used within, connected to, or within close proximity to the vehicle may affect the performance of this system. For example, radio reception.*



Frequency input keypad icon.[1]

Mexico only

The operation of this device is subject to the following two conditions:

1. The device does not cause harmful interference.
2. The device must accept any interference, including any undesired operation.

The device is designed to be operated with listed antennas only.

RADIO DATA SYSTEM (RDS)

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

The radio is equipped with a Radio Data System (RDS), which enables the media system to receive extra information with normal FM radio signals.

Note: *Not all FM radio stations broadcast RDS information.*

To view or alter the **RDS** settings:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

1. From the **AM** or **FM** radio screen, touch the **settings** icon.[1]
2. From the system settings screen, touch the **AM FM RADIO** soft key.
3. **RDS**: Toggle on or off. Toggle on to activate and view the available options.

The AM/FM settings options are as follows:

- **Traffic Announcements** (TA): Provides local travel information.
- **Region Lock**: When on, no regional switching occurs. When AF is on, it allows AF switching to other station frequencies with identical content. When regionalisation is off and AF is on, it allows AF switching to other station frequencies with similar content.
- **Alternative Frequency** (AF): Select to allow the radio to automatically retune to a stronger AF for the current station. A useful option on a journey where the vehicle travels through different transmitter areas.
- **Station List Order**: Lists stations by name or frequency.



Settings icon

[1] Vehicles with touchscreen.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

DAB RADIO CONTROLS



Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

Sustained exposure to high sound levels, greater than 85 decibels, can damage hearing.

Note: *The screen shown is in PLAYER mode.*

From the source select screen, select the **DAB RADIO** icon. See **252, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

1. **Return** icon: Returns to the media source select screen.
2. Seek down: Touch to seek down to the previous radio station.
3. Station genre: Displays the genre icon for the currently selected station. Touch to view further station information. Touch the **exit** icon[1] to return to the **PLAYER** screen.
4. Seek up: Touch to seek up to the next radio station.
5. Station name display: Displays the current selected station name.
6. Station information: Displays station information of the title/artist of the current song playing or a station slogan.
7. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the system settings screen. Touch the **DAB RADIO** soft key. See **262, DAB RADIO SETTINGS**.
8. **STATIONS** soft key: Touch to display the stored station list.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *After a station has been selected from the* ***STATIONS*** *screen, the* ***STATIONS*** *screen continues to be displayed. To return to the DAB radio PLAYER screen, touch the* ***PLAYER*** *soft key.*

9. **FAVOURITES** soft key: Touch to display a carousel list of **AM**, **FM**, and **DAB** favourite stations. Touch the **favourites** icon to add or delete the selected station from the favourites list. Touch the station's icon to select that station and play it. To rearrange the list order, touch and hold the required station icon, then drag and drop to the desired position.

   Note: *The favourites list can store up to a maximum of 50 radio stations.*

   Note: *After selection of a stored favourite station the favourites screen continues to be displayed. To return to the DAB radio PLAYER screen, touch the* ***PLAYER*** *soft key.*

10. **PLAYER** soft key: Touch to view the selected radio screen when in other radio screen modes.
11. **Home** icon: Touch to return to the home screen.
12. **Media** icon: Touch to display all media in the source select screen.
13. **Favourites** icon: Touch to add stations to, or delete from, the favourites list. The icon highlights when the tuned station is set as a favourite.

Note: *Electronic devices used within, connected to, or within close proximity to the vehicle may affect the performance of this system. For example, radio reception.*



Exit icon.[1]

DAB RADIO SETTINGS

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

To view or alter the DAB settings:

1. From the **DAB** radio screen touch the **settings** icon.[1]
2. From the system settings screen touch the **DAB RADIO** soft key to access the available options.

The DAB setting options are as follows:

- Select **Announcements**, e.g., **Traffic**, **Other**, from the list. The selected announcement interrupts the current programme, when broadcast.
- **DAB to FM linking**: Toggle on or off. If on is selected, the radio system automatically switches between DAB and FM tuned station signals, selecting the best available signal. Tuning is dependent on an FM version of the tuned station being available.



Settings icon.[1]

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

PORTABLE MEDIA SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before using any of the portable media controls or features. Failure to use the portable media controls or features safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury, death or damage to the vehicle and its components.

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

Make sure that any media devices are stored securely while the vehicle is in motion. Any loose objects are potential hazards during sudden manoeuvres, emergency braking situations or accidents.

Sustained exposure to high sound levels, greater than 85 decibels, can damage hearing.

Read the manufacturer's instructions for any device before it is connected to the media system. Make sure that the device is suitable. Comply with any instructions regarding connection and operation. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle's media system or the media device.

It is recommended not to use a hard disc drive via the USB link. The devices are not designed for in-vehicle use and may be damaged.

If an iPod is connected, disconnect before leaving the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in the iPod battery discharging.

Avoid spilling or splashing liquids onto the touchscreen. The spilling or splashing of liquids could cause the touchscreen to malfunction or even lead to complete failure.

PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 263, PORTABLE MEDIA SAFETY.

Portable media devices can be connected to the media hub located in the front centre console. See **124, AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS**.

Compatible portable devices include:

- USB mass storage devices, e.g., a memory stick. Devices must use NTFS or FAT32.

  Note: *External hard drives are not recommended for use. Doing so could reduce the life of the device.*

  Note: *It is recommended that the USB mass storage device does not exceed 128GB. USB mass storage devices exceeding the maximum recommendation could cause a malfunction of the infotainment system.*

  Note: *Depending on the memory size of the USB mass storage device, a time delay may be evident before the stored files can be accessed.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- Apple iPod devices using a lightning connector: iPad, iPod Touch, iPod Mini and iPhone Gen5 onward are supported. Full functionality for older devices cannot be guaranteed. iPod Classic Gen1, Gen2, Gen3, Gen4, Gen5, Gen6; iPod Nano Gen1, Gen2, Gen3, Gen4, Gen5, Gen6, Gen7 and iPod Shuffle are not supported.

  Note: *Album artwork displays if the iPod device is fully supported. Some Generation level devices cannot recognise or support the album artwork.*

If connecting an iPod, mass storage, or **Bluetooth**® wireless technology device, use the touchscreen to operate and search the device.

Note: *The media system plays MP3, WMA, AIFF, M4A, FLAC, AAC, and ALAC files. Other formats are available.*

Note: *If a software update has been activated on the connected portable media device, it is necessary to restart the media device. Restarting the device makes sure the update is recognised by the media system.*

To maximise playback quality, it is recommended that lossless compression is used for any media files on USB mass storage devices. Failing this, it is recommended that compressed files utilise a minimum bit rate of 192 kb/s. A higher bit rate is strongly recommended.

Note: *iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries.*

Note: *Some MP3 players have a file system that is not supported by the system. To use an MP3 player, set it to* ***USB Removable Device*** *or* ***Mass Storage Device*** *mode.*

Bluetooth® connections

Information on pairing and connecting a **Bluetooth** wireless technology device can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **268, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE MEDIA PLAYER**.

Further information on **Bluetooth** wireless technology can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **315, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION**.

For a list of compatible **Bluetooth** wireless technology devices, please refer to the Land Rover website at **www.landrover.com**.

The **Bluetooth** wireless technology devices listed have been tested for compatibility with Jaguar Land Rover vehicles. Performance varies, based on the device's software version and battery condition. Devices are warranted by the device's manufacturer, not the vehicle manufacturer.

Note: *Dependent on the device being connected, certain functions, e.g.,* ***Bluetooth*** *pairing, may not be compatible.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 263, PORTABLE MEDIA SAFETY.



E247415

Portable media devices can be connected to the media hub located in the front centre console. See **124, AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS**.

Connect the media device into one of the available USB sockets.

Note: *Use the cable supplied with the media device to connect to the USB socket.*

Note: *High quality cables are recommended to be used with Apple devices as this enhances operation.*

Note: *A USB hub cannot be used to connect more than one USB device to the audio unit.*

Note: *Devices connected to the USB ports are charged, but devices that are fully discharged do not play. Higher-rated devices that require more than 7.5W to charge may not display an indicator when charging. The devices still charge without the indicator being displayed.*

Note: *Apple devices should be updated to the latest iOS version, otherwise, full support cannot be guaranteed.*

Note: *Voice command is only available for newer Apple devices, i.e., devices that are connected to the system via a lightning connector.*

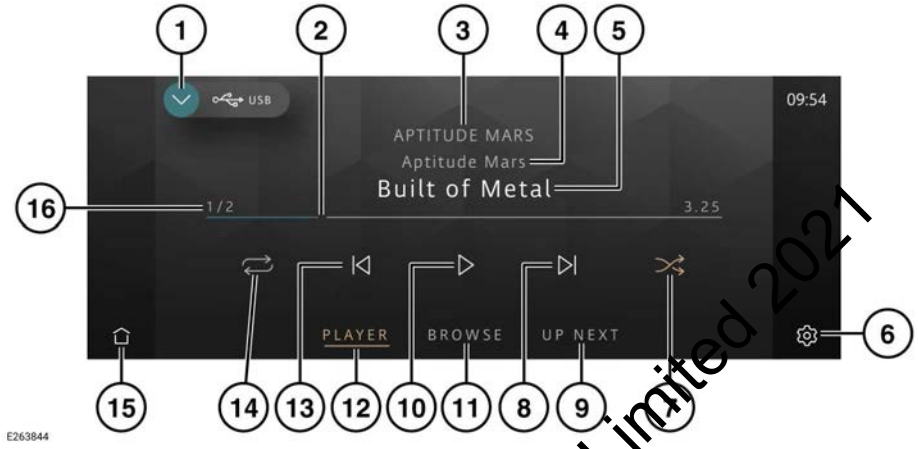
Note: *Options, such as* ***Repeat*** *and* ***Shuffle****, relate to the device currently playing. The options do not apply to any subsequent device. Previous* ***Repeat*** *and* ***Shuffle*** *selections are deactivated when a new queue is created.*

Note: *The available sockets vary, according to vehicle specification.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Portable media

PORTABLE MEDIA CONTROLS



Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 263, PORTABLE MEDIA SAFETY.

Note: *The system software does not support video media playback and broadcasts.*

Note: *The screen shown is in PLAYER mode.*

Portable media includes iPods, iPads, iPhones, USB mass storage, and **Bluetooth**® wireless technology devices.

From the source select screen, select the connected portable media device icon. See **252, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

1. **Return** icon: Returns to the media source select screen.
2. Interactive time progress bar: Touch or drag to move forward or backward through the current track.

Note: *Not operational on connected* ***Bluetooth*** *wireless technology devices.*

3. Artist information: Displays the current artist information.
4. Album information: Displays the current album information.
5. Track information display: Displays the current track information.

   Note: *Only connected devices that support ID3 tags have the information displayed.*

   Note: *The instrument panel also displays track information.*
6. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the system settings screen. Touch the **MEDIA PLAYER** soft key to view all available settings options. Touch the **exit** icon[1] to return to the previously displayed screen.
7. **Shuffle** icon: Touch to shuffle the current music queue continuously. Touch again to cancel.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

8. Skip or scan forward:
   - Touch and release to skip forward to the next track.
   - Touch and hold to scan forward through the current track. Playback resumes, when released.
9. **UP NEXT** soft key: Touch to display the current queue list.
10. Pause or play: Select to pause playback. Select again to resume playback.
11. **BROWSE** soft key: Touch to display the **Browse Audio**, **Albums**, **Songs**, **Artists** or **Genres** soft key options. Select an option to view the contents of the connected device. The contents are displayed as dictated by the device's file structure.
12. **PLAYER** soft key: Touch to view the selected portable media screen when in other portable media screen modes.
13. Skip or scan backward:
    - Touch and release to skip back to the previous track.
    - Touch and hold to scan backward through the current track. Playback resumes, when released.
14. **Repeat** icon: Touch to repeat the current track continuously. Touch again to cancel.

    Note: *Additional repeat functionality options may be available depending on the portable device connected.*
15. **Home** icon: Touch to return to the home screen.
16. Playlist counter: Shows the present track number playing and the total number of tracks in the current playlist.



Exit icon.[1]

PLAYING A PORTABLE DEVICE

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 263, PORTABLE MEDIA SAFETY.

Use the touchscreen controls to control playback, if using a USB mass storage device or compatible Apple device.

Use the touchscreen controls to control playback, if using a **Bluetooth**® wireless technology device. Some controls may be unavailable, depending on what the device and the media player system supports.

CONNECTING MULTIPLE DEVICES

Multiple devices can be simultaneously connected to the portable media interface. Use the touchscreen to switch between the connected devices. Select **iPod**, **USB**, or **Bluetooth** to switch between inputs.

Note: *USB and iPod devices only: When switching back to a previous device, from another newly connected device, playback resumes from the point at which it was left. See* ***265, CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE****.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE MEDIA PLAYER

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 263, PORTABLE MEDIA SAFETY.

Note: *The process of pairing and connecting the media device with the vehicle, using the media device, varies depending on the type of media device.*

1. Switch on the ignition. Make sure that the touchscreen is active.
2. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
3. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
4. Select **Connectivity**.
5. Select **Bluetooth**.
6. Select **Pair New Device**.
7. The vehicle's **Bluetooth**® wireless technology system remains discoverable while in the pairing screen.
8. Using the media device, search for devices. On some media devices, this is referred to as a new paired device. See the device's operating instructions for further information. The vehicle's name is displayed as the default discoverable name.
9. When the vehicle's discoverable name is discovered, follow the on-screen instructions. Select **Yes**, when prompted, to confirm the pairing. On some media devices, this completes the pairing. Alternatively, on other media devices, the vehicle's system displays a PIN. When prompted, either enter the PIN on the device, or select **Yes** to confirm that the PIN displayed matches the vehicle's PIN.
10. Once the media device is paired and connected to the system, a confirmation message is displayed. Select the **exit** icon[2] to return to the home screen.
11. Select the media device from the media shortcut icons. See **243, MEDIA SHORTCUT ICONS**.

Note: *If, when playing media through a **Bluetooth** wireless connected Apple device, the device is then also connected to a USB port, the **Bluetooth** wireless connection is disabled. To reconnect via **Bluetooth** wireless, the USB connection needs to be disconnected and the Apple device reconnected via the connectivity screen.*

Note: *Apple devices containing a large quantity of media can take a considerable amount of time to synchronise. During this time, playback can only be accessed from the Apple device's media player and not via voice commands.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *After the Apple device has been synced with the media system, the device can then be controlled via the media system or operated by the voice system. If the Apple device's track list is updated after the device was previously synced, the device needs to be re-synced to the media system. During this time, the Apple device's voice commands become temporarily unavailable.*

Further information on **Bluetooth** wireless technology can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **315, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION**.



Settings icon.[1]



Exit icon.[2]

CHANGING/DISCONNECTING A DEVICE

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 263, PORTABLE MEDIA SAFETY.

To connect or disconnect a paired **Bluetooth**® wireless technology device:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Select **Connectivity**.
4. Select **Bluetooth**.
5. Paired devices are listed. Select the device's name.
6. Select **Connect** or **Disconnect**.
7. Select the **exit** icon[2] to return to the home screen.

To unpair a paired **Bluetooth** device:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Select **Connectivity**.
4. Select **Bluetooth**.
5. Paired devices are listed. Select the device's name.
6. Select **Disconnect**.
7. Select **Forget Device**.
8. Select **Yes** to confirm.
9. Select the **exit** icon[2] to return to the home screen.



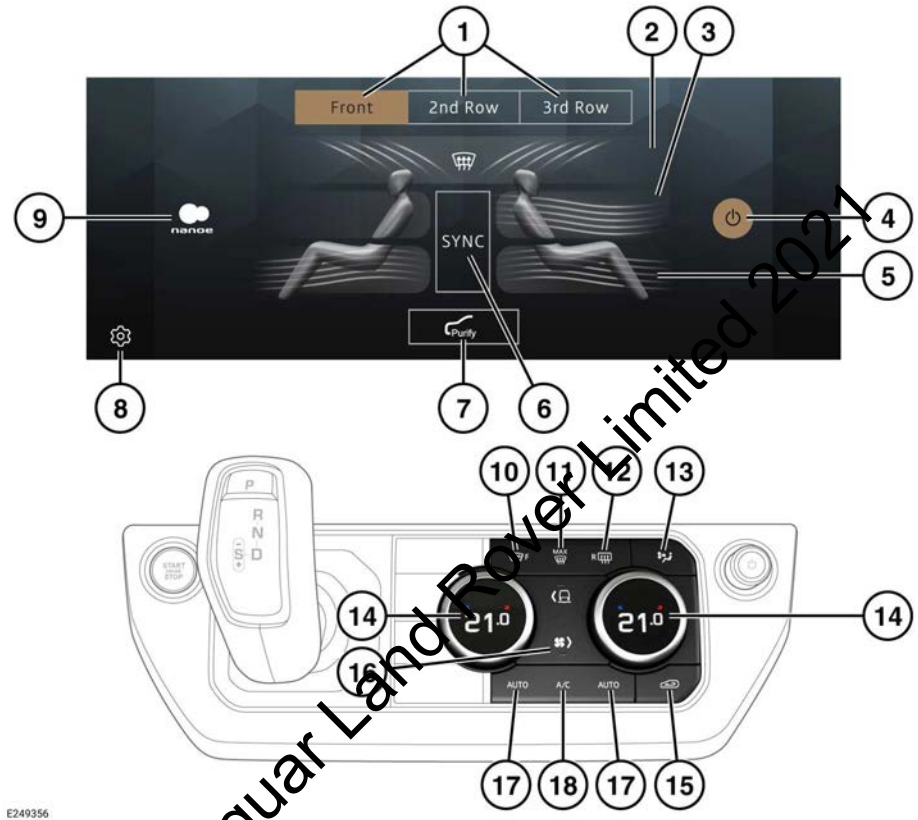
Settings icon.[1]



Exit icon.[2]

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

To access the front climate screen, select **CLIMATE** from the **Apps** screen. See **245, APPS SCREEN**.

Alternatively, press the **climate** button located below the touchscreen (**13**).

1. Touch to select a cabin zone. Cabin zone soft keys vary according to vehicle specification.
2. **Air distribution to the front windscreen** icon: Touch to switch on or off.
3. **Air distribution to the face** icon: Touch to switch on or off.

4. **Power** icon: Touch to switch the climate control system on or off.
5. **Air distribution to the feet** icon: Touch to switch on or off.
6. **Sync** soft key: Select to synchronise the front and rear passenger's climate settings to the driver's settings.
7. **Purify** icon: Removes air pollution from the cabin through combined activation of the air ioniser, Air Conditioning (A/C), and timed recirculation. Touch to switch on or off.
8. **Settings** icon: Touch to select the settings screen and then select **Climate**. See **272, CLIMATE SETTINGS**.
9. **Air ionisation** icon: Touch to activate air ionisation. Air ionisation can only be activated when air distribution to the face mode has been selected. Selection of **AUTO** mode deactivates the air ionisation mode.

   Note: *Air ionisation technology is designed to improve the air quality within the cabin.*
10. **Heated windscreen** button: Press to switch on or off. If left on, the heated windscreen deactivates after a timed period, dependent on the ambient temperature.

    Note: *In cold ambient conditions, the windscreen and rear screen heaters switch on automatically when the engine is started. The function can be switched on or off via climate settings. See **272, CLIMATE SETTINGS**.*

    Note: *The heated windscreen operates only when the engine is running.*
11. **MAX** button: Press to switch maximum defrost for the windscreen on or off.
12. **Heated rear screen** button: Press to switch on or off. If left on, the heated rear screen deactivates after a timed period, dependent on the ambient temperature.

    Do not attach labels to the rear screen. Do not scrape or use abrasive materials to clean the inside of the rear screen.

    Note: *The heated rear screen operates only when the engine is running.*
13. **Climate** button: Press to access the front climate screen.
14. Rotary controls: Rotate to adjust the cabin or seat temperature. Press to switch between cabin temperature control and front seats temperature control. See **276, SEAT TEMPERATURE**
15. **Recirculation** button: Press to recirculate air inside the vehicle.
    - Press briefly to select timed recirculation. Recirculation switches off automatically after a set time, dependent on the ambient temperature.
    - Press and hold to select latched recirculation. Recirculation remains on until the button is pressed again.

      Note: *Prolonged use may cause the windows to mist.*
16. **Blower speed control** button: Press to switch blower speed adjustment on or off. Turn the rotary control to adjust the blower speed.

    Note: *The blower speed is automatically set in **AUTO** mode. Adjusting the blower speed cancels **AUTO** mode.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

17. **AUTO** mode button: Press to switch fully automatic mode on. Dependent on the vehicle's specification, the various options for **AUTO** mode can be set via climate settings. See **272, CLIMATE SETTINGS**.

    Note: *AUTO mode is the recommended normal operating mode. In **AUTO** mode, the system regulates cabin climate based on feedback from the vehicle's sensors, helping maintain a stable and comfortable cabin environment.*

    Note: *When a climate setting is adjusted manually the system exits full **AUTO** mode, this overrides automatic climate adjustment and delivers only the selected settings.*

18. **A/C** button: Press to switch the A/C system on or off. The A/C system can be switched on or off independently of the other climate control functions.

Note: *Some of the buttons have an LED indicator lamp that illuminates to confirm selection.*

Note: *If the climate control system is switched off, pressing the **AUTO** button or the defrost button switches the climate control system on.*

Note: *Water expelled by the A/C system may collect underneath the vehicle, when parked. The expelled water is not a cause for concern.*

AUTOMATIC RECIRCULATION

The climate control system monitors exterior air pollution, and selects recirculation if it reaches a predetermined level. Automatic recirculation only operates when the **Air Purity** function is active. The sensitivity of the air quality sensor can be set via the **Climate Settings** screen. See **272, AIR QUALITY SENSOR**.

Note: *It is recommended that automatic recirculation is enabled, to maintain the optimum air quality within the vehicle.*

CLIMATE SETTINGS

To view the Climate settings menu, touch the **settings** icon, then select **Climate**. See **270, FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL**.

- **Air purity**: The air quality sensor, for automatic recirculation, can be adjusted. See **272, AIR QUALITY SENSOR**.
- **Auto air flow**: The blower speed, for automatic operation, can be set to **Soft and Quiet**, **Balanced**, or **Powerful and Fast**.
- **Auto blinds**: The auto operation of the roof blind can be enabled or disabled.
- **Automatic heated screens**: Automatic operation of the heated windscreen and the heated rear screen can be enabled or disabled.

AIR QUALITY SENSOR

The sensitivity of the air quality sensor can be adjusted by changing the **Air Purity** level.

To adjust the **Air Purity** level:

1. 1. Select **Climate** settings from the settings screen. See **272, CLIMATE SETTINGS**.

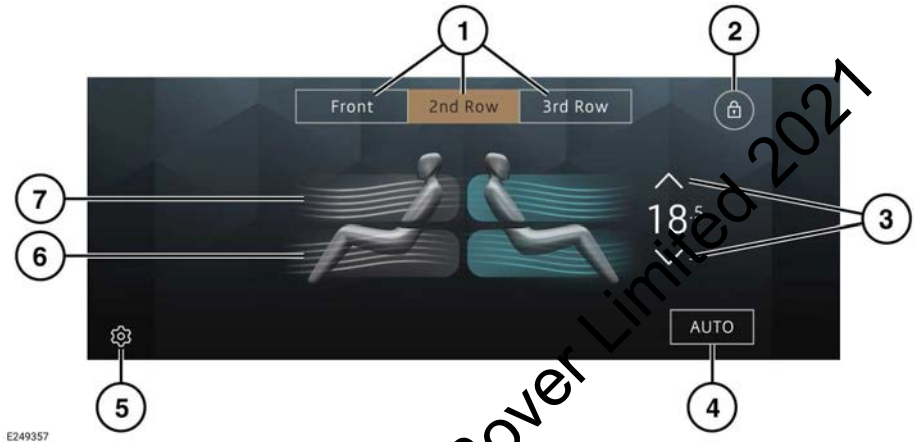
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

2. Select **Air Purity** and then select the appropriate level: **Low**, **Medium**, or **High**.
   To deactivate, touch **OFF**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

REAR CLIMATE CONTROL

To access the second row climate screen, touch the **2nd Row** soft key on the front climate screen. See **270, FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL**.



Control the rear climate as follows:

1. Cabin zone soft keys: Touch to select a cabin zone. Available cabin zones vary, dependent on vehicle specification.
2. **Rear panel lock** icon: Select to disable the rear climate control switches, in order to prevent the rear passengers from adjusting the rear climate settings. Select again to enable the controls.
3. **Temperature adjustment** arrows: Select the red arrow to increase and the blue arrow to decrease the temperature. The temperature setting is displayed between the arrows.
4. **AUTO** mode: Touch to switch automatic operation on or off.
5. **Settings** icon: Touch to select the settings screen and then select **Climate**. See **272, CLIMATE SETTINGS**.
6. **Air distribution to the feet** icon: Touch to switch on or off.
7. **Air distribution to the face** icon: Touch to switch on or off.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



The rear climate can be adjusted with the controls located in the rear of the centre console.

Control the rear climate as follows:

1. Cabin and rear seat temperature control: Press to alternate between the two. See **276, SEAT TEMPERATURE**.
2. Temperature controls: Rotate to adjust the cabin or seat temperature.
3. **AUTO** mode: Press to switch automatic operation on.
4. Blower speed controls: Rotate to the adjust blower speed.
5. **Air distribution to the face** button: Press to switch on or off.
6. **Air distribution to the feet** button: Press to switch on or off.
7. Sync: The LED illuminates to show that the rear climate controls have been synchronised to the driver's settings or that the controls are locked.

Note: *Some of the buttons have an LED indicator lamp that illuminates to confirm selection.*

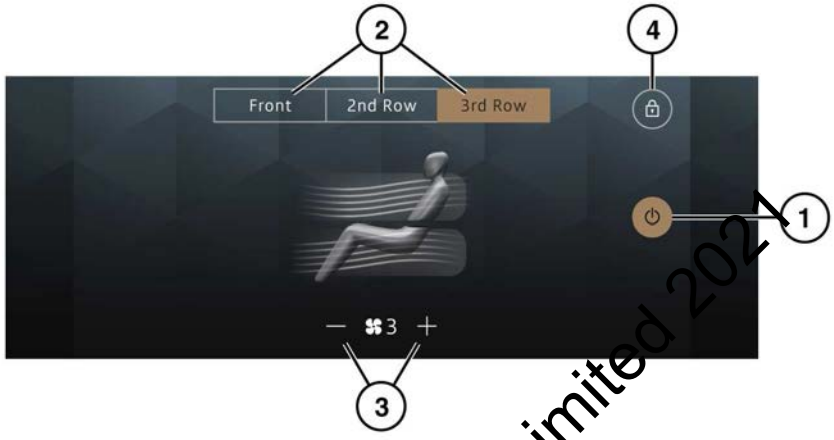
Note: *In addition to the selectable controls, the second row climate screen displays symbols that indicate the status of heating and ventilation functions.*

Note: *If the climate control system is switched off, pressing the rear* ***AUTO*** *button switches the climate control system on.*

Note: *If the system is in defrost mode, all rear controls are disabled and no airflow is available to the rear occupants.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Third Row Climate Control



E249358

To access the third row climate screen, touch the **3rd Row** soft key on the front climate screen. See **270, FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL**.

Control the rear chiller from the touchscreen as follows:

1. **Power** icon: Touch to switch the chiller on or off.
2. Cabin zone soft keys: Touch to select a cabin zone.
3. **Blower speed** adjustment: Touch to increase or decrease the blower speed.
4. **Third row chiller lock** icon: Touch to lock the third row chiller controls.

The chiller for the third row can also be adjusted using the control at the rear of the vehicle.



E164877

The third row chiller provides chilled air through the rear side vents.

Rotate the control to adjust the fan speed.

SEAT TEMPERATURE

Note: *Depending on the specification of the vehicle, the seats may have heating and cooling functionality.*

Note: *Seat heaters consume a large amount of battery power and only operate when the engine is running.*

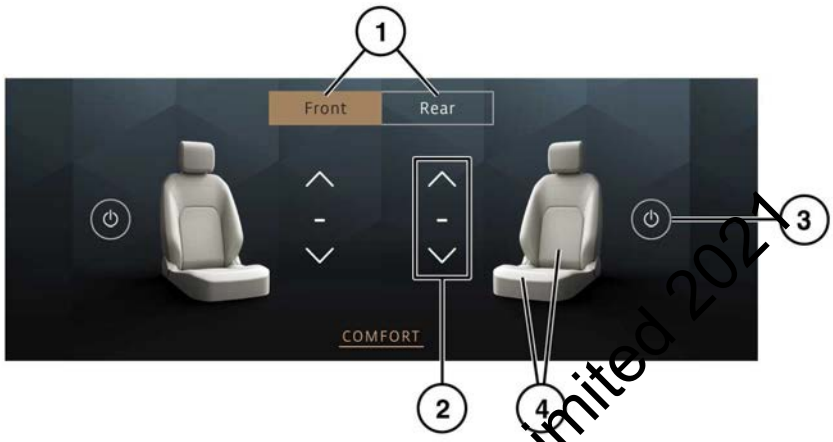
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The seat temperature can be adjusted in the following manner:

- Front row seats can be adjusted via the touchscreen and the front rotary controls.
- Second row seats can be adjusted via the touchscreen and the rear rotary controls.
- Third row seats can be adjusted via the heated seat buttons.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Seat temperature adjustment via the touchscreen



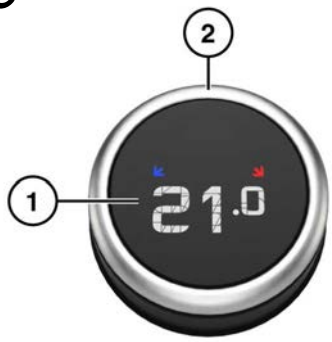
E249359

To access the seat screen, select **SEATS** from the **Apps** screen. See **245, APPS SCREEN**.

To adjust the seat temperature via the touchscreen:

1. **Front** or **Rear** seat selection: Touch to select front or rear seats.
2. **Temperature adjustment** arrows: Touch to increase or decrease the temperature.
3. **Power** icon: Touch to switch the seat heating and cooling on or off.
4. **Seat zone** selection: Touch to select the required seat zone position for heating and cooling.

Seat temperature adjustment via the rotary controls



E249360

To adjust the seat temperature via the rotary controls:

1. Press to switch between cabin temperature control and seat temperature control.
2. Rotate to increase or decrease the seat temperature.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Third row seats



Heated seat icon.

The third row heated seats are operated by the buttons located in the side trim panels.

To operate the third row heated seats:

1. Touch the relevant heated seat button to switch the heated seat on at the maximum setting. The three LED indicators in the button illuminate.
2. Touch a second time to set the heated seat at the medium setting. Two LED indicators illuminate.
3. Touch a third time to set the heated front seat at the lowest setting. One LED indicator illuminates.
4. Touch a fourth time to switch off.

AUXILIARY HEATER

Do not operate the auxiliary heater when refuelling the vehicle. Doing so may cause fuel vapours to combust, potentially causing a fire or explosion.

Do not operate the auxiliary heater while the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Doing so can cause a build-up of highly toxic fumes, which may cause unconsciousness or death.

The auxiliary heater is powered by fuel drawn from the vehicle's tank. The auxiliary heater operates at low ambient temperatures and helps to boost the temperature of the engine's coolant. Raising the temperature of the engine's coolant improves cabin heating and engine starting performance. It can also be controlled by the timed climate control system or from the timed climate remote control.

When the auxiliary heater is operating, exhaust fumes from the heater may be visible exiting from under the front of the vehicle. Exhaust fumes from the auxiliary heater are normal and are not a cause for concern.

TIMED CLIMATE

Do not operate the timed climate system when refuelling the vehicle. Doing so may cause fuel vapours to combust, potentially causing a fire or explosion.

Do not operate the timed climate system while the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Doing so can cause a build-up of highly toxic fumes, which may cause unconsciousness or death.

The timed climate system, when in operation, provides a comfortable temperature inside the cabin in advance of using the vehicle. The timed climate system can also maintain a temperature when leaving the vehicle for a short period of time.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The timed climate system draws in fresh air to cool and ventilate the cabin, or operates the auxiliary heater to heat the cabin. Heating or cooling of the cabin is selected by the timed climate system and is dependent on the external temperature.

The timed climate system can be controlled via the touchscreen, or it can be operated using the timed climate remote. The touchscreen control has options for either timed or manual settings.

The timed climate system may not operate, or switches off automatically, in the following scenarios:

- If the fuel level is low.
- If the vehicle's battery charge is low.
- If the coolant temperature is at, or above, its required temperature.
- If the system has been in operation for 30 minutes.

TIMED CLIMATE TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS

The touchscreen can be used to either preset activation times or to operate the system manually.

When the system is operating, the LED in the climate control **AUTO** or **Max A/C** button flashes. **AUTO** indicates that the engine or cabin is being heated. **Max A/C** indicates the that cabin is being ventilated. The choice of operation is automatically determined by the system, depending on the external temperature.

Note: *The system ceases operation if the engine is started.*



E251178

To access the timed climate screen, select **VEHICLE DEPARTURES** from the apps screen page. See **245, APPS SCREEN**.

1. **Power** icon: Touch to switch the timed climate system on or off.
2. Current time.
3. **Settings** icon: Touch to select the settings screen. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

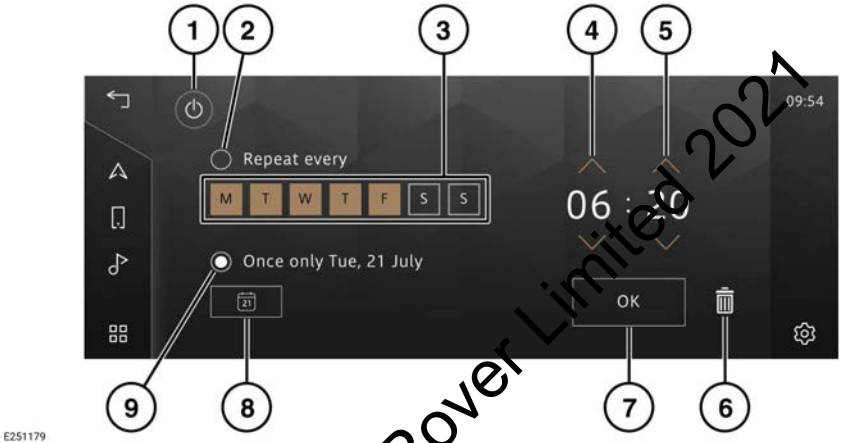
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



Event icon.

Touch an event icon to switch on, edit, or delete an event.

Note: *An event is shown on the timed climate screen even if it is switched off. Make sure that the event is switched on if an event is required.*



E251179

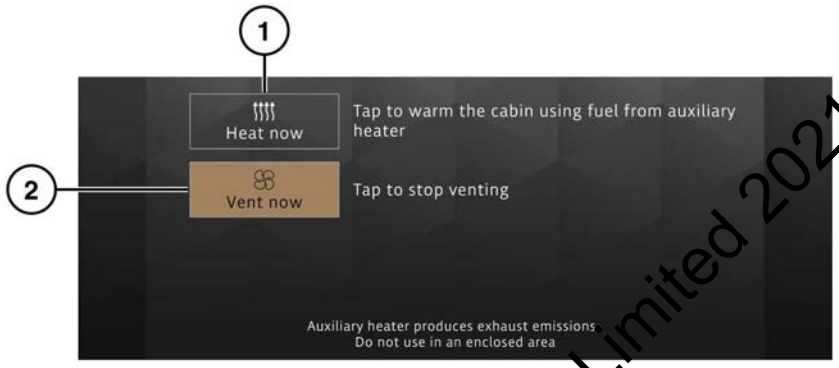
Touch the timed climate screen to add or edit an event:

1. **Power** icon: Touch to switch the event on or off.
2. **Repeat every**: Touch to enable the event to be repeated on other days.
3. **Day**: Touch to select the days that require the repeated event.
4. **Hour** arrows: Touch to adjust the hour.
   Note: *12 or 24 hour clock can be selected via the* ***Time and Date*** *settings. See* ***249, GENERAL SETTINGS****.*
5. **Minute** arrows: Touch to adjust the minutes.
6. **Delete** icon: Touch to delete the event.
7. **OK**: Touch to set the event.
8. **Calendar** icon: Touch to view the calendar.
9. **Once only**: Touch to select a single event.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Manual operation

The auxiliary heater can be manually operated via the touch screen when the vehicle's ignition is off.



E251180

Manually operate the system as follows:

1. **Heat now**: Touch to heat the cabin and engine via the auxiliary heater. Touch again to turn off.
2. **Vent now**: Touch the circulate air through the cabin. Touch again to turn off.

USING THE TIMED CLIMATE REMOTE



E164037

1. **Power** button.
2. **OFF** button.
3. LED operation indicator.
4. Antenna.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *Avoid touching the antenna when operating the* ***Power*** *or* ***OFF*** *buttons.*

The remote control has an approximate range of 100 m. There is no need to point the remote control at the vehicle.

Press and hold the **Power** button for approximately 2 seconds.

The LED illuminates to confirm that a timed climate program has been initiated. The LED flashes once every 2 seconds to indicate that the timed climate program is active.

The timed climate program continues for 20-30 minutes, after which it switches off automatically to prevent the vehicle's battery from discharging. The remote timed climate program switches off automatically if the engine is started.

The LED operation indicator signals various states and conditions for the remote timed climate, as follows:

- Illuminates red for 2 seconds when the **OFF** button is pressed, to indicate that the program has stopped.
- Flashes green for 2 seconds then stops when the **Power** button is pressed, to indicate that no action has been taken.
- Flashes red for 2 seconds then stops when the **OFF** button is pressed, to indicate that no action has been taken.
- Illuminates orange for 2 seconds before showing green or red, to indicate that the remote battery is low.
- Flashes orange for 5 seconds to indicate that no action has been taken. The timed climate remote control battery should be replaced.

ADDITIONAL REMOTES

Additional remote controls can be programmed to operate the timed climate system. A maximum of three remote controls can be programmed to the vehicle. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer to purchase additional remote controls and have them programmed to the vehicle.

REPLACING THE REMOTE BATTERIES



E164036

With the back of the remote control facing upwards, use a coin, or a similar implement, to rotate the battery cover. Lift the cover off to reveal the battery compartment. Remove the old battery and, making sure the correct polarity is maintained, insert a replacement CR1/3N battery. Replace the cover and rotate it to lock.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *Avoid touching the new battery. Moisture or oil from fingers can reduce battery life and corrode the contacts.*



Battery disposal: Used batteries contain a number of harmful substances, and must be disposed of in accordance to CONAMA resolution 401/08. Seek advice on disposal from your retailer/authorised repairer and/or your local authority.

TEMPERATURE DIFFERENTIATION

The temperatures selected via the climate control system are perceived values. The system operates to achieve these selected values. The selected value does not represent the output temperature from the air vents. Air vent output temperature varies as the system automatically adjusts the vent outputs to achieve the set temperatures.

The actual temperature in the cabin may differ from the set temperatures due to internal and external factors, including ambient temperature, sun load, and direction. The climate control system automatically adjusts the airflow level, direction, and temperature to compensate for these internal and external factors. Automatic adjustments in the air vent outputs may result in some temperature differentiation within the cabin.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

PARKING FEATURES SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before driving the vehicle.

Failure to use the parking system safely could result in damage to the vehicle, or an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

The sensors for the parking system do not detect moving objects, such as children and animals, until the objects are too close. The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention during low speed manoeuvres.

The parking system is a driving aid only. The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention during low speed manoeuvres.

The driver must maintain full control of the accelerator and brake pedals throughout low speed manoeuvres.

All sensors must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., leaves, mud, snow, ice, frost, or insects. Failure to keep the sensors clean may result in sensor miscalculation or false indications.

The parking system must not be used if a sensor is damaged, or the bumper is damaged sufficiently enough to affect a sensor mounting point. Failing to follow these guidelines may result in sensor miscalculation or false indications.

The parking system must not be used if a sensor is obstructed by items attached to the vehicle, e.g., bumper covers, a bicycle rack, or stickers. Failing to follow these guidelines may result in sensor miscalculations or false indications.

Although the park assist system controls the vehicle movement during a parking manoeuvre, the driver must maintain full control of the accelerator and brake pedals throughout. When the manoeuvre is not as expected, take control of the steering and make any necessary adjustments.

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the touchscreen. See 238, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

The parking system sensors may also be externally influenced by noise generated from air brakes, emergency vehicles, motorbikes, pneumatic drills, and high wind. The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention during low speed manoeuvres.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- The sensors for the parking system may not detect some obstructions. For example, narrow posts or small objects close to the ground. Objects above sensor level may not be detected, e.g., when approaching a flatbed truck, the protruding part of the flatbed may not be detected. Additionally, the parking system operation may be limited, when manoeuvring the vehicle near wooden objects, e.g., a wooden post.
- Do not aim a high pressure water jet directly at any of the sensors when washing the vehicle. Only use approved vehicle shampoo. Do not use abrasive materials, or hard or sharp objects, to clean the sensors. Failure to follow these guidelines may result in damage to the system or cause a system fault.
- Particular care must be taken when using the parking feature if accessories are fitted to the front or rear of the vehicle. For example, a bicycle rack mounted in a position where it obstructs operation of the parking sensor(s). If the affected sensor(s) is obstructed, the sensor(s) only indicates the distance from the bumper to the bicycle rack. Any obstacle beyond the detected accessory may not be indicated on the touchscreen display.
- Park assist must not be used if a temporary spare wheel is in use.
- Park assist must not be used if the vehicle is being used to transport a load that extends beyond the vehicle's perimeter.

PARKING AID SYSTEM

- **Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the parking features. See 285, PARKING FEATURES SAFETY.**
- At vehicle start-up, the parking sensors may not detect low or high objects, even if the objects were detected during the original parking manoeuvre.

Note: *When the parking aid system is active, the system only provides warning tones when a threat is detected.*

The parking aid system works in conjunction with the camera system. The system assists the driver while manoeuvring the vehicle at low speed in confined spaces.

A 360° vehicle plan view displays detected objects along the front, rear, and sides of the vehicle, when active. Object tracking is also used along the sides of the vehicle to monitor the vehicle's blind spots. If a detected object is calculated to be a collision threat, it is displayed as a coloured line over a black background. The distance from a collision threat is colour coded: yellow to amber to red, with red being the closest. Other detected objects that are not a collision threat are displayed as grey lines.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Any detected objects considered a collision threat will trigger repeating warning tones. The warning tones increase in intensity as the collision threat becomes closer. The warning tones become continuous when the object is within 200 mm of the vehicle. Warning tones sound from the area in which a collision threat has been detected.

While the vehicle is passing an object within its sensor range, the vehicle's integrated systems calculate its steering trajectory. The touchscreen displays the trajectory lines on the 360° vehicle plan view and the camera main screen. The steering trajectory lines indicate the projected path of the vehicle, based on the current steering wheel position. See **295, ON-ROAD CAMERA VIEWS**.

SELECTING PARKING AID

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the parking features. See 285, PARKING FEATURES SAFETY.

The parking aid system activates automatically when icon[1] is displayed on the touchscreen's passenger side bar. See **242, PASSENGER SIDE BAR ICONS**.

When a collision threat is detected, the touchscreen automatically displays a 360° vehicle plan view. A warning tone also sounds.

The parking aid system's automatic parking aid alerts default state is on. To switch off automatic parking aid, complete the following steps:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Driver Assistance**.
4. Select **Low speed manoeuvring**.
5. **Automatic parking aid**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.

To activate the parking aid system manually, touch the **camera** icon[2]. See **242, PASSENGER SIDE BAR ICONS**.



Automatic parking aid icon.[1]



Camera icon without automatic parking aid.[2]

PARKING AID VOLUME

To adjust the volume of the parking aid warning tones, rotate the media volume control while the tones are active. See **253, AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS**.

Touch the **speaker** icon on the 360° vehicle plan view, to mute the warning tones for that manoeuvre only. See **295, ON-ROAD CAMERA VIEWS**.

PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The parking aid system is deactivated and cannot be reactivated if:

- The vehicle's speed is greater than 16 km/h (10 mph).
- Park (P) is selected.
- There is a system fault.

The parking aid system warning tones do not sound if:

- Any of the terrain response driving programs are selected. See **191, TERRAIN RESPONSE OVERVIEW**.
- The off-road camera view is displayed. See **297, OFF-ROAD CAMERA VIEWS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

PARKING AID SYSTEM FAULT

If a parking aid system fault is detected, a red border displays on the 360° vehicle plan view. See **295, ON-ROAD CAMERA VIEWS**.

If all of the sensors are clean and the fault is not rectified after the vehicle's electrical system is restarted, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer.

PARK ASSIST

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the parking features. See 285, PARKING FEATURES SAFETY.

Note: *During any park assist manoeuvre, the parking aid system remains active and emits a warning tone when objects are detected as a collision threat. See* ***286, PARKING AID SYSTEM****.*

Note: *All of the doors and the tailgate must be securely closed when using park assist.*

The park assist system is an aid that detects available parking spaces and manoeuvres the vehicle into parallel and perpendicular parking spaces. The park assist system controls the vehicle movement during a manoeuvre using the steering, acceleration, gear selection, and braking.

The park assist system comprises of two modes:

1. Parallel parking: For reversing into a parking space that is parallel to the vehicle.
2. Perpendicular parking: For reversing or driving forward into a parking space that is at a 90° angle to the vehicle.

SELECTING PARK ASSIST

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the parking features. See 285, PARKING FEATURES SAFETY.

To begin a parallel or a perpendicular parking manoeuvre:

1. Touch the **park assist** icon[1] to activate the system. See **240, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.
2. The touchscreen displays a park assist screen with pre-detected parking spaces.
3. The park assist system automatically selects a parking space for the driver.
4. If the pre-selected space is okay, touch **Start** to begin the park assist manoeuvre.
5. Alternatively, if the pre-selected parking manoeuvre is not okay, select the alternative manoeuvre via the touchscreen. See **289, USING PARK ASSIST**.
6. The touchscreen displays all park assist instructions.
7. To cancel an active park assist manoeuvre, at any point, hold or turn the steering wheel. Alternatively, touch the **park assist** icon[1].

Park assist icon.[1]

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

USING PARK ASSIST

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the parking features. See 285, PARKING FEATURES SAFETY.

For assistance when parking

Note: *For park assist to search effectively for a space, the park assist system must maintain a distance of 0.5 m to 1.5 m. The distance of 0.5 m to 1.5 m is between the vehicle and the row of parked vehicles or obstacles.*

As the vehicle is driven forward, the size of a potential parking space is assessed.

The park assist auto-searching feature becomes active when the vehicle's speed is less than 30 km/h (18 mph).

Note: *When park assist auto-searching is active, the instrument panel menu displays a* ***park assist auto-search*** *icon[1].*

The auto-searching feature detects parallel or perpendicular spaces before the **park assist** icon[2] is selected. The touchscreen displays a park assist screen with any pre-detected parking spaces in blue. An instruction message is also displayed.

When a pre-selected parking space is found, a short confirmation tone is given.

Note: *The park assist screen displays any detected parking spaces that are too small or non-manoeuvrable grey.*

If more than one valid space is displayed in the park assist screen, touch the preferred parking space to change from the pre-selected parking space.

The park assist system may determine that other vehicles are too close, on either side, to perform a parking manoeuvre. A detected space can be rejected, even if it is large enough for the vehicle. The driver retains the option to switch park assist off and attempt the manoeuvre manually.

The park assist auto-search feature aids the driver by searching for any available parking spaces. In order to use park assist, the park assist system must still be activated via the touchscreen. See **288, SELECTING PARK ASSIST**.

The instrument panel only displays the **park assist auto-search** icon[1] when the vehicle is driven under 30 km/h (18 mph) and the park assist system is searching for spaces.

The following images display the different states of the **park assist auto-search** icons in the instrument panel:



No valid parking slots.



Valid parking space on the right.



Valid parking space on the left.



Valid parking spaces on both sides.

All park assist features

Note: *During any park assist manoeuvre, the parking aid system remains active.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

For all park assist modes, follow the instructions on the touchscreen until the manoeuvre is complete.

A park assist manoeuvre maybe interrupted by the following:

- The parking aid system detects a potential collision risk.
- Driver input via the steering wheel.
- Vehicle pedals actuation. For example, the driver presses the brake pedal.
- Gear selection intervention.
- The vehicle doors or tailgate are open.

In the event of a park assist manoeuvre interruption the driver can resume the manoeuvre by selecting the **Resume** soft key. Alternatively, the driver can return to the start of the manoeuvre by selecting the **Return To Start** soft key.

Note: *If the park assist manoeuvre is interrupted for too long without any driver input, the park assist manoeuvre is automatically cancelled and will have to begin the process again.*

A park assist manoeuvre cancels if:

- The **park assist** icon[2] is touched. See **288, SELECTING PARK ASSIST**.
- The displayed **Cancel** soft key is selected via the touchscreen.
- The parking aid system's warning tone sounds for longer than 10 seconds.
- The Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) is active.
- A parallel parking manoeuvre has exceeded the maximum of 9 shuffles.
- A perpendicular parking manoeuvre has exceeded the maximum of 7 shuffles.
- The park assist instructions are not followed.
- Park (**P**) is selected for more than 10 minutes.
- The vehicle's speed exceeds 7 km/h (4 mph).

If a system fault is detected, a continuous tone sounds and the touchscreen displays a warning message. If all of the sensors are clean and the fault is not rectified after the vehicle's electrical system is restarted, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.



Park assist auto-search icon.[1]



Park assist icon.[2]

PARK ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the parking features. See 285, PARKING FEATURES SAFETY.

Note: *If an approved tow bar or trailer hitch is fitted, park assist adjusts to compensate for the extra length.*

The park assist system is not available if:

- The vehicle's speed is greater than 30 km/h (18 mph).
- All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) is active.
- Reverse (**R**) is selected.
- The suspension height is set to off-road.
- Wade sensing is active.
- There is a system fault.
- A trailer is connected.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The park assist system may provide inaccurate results if:

- The size or shape of the parking space changes after it was measured.
- There is an irregular kerb alongside the parking space, or the kerb is covered with leaves or snow.
- The vehicle is being used to transport a load that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle.
- The sensors are misaligned due to a minor collision or impact.
- The vehicle had a repair or alteration that was not approved by a retailer/ authorised repairer.
- The vehicle is fitted with non-approved wheels or tyres.
- The vehicle's tyre pressures are not set to the vehicle's recommended specification.
- The vehicle's tyres have significant tyre wear.
- The vehicle is fitted with replacement tyres. After the normal running-in period, the system adapts to the replacement tyres.
- One of the parked vehicles has an attachment at a raised height such as a flatbed truck, snow plough, or cherry picker.
- The parking space is located on a corner or bend.
- The sensors are dirty or covered in mud, ice, or snow.
- The weather is foggy, raining, or snowing.
- The road surface is uneven or rutted.
- The vehicle encounters an obstruction that is thin or wedge shaped.
- The vehicle encounters an obstruction that is elevated and/or protruding, such as ledges or tree branches.
- The vehicle encounters an obstruction with corners and sharp edges.
- A non-approved tow bar or trailer hitch is fitted.
- The sensors are in close proximity to hot exhaust gases from nearby vehicles.
- The sensors are in close proximity to noise generated from emergency vehicles and motorbikes.
- The sensors have been damaged during vehicle cleaning.

PARK ASSIST TROUBLESHOOTING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the parking features. See 285, PARKING FEATURES SAFETY.

The following may be a reason why the park assist system is not searching for a parking space:

- The system may not be activated.
- The vehicle may be travelling above 30 km/h (18 mph).
- The sensors may be covered or partly obscured by dirt, mud, ice, or snow.
- The approach angle may not be suitable.

The following may be a reason why the park assist system does not offer a certain parking space:

- The sensors may be covered or partly obscured by dirt, mud, ice, or snow.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- The space may not be large enough to accommodate the vehicle.
- There may not be enough space on the opposite side of the vehicle for the front to swing out during the manoeuvre.
- The vehicle may have been driven more than 1.5 m from the row of parked vehicles.
- The vehicle may have been driven within 41 cm to the row of parked vehicles.
- The vehicle may have been driven in Reverse (**R**). Park assist searches for a parking space only when the vehicle is in Drive (**D**).
- The approach angle may not be suitable.

The park assist may not position the vehicle accurately within the space if one or more of the system limitations criteria may have been met. See **290, PARK ASSIST LIMITATIONS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

CAMERA FEATURES SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before driving the vehicle.

Failure to use the camera systems safely could result in damage to the vehicle, or an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

The camera feature is a driving aid only. The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention.

The driver is responsible for detecting obstacles and estimating the vehicle's distance from them when manoeuvring the vehicle.

The cameras must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., ice, frost, snow, leaves, mud, or insects. Failure to keep the camera clean may result in miscalculations or false indications, which can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

Do not attach stickers or objects to the cameras. Failure to keep the cameras clear from obstructions may result in miscalculations or false indications, which can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

Some overhanging objects or barriers, which could cause damage to the vehicle, may not be detected by the cameras.

CAMERA SYSTEM OVERVIEW

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the camera features. See 293, CAMERA FEATURES SAFETY.

The camera system is available in three modes:

- On-road.
- Off-road.
- Towing.

The camera system consists of four cameras, located as follows:

- One is located in the centre of the front lower grille.
- One is located underneath each of the exterior door mirrors.
- One is located below the rear licence plate.

On-road camera mode

The on-road camera mode allows the user to select the following camera views:

- Front camera view.
- Front junction camera view.
- Rear camera view.
- Rear junction camera view.
- Perspective camera views.
- 360° vehicle plan view.

For further information about the on-road camera mode, please refer to the relevant topic in the Owner's Handbook. See **295, ON-ROAD CAMERA VIEWS**.

Off-road camera mode

The off-road camera mode uses the surround cameras to display off road camera views, to assist the driver during off-road driving.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Cameras

The off-road camera system mode also displays a view of the terrain ahead of the front bumper, ground and under the bonnet. The touchscreen view is generated using recordings from the vehicle's front camera.

For further information about off-road camera mode, please refer to the relevant topic in the Owner's Handbook. See **297, OFF-ROAD CAMERA VIEWS**.

Towing camera mode

The towing mode consists of the following camera views:

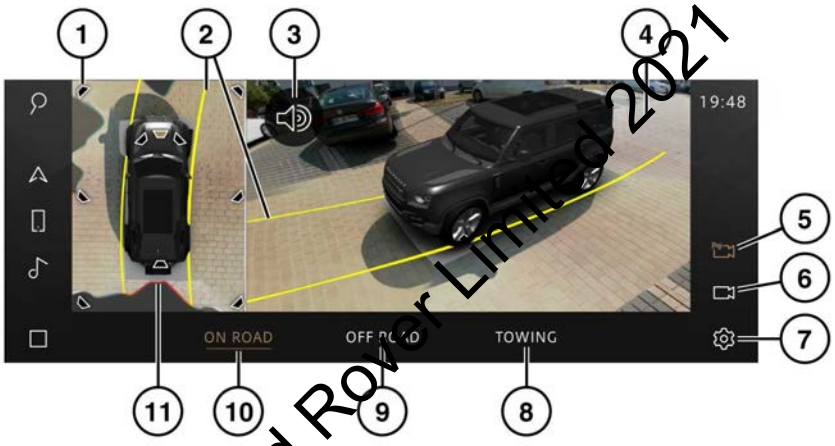
- Hitch assist.
- Tow assist.

For further information about towing, please refer to the relevant topic in the Owner's Handbook. See **135, HITCH ASSIST** and **139, TOW ASSIST** .

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ON-ROAD CAMERA VIEWS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the camera features. See 293, CAMERA FEATURES SAFETY.



1. **Camera view** icon: Touch to select an alternative camera view.
2. Vehicle steering trajectory lines: Displays the projected path, based on the current steering wheel position.

   Note: *The trajectories representation varies between images. For vehicles in a multi-camera display, e.g., perspective camera view, the image represents the trajectory of the vehicle body. For vehicles in a single camera image e.g., front or rear camera view, the image represents the steering wheel trajectory.*
3. **Volume** icon: Touch to mute warning tones for the current parking aid manoeuvre. See **287, PARKING AID VOLUME**.
4. Main camera display.
5. **Camera** icon: The icon displays when the automatic collision alerts are on. See **287, SELECTING PARKING AID**.
6. **Camera** icon: The icon displays when the automatic collision alerts are off. See **287, SELECTING PARKING AID**.
7. **Settings** icon: Touch to select the settings menu. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
8. **TOWING**: Touch to display the towing camera views. See **135, HITCH ASSIST** and **139, TOW ASSIST** .

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

9. **OFF ROAD**: Touch to display off-road camera views. See **297, OFF-ROAD CAMERA VIEWS**.
10. **ON ROAD**: Touch to display on-road camera views.
11. Parking aid object detection threats. See **286, PARKING AID SYSTEM**.

The on-road camera system activates automatically when:

- Reverse (**R**) is selected.
- The vehicle starts to roll backwards.
- An automatic collision threat is detected by the parking aid system.

Note: *The default setting for automatic collision alerts is on when the vehicle is manoeuvring.*

Note: *If automatic collision alerts are disabled via the settings menu, the automatic camera views will no longer be displayed if a collision threat is detected.*

When the camera system is active, the camera views may automatically switch under the following circumstances:

- A rear camera view displays when Reverse (**R**) is selected.
- A rear camera view displays if the vehicle rolls backwards.
- A forward camera view displays when Drive (**D**) is selected.

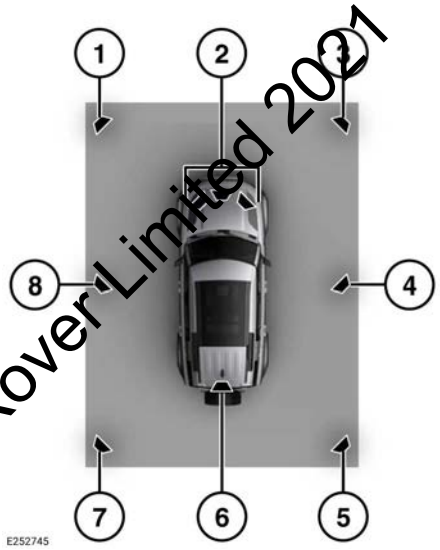
To activate the on-road camera system manually:

1. From the home menu screen, touch the **camera** icon[1],[2]. See **240, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.
2. Select **ON ROAD**.

Note: *When manually activating the camera system, the default camera view display is dependant on the selected gear.*

Note: *The previously selected camera view is displayed, if the camera system has been re-enabled.*

Depending on the user's requirement, alternative camera views can be manually selected. To select an alternative camera view, touch the **camera view** icons from the 360° vehicle plan view:



1. Front left **camera view** icon: Touch to display a front left perspective camera view.
2. Front toggle **camera view** icon: Touch to display a front camera view. Touch again to display a front junction camera view.
3. Front right **camera view** icon: Touch to display a front right perspective camera view.
4. Right **camera view** icon: Touch to display a right kerb perspective camera view.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

5. Rear right **camera view** icon: Touch to display a rear right perspective camera view.
6. Rear toggle **camera view** icon: Touch to display a rear camera view. Touch again to display a rear junction camera view.
7. Rear left **camera view** icon: Touch to display a rear left perspective camera view.
8. Left kerb **camera view** icon: Touch to display a left kerb perspective camera view icon.

The selected **camera view** icon becomes illuminated on the 360° vehicle plan view and image displays on the main display. Alternatively, swipe the main camera screen left or right to display an alternative camera view, or touch the left and right arrows displayed.



Camera icon with automatic collision alerts.[1]



Camera icon without automatic collision alerts.[2]

OFF-ROAD CAMERA VIEWS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the camera system. See 293, CAMERA FEATURES SAFETY.

To activate the off-road camera system:

1. From the home menu screen, touch the **cameras feature** icon[1],[2]. See **240, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.
2. Select **OFF ROAD**.

Alternatively, the off-road camera system can be activated via the 4x4i screen. See **299, 4X4i OVERVIEW**.

The off-road camera displays the following options:

- The drive assist mode uses the surround camera system to display forward vehicle images, to assist the driver during off-road driving.
- ***Note:*** *The touchscreen displays text to confirm the images displayed are not live.*



Drive assist icon: Touch to display the drive assist screen.

CAMERA SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the camera features. See 293, CAMERA FEATURES SAFETY.

The camera system is not active when a fault occurs in the camera system.

The camera system does not perform to the best of it's ability if:

- Any of the cameras become blocked by stickers, mud, snow, debris, etc.
- In adverse weather conditions. For example, heavy fog, rain, or snow.
- The system is operating in low ambient light levels. For example, from dark to bright scenes.

The following may be a reason why the camera system views are no longer displayed on the touchscreen:

- All automatic camera views deactivate when the vehicle speed is above 16 km/h (9 mph).
- Manually activated camera views deactivate when the vehicle speed is above 40 km/h (24 mph).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- When the vehicle is in off-road camera mode, off-road views are deactivated if Reverse (**R**) is selected, and the vehicle speed is above 30 km/h (18 mph).
- A door is open.

The touchscreen displays warning messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

If all of the cameras are clean and the fault is not rectified after an ignition cycle, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

4X4i OVERVIEW

Do not operate the touchscreen while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause driver distraction, leading to a loss of vehicle control. A loss of vehicle control could cause vehicle damage, serious injury, or death.

4x4i allows the user to view off-road information via the touchscreen or the instrument panel.

To view off-road information:

1. Touch the **apps** icon on the touchscreen driver side bar. See **240, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.
2. Select **4x4i**.

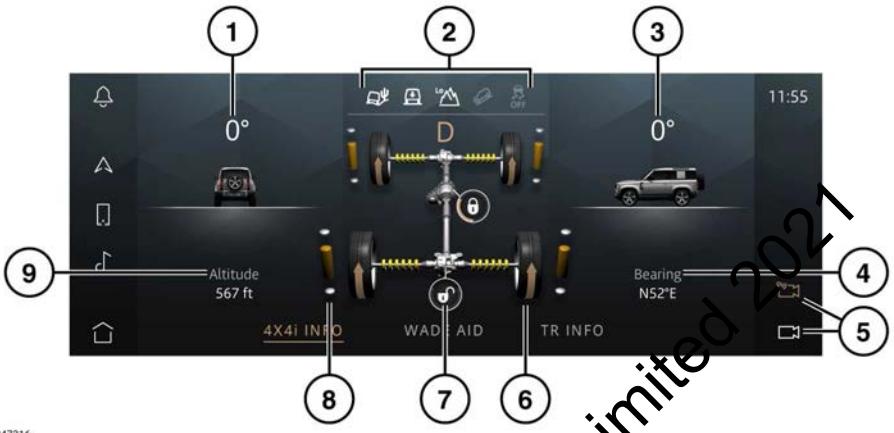
4x4i comprises the following features:

- **4X4i INFO**. See **300, 4X4i INFO**.
- **WADE SENSING**. See **302, WADE SENSING**.
- **TR INFO**. See **303, TR INFO**.

To view further information on off-road driving, including tips and driving techniques, visit the website at **www.landrover.com**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

4X4i INFO



The **4X4i INFO** screen displays the following information:

1. Vehicle pitch.
2. Active off-road driving systems.
3. Vehicle roll.
4. Bearing.
5. **Camera** icons.
6. Wheel spin status.
7. Differential lock status.
8. Suspension movement.
9. Altitude.

Vehicle pitch and roll

Do not exceed the vehicle's limits and capabilities. Vehicle damage, serious injury, or death may result.

Camera

Touch the **camera** icon to display the off-road camera system on the touchscreen. See **297, OFF-ROAD CAMERA VIEWS**.

Note: *The parking aid sensors are disabled if Reverse (**R**) is selected.*

Wheel spin status

The wheel spin arrows change size according to the amount of traction being lost:

- A small arrow indicates a low level of wheel spin.
- A medium arrow indicates a medium level of wheel spin.
- A large arrow indicates a high level of wheel spin.

Differential lock status



The **differential lock** and **unlock** icons indicate if a differential is locked or unlocked. A status bar around the icon indicates the amount of lock being applied.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Suspension movement

The central part of the **suspension movement** icons move up and down to represent suspension articulation. The central part changes colour from teal to orange to indicate when the maximum suspension cross articulation has been reached. See **175, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION OVERVIEW**.

WADE SENSING SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before wading. Failure to follow the guidance could result in vehicle damage, serious injury, or death.

Avoid driving in floodwater or any flowing water.

Do not assume that using the wade sensing feature makes wading any less dangerous. The wade sensing feature only detects the immediate level of water touching the vehicle. The wade sensing feature cannot detect or predict the depth of water surrounding the vehicle or rapid increases in water level. Hence, the wade sensing feature cannot predict if it is safe to continue driving. The driver is fully responsible for assessing the safety of the driving conditions, potential hazards, and the route through the water.

When entering the water from a steep slope, the water level may rise rapidly. The wade sensing feature may not be able to accurately warn the driver of the current water level.

The wade sensing feature cannot detect accurate water levels if a layer of ice or snow is present on the surface of the water.

The sensors for the wade sensing feature are located on the underside of the door mirrors. The sensors must be kept clean and clear of obstructions in order to operate correctly.

The wade sensing feature will display false readings if the door mirrors are in the folded position.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

WADE SENSING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before using the wade sensing feature. See 301, WADE SENSING SAFETY.



E250453

The wade sensing feature is designed to help the driver when driving through water. The wade sensing feature calculates the depth of water adjacent to the vehicle. The touchscreen displays the results along with the maximum wading depth.

To enable the wade sensing feature, select the **WADE SENSING** option (**1**) from the **4X4i INFO** screen. See **300, 4X4i INFO**.

The touchscreen and instrument panel display warning messages as the vehicle approaches its maximum wading depth. Warning tones accompany the warning messages.

If the wade sensing feature limitations are exceeded, the touchscreen image turns grey and the water level no longer displays.

Note: *The wade sensing feature disables the parking aid and auto stop/start systems.*

WADE SENSING LIMITATIONS

The wade sensing feature cannot be enabled if the All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) system is enabled.

Wade sensing operation is suspended if:

- The vehicle's speed exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph).
- The gradient on which the vehicle is travelling exceeds 10°.

Wade sensing operation cancels if the vehicle's speed exceeds 30 km/h (19 mph) for 30 seconds.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TR INFO

The **TR INFO** screen displays further information on the selected terrain response program. See **192, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Low traction launch

LOW TRACTION LAUNCH



Low traction launch enhances low speed manoeuvring and pulling away from a standstill in adverse conditions.

To enable low traction launch:

1. Touch the **Apps** icon on the touchscreen driver side bar.
2. Select **Low Traction Launch**.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions.
4. Select **Start Low Traction Launch**.

Note: *Low traction launch operation is further enhanced if the grass gravel snow driving program is selected. See* ***192, GRASS GRAVEL SNOW****.*

The touchscreen automatically displays a low traction launch pop-up screen if the grass gravel snow driving program is selected, and the following conditions exist:

- The vehicle is stationary.
- The accelerator pedal is not pressed.
- All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) is either not active or is in descent control mode. See **228, DESCENT CONTROL MODE**.

Follow the on-screen instructions to enable low traction launch or to ignore the request.

LOW TRACTION LAUNCH LIMITATIONS

Low traction launch does not operate:

- At speeds above 30 km/h (19 mph).
- If ATPC enters full function mode.
- The **ECO**, dynamic, mud ruts, or sand driving programs are selected.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed fully to the floor.
- A fault is detected in the low traction launch system.

The instrument panel and touchscreen display messages to inform the driver of any system issues.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

PHONE SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using the phone features.

Failure to use the phone features safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving.

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the touchscreen. See 238, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Switch off the phone in areas with a high explosion risk, e.g., filling stations, fuel storage areas, or chemical factories. Further high explosion risks are found where the air contains fuel vapour, chemicals, or metal dust. The phone could trigger an explosion or cause a fire.

Always store the phone securely. In an accident, loose items can cause injury.

The functioning of cardiac pacemakers or hearing aids may be impaired when the phone is in use. Check with a doctor or the device's manufacturer whether any such devices that the vehicle's occupants are using are sufficiently protected against high-frequency energy.

Even when using the Bluetooth® wireless technology hands-free feature, using the phone while driving is dangerous. The use of a phone diverts the driver's attention from the traffic situation. When using the phone, stop at an appropriate place where other vehicles are not endangered or inconvenienced.

Drivers should talk on the phone only when it is safe to do so and when such use does not distract the driver from the road.

Drivers should never text message while driving. Texting while driving diverts attention from the road.

The Health Industry Manufacturers' Association recommends that a minimum separation of 22 cm is maintained between a wireless phone antenna and a pacemaker. The recommendation is to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. The recommendations are consistent with the independent research by, and recommendations of, Wireless Technology Research.

PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 305, PHONE SAFETY.

Note: *The touchscreen displays the recent call list in the order that the calls were recorded. If this information is not available on the connected phone, the recent call list displays as sent from the phone. Some phones may arrange the list in another order.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Phone

Note: *The system removes duplicate entries of the same call type from the same caller. For example, multiple calls from the same caller are reduced to one call.*

The phone system can be operated and viewed via the touchscreen or instrument panel. See **240, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU** and **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION**.

To access the phone features, a phone must be paired with the vehicle. Further information on pairing a phone can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **308, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE**.

To access the phone screen, touch the **phone** icon on the home screen. See **240, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.

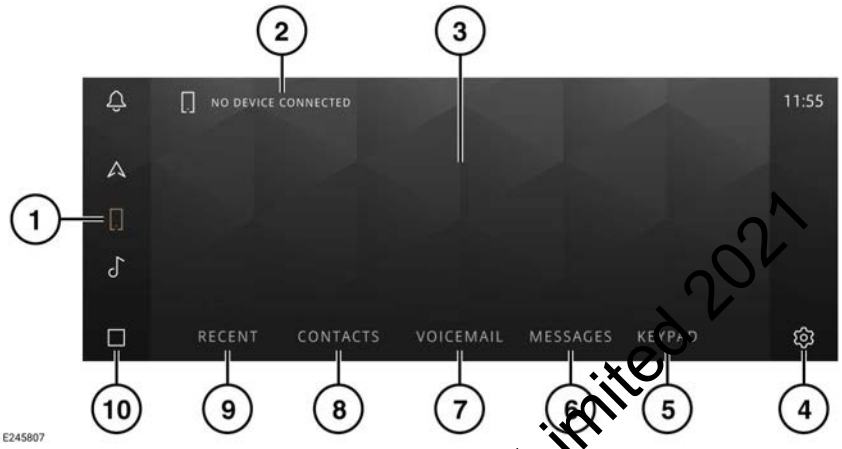
To access the phone screen in the instrument panel, press the **O** icon to display the instrument panel menu. Search **Phone** and press **O** icon. For further information, please refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION**.

The phone system can also be operated via voice commands. Further information on voice control can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **338, USING VOICE CONTROL**.

A phone can also be charged using a wireless charger. For further information, please refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **125, WIRELESS CHARGER**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Touchscreen phone menu



1. **Phone** icon: Touch to select the phone screen. When the phone screen is selected, the icon (**1**) becomes illuminated.
2. Paired device: Displays the name of a paired device or a list of paired devices. Also contains a **Bluetooth** icon to allow pairing of a new device.
3. Feature display: The selected feature is displayed in this area.
4. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the phone settings screen.
5. **KEYPAD**: Touch to access the keypad dialling mode.
6. **MESSAGES**: Touch to display a list of received messages.

   Note: *The availability and functionality of* ***MESSAGES*** *depends on the specification of the vehicle and the market in which the vehicle is being used.*

   Note: *The availability of* ***MESSAGES*** *depends on the handset used and settings on the mobile device.*
7. **VOICEMAIL**: Touch to display voicemail options.
8. **CONTACTS**: Touch to display the downloaded contacts.
9. **RECENT**: Touch to display a list of recently dialled, received, and missed calls.

   Note: *The touchscreen displays the recent call list in the order that the calls were recorded. If this information is not available on the paired phone, the recent call list displays as sent from the phone. Some phones may arrange the list in another order.*
10. **Home** icon: Touch to return to the home screen.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

PHONE COMPATIBILITY

Please refer to the Land Rover website at: **www.landrover.com** for a list of compatible phones.

Note: *The* ***Bluetooth®*** *wireless technology devices listed have been tested for compatibility with Jaguar Land Rover vehicles. Performance varies, based on the phone's software version, battery condition, coverage, and the network provider. Phones are warranted by the phone manufacturer, not by the vehicle manufacturer.*

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 305, PHONE SAFETY.

Note: *The process of pairing and connecting with the vehicle, from the phone, varies depending on the type of phone used.*

Pairing and connecting a phone for the first time:

1. Switch the ignition on and make sure that the touchscreen is active.
2. When pairing a device for the first time, select **ADD DEVICE** from the phone list on the home screen. See **240, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.
3. Select **Bluetooth**. The vehicle's **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device is now discoverable.
4. Using the phone, search for **Bluetooth** devices. On some phones, this is referred to as a new paired device. See the phone's operating instructions for further information. The vehicle's discoverable **Bluetooth** name is the same as the vehicle's name.
5. When the vehicle's name is discovered, follow the on-screen instructions. Select **Yes**, when prompted, to confirm the pairing. Alternatively, some older phones request a PIN to be entered. Either enter the PIN **1234** or select **Yes**, to confirm that the PIN displayed on the phone matches the vehicle's PIN.
6. If there is a prompt for a phonebook, contacts or messages download, accept it. See **311, CONTACTS** and **312, RECEIVING TEXT MESSAGES**.
7. Once the phone is paired and connected to the system, select the **X** icon or the **phone** icon.

   Note: *Some phones require the* ***Bluetooth*** *device pairing to be set as authorised or trusted, in order to automatically connect. Refer to the phone's operating instructions for further information.*

To pair an additional phone:

1. Touch the **swap phone** icon from the home or phone screen. See **310, PHONE SYSTEM ICONS**.
2. Select **Bluetooth**. The vehicle's **Bluetooth** device is now discoverable.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

3. Using the phone, search for **Bluetooth** devices. On some phones, this is referred to as a new paired device. See the phone's operating instructions for further information. The vehicle's discoverable **Bluetooth** name is the same as the vehicle's name.
4. If there is a prompt for a phonebook, contacts, or messages download, accept it. See **311, CONTACTS** and **312, RECEIVING TEXT MESSAGES**.
5. Once the phone is paired and connected to the system, select the **X** icon or the **phone** icon.

Paired phones have the option to be used as a phone, a media device, or both. To select a device type:

1. Select the **settings** icon from any screen. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Connectivity**.
3. Select **Bluetooth**.
4. Select the paired device name.
5. From the paired device screen, select either phone, device, or both.

MANAGING TWO CALLS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 305, PHONE SAFETY.

Note: *When more than two calls, e.g., a conference call, are active on the phone when connecting to the vehicle's phone system, the calls are maintained. However, a maximum of two call details are displayed. When more than two calls are in progress when connecting, any calls that are not active, i.e., on hold or incoming, are rejected.*

Two calls can be taken on the same phone. Notification is given when a second call is received. When accepting a second call, the first call is automatically put on hold.

Alternatively, a second call can be dialled from the displayed screen options. From the screen options:

1. Touch the **add call** icon. See **310, PHONE SYSTEM ICONS**.
2. Touch **CONTACTS** to display the list of saved contacts. Alternatively, touch **KEYPAD** to enter the number. See **305, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.

When there are two separate calls, the **hold** icon changes to a **swap** icon. Touch the **swap** icon, or the contact's name or number, to swap between the current call and the call on hold. See **310, PHONE SYSTEM ICONS**.

Touch and hold the **end call** icon to end the current call and return to the remaining call. Touch the **end call** icon to end both calls. See **310, PHONE SYSTEM ICONS**.

MERGE CALLS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 305, PHONE SAFETY.

If two calls are in progress on the same phone, both calls can be merged into one conference call. Select the displayed **merge call** icon. See **310, PHONE SYSTEM ICONS**.

Note: *The vehicle cannot merge two calls from two different phones.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

While the calls are merged, touch the **hold** icon or the **mute** icon to mute both calls. Alternatively, touch the **end call** icon to end both calls. See **310, PHONE SYSTEM ICONS**.

The **merge call** icon cannot be deselected. If one caller ends the call, the remaining call stays active.

PHONE SYSTEM ICONS

Depending on the part of the phone system in use, the following icons display on the touchscreen:



Call icon: Touch to send or accept a call.



End call icon: Touch to end or reject a call.



Hold call icon: Touch to hold a call. Touch again to return to the call.



Add call icon: Touch to make a second phone call.



Swap call icon: Touch to swap between connected calls.



Merge call icon: Touch to merge two connected calls into a conference call.



Handset icon: Touch to switch the call to the phone handset.



Message icon: Touch to send or read a message.



Mute icon: Touch to mute the microphone and initiate privacy mode. While selected, the caller cannot hear the conversation.



Phone signal strength indicator.



Phone battery level indicator.



Swap phone icon: Touch to swap the phone.



Search contacts icon: Touch to search for contacts.



Recent icon: Touch to view a list of recent calls.

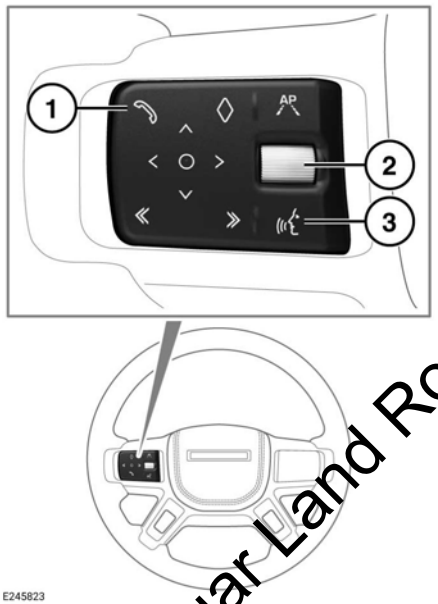


Voicemail icon: Touch for direct call to received voicemails.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

STEERING WHEEL PHONE CONTROLS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 305, PHONE SAFETY.



1. Press to answer an incoming call. Press and hold to end a call.
2. Thumbwheel: Rotate up to increase, or down to decrease, the volume level during a call.
3. Press to make a call using voice control. See **338, USING VOICE CONTROL**.

Note: *The user must scroll through a contact list by using the touchscreen scroll bar.*

PHONE CALL VOLUME

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 305, PHONE SAFETY.

While a phone call is active, rotate the media system's volume control to adjust the call volume. Alternatively, adjust via the steering wheel controls. See **253, AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS** and **311, STEERING WHEEL PHONE CONTROLS**.

If the media system is in use when a phone call is active, the media system source is muted for the duration of the call.

CONTACTS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 305, PHONE SAFETY.

Contacts stored in the memory of a paired phone can be automatically downloaded to the vehicle's contacts list. The contact list is downloaded each time the phone is connected to the system. See **308, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE**.

Certain phones store the contacts in two different areas: the SIM card and the phone's memory. The vehicle's system accesses only those numbers stored in the phone's memory.

To access contacts via the touchscreen:

1. From the phone screen, select **CONTACTS**. See **305, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

2. Use the scroll bar, or swipe the list, to search the list alphabetically.
3. Identify the required contact from the displayed list. Touch to call. When a contact has more than one number stored, select the required number from the list.

   Note: *To display the entire list, use the scroll bar.*

To access contacts via the instrument panel:

1. Select **Phone** from the instrument panel menu. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION**.
2. Select **Recents**.
3. Use the steering wheel controls to scroll through the displayed list. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION**.
4. Identify the required contact from the displayed list. Press **O** on the steering wheel controls to call.

If the phone supports contact cards, contact information can be displayed in the vehicle's contacts list.

The order in which the contacts list is displayed can be changed as follows:

1. Select the **settings** icon from phone screen. See **305, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.
2. Select **Phone**.
3. Select **First name** or **Last name** to change the display for the paired phone.

RECEIVING TEXT MESSAGES

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 305, PHONE SAFETY.

Note: *The message feature is not compatible with all phones. For further information, please refer to the Land Rover website at:* ***www.landrover.com****.*

Note: *The availability and functionality of* ***MESSAGES*** *depends on the specification of the vehicle and the market in which the vehicle is being used.*

Note: *The touchscreen only displays messages to the selected paired device.*

Note: *The touchscreen does not display the* ***MESSAGES*** *soft key if the user declines access via the mobile phone to download messages.*

To access text messages via the touchscreen a phone must be paired with the vehicle. For further information on pairing a phone, refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **308, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE**.

When receiving an incoming text message, the touchscreen displays a pop-up notification.

A pop-up notification displays the following options:



Call icon: Touch to call the sender of the text message.

Read Out soft key: Touch for the text message to be read out as an audio message.

To access the **MESSAGES** list on the touchscreen:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

1. From the phone screen, select **MESSAGES**. See **305, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.
2. Use the scroll bar to browse the list.
3. Identify the required text message from the displayed list and select.
4. The selected message allows for the following options:
   - **Call**.
   - **Read Out**.
   - **Reply**: Provides a list of templates that the user can reply with, e.g., **I will call you back** or **I will be there soon**. Select the required reply. Alternatively, the user can edit and create a message template to reply with.

Note: *The **Reply** option is only available when the vehicle is stationary.*

The user can access received messages and send replies via voice commands. For further information, refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **338, USING VOICE CONTROL**.

To display the message settings:

1. Select the **settings** icon from the phone screen. See **305, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.
2. Select **Phone**.
3. Select **Messaging**.

The following options are available:

- **New Message Alert**: Touch toggle on or off.
- **Message Tones**: Touch toggle on or off.
- **Edit message templates**.
- **Reject call with Message**. Select the required entry from list displayed.

ANDROID AUTO

Note: Android Auto™ *is compatible with Android phones running v5.0 (Lollipop) and above.*

Note: *Google™, Android™, Android Auto™, Google Play™ and other related marks and logos are trademarks of Google LLC.*

Android Auto is a feature designed to give the user access to cell phone features while driving e.g., music, phone calls, Google voice support, messaging and navigation, with safety in mind. The feature is designed to minimise distraction so that the user can remain focussed on the road.

To access **Android Auto**, the user needs an Android phone running 5.0 (Lollipop) or higher. Connect a compatible device via the USB cable to the portable media interface. Follow the steps indicated on the vehicle's touchscreen. See **263, PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS**. See **265, CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE**.

Android Auto is designed to work using voice control as much as possible. A Google voice session can be started either from the **Android Auto** screen or through a long press of the steering wheel voice button.

Note: *A short press of the voice button will start a vehicle native voice control session. See **338, USING VOICE CONTROL**.*

For further information on **Android Auto** please visit **www.android.com/auto**.

APPLE CARPLAY

Note: Apple CarPlay® *is only compatible with an iPhone® 5 and above running iOS 7.1 and above.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *Apple® and iPhone® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries. App Store® is a service mark of Apple Inc.*

Apple CarPlay is a feature designed to give the user access to core iPhone features while driving, e.g., music, phone calls, Siri, messaging, and navigation with safety in mind. The feature is designed to minimise distraction so that the user can remain focussed on the road.

To access **Apple CarPlay**, the user needs an iPhone 5 and above running iOS 7.1 and above. Connect a compatible iPhone via the USB cable to the portable media interface. Follow the steps indicated on the touchscreen. See **263, PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS**. See **265, CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE**.

Apple CarPlay is designed to work using voice control as much as possible. A Siri voice session can be started either from the **Apple CarPlay** screen or through a long press of the steering wheel voice button.

Note: *A short press of the voice button will start a vehicle native voice control session. See **338, USING VOICE CONTROL**.*

For further information on **Apple CarPlay** please visit the Apple website at: **www.apple.com**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION



Bluetooth® wireless technology is the name for short-range Radio Frequency (RF) technology that allows electronic devices to communicate wirelessly with each other.

Note: *The **Bluetooth**® word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc and any use of such marks by Jaguar Land Rover Limited is under licence.*

The vehicle's **Bluetooth** wireless technology system supports **Bluetooth** wireless technology Hands-Free Profile (HFP), Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP), Audio Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP), and Message Access Profile (MAP).

Note: *HFP, A2DP and AVRCP profiles can be connected independently. A phone can be connected via one profile, while a media device can be connected via the other, at the same time.*

Before making use of the vehicle's **Bluetooth** wireless technology phone system, the **Bluetooth** wireless technology device must be paired and connected to the vehicle's system. The recommended method of connection is via the device to the vehicle, see **308, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE**.

Each time the ignition is switched on, the vehicle's system attempts to connect with the last connected phone or media device.

Phones and media devices have a wide range of audio and echo characteristics. The vehicle's system may take a few seconds to adapt and deliver optimum audio performance. To achieve this, it may be necessary to reduce the media sound volume and also reduce the ventilation fan speed slightly.

Note: *Some device's require the **Bluetooth** wireless technology device pairing feature to be set to authorised or trusted in order to automatically connect. Refer to the device's operating instructions for further information.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

NAVIGATION SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using the navigation system.

Failure to use the navigation system safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠ **The navigation system is not a substitute for driving safely with due care and attention, Road Traffic Regulations must always be observed. Drivers should not assume that a feature will correct errors in judgement when driving.**

⚠ **The driver is responsible for staying alert, driving safely, and for being in control of the vehicle at all times, relative to the prevailing conditions. The driver is responsible for determining the safety of the route suggested by the navigation system. The navigation system may not function properly in all circumstances.**

⚠ **Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the touchscreen. See 238, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.**

Note: *During any map update, the vehicle's electrical system must not be switched off, before the update is complete. Doing so cancels the map update and potentially leaves the system without any available map data. See* ***324, MAP UPDATES****.*

Note: *The speed camera notifications are not available in certain markets.*

Note: *The speed camera notifications can be enabled or disabled via the navigation settings menu. See* ***321, NAVIGATION SETTINGS*** *.*

NAVIGATION OVERVIEW

The navigation system guides the driver to a selected destination using map and turn information displayed on the touchscreen, instrument panel, and in the Head-Up Display (HUD). Navigation instructions can also be complimented by voice guidance.

The touchscreen is used to control the navigation system via menus and map displays. See **317, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.

The navigation system uses a selection of Pivi Pro features to enhance the navigation system. See **324, PIVI PRO FEATURES**.

The vehicle's instrument panel can be set up to display navigation instructions and maps. See **323, INSTRUMENT PANEL VIEW**.

The HUD can also be set up to display turn instructions. See **78, HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD)**.

The navigation system can also be controlled via voice commands. See **323, NAVIGATION VOICE CONTROL** .

NAVIGATION PERFORMANCE LIMITATIONS

Under certain conditions, it is possible for the vehicle's position displayed on the map screen to be incorrect. Incorrect vehicle positioning may happen when:

- Driving on a spiral ramp in a building.
- Driving on or beneath elevated roads.
- Driving between tall buildings.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- Two roads are close and parallel.
- The vehicle is transported to another location.
- The vehicle has been rotated on a turntable.
- The vehicle's battery has been disconnected.

GPS signals may occasionally be interrupted due to physical barriers, such as roads under raised carriageways and tunnels.

USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 316, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

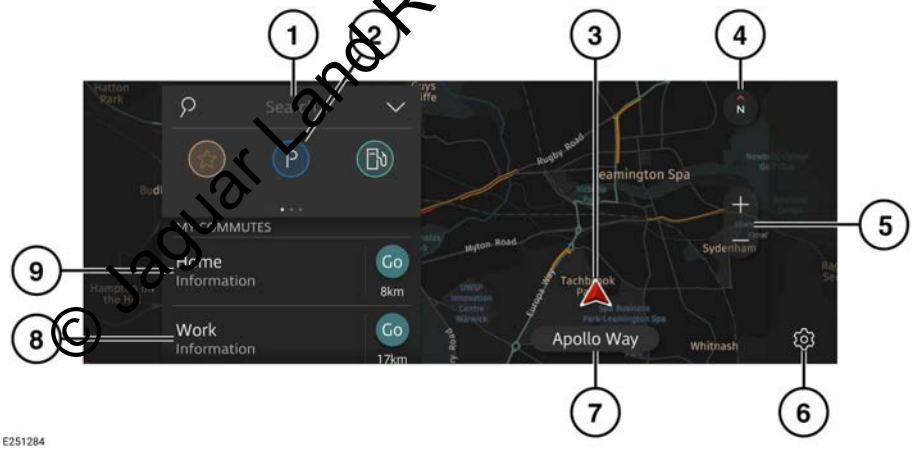
To access the navigation system, touch the **navigation** icon via the navigation tile on the home screen. See **240, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.

Alternatively, touch the **navigation** icon via the driver side bar. See **241, DRIVER SIDE BAR ICONS**.

Note: *The navigation tile displays various shortcuts depending if a route has been set or not.*

Note: *A first time user should set up personal preferences in the navigation settings menu. Personal preferences may include settings for managing which selected routing mode and route preferences are applied. See **321, NAVIGATION SETTINGS** .*

Touch the **navigation** icon to display a map view of the current vehicle position and search card.



E251284

1. **Search** card: Touch to search for an address or a place name. See **318, SETTING A DESTINATION**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

2. Category list: Touch to search for Points of Interest (POIs) or a saved favourite from the category list displayed. Swipe left or right for further options. See **318, SETTING A DESTINATION** and **321, FAVOURITES**.
3. The current vehicle position and direction.
4. View options toggle: Touch to select **2D**, **3D**, north facing, or route overview map views.
5. **Zoom** icons: Touch to zoom in or out.

   Note: *The map zoom setting can be altered by using a pinch or push motion. The map view can be panned using a swipe motion.*
6. **Settings** icon: Touch to display the navigation settings menu. See **321, NAVIGATION SETTINGS** .
7. Current road name.
8. **Work** shortcut: When a work destination is saved as a favourite, the user can select the work shortcut from the search card to begin navigation guidance. See **321, FAVOURITES**.
9. **Home** shortcut: When a home destination is saved as a favourte, the user can select the home shortcut from the search card to begin navigation guidance. See **321, FAVOURITES**.

SETTING A DESTINATION

⚠ **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 316, NAVIGATION SAFETY .**

To set a destination:

1. Touch the **search** icon[1] located within the navigation tile on the touchscreen's home menu. See **240, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.
2. Alternatively, touch the **search** icon[1] located within the search card on the navigation map screen. See **317, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.
3. Using the keyboard:
   - Input the required destination.
4. Select the required entry.
5. The navigation system calculates the route. The touchscreen displays a map with the entered location, destination address, and the most appropriate route. The touchscreen may also display alternative routes.
6. Select the required route from the available options.
7. Touch **Go** to begin navigation.

To search for Points of Interest (POIs) from the category list:

1. Select a category from the following list: See **317, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.
   - **EAT & DRINK**.
   - **FUEL STATIONS**.
   - **PARKING**.
   - **CAR DEALER/REPAIRER**.
   - **SHOPPING**.
   - **SIGHTS & MUSEUM**.
   - **LEISURE & OUTDOORS**.
   - **GOING OUT**.
   - **ACCOMMODATION**.
   - **POLICE/EMERGENCY**.
   - **HOSPITAL or HEALTHCARE FACILITY**.

   Note: *More options may be available.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

2. From the sub-category list, select the required destination.
3. The navigation system calculates the route. The touchscreen displays a map with the entered location, destination address, and the most appropriate route. The touchscreen may also display alternative routes based on route preferences setup.
4. Select the required route from the available options.
5. Touch **Go** to begin navigation.

To edit the route:

1. Touch the **Routes** soft key.
2. Select the **route preferences** icon[2].
3. Select the required route preferences, e.g., avoiding toll roads or avoiding tunnels.
4. Touch **Start** to begin navigation.

Note: *Touch the* ***drop-down*** *icon[3],* ***suggestions*** *icon[4], or the* ***OK*** *soft key, to view the search results. Touch the text box to continue typing.*

Note: *The navigation system calculates all routes, based on the selected routing mode and route preferences. See* ***321, NAVIGATION SETTINGS*** *.*

Note: *An address, place name, or category can be added as a waypoint after a destination has been selected. See* ***320, EDIT ROUTE****.*



Search icon.[1]



Route preferences icon.[2]



Drop-down icon.[3]



Suggestions icon.[4]

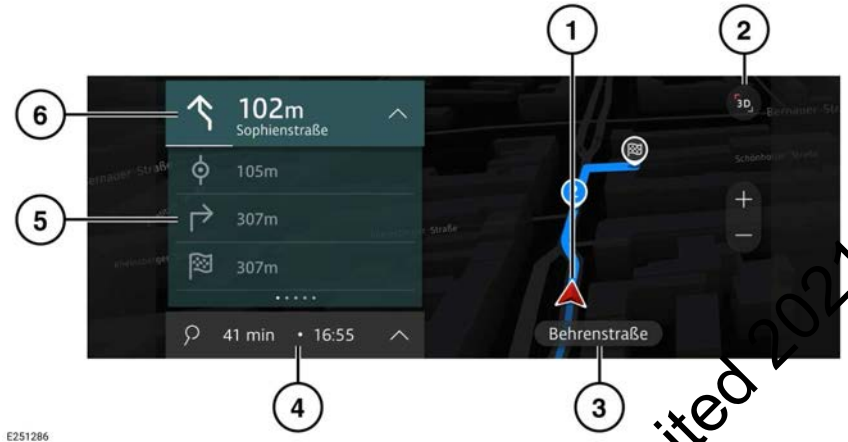
MAP SPLIT SCREEN

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 316, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

When a route has been selected, depending on the navigation settings, the touchscreen displays a turn by turn guidance map.

Note: *The information panel can be edited to display other options. See* ***321, NAVIGATION SETTINGS*** *.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



1. The current vehicle position and direction.
2. View options toggle: Touch to select the **2D**, **3D**, north facing, or route overview map views.
3. Displays the current road name.
4. Information bar: Displays information including the remaining route distance and the ETA.
5. Information panel: The information panel can be edited to display alternative panels, e.g. manoeuvres overview and junction views.
6. Active route: Next turn by turn instruction display.

EDIT ROUTE

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 316, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

When a route is selected, the user has the option to edit the route via the following:

- Route options: Select the preferred option from the fastest, shortest, or the most economic route.
- Route preferences: Select to remove or add route preferences such as, roads, tunnels, ferries, etc.

A waypoint can also be added, deleted, or a route rearranged for any active route guidance.

To add a waypoint:

1. During an active route, expand the search card on the navigation map screen. See **317, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.
2. Touch the **Add waypoint** soft key.
3. Search for a destination:
   - Input the required destination and select.
   - Alternatively, select a waypoint from any saved destinations or categories.
   - If the selected destination is correct, touch the **Add** soft key.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

4. The waypoint is added to the active route guidance.

   Note: *Follow the same process if any additional waypoints are required.*

The following options can also be selected:

- Remove waypoint: Swipe the added waypoint to reveal the **bin** icon[2]. Touch the icon[2] to remove the waypoint from the current route.
- Change the order of the waypoints: From the list of added waypoints, drag and drop to re-order the waypoints.



Bin icon.[2]

NOTIFICATIONS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 316, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

A range of notifications can be displayed via the navigation map screen, e.g., low fuel, safety cameras, traffic information, and manoeuvre details.

All navigation notifications can be edited via the navigation settings menu. See **321, NAVIGATION SETTINGS** .

FAVOURITES

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 316, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

Detailed information about an address, place name, or category, can be saved as a favourite.

Also the navigation system can save the user's home and work address and use as a shortcut within the search card. See **317, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.

To add a destination as a favourite, touch the **favourite** icon[1]. The destination is added to the **Favourites** category. See **317, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.

Note: *The **Favourites** category is located via the search card on the navigation map screen. See **317, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.*

To remove a favourite, touch the **favourite** icon[1].

Note: *If no route is selected, select the required favourite to set it as a destination.*

Note: *If a route is selected, select the required favourite to add it as a waypoint.*



Favourite icon.[1]

NAVIGATION SETTINGS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 316, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

To view the navigation settings menu:

1. Select the **settings** icon from the navigation map screen. See **317, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.
2. Select **NAVIGATION** from the settings screen.

The following options are available for the user to enable or disable:

General:

- **Show Qibla**: Displays direction to Qibla on compass: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- **Notifications**:
  - **Mute navigation guidance**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
  - **Safety zone warning**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
  - **Display a visual cue when approaching safety zone**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
  - **Play a sound when approaching a safety zone**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
  - **Display a visual cue when approaching a speed camera**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
  - **Low fuel alert**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.

Map:

- **Satellite**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
- **Traffic displayed on map**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
- **Favourites on map**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
- **Auto zoom**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
- **3D buildings**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
- **POI Display on map**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.

Route and Guidance:

- **Dynamic Routing**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
- **Routing mode**:
  - **Fastest**.
  - **Shortest**.
  - **ECO**.
- **Route Preferences**: Select from the available list to avoid certain road features.
- **My commute**: Enable or disable from the following:
  - **Learn my routes**: Help's make day-to-day driving to go more smoothly by taking into account the current situation on routes the driver does regularly: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
  - **Auto-start commute**: Recognises when the driver is going to frequent destinations and switches on My Commute automatically: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
  - **Fewer commands**: Less driver commands given when driving in areas known: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
  - **Delete driving history**: Removes stored driving history.
- **Suggestions along the routes**:

Instrument panel display:

- **Junction view**:
  - **Picture of a junction view**: Displays a junction map view in the instrument panel: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
  - **Show on main screen**: Displays a junction map view in the instrument panel: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
- **Lane assistance**:
  - **Picture of a lane assistance**: Displays a lane assistance view in the instrument panel: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- **Show on main screen**: Displays a junction map view in the instrument panel: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.

- **Abstract Route Overview**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
- **Next Waypoint**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
- **Rerouting Information**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
- **Satellite**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.

Voice: Displays a list of voice settings.

About: Displays information such as, map information, GPS information, and legal information.

MAP AUTO ZOOM

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 316, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

When auto-zoom is enabled, the map automatically zooms in when the vehicle is travelling at slow speeds and zooms out when travelling at higher speeds.

Auto-zoom can be enabled and disabled via the navigation settings menu. See **321, NAVIGATION SETTINGS** .

NAVIGATION SYSTEM VOLUME

To adjust the volume of the navigation voice guidance, rotate the media system's volume control while spoken guidance is given. See **252, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

Note: *The volume of the safety camera notification is linked to the voice guidance volume.*

INSTRUMENT PANEL VIEW

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 316, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

Note: *The availability and functionality of navigation maps displayed on the instrument panel depends on the specification of the vehicle.*

The instrument panel can be set up to show a view of a full navigation map or a mini navigation map, depending in the instrument panel setup.

Note: *In this view, essential information, e.g., vehicle speed, fuel level, and range is displayed as an information bar.*

Navigation turn instructions are also available to the user and are displayed in the instrument panel and Head-Up Display (HUD).

Note: *Navigation turn instructions are only displayed if route guidance is active.*

To display navigation map views in the instrument panel or HUD, please refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **72, CONFIGURING A VIRTUAL INSTRUMENT PANEL**.

The instrument panel can be edited by the user to display alternative junction and lane assistance map views. See **321, NAVIGATION SETTINGS** .

NAVIGATION VOICE CONTROL

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 316, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *Navigation voice control is not available in all markets.*

When using voice control for the navigation system, information is used from the on-board navigation database. Online features are not available.

The user can command the navigation system to:

- Navigate to a saved home location or work location.
- Navigate to a recent or previous destination.
- Enter an address.
- Navigate to a Point Of Interest (POI).
- Navigate to a postcode.

  Note: *The navigate to a postcode voice command is not available in all markets.*
- Cancel an active route guidance.

For assistance when operating the navigation system's voice control feature, please refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **339, VOICE TUTORIAL**.

MAP UPDATES

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 316, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

Note: *For user safety, the vehicle must be stationary for an online or USB update process to avoid any distraction.*

The map data in the navigation system is automatically updated via an online update. The user is only prompted with a notification when the update was successfully updated.

Note: *Online updates are only available if connected to the internet. See **351, CONNECTIVITY OVERVIEW**.*

For further information on navigation system updates, please contact an authorised retailer/authorised repairer.

The map data in the navigation system can also be updated by downloading the updated map data to a USB memory device.

Note: *Due to the map data file size, it is recommended that a USB 3.0 memory device is used to update the map data.*

To update the navigation system's map data using a USB, please visit: **www.landrover.com** and search for '**Map Updates**'.

To download to a USB memory device:

1. Download the map data from the website to a USB memory device.
2. Insert the USB drive into the vehicle's USB socket. See **124, AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS**.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to upload the map data to the navigation system.

Information on the installed maps is available in the navigation settings menu. See **321, NAVIGATION SETTINGS** .

For further information on the navigation system, please visit: **www.landrover.com**.

PIVI PRO FEATURES

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 316, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *In order to benefit from the full range of Pivi Pro features, the vehicle requires connection to the internet. See* ***351, CONNECTIVITY OVERVIEW****.*

Pivi Pro uses a selection of features to enhance the navigation system.

Pivi Pro features include:

- Real-Time Traffic Information. See **325, REAL TIME TRAFFIC INFORMATION**.
- Online Routing. See **325, ONLINE ROUTING**.
- Planning Routes and Door to Door Routing. See **326, PLANNING ROUTES AND DOOR TO DOOR ROUTING** .
- Satellite Views. See **326, SATELLITE VIEWS**.
- Fuel Price Service. See **326, FUEL PRICES SERVICE**.
- Commute Mode. See **327, COMMUTE MODE** .
- Parking Service. See **327, PARKING SERVICE**.
- Safety Cameras. See **327, SAFETY CAMERAS**.

REAL TIME TRAFFIC INFORMATION

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 316, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

Uses live traffic data feeds, allowing for better traffic information, planning, and rerouting, for the user to complete the journey more efficiently.

Note: *Historical and internet traffic information is not available in all markets.*

Traffic information is displayed as colour coded on the navigation map. The colour codes are:

- Red: Very heavy traffic or stationary traffic.
- Amber: Heavy traffic.
- Black: Closed road.

Real-time traffic can be displayed with a route selected or with no route selected.

Note: *In some instances, the real time traffic information feature does not operate if the navigation map displays 3D buildings.*

Note: *Real-time traffic information does not automatically reroute journeys.*

A traffic-enabled route can be selected. A traffic-enabled route displays improved and updated routes to the destination, avoiding traffic congestion and delays. An option can also be enabled to possibly find a route to the destination, avoiding an alerted incident or traffic flow issues.

Note: *A live internet connection is required to receive updated traffic information during the journey. See* ***351, CONNECTIVITY OVERVIEW****.*

ONLINE ROUTING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 316, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

While on route to a destination, the navigation system monitors live traffic conditions and takes into account typical traffic patterns for that time of day, keeping the user on the optimum route.

Note: *Online routing can be used in conjunction with commute mode.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

PLANNING ROUTES AND DOOR TO DOOR ROUTING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 316, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

Before starting a route, the user can use the **Route Planner** smartphone app to set a destination. The smartphone app sends the selected destination automatically to the vehicle's navigation screen.

Once parked, the **Route Planner** smartphone app guides the user to the selected destination, which includes public transport options.

Note: *The **Route Planner** smartphone app is only available in selected markets.*

Downloading and installing the **Route Planner** smartphone app:

1. Search for and download the **Route Planner** smartphone app from the Apple App® store or Google Play™ store.
2. When the installation is complete, open the launcher. Select the **Route Planner** smartphone app icon.

Note: *To sign in to the **Route Planner** smartphone app, use the same email address and password used to set up the InControl account. See **342, INCONTROL ACCOUNT SET UP**.*

Note: *Apple® and iPhone® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries. App Store® is a service mark of Apple Inc.*

Note: *Google™, Android™, and Google Play™ store is a registered trademark of Google LLC.*

SATELLITE VIEWS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 316, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

The satellite views feature provides an overhead map view of the vehicle's surroundings.

Note: *If the satellite view feature is used continuously, it may consume large amounts of mobile data. If the user has purchased and fitted their own data-enabled nano SIM card, please check the data allowance is appropriately configured for providing high-data services.*

FUEL PRICES SERVICE

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 316, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

When a fuel station is selected during a Points Of Interest (POI) search, the nearby fuel stations can be sorted according to the price of the fuel. Fuel prices are updated to the vehicle's database from the internet.

Note: *Fuel pricing information may not be updated in real time and cannot be guaranteed to be accurate.*

Note: *In some markets, a relative price index is displayed instead of live fuel prices.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

COMMUTE MODE

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 316, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

Commute mode allows for the navigation system to learn regular commutes and automatically advises the user of the expected journey time based on live and historical traffic movements without the user having to input a destination.

The navigation system learns the routes the user takes for a set destination and advises which of those is the quickest.

Note: *Commute mode can be enabled and disabled via the navigation settings menu. See* ***321, NAVIGATION SETTINGS*** .

Commute mode displays a highlighted route on the navigation map and uses the learned routes, combined with live traffic information, to calculate the fastest of the previously used routes.

If more than one commute is available, the alternative commutes become available for selection.

When the commute mode feature detects areas the driver regularly uses, the frequency of smart voice guidance reduces. See **321, NAVIGATION SETTINGS** .

PARKING SERVICE

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 316, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

As the user approaches a destination, the navigation system displays available parking. Simply tap on the preferred car park. The navigation system updates to direct the user to it. Available parking and pricing information is also displayed for selected markets.

SAFETY CAMERAS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 316, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

The safety cameras feature provides the location of potential accident black spots, or areas that have been identified as a potential danger by the presence of safety cameras. Available in selected locations only.

Note: *Safety camera information is not available in all countries.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Navigation (Korea only)

NAVIGATION SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using the navigation system.

Failure to use the navigation system safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

The navigation system is not a substitute for driving safely with due care and attention. Road Traffic Regulations must always be observed. Drivers should not assume that a feature will correct errors in judgement when driving.

The driver is responsible for staying alert, driving safely, and for being in control of the vehicle at all times, relative to the prevailing conditions. The driver is responsible for determining the safety of the route suggested by the navigation system. The navigation system may not function properly in all circumstances.

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the touchscreen. See 238, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Note: *During any map update, the vehicle's electrical system must not be switched off, before the update is complete. Doing so cancels the map update and potentially leaves the system without any available map data. See* ***337, MAP UPDATES****.*

Note: *The speed camera notifications can be enabled or disabled via the navigation settings menu. See* ***335, NAVIGATION SETTINGS****.*

NAVIGATION OVERVIEW

The navigation system guides the driver to a selected destination using map and turn information displayed on the touchscreen, instrument panel, and in the Head-Up Display (HUD). Navigation instructions can also be complemented by voice guidance.

The touchscreen is used to control the navigation system via menus and map displays. See **330, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.

The vehicle's instrument panel can be set up to display navigation instructions and maps. See **336, INSTRUMENT PANEL VIEW**.

The HUD can also be set up to display turn instructions. See **78, HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD)**.

The navigation system can also be controlled via voice commands. See **338, USING VOICE CONTROL**.

NAVIGATION PERFORMANCE LIMITATIONS

Under certain conditions, it is possible for the vehicle's position displayed on the map screen to be incorrect. Incorrect vehicle positioning may happen when:

- Driving on a spiral ramp in a building.
- Driving on or beneath elevated roads.
- Driving between tall buildings.
- Two roads are close and parallel.
- The vehicle is transported to another location.
- The vehicle has been rotated on a turntable.
- The vehicle's battery has been disconnected.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

GPS signals may occasionally be interrupted due to physical barriers, such as roads under raised carriageways and tunnels.

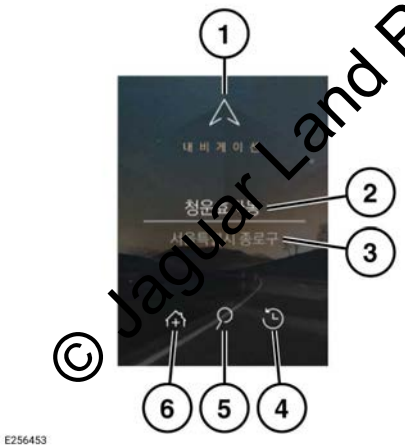
NAVIGATION TILES

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 328, NAVIGATION SAFETY.

The touchscreen home menu displays a navigation tile. See **240, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.

Note: *Depending if a route has been set or not, the navigation tile may display differently.*

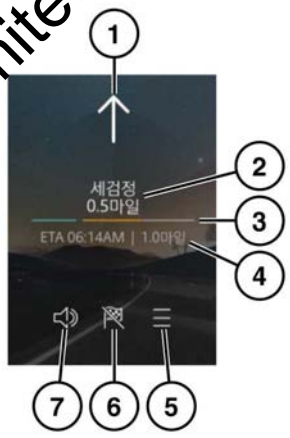
The following navigation tile displays when no route is set:



E256453

1. **Navigation** icon: Touch to access the navigation map screen. See **330, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.
2. Displays the current location section name.
3. Displays the nearest town or city, depending on the vehicle's location.
4. **Recent destinations** icon: Touch to view a list of recent destinations.
5. **Search** icon: Touch to activate a navigation search. See **332, SETTING A DESTINATION**.
6. **Take me home** icon: Touch to activate a stored home destination, or input the home destination details.

The following navigation tile displays when a route is set:



E256456

1. **Turn by turn** icon: Displays the upcoming manoeuvre instruction.
2. Displays the remaining distance to the turn by turn instruction and road name for the next manoeuvre.
3. Progress bar: Displays a start to finish progress bar when a route has been set.
4. Arrival information: Displays the Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA) and remaining distance.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

5. **Guidance pop-up** icon: Touch to display a pop-up tile displaying the following options to select:
   - **Traffic**: Displays traffic information when a route is set.

     Note: *Internet connection is required to receive traffic information. See* ***351, CONNECTIVITY OVERVIEW****.*
   - **Rest areas**: Displays a list of rest areas during the set route guidance, should the user choose to stop.
   - **Fuel stations**: Displays a list of fuel stations in order of distance during an active route guidance.
6. **Cancel guidance** icon: Touch to cancel the current route guidance.
7. **Mute** icon: Touch to mute or un-mute the navigation voice guidance.

USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 328, NAVIGATION SAFETY.

To access the navigation system, touch the **navigation** icon via the navigation tile on the home screen. See **240, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.

Alternatively, touch the **navigation** icon via the driver side bar. See **241, DRIVER SIDE BAR ICONS**.

Note: *The navigation tile displays various shortcuts depending if a route has been set or not. See* ***329, NAVIGATION TILES****.*

Note: *A first time user should set up personal preferences in the navigation settings menu. Personal preferences may include settings for managing which selected routing mode and route preferences are applied. See* ***335, NAVIGATION SETTINGS****.*

Touch the **navigation** icon to display a map view of the current vehicle position.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



E254372

1. **Speed limit warning** icon: Notifies the driver of the road speed limits.
2. Information bar: Displays the road name or section name, dependant on the address format setting. See **335, NAVIGATION SETTINGS**.
3. The current vehicle position and direction.
4. Map mode toggle: Touch to select **2D**, **3D**, north facing, or a route overview map.
5. **Zoom** icons: If displayed, touch to zoom in or out.

   Note: *Zoom icons only display after the navigation map has been interacted with.*

   Note: *The map zoom setting can be altered by using a pinch or push motion, and the map view can be panned using a swipe motion.*
6. **Volume** icon: Touch to mute the navigation system volume.
7. **Settings** icon: Touch to display the navigation settings menu. See **335, NAVIGATION SETTINGS**.
8. **Menu** soft key: Touch to display the navigation menu. See **332, NAVIGATION MENU**.
9. **Favorites** soft key: Touch to add, remove, or edit a destination. See **335, FAVOURITES**.
10. **Search** soft key: Touch to search for an address, place name, or category. See **332, SETTING A DESTINATION**
11. **Map** soft key: Touch to display navigation map screen.
12. **Navigation menu** icon: Touch to display the navigation menu. See **332, NAVIGATION MENU**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

NAVIGATION MENU

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 328, NAVIGATION SAFETY.

To access the navigation menu, touch the **Menu** soft key on the navigation map screen. Alternatively, touch the **navigation menu** icon. See **330, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.



1. **Recent destinations**: Touch to display the navigation system's recent destination history.
2. **Category search**: Touch to search for a destination based on a category.
3. **Nearby search**: Touch to search for destinations that can be accessed based on the vehicle's current location.
4. **Address search**: Touch to search and set a new destination.
5. **Sync my mobile**: Allows the user to sync the navigation system with the T map smartphone app.

SETTING A DESTINATION

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 328, NAVIGATION SAFETY.

To set a destination:

1. Touch the **search** icon[1] located within the navigation tile on the touchscreen's home menu. See **240, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU** and **329, NAVIGATION TILES**.
2. Using the keyboard:
   - Input the required destination.
   - Select the required entry.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *If more than one result displays, the user is to select the required result from the list displayed.*

3. The navigation system calculates and displays the following route options:
   - **Recommended**.
   - **Fastest**.
   - **Avoid payment**.

   Note: *If the vehicle is connected to the internet, the navigation system can calculate multiple routes for the user to select.*
4. Select the required route option.
5. Touch **Start guidance** to begin navigation.

To select a recently used destination:

1. Touch the **recent destinations** icon[2] located within the navigation tile on the touchscreen's home menu. See **240, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU** and **329, NAVIGATION TILES**.
2. A list of recently navigated destinations is displayed.
3. Select the required destination.
4. Touch **Start guidance** to begin navigation.

Alternatively, for more detailed options when entering a destination:

1. Touch the **Menu** soft key from the navigation map screen. Alternatively, touch the **navigation menu** icon. See **330, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.
2. The navigation menu displays the following options:
   - **Recent destinations**: Touch to display a list of recent destinations.
   - **Category search**: Touch to search for Places Of Interest (POIs).
   - **Nearby search**: Touch to search for POIs near to the vehicle's location.
   - **Address search**: Touch to set a new destination or waypoint.
   - **Sync my mobile**: Allows the user to sync the navigation system with the T map smartphone app.
3. Select the required option for a more detailed destination.

Note: *Touch the* ***drop down*** *icon[3],* ***suggestions*** *icon[4], or the* ***OK*** *soft key, to view the search results. Touch the text box to continue typing.*

Note: *An address, place name, or category, can be added as a waypoint after a destination has been selected. See* ***334, ADDING A WAYPOINT****.*

Search icon.[1]

Recent destinations icon.[2]

Drop-down icon.[3]

Suggestions icon.[4]

MAP SPLIT SCREEN

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 328, NAVIGATION SAFETY.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Navigation (Korea only)

When a route has been selected, depending on the navigation settings, the touchscreen displays a turn by turn guidance map.

Note: *The information panel can be edited to display other options. See* ***335, NAVIGATION SETTINGS****.*



1. **Speed limit warning** icon: Notifies the driver of the road speed limits.

   Note: *Speed limit warnings displayed on the navigation screen may be different to the traffic sign warning speed limits displayed on the instrument panel.*
2. Traffic information bar: Displays traffic information during route guidance.

   Note: *The traffic information bar does not display on the map if the vehicle is not connected to the internet.*
3. The current vehicle position and direction.
4. **Guidance settings** soft key: Touch to edit the following route guidance settings:
   - **Alternatives**
   - **Route summary**
   - **Turn By Turn settings**
   - **Cancel route**.
5. **Recalculate** soft key: Touch to recalculate route.
6. Information bar: Displays information including the remaining route distance and the Expected Time of Arrival (ETA).
7. Lane assistance.
8. Manoeuvres overview: Touch to display a list of next manoeuvres for selected route guidance.
9. Displays the upcoming manoeuvre instruction.

ADDING A WAYPOINT

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 328, NAVIGATION SAFETY.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *There are several ways to add waypoint.*

When a route is selected, the user has the option to add a waypoint.

To add a waypoint:

1. Touch the **Search** soft key from the navigation map screen.
2. Using the keyboard:
   - Input the required destination.
   - Select the required entry.
3. Select the **Details** soft key.
4. Touch the **Add waypoint** soft key.
5. Alternatively, touch the **waypoint** icon[1] where displayed.



Waypoint icon.[1]

NOTIFICATIONS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings, cautions, and notes have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 328, NAVIGATION SAFETY.

A range of notifications can be displayed via the navigation map screen, for example, low fuel, safety cameras, traffic information, manoeuvre details, etc.

All navigation notifications can be edited via the navigation settings menu. See **335, NAVIGATION SETTINGS**.

FAVOURITES

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 328, NAVIGATION SAFETY.

When detailed information is displayed about an address, place name, or category, touch the **Add favorite** soft key and the place is added to the list of saved favorites.

The list of favorites is located via the **Favorite** soft key, located on the navigation map screen. See **330, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.

To remove or edit a saved favorite, touch the **edit favorite** soft key.

Note: *If no route is selected, select the required favorite to set it as a destination. If a route is selected, select the required favorite to add it as a waypoint.*

NAVIGATION SETTINGS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 328, NAVIGATION SAFETY.

To view the navigation settings menu:

1. Select the **settings** icon from navigation map screen. See **330, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.
2. Select **NAVIGATION** from the settings pop-up menu.

The following options are available for the user to enable or disable:

- **General**:
  - **Address format**: Touch to change address format.
  - **Notifications**: Touch to enable or disable notifications, alerts and warnings.
  - **Text size**: Touch to edit text size.
- **Map**:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- **Traffic displayed on Map**: Touch to enable or disable traffic information displaying on the navigation map screen.
- **Recent destinations on Map**: Touch to enable or disable recent destinations displaying on the navigation map screen.
- **Auto zoom**: Touch to enable or disable auto zoom.
- **Dynamic view**: Touch to change dynamic view format to **Further**, **Normal**, or **Detail**.
- **View options**: Touch to enable or disable viewing options, e.g., **Skybox** and **Highway mode**.

- **About**: Displays detailed content of the navigation system, e.g., product name, app version, map information, and legal information.
- **Account**: Allows the user to delete stored user preferences.

MAP AUTO ZOOM

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 328, NAVIGATION SAFETY.

When auto-zoom is enabled, the map automatically zooms in when the vehicle is travelling at low speeds and zooms out when travelling at higher speeds.

Auto-zoom can be enabled and disabled via the navigation settings menu. See **335, NAVIGATION SETTINGS**.

NAVIGATION SYSTEM VOLUME

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 328, NAVIGATION SAFETY.

To adjust the volume of the navigation voice guidance, rotate the media system's volume control while spoken guidance is given. See **252, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

Alternatively, touch the **volume** icon on the navigation map screen. See **330, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.

Note: *The volume of the safety camera notification is linked to the voice guidance volume.*

INSTRUMENT PANEL VIEW

Make sure the relevant safety warnings, cautions, and notes have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 328, NAVIGATION SAFETY.

The availability and functionality of navigation maps displayed on the instrument panel depends on the specification of the vehicle.

The instrument panel can be set up to show a view of a full navigation map or a mini navigation map, depending on the instrument panel setup.

Note: *In this view, essential information, e.g., vehicle speed, fuel level, range, etc., is displayed as an information bar.*

Navigation turn instructions are also available to the user and are displayed on the instrument panel and Head-Up Display (HUD).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *Navigation turn instructions are only displayed if route guidance is active.*

To display navigation map views in the instrument panel or HUD, please refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **72, CONFIGURING A VIRTUAL INSTRUMENT PANEL** and **78, HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD)**.

MAP UPDATES

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 328, NAVIGATION SAFETY.

Note: *For user safety, the vehicle must be stationary for an online update process to avoid any distraction.*

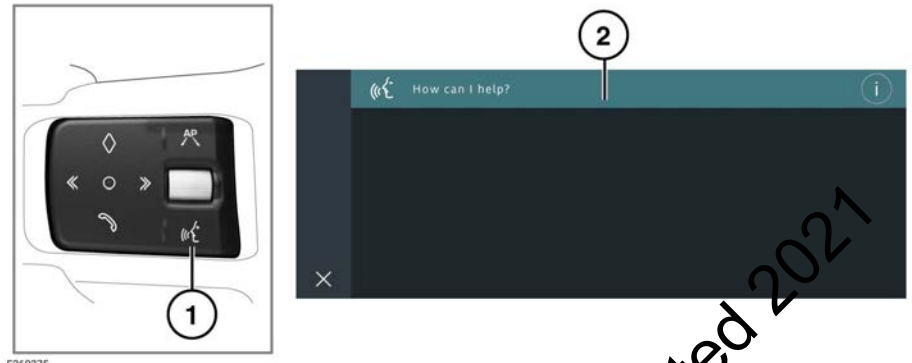
The map data in the navigation system is automatically updated via an online update. The user is only prompted with a notification when the update was successfully updated. See **355, SOFTWARE UPDATES**.

Note: *Online updates are only available if connected to the internet. See **351, CONNECTIVITY OVERVIEW**.*

For further information on navigation system updates, please contact an authorised retailer/authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

USING VOICE CONTROL



Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

1. **Voice** button: Press briefly to start a voice session. Press and hold to cancel a voice session.
   A voice session cancels, if:
   - A higher priority activity occurs.
   - The touchscreen displays a warning.
   - There is no user input for a sustained length of time.
2. Command list: Is displayed on the touchscreen, providing feedback and some example commands at each stage of the voice session. Say or select an available command.

   The related screen is displayed, when the spoken instructions are understood. The voice session can then continue either manually or by voice. The command bar, at the top of the screen, displays available commands at each stage of the conversation.

Touch the **Exit** icon[2] to cancel and exit the current voice session and continue manually.

To assist the operation of the voice control, speak the following commands at any time:

- Help.
- Cancel.
- Go back.
- Replay.

Note: *The voice system has been designed to recognise multiple languages. However, it cannot be guaranteed that the system is compatible with every accent group within those languages.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



Exit icon.[2]

VOICE TUTORIAL

To listen to a tutorial detailing the operation of the voice system:

1. Briefly press the **voice** button to start a voice session. See **338, USING VOICE CONTROL**.
2. Wait for the tone to sound, then say voice tutorial.

Alternatively:

1. Touch the **VOICE** icon in the Apps screen. See **245, APPS SCREEN**.
2. Select the **TUTORIAL** soft key.

The voice tutorial can be cancelled at any time. Cancel via the displayed pop-up, or press and hold the **voice** button.

Alternatively, briefly press the **voice** button and say cancel.

VOICETAGS

Voicetags enable the user to personalise the voice system. A single name can be used to call up a phone number or radio station.

To add a voicetag:

1. Briefly press the **voice** button to start a voice session.
2. Wait for the tone to sound and say **store phone voicetag**, or **store radio voicetag**.
3. For radio, the user must be listening to the station they wish to create a voicetag for.

To manage voicetags:

1. Touch the **VOICE** icon in the Apps screen. See **245, APPS SCREEN**.
2. Select the **VOICETAGS** soft key.
3. Touch an available option.
4. Touch the **Delete** icon[1] to delete a voicetag.
5. Touch the **Edit** icon[2] to edit a voicetag.
6. Touch the **Home** icon[3] to return to the Home Screen.

The voice commands to dial, tune, edit, and delete voicetags can be found in the voice command list. See **338, USING VOICE CONTROL**.



Delete icon.[1]



Edit icon.[2]



Home icon.[3]

VOICE SETTINGS

Voice settings gives the options for enabling, disabling or adjusting the settings of available features.

1. Touch the **VOICE** icon in the Apps screen. See **245, APPS SCREEN**.
2. Touch the **settings** icon.[1]
3. Touch the **VOICE SETTINGS** soft key.



Settings icon.[1]

The following settings options are displayed:

1. **Voice Feedback**: Toggle **On** or **Off**.

   Note: *Alternatively, briefly press the* ***voice*** *button and say* ***voice feedback on*** *or* ***voice feedback off****.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

2. **Voice Interrupt**: Toggle **On** or **Off** to enable/disable interrupting the audible prompts from the voice system.
3. **Wake Word**: Toggle **On** or **Off** and adjust wake word options.

Wake word

With wake word activated it is possible to start a voice session with a spoken phrase. The default phrase is **Hey Land Rover**, it is also possible to set a custom wake word.

To set a custom wake word:

- Touch **My Wake Word** via the voice settings menu.
- A speech session is initiated, follow the on screen instructions to set a custom wake word.
- Upon successful completion the system will repeat the wake word back.
- If the wake word is unsuccessful, voice feedback will be provided and the settings screen is displayed.

Once a custom wake word is set additional options are available:

- **Remind Me**: touch to replay wake word.
- **Delete Wake Word**: touch to delete the custom wake word.

Media search

Preferences for media voice search results can be adjusted via the voice settings menu. Touch to toggle **Show Online** and **Show Embedded** search options on or off.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

INCONTROL SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using the InControl features on the vehicle or smartphone. Failing to do so could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving.

Always store the phone securely. In an accident, loose items can cause injury.

Drivers should use the smartphone only when it is safe to do so and when such use does not distract the driver from the road.

INCONTROL OVERVIEW

InControl uses smartphone and in-vehicle technology to remotely connect the vehicle to a number of services and convenience features.

InControl features include:

- **InControl Remote** smartphone app: The app features allow the user to remotely find information about the vehicle's location and status on the smartphone. The smartphone app also displays vehicle information, including the fuel level, range, and the odometer value. For further information on the available app features, please refer to the InControl section on the Land Rover website at: **www.landrover.com/incontrol**. See **343, INCONTROL REMOTE SMARTPHONE APP**.
- **SOS Emergency Call**: If the vehicle is involved in an accident and the airbags deploy, SOS emergency call sends information to the emergency services, including location, as well as connecting the user by phone. See **347, ERA GLONASS TEST PROCEDURE** .
- **ERA GLONASS**: Is an emergency response feature that is only applicable to Armenia, Belarus, Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan, and Russian Federation. See **347, ERA GLONASS TEST PROCEDURE**.
- **Optimised Land Rover Assistance**: If the vehicle breaks down, the user can make a direct call to the Land Rover assistance team by pressing the **Optimised Land Rover Assistance** button. Alternatively, the user can make a direct call from the **InControl Remote** smartphone app. See **348, OPTIMISED LAND ROVER ASSISTANCE** .
- **Secure Tracker**: Provides a stolen vehicle tracking service. In the event that the vehicle has been tampered with, or moved without the owner's consent, the account owner is contacted by the InControl stolen vehicle tracking call centre. See **349, SECURE TRACKER**.
- **Secure Tracker Pro**: Provides an enhanced level of security by integrating a secondary authentication between the smart key and the vehicle. See **349, SECURE TRACKER PRO**.
- **Pivi Pro**: A selection of features that are available to enhance the navigation system. For further information on **Pivi Pro**, please refer to the navigation section of the Owner's Handbook. See **324, PIVI PRO FEATURES**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- **Online Pack with Data Plan**: Contains a range of embedded live applications that are displayed directly on the touchscreen. Online pack features do not require the physical connection of a smartphone to the vehicle. Online pack offers an expanding range of third party live applications, including online media, weather, and agenda information. See **349, ONLINE PACK** and **253, ONLINE MEDIA**.
- **Wi-Fi Enabled with Data Plan**: Provides in-vehicle access to cellular internet, enabling wireless devices to be used in the vehicle. For further information please refer to the connectivity section of the Owner's Handbook. See **352, HOTSPOT**.
- **Android Auto**: Allows for the vehicle's multimedia system to display and control the user's Android phone. For further information on **Android Auto** please refer to the phone section of the Owner's Handbook. See **313, ANDROID AUTO**.
- **Apple CarPlay**: Allows for the vehicle's multimedia system to display and control the user's iPhone. For further information on **Apple CarPlay**, please refer to the phone section of the Owner's Handbook. See **313, APPLE CARPLAY**.

INCONTROL ACCOUNT SET UP

InControl features, such as the **InControl Remote** smartphone app, **Optimised Land Rover Assistance**, **Online Pack**, **Secure Tracker**, and **Secure Tracker Pro** require an InControl account.

Some InControl features are subscription services. The subscription for these features can be extended after the initial term has expired. For further information, please contact the retailer/authorised repairer.

An InControl account may have been registered by the retailer/authorised repairer. Please click on the link from the InControl email sent by the retailer/authorised repairer which takes the user to the InControl website and follow the on-screen instructions.

If no activation email has been received, please check the email spam folder. Alternatively, contact the retailer/authorised repairer.

To register, connect, and activate an InControl account, please refer to the My Land Rover InControl website at: **https://incontrol.landrover.com**. Follow the on-screen instructions.

Note: *When an InControl account is set up, the user of the account creates a PIN. The PIN is required for certain InControl features.*

Note: *The owner is responsible for removing the vehicle from the InControl account when ownership of the vehicle is transferred.*

For further information, please refer to the InControl section on the Land Rover website at: **www.landrover.com/incontrol**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

DOWNLOADING AND INSTALLING SMARTPHONE APPS

Note: *Not all smartphones are compatible. For compatibility information on Apple or Android smartphones, please refer to the relevant app download page from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.*

InControl Remote smartphone app

To use the **InControl Remote** smartphone app, first download the app to a smartphone.

To download and install the launcher app:

1. Search for and download the **InControl Remote** smartphone app from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.
2. When the installation is complete, open the launcher. Select the **InControl Remote** smartphone app icon.
3. Sign in to the **InControl Remote** smartphone app using the InControl account details. See **342, INCONTROL ACCOUNT SET UP**.

INCONTROL REMOTE SMARTPHONE APP

Note: *The availability and functionality of the **InControl Remote** smartphone app depends on the specification of the vehicle and the market in which the vehicle is being used.*

Note: *For further information, refer to the InControl section on the Land Rover website at:* ***www.landrover.com/incontrol****.*

In order to use the **InControl Remote** smartphone app features, please complete the following steps:

1. Create an InControl account. See **342, INCONTROL ACCOUNT SET UP**.
2. Download the **InControl Remote** smartphone app to a smartphone. See **343, DOWNLOADING AND INSTALLING SMARTPHONE APPS** .

Available features within the **InControl Remote** smartphone app:

Vehicle Location

A map display of the vehicle's parked location and the user's current location.

Vehicle Status

Displays the latest status of vehicle alerts such as a low engine oil level. Each status gives an indication of the health of each alert, as well as offering advice on how to resolve any alerts.

Beep & Flash

Locates the vehicle by flashing the vehicle's lights and sounding an alert.

Note: *The driver is responsible for complying with all regulations in force for a specific country, regarding the use of vehicle horns.*

Vehicle Security

Displays the open and closed status of all the doors and windows, and the current alarm setting. **Vehicle Security** also displays the locked and unlocked status of the vehicle.

Vehicle Security allows the user to lock and unlock the vehicle remotely. If either lock or unlock cannot be performed, the phone screen displays an error message.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

When the vehicle is locked remotely, it is secured to the maximum possible level allowed in the market in which the vehicle was intended for original sale.

Note: *If any window(s) is in an open position, the vehicle does not lock remotely, unless the window is closed. In some markets, remote closing of the windows is not permitted.*

When the vehicle is unlocked remotely, it relocks after 40 seconds if no door or aperture is opened.

Regardless of which screen is currently displayed, if the vehicle's alarm is sounding, a pop-up screen is displayed with an option to reset the alarm.

Note: *The driver is responsible for knowing the location of the vehicle and for making sure that the vehicle is secured.*

Remote Climate

Remote Climate allows the engine of an automatic transmission vehicle to be started remotely, and to run for up to 30 minutes. The **Remote Climate** feature provides a comfortable temperature inside the cabin in advance of the driver entering the vehicle. Press the **engine start** icon on the **Remote Climate** section of the **InControl Remote** smartphone app. A target temperature can be set.

Remote Climate does not function if any of the following conditions exist:

- The vehicle's fuel level is low.
- The vehicle's battery charge level is low.
- The vehicle is not locked and alarmed.
- A window, door, bonnet, or the taildoor is open.
- The engine has been manually started.
- A system error occurs with a required vehicle system.
- A theft has been reported to the stolen vehicle monitoring centre.
- The vehicle's alarm is sounding.
- A crash event has been detected.
- The hazard warning lights are switched on.
- The automatic transmission is not in Park (**P**).
- The brake pedal or accelerator pedal is pressed.

Note: *Some markets may prohibit the use of remote engine starting. The driver is responsible for knowing if this function can legally be used.*

Note: ***Remote Climate*** *is also available for vehicles fitted with a timed climate system. When the vehicle specification does not support remote engine starting, the timed climate system may be used to support cabin pre-conditioning. The condition also applies if the vehicle originated in a market with legal restrictions on remote engine starting.*

Journeys

Displays the most recently completed journeys over 1 km in distance. Providing details of each journey from start to finish.

Note: *The* ***Journeys*** *feature can be enabled or disabled via the* ***Vehicle Settings*** *section of the* ***InControl Remote*** *smartphone app, or on the My Land Rover InControl website at:* ***https://incontrol.landrover.com****.*

Note: *Stored journeys can be viewed, deleted, or exported as a .csv file to assist with business expenses.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Assistance

Displays vehicle information such as the VIN number. Direct calls can be made to the **Optimised Land Rover Assistance** call centre for breakdown assistance. In the event of a vehicle theft, direct calls can be made to the stolen vehicle tracking call centre, if **Secure Tracker** or **Secure Tracker Pro** is fitted.

Note: *All calls are chargeable in accordance to mobile operator prices.*

Vehicle Settings

Provides the user access to specific vehicle settings, service and transport modes, and journey preferences.

Note: *Service and transport modes are only available for vehicles with* ***Secure Tracker*** *and* ***Secure Tracker Pro****.*

SOS EMERGENCY CALL OR 112 eCALL

Note: *EU specification importing countries feature a free 112 eCall service which is mandated by EU law.*

There are two states of emergency call (eCall): Automatic and manual operation. In a crash situation where the airbags have deployed, an automatic emergency call is made to the emergency services. In a non-crash situation, when emergency assistance is required, the emergency call button can be used manually.

In both states, the button flashes yellow until the emergency services answer the call, at which point the flashing stops.

The emergency call system collects and processes the following information for the purposes of the emergency:

- The vehicle's last three locations and direction of travel.
- Log file of the automatic activation of the system and its timestamp.
- Vehicle information such as VIN, propulsion type, and colour.
- Any additional data.

The appropriate emergency services are despatched to the vehicle's location. Contact with the emergency services agent can be made, at any time, by pressing the emergency call button.

The emergency call button is located in the overhead console on the right side. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

Press and release the button's cover to reveal the button. A red LED illuminates in the button. Press the button for 3 seconds to make a direct call to the emergency services.

Note: *If the vehicle is travelling in a different country, the emergency call may still connect. However, the vehicle's location and the vehicle's details may not be automatically sent to the local provider.*

There is a single battery that maintains full system operation in the event that the vehicle's battery is disconnected or disabled. The battery is guaranteed for the vehicle's warranty period. If the battery requires replacement, the instrument panel displays a warning message. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer for a replacement battery.

If a fault is detected with the emergency call system, the instrument panel displays a warning message. If this occurs, the vehicle can still be driven, but consult a retailer/authorised repairer at the earliest opportunity.

EU 112 eCall test procedure

Note: *Only applicable EU specification importing countries.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

To test the eCall system, the procedure below should be used. The test procedure determines if the system is working correctly.

Make sure that the following conditions are met before starting the procedure:

- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The vehicle is stationary for a least 1 minute.
- The ignition is switched on or the engine is running.
- An emergency response call is not in progress.
- Network reception is good.

1. Press the **Optimised Land Rover Assistance** button for at least 3 seconds, but for less than 10 seconds. See **348, OPTIMISED LAND ROVER ASSISTANCE** .
2. After pressing the **Optimised Land Rover Assistance** call button for 3 seconds, also press the emergency call button for at least 3 seconds. The call button's LEDs flash amber as the test procedure starts and continue to flash until the test procedure ends.

The results of test procedure will be displayed in the instrument panel. In addition, a call is made to the Land Rover automated line. Where you will hear a recorded message.

If the system is faulty, the emergency call button flashes red and the instrument panel displays a warning message to contact a retailer/authorised repairer.

Note: *A warning message is also displayed if there is no network reception. Move the vehicle to an area of good reception and retest.*

The test procedure will end after 5 minutes if the ignition is switched off, or if the vehicle is driven more than 300 m.

Note: *If the test procedure is repeated, make sure that there is a time delay of at least 5 minutes before retesting.*

EU 112 eCall information

Within the EU and EU importing countries your emergency call system will call 112 as described above.

The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.

Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system complies with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directive 2002/58/EC and Regulation (EU) 2016/679 of the European Parliament and of the Council, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Regulation (EU) 2016/679.

Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the emergency eCall to the single European emergency number 112.

Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country on which territory they are located, to first receive and handle eCalls to the single European emergency number 112.

The 112-based eCall system is designed in such a way as to make sure that the data contained in the system's memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The 112-based eCall system is designed in such a way as to make sure that it is not traceable and not subject to any constant tracking in its normal operation status.

The 112-based eCall system is designed in such a way as to make sure that data in the system's internal memory is automatically and continuously removed.

The vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so as always to keep a maximum of the last three up-to-date locations of the vehicle necessary for the normal functioning of the system.

The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency call was initiated.

The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure, or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Regulation (EU) 2016/679. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure, or blocking carried out in compliance with this Regulation, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

The Land Rover InControl services as described in this guide are covered by the above regulations privacy regulations.

Any processing of personal data through the InControl system complies with the personal data protection rules provided for in 2002/58/EC and Regulation (EU) 2016/679.

ERA GLONASS TEST PROCEDURE

Note: *Only applicable to Armenia, Belarus, Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan, and the Russian Federation.*



In the event of a traffic accident, the terminal automatically collects data on the exact location of the accident, time, and severity. The terminal transmits the data, with a high-priority alert, to an ERA-GLONASS operator. Once verified, this information is passed on to the emergency response services. The vehicle's driver and passengers can also contact an ERA-GLONASS operator manually.

The test procedure determines if the system is working correctly.

Make sure that the following conditions are met before starting the procedure:

- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The vehicle is stationary for at least 1 minute.
- The ignition is switched on or the engine is running.
- An emergency response call is not in progress.
- Network reception is good.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



Press the assistance call button for at least 3 seconds, but for less than 10 seconds. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.



After pressing the assistance call button for 3 seconds, also press the emergency call button for at least 3 seconds. The call button's LEDs flash amber as the test procedure starts and continue to flash until the test procedure ends. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

The ERA GLONASS test procedure prompts the user with the following:

- Announce the start of test mode.
- Announce lights check.
- Announce microphone check.
- Announce speaker check.
- The results of test mode are pronounced and display in the instrument panel.
- A call is made to the ERA GLONASS test centre to record the test results.

The SOS backlight flashes red and the instrument panel displays a warning message if the system is faulty.

If all of the preparation conditions are met and the instrument panel displays a message, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.

Note: *A warning message is also displayed if there is no network reception. Move the vehicle to an area of good reception and retest.*

The test procedure ends after 5 minutes if the ignition is switched off, or if the vehicle is driven more than 300 m.

Note: *If the test procedure is repeated, make sure there is a time delay of at least 5 minutes before retesting.*

There is a single battery that maintains full system operation in the event that the vehicle's battery is disconnected or disabled. The battery is guaranteed for the vehicle's warranty period. If the battery requires replacement, the instrument panel displays a warning message. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer for a replacement battery.

OPTIMISED LAND ROVER ASSISTANCE



The **Optimised Land Rover Assistance** call button is located in the overhead console, on the left side. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

In the event of a breakdown:

1. Press and release the button's cover.
2. A white LED illuminates in the button.
3. Press the button for 3 seconds to make a direct call to the **Optimised Land Rover Assistance** call centre.
4. The button flashes until the call centre answers the call, at which point the LED changes to yellow.
5. The vehicle's location, owner details, and vehicle details are automatically relayed to the call centre.
6. The **Optimised Land Rover Assistance** call centre sends roadside assistance to the vehicle's location.
7. When the light flashes, push the button for 3 seconds to answer the call.
8. After use, push the button's cover back into place.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

SECURE TRACKER

Secure Tracker provide's a stolen vehicle tracking service. In the event that the vehicle has been tampered with, or moved without the owner's consent, the account owner is contacted by the InControl stolen vehicle tracking call centre. Alternatively, use the **InControl Remote** smartphone app or the phone number on the InControl website to contact the stolen vehicle tracking call centre.

Service Mode and **Transport Mode** can be enabled and disabled by using the **InControl Remote** smartphone app, or via the InControl website. Enabling and/or activating **Service** or **Transport Mode** prevents stolen vehicle tracking alerts being raised while the vehicle is being transported or serviced.

If the vehicle is being serviced or repaired, **Service Mode** must be enabled.

If the vehicle is being transported, **Transport Mode** must be enabled.

Note: *The vehicle's alarm system is unaffected if **Transport Mode** is enabled.*

Note: *The vehicle's alarm system can be enabled or disabled in **Transport Mode**, for one alarm cycle only. To disable the vehicle's alarm system from the touchscreen settings menu, select **Vehicle**. From the list, select **Security features**, followed by **Alarm Sensors**. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.*

Note: *The owner is responsible for re-enabling or disabling **Service Mode** and **Transport Mode**. If the vehicle is in **Service Mode** or **Transport Mode** for a longer time period than originally set, the owner is required to re-enable the relevant **Service Mode** or **Transport Mode** option.*

Note: *The owner can select a pre-designated time period under 72 hours. The **InControl Remote** smartphone app allows for a maximum time period of 10 hours when selecting **Service Mode** or **Transport Mode**. The My InControl website allows for a maximum time period of 72 hours when selecting **Service Mode** or **Transport Mode**.*

Note: *For further information, please refer to the Land Rover website at: **www.landrover.com/incontrol**.*

SECURE TRACKER PRO

Secure Tracker Pro includes all the features of **Secure Tracker**, and in addition, provides an enhanced level of security by integrating a secondary authentication between the smart key and the vehicle. An alert is generated to the stolen vehicle tracking centre if the owner's vehicle has been stolen without the authorised smart key(s).

Please refer to the secure tracker topic for further information. See **349, SECURE TRACKER**.

ONLINE PACK

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the InControl features. See 341, INCONTROL SAFETY .

Note: *For applicable markets only, **Online Pack** offers a complimentary data plan during its subscription period to support unlimited use of third party live applications.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *For Australia and Korea markets,* ***Online Pack*** *requires a suitable, data-enabled nano SIM to be fitted to the vehicle. Live applications are updated in real-time using data from the nano SIM Card. See* ***354, FITTING A SIM CARD****.*

Online Pack subscriptions provide access to a suite of live applications and can be accessed from the touchscreen apps menu. See **245, APPS SCREEN**.

Some live applications may require the user to link an existing InControl account from an associated service provider. To link an InControl account, please complete the following steps:

1. Select **ACCOUNTS** from the apps screen menu. See **245, APPS SCREEN**.
2. Select the required user profile.
3. Select a provider from the available list.
4. Select **Email Me** to send a sign-in link to the user's email address.
5. Alternatively, scan the QR code on the screen, which leads to a page prompting login details.

Note: *The QR code can be scanned with the default camera app on iOS devices. On Android devices, an additional QR code reader application may need to be installed.*

Note: ***Online Pack*** *features require an active InControl account to log-in and manage preferences. See* ***342, INCONTROL ACCOUNT SET UP****.*

For further information about online media, please refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **253, ONLINE MEDIA**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

CONNECTIVITY OVERVIEW

Note: *The connectivity menu options may vary depending on the market and specification of the vehicle.*

The connectivity menu allows the user to connect a phone or audio device to the vehicle. The user can also connect the vehicle to the internet.

Note: *Internet connectivity requires either a data-enabled embedded SIM card, a data-enabled nano SIM card, or an in-range external Wi-Fi network.*

Note: *Only telematics features and software updates work over an external Wi-Fi network. Infotainment features do not operate over an external Wi-Fi network.*

The following methods allow for phone, audio, and internet connectivity:

- **Bluetooth**: Allows for pairing a device for phone and audio. See **308, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE** and **265, CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE**.
- **Mobile Data**: Allows for the vehicle to connect to the internet via a mobile network, using a data-enabled nano SIM card, or a data-enabled embedded SIM card. See **351, MOBILE DATA CONNECTIVITY**.
- **Hotspot**: Creates a Wi-Fi hotspot in the vehicle, to allow internet connection of Wi-Fi equipped devices, e.g., a tablet, laptop, or a smartphone. Also allows sharing of media between the Wi-Fi equipped devices inside the vehicle. See **352, HOTSPOT**.
- **Wi-Fi**: Allows for the vehicle to connect to the internet using an external Wi-Fi network. See **353, WI-FI CONNECTIVITY**.

Note: *The availability of* ***Mobile Data****,* ***Hotspot****, and* ***Wi-Fi*** *depends on the market and specification of the vehicle.*

Note: *Connectivity for* ***Online Pack with Data Plan*** *and* ***Wi-Fi Enabled with Data Plan*** *is provided by a third party provider. For more information go to:* ***www.landrover.com/pivi-pro-terms****.*

MOBILE DATA CONNECTIVITY

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions for touchscreen operation have been read and understood before using the touchscreen. See 238, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Note: *Connected vehicles with no SIM card slot in the media hub have an embedded SIM card.*

Mobile data requires a vehicle with a data-enabled embedded SIM card, or the installation of a data-enabled nano SIM card. See **354, FITTING A SIM CARD**.

To enable **Mobile Data**:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Connectivity**.
3. **Mobile Data**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
4. When displayed, select **Agree** to agree to the terms and conditions.

Note: *Mobile data connectivity is indicated by an icon at the top of the screen. See* ***353, CONNECTIVITY STATUS ICONS****.*

Vehicles that use a nano SIM card for connected services can edit mobile data settings. To display and edit the mobile data settings:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

2. Select **Connectivity**.
3. Touch **Mobile Data**.

The **Mobile Data** menu displays the following:

Network Provider: The network provider of the vehicle's SIM card is displayed. To change the network provider settings:

1. Set **Auto Select** to **Off**.
2. Select **Manual Network Selection**.
3. Add the **Network**, **Username** and **Password**.
4. Select **Connect**.

Roaming: Data roaming is set to **Off** as default. Select **On** to enable roaming.

Usage Limit: The usage limit is set to **Off** as default. Select **On** to enable usage limit.

Usage: The usage counter displays the total data usage for the month. The usage counter resets on the 1st day of the month, as default. When the usage limit is set to **On**, the usage limit also displays. Select **Usage** to change the usage limit and the monthly reset date. Use the reset counter to reset the current usage to zero.

SIM LOCK: A PIN can be set or changed for a vehicle with an inserted nano SIM card.

Remember SIM PIN.

1. Select **On** to enter a SIM Lock PIN. The PIN is required each time mobile data is on.
2. Select **Off** to forget the PIN.

HOTSPOT

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions for touchscreen operation have been read and understood before using the touchscreen. See 238, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Note: *The availability of* ***Hotspot*** *depends on the market and the specification of the vehicle.*

Note: *The* ***Hotspot*** *feature requires a data-enabled embedded SIM card.*

Note: *Cellular connectivity cannot be guaranteed in all locations.*

The **Hotspot** feature provides in-vehicle access to cellular internet, enabling wireless devices to be used in the vehicle. For details of the Fair Usage Policy associated with the **Hotspot** feature, please refer to the Land Rover website: **www.landrover.com/pivi-pro-terms.**.

To enable **Hotspot**:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Connectivity**.
3. **Hotspot**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.

To display and edit **Hotspot** settings:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Connectivity**.
3. Touch **Hotspot**.

The **Hotspot** menu displays the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot name, password, and frequency. The **Hotspot** name is computer generated by the vehicle and cannot be changed.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *To enter a new password, touch the chevron next to the displayed password. Land Rover password strength standards will apply.*

To connect a device to the vehicle's **Hotspot**, switch the device's Wi-Fi to **ON**. Select the vehicle's **Hotspot** name on the device. Insert the password.

Note: *Some devices cannot receive 5GHz signals. To change the signal frequency between 2.4 and 5 GHz, use the selection buttons underneath the frequency header.*

WI-FI CONNECTIVITY

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions for touchscreen operation have been read and understood before using the touchscreen. See 238, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Wi-Fi allows for the vehicle to connect to the internet using an external Wi-Fi network.

To enable **Wi-Fi**:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Connectivity**.
3. **Wi-Fi**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.

To display and edit **Wi-Fi** settings:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Connectivity**.
3. Touch **Wi-Fi**.

The **Wi-Fi** menu displays any Wi-Fi networks in range.

To connect to an unknown network, select the network name. If the Wi-Fi network is password protected, a keyboard displays to allow entry of the password.

To connect to a known network, select the network from the list of known networks.

Note: *The vehicle will automatically connect to a known network with the best signal strength.*

To connect to a hidden network:

1. Select **Add network** from the network list.
2. Enter the **Network name**.
3. Enter the **Security type**.
4. Enter the **Password**.
5. Select **Connect**.

ABOUT CONNECTIVITY

About Connectivity displays information about the vehicles connections. The menu displays the vehicle's MAC Address, IMEI, ICCID, IMSI, MNO and APN.

Select **Reset Connectivity** to remove saved networks and restore default functionality.

CONNECTIVITY STATUS ICONS

Note: *Depending on the network connectivity, some features and services, including Wi-Fi, may not operate as expected, or at all. A strong 3G and 4G connection is required.*

The following icons display the type of cellular and Wi-Fi connections:



Connecting.



E (edge) mobile network connectivity.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

2G mobile network connectivity.

3G mobile network connectivity.

4G mobile network connectivity.

No mobile network connection.

Internet roaming.

When the vehicle is connected to an external hotspot, a **Wi-Fi** icon is displayed instead of a **cellular** icon.

The following icons display when software updates are available:

A software download is available.

To schedule a software download.

An important software download is required.

FITTING A SIM CARD

Make sure the nano SIM card is located correctly into the card holder. Failure to do so may damage the SIM card or SIM card reader.

Note: *The availability of the nano SIM card slot is dependent on the specification and market of the vehicle.*

Note: *Some network operators may lock SIM cards to operate in specific devices only. Contact the network operator if the SIM card requires unlocking.*

A nano SIM card must be inserted into the SIM card holder. The SIM card reader utilises a SIM interface. If the SIM card is a different size, e.g., a micro SIM, a replacement SIM card is required.

The SIM card reader slot is located in the centre console's cubby box. See **124, AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS**.

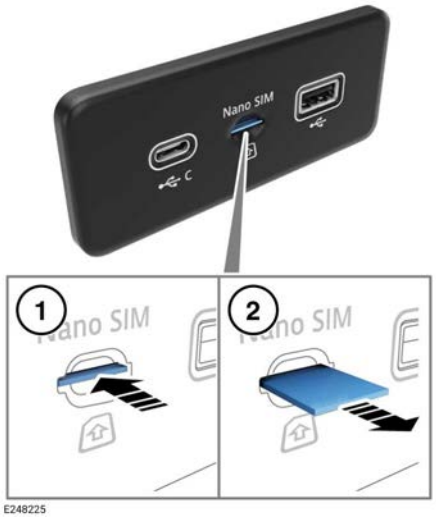


To fit a nano SIM card, insert the card with the contacts facing down and the shortest end facing in. The card should not be protruding once correctly inserted.

Note: *Push the nano SIM card 2 mm further into the slot to firmly engage the latch.*

Once the nano SIM card is fitted, enable mobile data connectivity. See **351, MOBILE DATA CONNECTIVITY**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



To remove a nano SIM card, gently push in (**1**) and release (**2**).

SOFTWARE UPDATES

Note: *In certain cases, the vehicle informs the user before an update, and outlines any preconditions the user must follow to make sure vehicle operation following the update. These can include requirements to drive the vehicle shortly after an update has been applied.*

The vehicle may support the download and installation of over-the-air software updates. Over-the-air software allows certain components of the vehicle to be kept up to date without the need to visit a retailer/authorised repairer.

The ability to perform an update is simple and intuitive from within the vehicle's infotainment system.

When a new software update is available, and depending on internet connectivity, the vehicle automatically begins the download process with no interruption to the vehicle usage. On completion of the download, a notification displays on the touchscreen asking to begin the installation process.

Note: *Depending on the specification of the vehicle, software downloads may be requested to be done manually.*

Follow the on-screen prompt to start the installation process or schedule for a preferred time. Preferred time can be set via **Vehicle** and **Software Updates** menus in the touchscreen. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

Note: *During installation the user can access the vehicle at any time, but it will not be able to start the vehicle.*

Upon successful completion of the update, an on-screen notification is displayed. Following the update, the current software version information is visible within the vehicle's infotainment system.

Note: *An update process can take up to an hour to complete.*

To complete a software update observe the following conditions:

- The vehicle has to be locked and alarmed to start the installation process.

  Note: *Once the installation is initiated, the vehicle may still be accessed, however it will not be possible to start the vehicle.*
- The vehicle has to be parked and stationary.
- The new software must be successfully downloaded to the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- The vehicle needs cellular or Wi-Fi connectivity during the process of performing a software update. See **351, CONNECTIVITY OVERVIEW**.
- The terms and conditions for the installation must be accepted.
- The vehicle update must not be interrupted, either by the vehicle owner or by loss of internet connectivity.
- The hazard warning lights, SOS emergency call, **Optimised Land Rover Assistance** call, or **Secure Tracker** must not be active.
- The vehicle may need to be associated to an active InControl account. See **342, INCONTROL ACCOUNT SET UP**.

Note: *Availability of over-the-air updates may vary, depending on the market and vehicle specification. For further information go to:* ***www.landrover.com/pivi-pro-terms****.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

Make sure that following warnings have been read and understood. Failure to observe the warnings could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

Do not smoke, use an exposed flame, or cause sparks while refuelling.

Avoid exposing the fuel gases to any potential sources of ignition.

Switch off the engine when refuelling, as it is both a source of extreme temperatures and electrical sparks.

When refuelling, switch off any personal electronic devices such as mobile phones or music players.

Take note of all warnings and instructions given on the label affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap.

The fuel system is designed to make sure that spillage does not occur. Do not attempt to fill the tank past its maximum capacity.

Make sure that the fuel filler nozzle is fully inserted into the filler neck. If the nozzle is inserted loosely, fuel spillage may occur.

When refuelling, make sure that all of the windows, doors, and the panoramic roof are fully closed. Use extreme care and caution if young children or animals are in the vehicle.

Only use containers specifically designed for carrying fuel, and always remove them from the vehicle to fill them.

PETROL ENGINED VEHICLES

Use high quality fuel that meets the specification defined by EN228, WWFC5 cat. 5 or the national equivalent. Low quality fuel can damage the engine and reduce engine performance.

Do not use leaded fuels, fuels with lead substitutes, e.g., manganese-based, or fuel additives. The vehicle's emission control systems can be adversely affected, which may affect the vehicle's warranty coverage.

Fuel system cleaning agents should not be used, unless approved by the vehicle manufacturer. Inadequate cleaning agents may damage the fuel system.

OCTANE RATING

Do not use fuels with an octane rating lower than 91 RON, as severe engine damage may occur.

Do not use leaded fuels, fuels with lead substitutes, e.g., manganese-based or fuel additives. Doing so may adversely affect the vehicle's emission control systems and affect the vehicle's warranty.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends the use of premium unleaded fuel with a minimum octane rating of 95 RON. Using the correct fuel specification helps to maintain the vehicle's performance, fuel economy, and driveability.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

If premium unleaded fuel is not available, use unleaded fuel with a lower octane rating, down to a minimum of 91 RON. Using lower octane-rated fuel may reduce the engine's performance, increase fuel consumption, cause an audible engine knock, and cause other driveability problems.

Consult a retailer/authorised repairer if an engine knock is detected while holding a steady speed on level roads. Also consult a retailer/authorised repairer if a heavy persistent engine knock is detected, even if using fuel to the recommended octane rating. Failure to do so is misuse of the vehicle, which is not covered by the vehicle's warranty.

Note: *An occasional, light engine knock when accelerating or climbing hills is acceptable.*

Super Green Plus 98 RON unleaded fuel, where available, may be used as an alternative to the standard 95 RON unleaded fuel.

ETHANOL

Do not use fuels containing more than 10% ethanol. Higher ethanol content can damage the vehicle's engine and fuel system.

Do not use E85 fuels with 85% ethanol content, as serious engine and fuel system damage can occur.

Fuels containing up to 10% ethanol may be used, e.g., E5 and E10.

Make sure that the fuel has octane ratings no lower than those recommended for unleaded fuel. Correct engine operation should not be affected with fuel containing the permissible amount of ethanol. If a difference is detected, the use of conventional unleaded fuel should be resumed.

METHANOL

Wherever possible, avoid using fuel containing methanol. Using fuel containing methanol may cause serious engine and fuel system damage, which is not covered by the vehicle's warranty.

METHYL TERTIARY BUTYL ETHER (MTBE)

Unleaded fuel containing an oxygenate known as Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether (MTBE) can be used. The ratio of MTBE to conventional fuel must not exceed 15%. MTBE is an ether-based compound derived from petroleum. MTBE has been specified by several refiners as the substance to enhance the octane rating of fuel.

DIESEL ENGINED VEHICLES

If the fuel tank is inadvertently filled with petrol instead of diesel, do not attempt to start the engine. In this event, contact a retailer/authorised repairer immediately. Inadequate fuels may damage the fuel system and engine components.

Note: *Any damage caused by running the vehicle with fuel other than that stipulated is not covered under warranty.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *If a diesel engine is difficult to start in extreme cold temperatures of -15°C or less, consult a retailer/authorised repairer for assistance.*

Use only high quality diesel fuel, according to the European standard EN590:2013+A1:2017, WWFC 5 cat. 5 or equivalent.

Fuels containing a blend of up to 7% bio-diesel may be used, in accordance with the European standard EN590:2013+A1:2017. Using a higher blend of bio-diesel is not recommended. Inadequate fuels may damage the fuel system and engine components, or premature fuel filter blockage may occur.

The quality and specification of diesel fuel varies significantly, depending on geographical location. Using a premium fuel is recommended, or the highest quality of fuel available. High quality fuel promotes a longer life for the engine's components.

Lower grade fuel contains higher levels of sulphur which is detrimental to the engine's components. If low quality fuel is used, light coloured smoke may be evident at the exhaust.

Prolonged use of additives is not recommended. Do not add paraffin or petrol to diesel fuels.

SULPHUR CONTENT

Using an incorrect specification of fuel causes serious damage to the engine and the exhaust after-treatment system. The vehicle's warranty does not cover this. If in doubt, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer for advice.

Most vehicles have a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) exhaust after-treatment system. The maximum sulphur content of the diesel fuel must not exceed 0.005% (50 parts per million). The sulphur contents in compliance with the EN590-EU4 and the World Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC Category 3 or above) standards. Failure to comply with the standards may damage engine components and the exhaust after-treatment system.

The sulphur content of diesel fuel used in vehicles without a DPF should not exceed 0.2% (2 000 parts per million) in accordance with WWFC Category 1. Fuels with higher sulphur content may damage engine components and the exhaust after-treatment system.

In some countries, diesel fuel may contain higher levels of sulphur. If used, more frequent vehicle servicing is required, to help reduce the effects on the engine and the exhaust after-treatment components. If in doubt, contact a retailer/authorised repairer for advice.

DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF)

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) must be kept out of children's reach, to avoid serious injury or death.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Read the label for safety precautions when using DEF, to avoid injury or death.

DEF must be stored in the original container, in a cool, dry, and well-ventilated area. Observe the manufacturer's storage and handling recommendations. If inappropriately stored, DEF may spill or be exposed to contamination.

DEF has a strong odour and can stain clothing or upholstery. Take care not to spill the fluid when performing a top-up procedure. In the event of spillage, rinse immediately with clean water.

When refilling, make sure that the correct specification of DEF is used. Use of the incorrect fluid can result in serious damage to the vehicle. In this situation, do not start the engine. Contact a retailer/ authorised repairer immediately.

Note: *Do not overfill the DEF tank.*

Vehicles with a diesel engine may have a tank containing DEF. DEF is used to make sure that correct exhaust emissions are achieved. DEF is also known as AdBlue™, AUS 32, and ARLA 32. AdBlue™ is a trademark of the Verband der Automobilindustrie e.V. (VDA).

Dependent on the current geographical location, correct use of the DEF system may be a legal requirement. Running the vehicle without the correct specification of DEF may be a criminal offence. Always use the correct DEF specification and the correct quantity of DEF. See **446, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS** and **447, CAPACITIES**.

The consumption of DEF can vary greatly. An average consumption rate can be 800 km (500 miles) / 1 Litre. However, this consumption rate can be more than doubled, depending on driving style, and road and weather conditions.

The distance until the DEF tank is empty and the volume of DEF required for refill can be displayed via the Touchscreen:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch the **Vehicle** soft key.
4. Touch the **My Vehicle** soft key.
5. Touch the **Service** soft key.
6. The DEF range and refill volume is displayed.
7. Touch the **exit** icon[2] to return to the previously displayed screen.

The instrument panel displays a series of messages when the DEF level becomes low. The volume of DEF required for a refill also accompanies each message.

- The first message states that the DEF level is at a level where a top-up is advised.
- The second message is accompanied by an AMBER warning icon and states to refill the DEF tank.
- The third message starts a countdown of the distance remaining until the DEF tank is empty. After the countdown, vehicle start is inhibited.
- The final message is accompanied by a RED warning icon and is displayed when the distance remaining is zero. The final message states that no further restarts are possible until DEF is added to the tank.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

To perform a full DEF system refill, it is recommended to contact a retailer/ authorised repairer. If required, DEF can be added to the tank by following the top-up procedure.

The volume of DEF required to top-up or restart the engine is displayed in the instrument panel.

To perform a DEF top-up procedure, locate the DEF filler. See **383, FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS**.

Then, follow the steps below:

1. Turn the tank filler cap counter-clockwise to remove.
2. Making sure not to exceed the required volume, top-up the tank following the instructions given on the DEF container.

   Note: *Non-drip bottles are the recommended method for top-up.*
3. Replace the tank filler cap and continually turn clockwise until hand tight.

If a DEF warning lamp or message illuminates with a red warning icon, seek qualified assistance at the earliest opportunity. The possible events for this include DEF system malfunctions, incorrect fluid, and poor fluid quality. See **83, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (RED)** and **85, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (AMBER)**.

Note: *In temperatures below -10°C, DEF may freeze in the tank, making refilling difficult. Move the vehicle into a warmer environment, e.g., a garage. Raise the ambient temperature, in order to thaw the DEF, before attempting to top up. In these conditions, it may take up to 1 hour of driving before the low DEF message extinguishes.*

Note: *When starting and stopping the engine, operation of the DEF pumps may be heard, but this is no cause for concern.*

Note: *The check engine amber warning lamp may illuminate after a refill. In this event, start the engine, run for approximately 30 seconds, and then switch off the engine. Do this three times in succession. See **85, CHECK ENGINE (AMBER)**.*



Settings icon.[1]



Exit icon.[2]

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Avoid running out of fuel. Doing so can cause damage to the vehicle's engine, fuel, and emission control systems.

Note: *If the vehicle does run out of fuel, seeking qualified assistance is advisable.*

If the vehicle does run out of fuel, a minimum of 4.0 L is required to restart the engine. See **363, FUEL FILLER FLAP**.

The vehicle should be left with the ignition switched on for 5 minutes after refuelling, before attempting to restart the engine. The vehicle needs to be driven for a distance of 1.5 to 5 km in order to reset the engine management and monitoring systems.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Fuel and refuelling



Vehicles with a diesel engine may be supplied with an active misfuelling device. A metal flap is visible in the filler neck when the fuel filler cap is removed. Use the emergency funnel supplied with the vehicle to refill the fuel tank with a fuel can. Insert the funnel into the filler neck, fully and squarely, to open the active misfuelling device. See **365, ACTIVE DIESEL MISFUELLING PROTECTION DEVICE**.

Note: *Misfuelling devices are dependent on the market specification.*

WATER IN FUEL

If the instrument panel displays a warning message, an excessive amount of water has collected in the fuel system. In this event, consult a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible. Water in fuel can damage engine components or the fuel system.

DIESEL ENGINES

Running out of fuel draws air into the fuel system and may cause serious damage to the fuel injection system. In this event, seek qualified assistance immediately.

If the fuel gauge indicates a low fuel level, or the low fuel warning lamp illuminates, refuel the vehicle as soon as possible. Refuel the vehicle with at least 4 L of fuel.

After refuelling, restart the vehicle using the following procedure:

1. With the brake pedal pressed, press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button and crank the engine for 5 seconds.
2. Release the **START/STOP** button.
3. With the brake pedal pressed, press and release the **START/STOP** button to crank the engine. The engine should start within approximately 5 seconds.

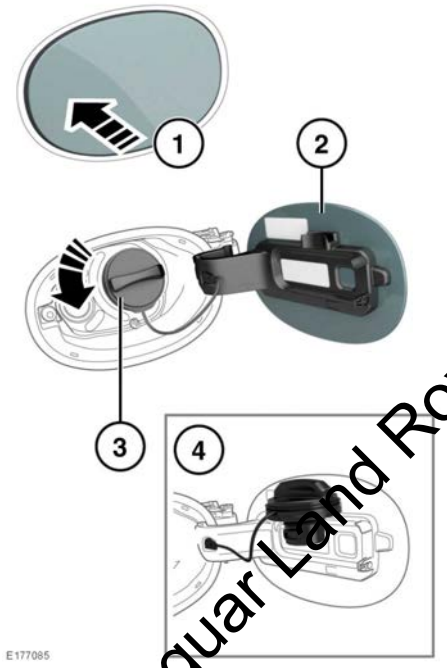
Note: *If the engine does not start, leave the vehicle's ignition switched on for 10 seconds, then repeat the complete procedure.*

Do not crank the engine for longer than 30 seconds continuously. Doing so may cause damage to the vehicle's engine.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

FUEL FILLER FLAP

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before refuelling the vehicle. See 357, SAFETY PRECAUTIONS.



The fuel filler flap is located on the right side of the vehicle, at the rear. To operate, proceed as follows:

1. Press and release the rear of the fuel filler flap to unlatch.
2. Pull the flap open. The label on the inside of the flap indicates the correct fuel for the vehicle.
3. Turn the filler cap counter-clockwise to undo.
4. Use the securing clip to keep the filler cap out of the way while fuelling.

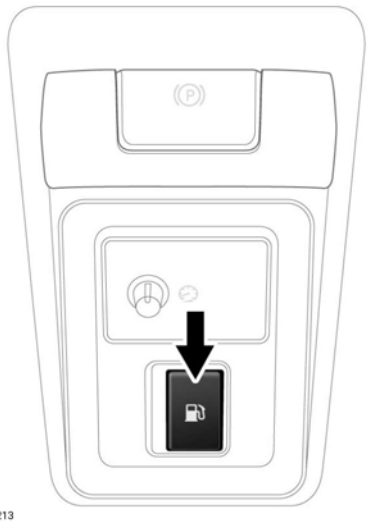
When replacing the filler cap, turn it clockwise until the ratchet clicks.

To close the filler flap, push the flap until it is securely latched.

Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicles (PHEV) also incorporate a locking fuel filler flap. See **363, FUEL FILLER FLAP LOCK** .

FUEL FILLER FLAP LOCK

Note: *Make sure that the vehicle is refuelled shortly after the refuelling button is pressed. Failure to do so may result in the fuel tank not being filled to the required level. If in doubt, check the fuel level gauge in the instrument panel before continuing the journey, to prevent running out of fuel.*



To enable refuelling, carry out the following:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

1. Switch off the vehicle's ignition, apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB), and make sure that the transmission is engaged in Park (**P**).
2. Press the refuelling button located in the lower switch panel at the driver's side of the fascia. The isolation valve on the fuel tank opens to equalize the fuel tank pressure. The fuel filler flap unlocks. The instrument panel displays a message to confirm that the fuel filler flap is unlocking.
3. The instrument panel displays a message to confirm that the fuel filler flap is unlocked and the vehicle can be refuelled. See **363, FUEL FILLER FLAP**.

The isolation valve on the fuel tank remains open for approximately 10 minutes, at which point the valve shuts, preventing further refuelling. If further refuelling is required, repeat the above process from step 2 to open the isolation valve on the fuel tank.

Note: *Make sure that the vehicle is stationary. The fuel filler flap does not unlock, and the isolation valve on the fuel tank does not open, if the vehicle is moving. The instrument panel displays a message to confirm that the vehicle's speed is too high.*

Note: *Make sure that the fuel filler flap is closed after refuelling. The instrument panel displays a message to confirm that the fuel filler flap is not fully closed.*

If a fault is detected on either the fuel filler flap system, or on the isolation valve system on the fuel tank, the instrument panel displays a message. In this event, consult a retailer/authorised repairer or roadside assistance. See **476, ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE**. See **343, INCONTROL REMOTE SMARTPHONE APP**.

FUEL FILLER

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before refuelling the vehicle. See 257, SAFETY PRECAUTIONS.

Check the fuel pump information carefully to make sure that the correct fuel is used to refuel the vehicle. Inadequate fuel can reduce engine performance and may cause permanent damage to engine components.

If the vehicle is filled with the incorrect fuel, it is essential to seek qualified assistance before starting the engine. Inadequate fuel can reduce engine performance and may cause permanent damage to engine components.

Filling station pumps are equipped with automatic cut-off sensing, to avoid fuel spillage. Fill the tank until the filler nozzle automatically cuts off the supply. Do not attempt to fill the tank beyond this point.

Note: *Filling station pumps used for commercial vehicles deliver fuel at a higher rate than normal. The higher fill rate can cause premature cut-off and may cause fuel spillage. Only the use of standard light vehicle fuel pumps is recommended.*

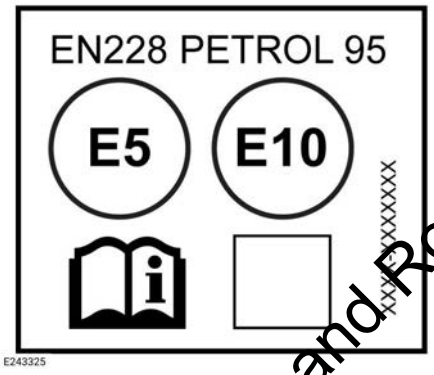
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

IDENTIFICATION OF CORRECT FUEL

The vehicle's fuel label displays information about the correct type and specification of fuel. The label is located on the fuel filler flap and may display the following:

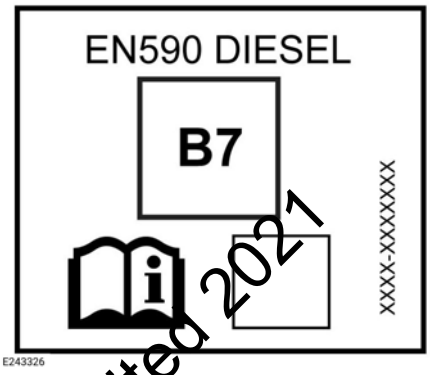
Note: *Refuel only from the fuel pump displaying a similar label to that fitted on the vehicle.*

Petrol vehicles



The above label identifies that unleaded petrol, meeting specification EN228, with a maximum ethanol content of 5% or 10% may be used.

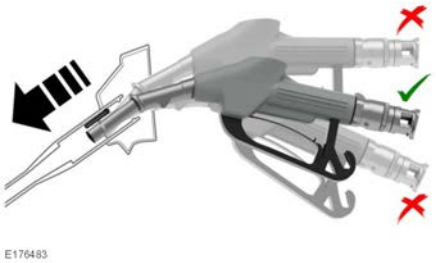
Diesel vehicles



The above label identifies that diesel fuel, meeting specification EN590, with a maximum bio-diesel content of 7% may be used.

ACTIVE DIESEL MISFUELLING PROTECTION DEVICE

Do not force an incorrectly sized fuel pump nozzle into the filler neck. Forcing an incorrectly sized fuel pump nozzle into the filler neck may result in damage to the vehicle.



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Vehicles with a diesel engine may have an active misfuelling protection device. A metal flap is visible in the filler neck when the fuel filler cap is removed. The active misfuelling protection device helps to prevent the fuel tank from being filled with the incorrect fuel, e.g., petrol. Refuelling is permitted if a correctly sized, diesel fuel pump's filler nozzle is inserted, fully and squarely, into the vehicle's fuel filler neck, as illustrated.

Note: *To refuel with a fuel can, use the emergency funnel supplied with the vehicle. See* ***361, RUNNING OUT OF FUEL****.*

Note: *Misfuelling devices are dependent on the market specification.*

FUEL TANK CAPACITY

Avoid the risk of running out of fuel. Never intentionally drive the vehicle when the fuel gauge indicates that the fuel tank is empty. When refuelling the vehicle after the indicated range reads zero, it may not be possible to add the maximum fuel quantity. The fuel tank retains a small reserve of fuel. See **447, CAPACITIES**.

FUEL CONSUMPTION

Observe the following to improve fuel consumption and reduce CO_2 emissions:

- Use the vehicle correctly.
- Make sure the vehicle is regularly maintained.
- Travel at lower speeds.
- Avoid aggressive driving.
- Correctly inflate the tyres.
- Reduce engine idling periods.
- Avoid carrying excessive weight.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

RUNNING-IN

The vehicle is built using high-precision manufacturing methods, but the moving parts of the engine must still settle in relative to each other. The running-in process occurs mainly in the first 3 000 km (2 000 mi) of operation.

During the running-in period of 3 000 km (2 000 mi), observe and follow the instructions below:

- Do not fully press the accelerator pedal.
- Avoid high engine speeds (rpm) until the engine has reached its full operating temperature.
- Avoid operating the engine in too high a gear at low engine speeds (labouring).
- Gradually increase engine and road speeds.
- Avoid extended operation at high engine speeds with abrupt stops.
- Avoid frequent cold starts followed by short-distance driving. Where possible, allow the engine to reach operating temperature.
- Longer journeys are more helpful during the running-in period.
- Do not participate in off-road driving, competition driving, track days, sports driving schools, or any similar events.

AIR CONDITIONING (A/C)

The Air Conditioning (A/C) system must be serviced, dismantled, or replaced by suitably qualified and certified personnel. Make sure that the refrigerant is correctly contained at all times. Failure to adhere to the above may result in serious personal injury or death.

All replacement parts for the A/C system must be new and equivalent to the manufacturer's original equipment. All replacement parts must comply with the relevant local standard. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer for advice. Failure to comply with the standards could lead to serious injury or death.

The A/C system contains HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf), which is a low Global Warming Potential (GWP) tetrafluoropropene refrigerant. The A/C system is sealed and has a leakage rate of less than 3% per year.

The following symbols, relevant to the A/C refrigerant fluid, may be used on under-bonnet labels:



A/C symbol.



Lubricant symbol.



Caution.



Flammable refrigerant.



Required registered technician to service the A/C system.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

OWNER MAINTENANCE

Any significant or sudden drop in fluid levels, or uneven tyre wear, should be reported to a qualified technician without delay. Ignoring low fluid levels or uneven tyre wear may cause damage to the vehicle.

In addition to the routine maintenance, a number of simple checks must be carried out more frequently.

368, DAILY CHECKS

DAILY CHECKS

Check the operation of the following every day:

- Exterior lights.
- Horn.
- Direction indicators.
- Windscreen wipers.
- Windscreen washers.
- Warning lamps.
- Seat belts.
- Braking system.

Also check for fluid deposits underneath the vehicle that may indicate a leak.

Note: *Water drips from condensation on the Air Conditioning (A/C) system are normal.*

WEEKLY CHECKS

Check the following every week:

- Engine oil level.
- Engine coolant level.
- Brake fluid level.
- Dynamic response fluid level.
- Screen washer fluid level.
- Tyre pressures and condition.
- Operate the Air Conditioning (A/C) system.

Note: *Check the engine oil level more frequently if the vehicle is driven for prolonged periods at high speeds.*

SERVICE INFORMATION

Distance until next service information can be viewed via the touchscreen's **Vehicle** section. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

Note: *Dependent on the vehicle's specification, different service information and messages are available as part of the flexible servicing strategy.*

The service interval displays as a distance left until the next service is due. If the service is overdue, the distance shows as a negative (-) value.

For more information, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer.

ARDUOUS DRIVING CONDITIONS

When a vehicle is operated in extremely arduous conditions, more frequent attention must be paid to servicing requirements.

Arduous driving conditions include:

- Driving in dusty and/or sandy conditions.
- Driving on rough and/or muddy roads.
- Frequent wading.
- Frequent driving at high speeds in high ambient temperatures above 50°C.
- Frequent driving in severe cold weather down to -40°C.
- Frequent driving in mountainous conditions.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- Driving in areas using road salt or other corrosive materials on the driving surface.

Contact a retailer/authorised repairer for advice.

EXHAUST FILTER

Exhaust filters are also known as particulate filters. Vehicles fitted with these filters have more efficient emissions control. The particles in the exhaust gases are collected in the exhaust filter during normal driving.

Cleaning of the exhaust filter is also known as regeneration. Regeneration occurs automatically depending on driving conditions. Self-cleaning only occurs when the engine has reached its normal operating temperature.

Self-cleaning takes place while driving, although the characteristics are different for diesel and petrol engine vehicles.

Diesel exhaust filter self-cleaning

Self-cleaning takes place when the vehicle is driven steadily at speeds between 60 km/h and 112 km/h (37 mph and 70 mph). The process normally takes 10 to 20 minutes. Self-cleaning can occur at lower vehicle speeds but the process may take a little longer at a 50 km/h (30 mph) average speed.

Some driving conditions may not provide sufficient opportunity to begin the exhaust filter self-cleaning automatically. For example: frequently driving short distances in slow-moving traffic, or cold weather. If automatic self-cleaning is not possible, the instrument panel displays the following warning lamps:



- Amber: Exhaust filter self-cleaning is required. Driving above 60 km/h (37 mph) for 20 minutes should clean the filter.

  Note: *Failure to follow the above driving approach, to enable filter self-cleaning, may result in reduced vehicle performance. The amber exhaust filter lamp is eventually replaced by a red exhaust filter lamp. The filter may need to be replaced.*
- Green: Exhaust filter self-cleaning is complete.
- Red: The exhaust filter is full. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.

Note: *A small increase in fuel consumption may be noticed temporarily during exhaust filter self-cleaning.*

Note: *If diesel fuel with high sulphur content is used regularly, the exhaust may emit a cloud of smoke at the start of the self-cleaning process. The smoke is a result of the sulphur deposit being burnt off and is no cause for concern. If possible, only use low sulphur diesel fuel.*

Petrol exhaust filter self-cleaning

Self-cleaning takes place when the engine is at its normal operating temperature and sufficient oxygen is present in the exhaust stream. In most situations, the exhaust filter automatically self-cleans without any driver intervention necessary.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Some driving conditions, e.g., repetitive cold starts or continuous full-load driving, may not provide sufficient opportunity to begin the exhaust filter self-cleaning automatically. When this occurs, the instrument panel displays the following warning lamps:



- Amber: Exhaust filter self-cleaning is required. Driving steadily below 80 km/h (50 mph) for up to 15 minutes should clean the filter.

  Note: *Failure to follow the above driving approach, to enable filter self-cleaning, may result in reduced vehicle performance. The amber exhaust filter lamp is eventually replaced by a red exhaust filter lamp. The filter may need to be replaced.*
- Green: Exhaust filter self-cleaning is complete.
- Red: The exhaust filter is full. Engine power is reduced. Exhaust filter self-cleaning is required.

  Note: *If a restricted performance message is displayed, contact a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.*

Note: *An increase in the idle speed may be noticed temporarily during exhaust filter self-cleaning.*

ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

No modifications or additions should be made to the anti-theft system. Such changes could cause the system to malfunction.

AIRBAG SYSTEM

The components that make up the airbag system are sensitive to electrical or physical interference. Electrical and/or physical interference could easily damage the system and cause inadvertent operation or a malfunction of the airbag module. Airbags should only be repaired by an authorised repairer. If the airbags are not repaired correctly, they may not operate correctly during a collision, which may lead to serious injury or death.

To prevent malfunction of the airbag system, always consult a retailer/authorised repairer before fitting any of the following:

- Electronic equipment such as a mobile phone, two-way radio, or in-vehicle entertainment system.
- Accessories attached to the front of the vehicle.
- Any modification to the front of the vehicle.
- Any modification involving the removal or repair of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any of the airbag system components. The components include the steering wheel, steering column, and instrument and fascia panels.
- Any modification to the fascia panels or steering wheel.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

PARTS AND ACCESSORIES

The fitting of non-approved parts and accessories, or the carrying out of non-approved alterations or conversions, may be dangerous. Doing so could affect the safety of the vehicle and occupants, and also invalidate the terms and conditions of the vehicle's warranty.

All replacement parts for the Air Conditioning (A/C) system should be new and equivalent to the manufacturer's original equipment, while complying with the SAE standards. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer for advice. Failure to adhere to the above may lead to serious injury or death.



The extremely flammable symbol may be used on an under-bonnet label. The symbol is relevant to the Air Conditioning (A/C) refrigerant fluid.

The symbol identifies flammable chemicals that have low flash and boiling points, and gases that catch fire when exposed to air.

Jaguar Land Rover Limited accepts no liability for death, personal injury, or damage to property, occurring as a direct result of non-approved modifications. These modifications include but are not limited to: fitment of non-approved accessories, and the carrying out of non-approved conversions to the vehicle.

ROAD TESTING DYNAMOMETERS (ROLLING ROADS)

Any dynamometer testing should only be carried out by a qualified person, familiar with the dynamometer testing and safety procedures practised by retailers/ authorised repairers.

SAFETY IN THE GARAGE

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

If the vehicle has been driven recently, do not touch the engine, exhaust, or cooling system components until the engine has cooled. Hot components may cause serious injuries.

Never leave the engine running when the vehicle is in a garage. Exhaust gases are poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and death if inhaled.

The jack is designed for wheel changing only. Never work beneath the vehicle with the jack as the only means of support. Always use correctly-rated vehicle support stands, before putting any part of the body beneath the vehicle. If the wheel changing jack breaks, the vehicle may cause serious injury or death.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Keep your hands and clothing away from drive belts, pulleys and fans. Some fans may continue to operate after the engine has stopped and may cause serious injuries.

Remove metal wristbands and jewellery before working in the engine compartment. Jewellery may trap the hands in the engine compartment which may cause serious injuries.

Do not touch electrical leads or components while the engine is running, or with the ignition switched on. Any moving component may cause serious injuries.

Do not allow tools or metal parts of the vehicle to make contact with the battery leads or terminals. Metal contact on electrical terminals may cause electric interference and may lead to serious injuries.

POISONOUS FLUIDS

Fluids used in motor vehicles are poisonous and should not be consumed or brought into contact with open wounds. Vehicle fluids may cause serious injuries or infection.

For safety, always read and obey all instructions printed on labels and containers.

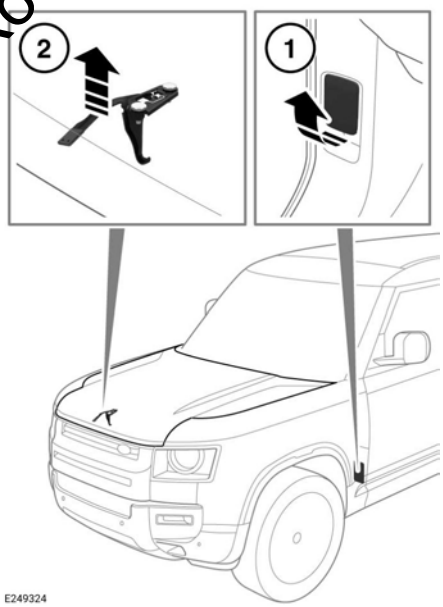
USED ENGINE OIL

Prolonged contact with engine oil may cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer of the skin. Always wash thoroughly after contact.

Pollution of drains, watercourses, or soil is illegal. Use authorised waste disposal sites to dispose of used oil and toxic chemicals.

OPENING THE BONNET

Before opening the bonnet, make sure that the ignition is switched off and the smart key is removed from the vehicle. Failure to do so can potentially result in serious injury or death.



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

1. Pull the handle, located in the driver's side front footwell.
2. Lift the bonnet safety catch, located underneath the centre of the bonnet. Raise the bonnet.

CLOSING THE BONNET

Before closing the bonnet, make sure that no-one is obstructing the closing area and that hands and clothes are clear. The closing bonnet may cause serious injuries.

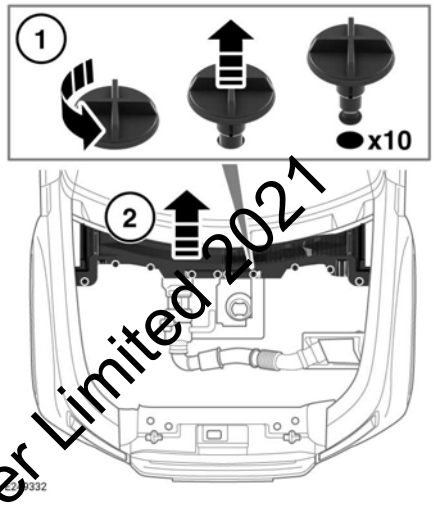
Do not drive with the bonnet secured by the safety catch alone. If the bonnet opens while driving, it may lead to a collision, which may cause serious injuries or death.

When closing the bonnet, make sure to stand in front of the vehicle. Do not attempt to close the bonnet while standing at the side of the vehicle. Doing so may result in incorrect latching of the bonnet, which may cause serious injuries or death.

To close the bonnet:

1. Using both hands, lower the bonnet and let it drop from a height of between 20 to 50 cm.
2. Try to lift the front edge of the bonnet, near both corners, to check that it is securely engaged.
3. If the bonnet lifts slightly, it is not properly latched. Open the bonnet again, and with a little more force, try again to close it.

UNDER-BONNET COVERS REMOVAL



The following steps describe how to remove the under-bonnet covers:

1. Release and remove the turnbuckle clips securing the covers.
2. Lift the edge of the covers and slide to remove.

UNDER-BONNET COVERS REFITTING

Before refitting the under-bonnet covers, make sure that no pipes, cables, or other items have been trapped between the cover and the casing.

To refit the under-bonnet covers:

1. Place the cover over the casing. Make sure that the holes are aligned.
2. Push the cover down firmly. Rotate the turnbuckle clips clockwise to fasten.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

FUEL SYSTEM

Under no circumstances should any part of the fuel system be dismantled or replaced by anyone other than a suitably qualified vehicle technician. If any parts are replaced by an unqualified person, this may cause interference in the operation of the vehicle, leading to serious injury or death.

Make sure sparks and open flames are kept away from the engine compartment. A spark may cause an explosion, which may lead to serious injuries or death.

Wear protective clothing, including, where possible, gloves made from an impervious material. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death.

If fuel odour is detected, switch off the vehicle and exit as soon as possible. Contact a suitably qualified vehicle technician. Failure to do so could lead to serious injuries or death.

CHANGING A BULB

Note: *All lights are either LED or xenon units and must only be replaced by a retailer/authorised repairer.*

WIPERS SERVICE POSITION

Note: *The smart key must remain inside the vehicle while the wiper blades are being replaced.*

Note: *Fit only replacement wiper blades that are identical to the original specification.*

Note: *Replace the wiper blades in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.*

Before changing a wiper blade, the wiper arms must be set in the service position as follows:

1. Make sure the vehicle's ignition is switched off.
2. Switch the vehicle's ignition on and then off again.
3. Immediately press the wash/wipe control to its lowest position, as if to command a single wipe. Hold this position while switching on the vehicle's ignition again. The wipers move to the service position. See **101, WIPER OPERATION**.
4. When the new parts have been fitted, switch the vehicle's ignition off. The wipers return to the park position.

FOLDING FABRIC ROOF RESET

Make sure that the conditions listed below are met before carrying out the folding fabric sunroof reset procedure:

- The ambient air temperature is between 5°C to 65°C.
- The vehicle is at a standstill.
- The vehicle's battery is sufficiently charged and the electrical connections are good.

The folding fabric sunroof needs to be reset if the battery is disconnected. Disconnection includes the battery becoming discharged, or an interruption to the power supply while the folding fabric sunroof is being operated.

Once the power supply is restored, reset the folding fabric sunroof as follows:

1. Switch the ignition on.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

2. Use the switch to close the folding fabric sunroof to the fully closed position. Release the switch. See **113, ELECTRIC WINDOWS**.

Vehicles with a folding fabric sunroof do not have an anti-trap system. Make sure that no occupants have any body parts in a position where they could become trapped. Serious injury or death could occur.

3. Fully press and hold the front of the folding fabric sunroof switch for 10 seconds to start the reset cycle. Continue to hold the front of the folding fabric sunroof switch until the folding fabric sunroof moves forwards and backwards a small amount.

The folding fabric sunroof can now be operated as normal.

PANORAMIC ROOF BLIND RESET

The roof blind needs to be reset if the battery is disconnected, becomes discharged, or the power supply is interrupted. The reset procedure is as follows:

1. Start the engine.
2. With the roof blind in the closed position, press and hold the roof blind switch for approximately 30 seconds, until an audible double click sounds.
3. Release the switch. Within 3 seconds, press and hold the roof blind switch again. Hold until the blind completes a full open and close cycle.
4. Once the blind has stopped moving, release the switch. The blind can now be operated as normal.

PANORAMIC ROOF RESET

If the battery is disconnected or the power supply is interrupted while the panoramic roof is partially open, it may need to be recalibrated.

Once the battery is reconnected or the power supply is restored, recalibrate the panoramic roof as follows:

1. Switch the engine on.
2. With the roof and blind closed, press the front of the roof switch and hold for 20 seconds. See **113, ELECTRIC WINDOWS**.
3. After 20 seconds, the panoramic roof begins to move. Release the switch. Within 5 seconds, press and hold the front of the roof switch until the blind and roof complete a full open and close cycle.

   Note: *The blind opens first and closes last.*
4. Once the blind has stopped moving, release the switch.

The panoramic roof can now be operated as normal.

WINDOW RESET

The windows need to be reset if the battery is disconnected, becomes discharged, or the power supply is interrupted.

Reset as follows:

1. Close the window fully. See **113, ELECTRIC WINDOWS**.
2. Release the switch. Lift the switch to the close position and hold for 1 second.
3. Repeat the procedure on each window.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *Make sure that a minimum of 12V is available at all times. It is recommended to have the engine running while resetting the windows.*

FIRE EXTINGUISHER

For certain markets, fire extinguishers are fitted to comply with local legislation. Please note, it is the owner's responsibility to make sure the fire extinguisher is maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

The owner is also responsible for making sure that the pressure is at a suitable operating pressure, as indicated on the pressure gauge. Only use fire extinguishers approved by the vehicle manufacturer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

THE EXTERIOR

Following cleaning of the vehicle's exterior, particularly with a pressure washer, it is recommended that the vehicle is taken for a short drive to dry out the brakes. Wet brakes may impair the vehicle's ability to safely slow down which may result in accidents causing serious injury or death.

Make sure the tail pipe is cool before polishing the tail pipe finishers. Failure to do so may result in personal injury.

To prevent damage to the vehicle when using a valeting service, make sure to advise of the cleaning instructions contained within the Owner's Handbook.

Remove any heavy deposits of mud and dirt with a hose, before washing the vehicle. Failure to do so may cause damage to the vehicle.

Some high pressure cleaning systems are sufficiently powerful enough to penetrate suspension joints and door or window seals, and damage trim and door locks. Never aim the water jet directly at any camera, the engine air intake, heater air intakes, body seals, doors, the sliding canvas roof, the panoramic roof, windows, etc. Do not aim the water jet at any components which may be damaged such as lights, mirrors, exterior trim, suspension seals and gaiters, etc. Make sure that the pressure washer nozzle is always at a distance of more than 300 mm from any vehicle component. Failure to do so may cause damage to the vehicle.

Do not use an automated car wash. Using unapproved cleaning equipment can cause damage to the vehicle's the sliding canvas roof.

Do not use a power wash system in the engine bay area, as it may damage the vehicle's electrical components.

Substances which are corrosive, such as bird droppings, can damage the vehicle’s paintwork. Remove any such substances immediately.

Use only cleaning products approved for use on vehicles. Using unapproved cleaning products may damage the vehicle.

Do not apply polish to any unpainted areas of bumper mouldings. Such areas can become ingrained in the textured finish.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Vehicle cleaning

After washing the vehicle, it is recommended to use a suitable metal polish on stainless steel or chrome finishers to restore the surface appearance.

Make sure that the canvas roof channels or panoramic roof channels are kept clean to allow continued smooth operation of the mechanism.

SENSORS AND CAMERAS

When washing the vehicle, do not aim high pressure water jets directly at any of the sensors and cameras. Do not use abrasive materials, or hard or sharp objects, to clean the sensors and cameras. Only use approved vehicle shampoo. Using unapproved cleaning products may damage the vehicle.

Keep the park assist and parking aid sensors clean to maintain accuracy and performance.

Operate the rear screen wash to clean the rear camera lens. See **101, WIPER OPERATION**.

If required, clean the cameras using a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass-cleaning product.

USING AN AUTOMATIC WASH

Commercially-operated, automatic car washes, jet washes, and power-operated mops are not recommended.

UNDER BODY MAINTENANCE

Regularly flush the vehicle's underbody with plain, clean water. Pay particular attention to areas where mud and debris collect.

If damage or corrosion are detected, have the vehicle checked by a retailer/ authorised repairer as soon as possible.

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

The high voltage system has no serviceable parts. Never disassemble, remove or replace high voltage components, cables or connectors. Tampering with the high voltage system can cause severe burns or electric shock, which may result in serious injury or death. High voltage cables and connectors are coloured orange for identification purposes. If maintenance or repair is required, always consult a retailer/ authorised repairer.

Do not use a high pressure washer or steam cleaner in the engine compartment. Pressure washing has the potential to cause damage to certain engine components.

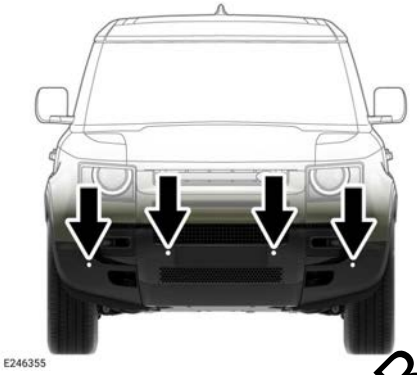
Make sure that the brake fluid reservoir is kept dry at all times. Only use a clean, dry cloth to clean the brake fluid cap and reservoir. Not doing so can cause damage to the vehicle.

Pressure washing has the potential to damage high voltage electrical components and cables.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

AFTER OFF-ROAD DRIVING

Make sure the areas around air intakes and the front grille are clean and clear of debris. Pay particular attention to the lower grille and radiator. Failure to do so may cause the engine to overheat, potentially leading to severe engine damage.



Make sure the vehicle's underbody is cleaned as soon as possible after driving off-road.

For vehicles fitted with air suspension, raise the suspension to **Off-Road 2** to improve cleaning access. See **176, OFF-ROAD HEIGHT**.

Make sure all mud and debris is removed from the rear air spring. Failure to do so may lead to permanent damage to the air spring sleeve.

ALLOY WHEELS

Only use approved wheel cleaning products. Using unapproved cleaning products may damage the vehicle.

THE INTERIOR

Some cleaning products contain substances that are harmful and can cause health problems if used incorrectly.

Some cleaning products may cause damage to the vehicle's interior. Make sure to read the manufacturer's instructions carefully.

To prevent damage to the vehicle when using a valeting service, make sure to advise of the cleaning instructions contained within the Owner's Handbook.

CLEANING SWITCHES AND CONTROLS

Use a soft, dry, lint-free cloth when cleaning switches or controls. Do not apply excessive pressure when doing so. Using not approved cleaning product my cause damage to the components.

Do not spray liquids directly onto the surface of switches and controls. Fluids leaking into the gaps around switches and controls can damage the electronics of the vehicle.

Do not use chemical agents, solvents, or domestic cleaning products. Using unapproved cleaning products may damage the vehicle.

When cleaning, do not allow sharp or abrasive objects to make contact with the components. Sharp or abrasive objects may damage the components.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

FABRIC UPHOLSTERY

Do not polish the instrument panel. Polished surfaces are reflective and may interfere with the driver's view.

Clean plastic or cloth-faced surfaces with warm water and non-detergent soap. Wipe clean with a soft cloth.

LEATHER UPHOLSTERY

Only use cleaning products specifically designed for use on leather. Do not use chemical, alcohol, or abrasive materials, as doing so will cause rapid deterioration of the leather. The use of non-approved products will invalidate the warranty.

If in any doubt as to which products to use, consult a retailer/authorised repairer. Using the wrong product can cause damage to the leather surfaces.

Dark clothing may stain leather seats, just like other upholstery products.

Sharp objects, such as belts, zippers, rivets, etc., can leave permanent scratches and scratch marks on the leather surface.

Unless spillages, such as tea, coffee, or ink are washed away immediately, permanent staining may have to be accepted. Leather should be cleaned and protected at least every 6 months.

To prevent ingrained dirt and staining, inspect the seat upholstery regularly. Clean every 1 to 2 months as follows:

1. Wipe off fine dust from the seat surfaces using a clean, damp, non-coloured cloth. Avoid over-wetting the leather.
2. If this is not sufficient, use a cloth which has been dampened with warm, soapy water and then wrung out. Use only mild, non-caustic soap.
3. Use the vehicle manufacturer's leather cleaner for heavily soiled areas. Dry off and rub with a clean, soft cloth. Change surfaces regularly.

Use the vehicle manufacturer's leather cleaner several times a year to maintain the leather's suppleness and appearance. The cleaner nourishes and moisturises the leather, and helps to improve the surface's protective film against dust and substances.

If a valet service is used, make sure the specialist concerned is aware of, and follows, these instructions precisely.

Some materials and fabrics are prone to dye transfer, which can cause unsightly discolouration of lighter coloured leathers. Affected areas should be cleaned and re-protected as soon as possible.

SEAT BELTS

Do not allow any water, cleaning products, or fabric from cloths to enter the seat belt mechanism. Any substance which enters the mechanism may affect the performance of the seat belt in an impact. Damage to the seat belt can greatly reduce its effectiveness in reducing the risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Extend the seat belts fully. Use warm water and a non-detergent soap to clean. Allow the seat belts to dry naturally while fully extended. Do not allow the belts to retract until fully dry.

Note: *While cleaning the seat belt, take the opportunity to examine the webbing for damage and wear. Any wear or damage should be reported to, and be rectified by, a retailer/authorised repairer.*

AIRBAG MODULE COVERS

Airbag covers should only be cleaned using a slightly dampened cloth and a small amount of upholstery cleaner. Some cleaning products may cause damage to airbag covers.

Any substance which enters the mechanism can prevent correct deployment of an airbag during an impact. An airbag system not operating correctly could result in serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

CARPET AND MATS

Correctly secure the floor mats before driving. Never place mats on top of each other. Unsecured or incorrectly positioned mats can obstruct the brake and/or accelerator pedal and can lead to serious injury or death.

Marks or stains can be removed by gentle scrubbing with a weak solution of soap and warm water.

For more stubborn stains, a commercially available carpet cleaner should be used.

CLEANING SCREENS AND DISPLAYS

Do not polish the instrument panel. Polished surfaces are reflective, and may interfere with the driver's view.

Do not use upholstery cleaner on electrical equipment such as fascia switches. Certain products may damage the vehicle's electrical equipment.

When cleaning around electrical equipment such as switches, make sure fluids do not leak into any gaps around the components or between panels or trim. Liquids can damage the vehicle's electronics.

Clean the vehicle's screens and displays as follows:

- Do not use chemical agents or domestic cleaning products.
- Do not allow sharp, hard, or abrasive objects to make contact with the screens.
- Avoid exposing screens to direct sunlight for long periods.
- To prevent errors occurring, make sure only one finger at a time is in contact with the touchscreen.
- Do not use excessive pressure.

WIPER BLADES

Always lift the wiper by the wiper arm. To avoid damage to the wiper blade, do not lift the wiper by the wiper blade.

Do not use excessive pressure. Excessive pressure on the wiper blades can damage the blades.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Heavy contamination on the wiper blades should be removed using a soft, damp sponge or cloth.

BLOCKED WASHER JETS

Do not operate the washer jets during unblocking or adjustment. Windscreen washer fluid may cause irritation to the eyes and skin. Always read and observe the washer fluid manufacturer's instructions.

If a washer jet becomes blocked, insert a thin strand of wire into the washer jet to unblock it. Make sure the wire is completely removed after unblocking.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Note: *Any repairs should be carried out by suitably qualified personnel.*

Regularly inspect the paintwork for damage. Any stone chips, fractures, or deep scratches in the paint or bodywork should be repaired promptly. Bare metal corrodes quickly and, if left untreated, can result in expensive repairs.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS

Do not start the engine, or drive the vehicle, if leaked fluid could possibly make contact with a hot surface. Any leaked fluid coming into contact with a hot surface, such as the exhaust, could result in combustion. Seek qualified assistance immediately.

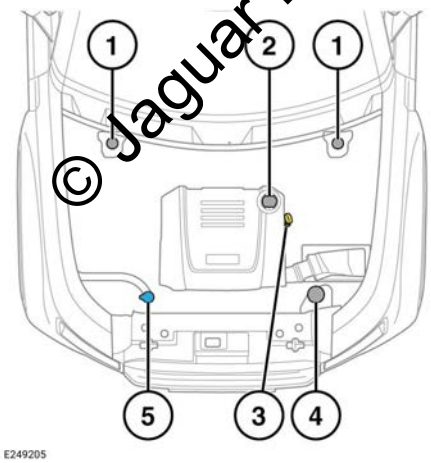
Always observe and follow the safety precautions when working in the engine compartment. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death.

Note: *Further information on safety precautions can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See* ***371, SAFETY IN THE GARAGE****.*

Note: *The brake fluid reservoir is always located on the driver's side.*

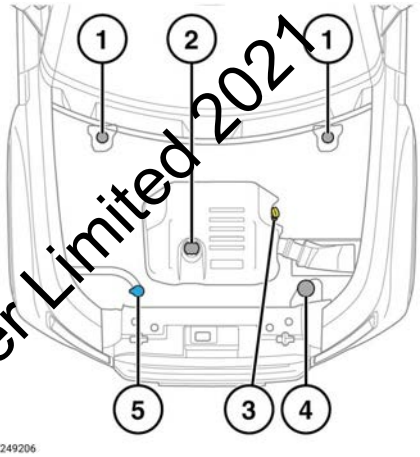
A number of simple checks and routine maintenance must be carried out at regular intervals. See **368, WEEKLY CHECKS**.

2.0L petrol engine



1. Brake fluid reservoir cap.
2. Engine oil filler cap.
3. Engine oil level dipstick.
4. Engine coolant reservoir filler cap.
5. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap.

3.0L in-line 6 cylinder petrol engine

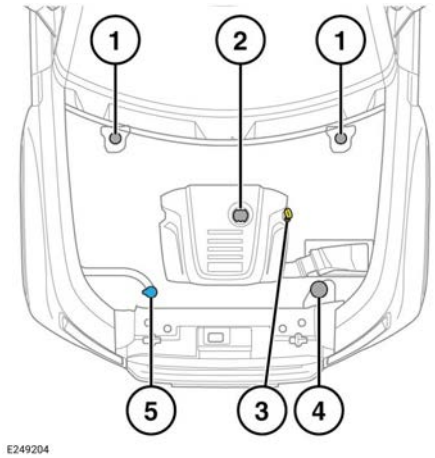


1. Brake fluid reservoir cap.
2. Engine oil filler cap.
3. Engine oil level dipstick.
4. Engine coolant reservoir filler cap.
5. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Fluid level checks

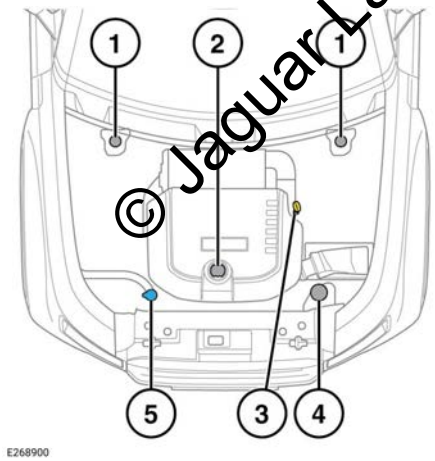
2.0L diesel engine



E249204

1. Brake fluid reservoir cap.
2. Engine oil filler cap.
3. Engine oil level dipstick.
4. Engine coolant reservoir filler cap.
5. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap.

3.0L diesel engine



E268900

1. Brake fluid reservoir cap.
2. Engine oil filler cap.
3. Engine oil level dipstick.
4. Engine coolant reservoir filler cap.
5. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap.

Vehicles with Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF)



E249203

The Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) tank filler cap is located inside the fuel filler flap, to the side of the fuel filler cap. See **359, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF)**.

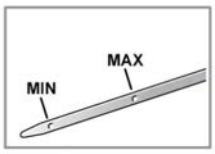
CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

Check the engine oil frequently. If any significant or sudden drop in the oil level is noted, seek qualified assistance.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Never allow the engine oil level to fall below the lower mark on the dipstick or the oil level indicator. Top up, as required, using the correct oil specification for the engine.

If the instrument panel displays the message **ENGINE OIL PRESSURE LOW**, stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Allowing the engine to continue running with low oil pressure may cause the engine to seize. Seek qualified assistance immediately. Do not start the engine until the cause has been rectified.



E181178

Note: *The graphic shown above is for illustrative purposes only.*

The dipstick features minimum and maximum marks in order to help determine the oil level present in the engine. The mark can take the form of holes, lines or a hatched area.



E268652

The dipstick on the 2.0L petrol engine features a lug to aid correct fitment. Make sure the lug is correctly aligned with the groove in the dipstick tube. Failure to do this could result in the dipstick not fitting correctly and oil escaping from the engine.

Before checking the engine oil level, make sure that:

- The vehicle is stationary and the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The vehicle is on level ground.
- The engine oil is cold.

  Note: *It is necessary to check the oil level when the engine is hot, switch off the engine and let the vehicle stand for 5 minutes to allow the oil to drain back into the sump. Do not start the engine.*

The oil level can then be checked as follows:

1. Withdraw the dipstick and wipe the blade clean with a lint-free cloth.
2. Fully re-insert the dipstick and withdraw again to check the oil level.



E268653

If the oil level lies within the hatched portion on the dipstick blade, do not add any more oil.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Fluid level checks

There is no requirement to top-up the oil unless the oil is at or below the lower mark.

If the oil level is below the lower mark, add 1 L of oil. Recheck the level and add more oil, if necessary.

Once the oil has reached the correct level on the dipstick, wait 5 minutes and recheck.

TOPPING UP THE OIL

The vehicle's warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by using oil that does not meet the required specification. See **446, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

Before driving off-road, top up the engine oil level to the maximum mark on the engine oil level dipstick. Failure to do so could result in an insufficient oil level when driving at certain angles off-road, which could cause damage to the engine.

Failure to use an oil that meets the required specification could cause excessive engine wear, a build-up of sludge and deposits, and increase pollution. A resultant cause could be engine failure.

Overfilling with oil could result in severe engine damage. Add engine oil in small quantities. Recheck the level to make sure the engine is not overfilled.

Use of the correct oil specification is essential. Make sure the oil is suitable for the climatic conditions in which the vehicle is to be operated.

To top up the oil:

1. Turn the oil filler cap counter-clockwise to remove.
2. For engines with a dipstick:
   - Add oil to maintain the level between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks or notches on the dipstick.
3. For engines with an electronic monitoring system:
   - Add oil, as indicated by the engine oil level indicator messages in the instrument panel.
4. Clean up any oil spilled during topping up.
5. Check the oil level again after 5 minutes.
6. To refit the oil filler cap, turn the cap clockwise until a resistance is felt.

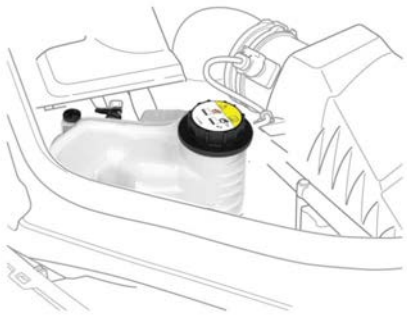
CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL

Running the engine without coolant causes serious engine damage.

If persistent coolant loss is noticed, seek qualified assistance immediately.

Check the coolant reservoir level at least every week. Check more frequently in high mileage or arduous conditions. Always check the level when the system is cold.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



E151133

Make sure the coolant level remains between the **MIN** and **MAX** indicator marks on the side of the expansion tank.

If the coolant level has dropped suddenly, or by a large amount, arrange for the vehicle to be examined by qualified personnel. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.

TOPPING UP THE COOLANT

Never remove the coolant reservoir filler cap when the engine is hot. Escaping steam or scalding water could cause serious personal injury.

Unscrew the filler cap slowly, allowing the pressure to escape before removing completely.

Antifreeze is highly flammable. Do not allow antifreeze to come into contact with open flames or other sources of ignition, e.g., a hot engine. A fire may result.

Antifreeze is poisonous and can be fatal if swallowed. Keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If consumption is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.

If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water.

When travelling in places where the water supply contains salt, always make sure to carry a supply of fresh (rain or distilled) water. Topping up with salt water will cause serious engine damage.

The use of non-approved antifreeze has an adverse effect on the engine's cooling system and, therefore, engine durability. See **446, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

Antifreeze damages painted surfaces. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately. Wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

Do not use any anti-leak products in the cooling system, as it causes damage to the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Fluid level checks

Antifreeze contains important corrosion inhibitors. The antifreeze content of the coolant must be maintained at 50% to 60% all year round, not just in cold conditions. To make sure the anti-corrosion properties of the coolant are maintained, the antifreeze content should be checked once a year. Regardless of the distance travelled, the antifreeze should be replaced every 10 years. Failure to do so may cause corrosion of the radiator and engine components. The specific gravity of a 50% antifreeze solution at 20°C is 1.068 and protects against frost down to -40°C.

To top up the coolant:

1. Rotate the coolant reservoir filler cap counter-clockwise and remove.
2. Top up to the **MAX** indicator mark on the side of the coolant reservoir. Use a mixture of 50% water and 50% antifreeze. See **446, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

   Note: *In an emergency, and only if the approved antifreeze is unavailable, top up the cooling system with clean water. Be aware of the resultant reduction in frost protection. Do not top up or refill with conventional antifreeze formulations. If in doubt, consult a qualified technician.*
3. To refit the coolant reservoir filler cap, rotate the filler cap clockwise, until the cap's ratchet clicks at least three times.

CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID LEVEL

Seek qualified assistance immediately if brake pedal travel is unusually long, or if there is any significant loss of brake fluid. Driving under such conditions could result in extended stopping distances or complete brake failure.

Brake fluid is highly toxic. Keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If accidental consumption of fluid is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.

If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of clean water.

Brake fluid is highly flammable. Do not allow brake fluid to come into contact with open flames, a hot engine, or other sources of ignition. A fire may result.

Do not drive the vehicle with the fluid level below the MIN mark.

If the quantity of fluid in the brake reservoir drops below the recommended level, a red warning lamp in the instrument panel illuminates. See **82, BRAKE (RED)**.

Note: *If the warning lamp illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, gently apply the brakes to stop the vehicle, as soon as safety permits. Check and top up the fluid level, if necessary.*

With the vehicle on level ground, check the fluid level at least every week. Check more frequently in high mileage or arduous operating conditions.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



The driver's side under-bonnet cover must be removed to check the brake fluid. See **383, FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS** and **373, UNDER-BONNET COVERS REMOVAL**. Check the brake fluid reservoir level. The level should be between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.

Note: *The fluid level may drop slightly during normal use, as a result of brake pad wear. The fluid level should not be allowed to drop below the* ***MIN*** *mark.*

TOPPING UP THE BRAKE FLUID

Always use brake fluid which has the correct specification. See **446, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

Brake fluid damages painted surfaces. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately. Wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

Only use new fluid from an airtight container. Fluid from open containers, or fluid previously bled from the system, will have absorbed moisture. Contaminated fluid will adversely affect performance, and must not be used.

Do not top up the brake fluid to the maximum mark unless the brake pads have been replaced. If unsure, seek qualified assistance.

To top up the brake fluid:

1. Clean the brake fluid reservoir and the filler cap before removing, to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
2. Rotate the reservoir filler cap counter-clockwise and remove.
3. Top up the reservoir to at least the minimum mark.
4. To refit the reservoir filler cap, rotate the cap clockwise.
5. Refit the under-bonnet cover. See **373, UNDER-BONNET COVERS REFITTING**.

CHECKING THE WASHER FLUID LEVEL

Some windscreen washer products are flammable, particularly if high or undiluted concentrations are exposed to sparking. Do not allow windscreen washer fluid to come into contact with exposed flames or sources of ignition, as this can cause a fire or explosion.

If the vehicle is operated in temperatures below 4°C, use a windscreen washer fluid with frost protection. In cold weather, failure to use a windscreen washer fluid with frost protection could result in impaired vision and increase the risk of a vehicle crash.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- Do not use an antifreeze or a vinegar and water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze damages painted surfaces, while vinegar can damage the windscreen washer pump.
- Body panels may suffer discolouration as a result of windscreen washer fluid spillage. Take care to avoid spillage, particularly if an undiluted or high concentration is being used. If spillage occurs, wash the affected area immediately with water.
- Only use approved windscreen washer fluid.

The washer fluid reservoir supplies the windscreen, rear screen and headlight washer jets.

Check and top up the reservoir level at least every week. Always top up with screen washer fluid to prevent freezing.

Operate the washer controls periodically, to check that the nozzles are clear and properly directed.

TOPPING UP THE WASHER FLUID

Note: *National or local regulations may restrict the use of Volatile Organic Compounds (VOCs) which are commonly used as antifreeze agents in windscreen washer fluid. A windscreen washer fluid with limited VOC content should be used only if it provides adequate freeze resistance for all climates in which the vehicle is operated.*

The washer reservoir supplies the windscreen, rear screen and headlight washer jets.

Check and top up the reservoir level at least every week. Always top up with screen washer fluid to prevent freezing.

Operate the washer controls periodically, to check that the nozzles are clear and properly directed.

Top up the windscreen washer fluid as follows:

1. Clean the washer fluid filler cap before removing, to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
2. Remove the filler cap.
3. Top up the reservoir until the fluid is visible in the fill neck.
4. Replace the filler cap.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

BATTERY WARNING SYMBOLS



Do not allow open flames or other sources of ignition near the battery, as the battery may emit explosive gases.



Make sure, when working near or handling the battery, that suitable eye protection is worn, to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



To prevent risk of injury, do not allow children near the battery.



Be aware that the battery may emit explosive gases.



The battery contains acid which is extremely corrosive and toxic.



Consult the Owner's Handbook for information before handling the battery.

BATTERY CARE

If swallowed, battery electrolyte can be fatal. Seek medical assistance immediately.

Do not allow battery fluid to come into contact with skin, eyes, or clothes. Battery fluid is both toxic and corrosive, which can result in severe injuries. If battery electrolyte comes into contact with skin, eyes or clothes, remove the affected clothing. Flush the skin or eyes with plenty of water. Seek medical assistance immediately. Failure to do so may result in serious injury.

Do not connect any 12V equipment directly to the battery terminals. Doing so may cause a spark, which can result in an explosion. A spark or an explosion may cause serious injury or death.

The cell plugs and vent pipe must be in place at all times when the battery is connected to the vehicle. Make sure that the vent pipe is clear of obstructions and not kinked. Failure to do so may cause a pressure build-up in the battery, potentially resulting in an explosion. An explosion may cause serious injury or death.

Do not expose the battery to an open flame or spark, as the battery produces explosive, flammable gas. An open flame or sparks may cause a fire or explosion, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.

Never jump start (boost), charge, or try to start a vehicle with a frozen battery. Doing so may result in an explosion. An explosion may cause serious injury or death.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Vehicle battery

Remove all metal jewellery before working on, or near, the battery. Never allow metal objects or vehicle components to come into contact with the battery terminals. Metal objects can cause sparks or short circuits, potentially resulting in an explosion. An explosion may cause serious injury or death.

Do not allow the battery posts or terminals to come into contact with skin. The posts and terminals contain lead and lead compounds, which are toxic. Always wash hands thoroughly after handling the battery. Excessive exposure to lead may cause long-term illness.

Do not allow battery electrolyte to come into contact with fabrics or painted surfaces. If battery electrolyte comes into contact with any surface, the surface should be washed down immediately with plenty of clean water. Failure to do so may result in damage to the affected surface.

An Absorbed Glass Matt (AGM) battery is fitted to the vehicle.

AGM batteries are sealed for life and require no maintenance. Do not attempt to open or remove the top from an AGM battery. Doing so can cause damage to the battery.

CONNECTING JUMP LEADS

Remove all metal jewellery before working on, or near, a battery or boost terminals. Never allow metal objects or vehicle components to come into contact with the battery or boost terminals. Metal objects can cause sparks or short circuits, potentially resulting in an explosion.

Do not allow the battery posts or terminals to come into contact with skin. Battery posts and terminals contain lead and lead compounds, which are toxic. Always wash hands thoroughly after handling the battery.

Do not expose any battery to an open flame or spark, as the battery produces explosive, flammable gas.

Do not connect the jump leads to any battery terminal on the vehicle. Doing so can cause a spark, which can result in an explosion. Doing so will also result in damage to the charging system.

Never jump start (boost), charge, or try to start a vehicle with a frozen battery. Doing so can result in an explosion.

Rotating parts of the engine can cause serious injury. Take extreme care when working near rotating parts of the engine.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Before attempting to start the vehicle, make sure that the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied, or suitably chock the wheels. Make sure that Park (P) is selected. Failure to do so may result in accidents causing serious injury or death.

Suitable eye protection must be worn when working in the area of a battery. Battery acid can cause serious injury to eyes.

During normal use, batteries emit explosive gas sufficient to cause severe explosions and capable of causing serious injury. Keep sparks and open flames away from the battery.

Make sure there is no physical contact between the donor and disabled vehicles, other than the jump leads. Failure to do so may cause damage to the vehicle.

Make sure that any battery or starting aid is a 12-volt device. Unapproved devices can cause damage to the vehicle.

Disconnect the jump leads before operating any electrical equipment. Failure to do so may cause damage to the vehicle.

Note: *Before connecting the jump leads to the disabled vehicle's boost point terminals, make sure the donor vehicle's boost point connections are correct. Also make sure that all electrical equipment has been switched off.*



1. Disabled vehicle.
2. Donor vehicle.

To connect the jump leads:

1. Connect the positive (red) jump lead to the recommended positive (**+**) boost point terminal on the donor vehicle.

   Note: *Refer to the donor vehicle's Owner's Handbook for the recommended positive boost terminal.*

2. Connect the other end of the positive (red) jump lead to the positive (**+**) boost point terminal on the disabled vehicle, as illustrated.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

3. Connect the negative (black) jump lead to the recommended negative (-) boost point terminal on the donor vehicle.

   Note: *Refer to the donor vehicle's Owner's Handbook for the recommended negative boost terminal.*

4. Connect the other end of the negative (black) jump lead to the negative (-) boost point terminal on the disabled vehicle, as illustrated.

   Note: *Check that all cables are clear of any moving components. Make sure that all four connections are secure.*

5. Start the engine of the donor vehicle. Allow the engine to idle for a few minutes.
6. Start the engine on the disabled vehicle.

   Note: *Do not switch on any electrical circuits on the disabled vehicle until after the jump leads are removed.*

7. Allow both vehicles to idle for 3 minutes.
8. Switch off the donor vehicle.
9. Disconnect the negative (black) jump lead from the previously disabled vehicle.
10. Disconnect the negative (black) jump lead from the donor vehicle.
11. Disconnect the positive (red) jump lead from the previously disabled vehicle.
12. Disconnect the positive (red) jump lead from the donor vehicle.

CONNECTING A STARTING AID

To start the vehicle using a starting aid, or a slave battery, carry out the following:

1. Connect the positive (red) jump lead to the vehicle's positive (+) boost point terminal.
2. Connect the negative (black) jump lead to the vehicle's negative (-) boost point terminal.
3. Switch on the starting aid.
4. Start the engine. Allow the engine to idle.
5. Disconnect the negative (black) jump lead from the vehicle's boost point terminal.
6. Switch off the starting aid.
7. Disconnect the positive (red) jump lead from the vehicle's boost point terminal.

REMOVING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

Battery disconnection, removal, and replacement should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

Battery removal and refit should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

CHARGING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

Make sure to use the correct type and rating of charger. Using an unsuitable charger may damage the battery, and could cause the battery to explode. An explosion may lead to serious injury or death.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

During charging the battery can produce a highly explosive and flammable gas. Always charge the battery in a well ventilated area away from any open flames, sparks or other ignition sources. Failure to do so may lead to an explosion, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.

Battery disconnection, removal, and replacement should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer. An unqualified person may cause damage to the vehicle.

If the vehicle's battery should require charging, the battery must be removed from the vehicle. Consult a retailer/ authorised repairer.

REPLACING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

Battery disconnection, removal, and replacement should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

Only fit a battery of the same type and rating. Fitting an incorrect battery may result in a fire and injury, or damage to the electrical system. If in doubt when fitting a battery, seek qualified assistance.

When refitting the battery make sure that no metal objects, or vehicle components, come into contact with the battery terminals. Metal objects can cause sparks or short circuits, potentially resulting in an explosion.

Switch the ignition off before disconnecting the battery terminals. Failure to do so may lead to an electrical shock or an explosion, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.

Always disconnect the negative terminal first and reconnect last. Failure to do so may cause a pressure build-up in the battery, potentially resulting in an explosion. An explosion may cause serious injury or death.

If the vehicle's battery should require replacing, the battery must be removed from the vehicle. Consult a retailer/ authorised repairer.

Used batteries must be disposed of correctly, as batteries contain a number of harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from a retailer/ authorised repairer or the local authority.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Vehicle battery

EFFECTS OF DISCONNECTING

On Hybrid vehicles, the 12V battery lead remains live, even when the 12V battery is disconnected. Suitable precautions need to be taken by qualified personnel. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death. Consult a repairer/ authorised repairer.

Disconnecting the battery can affect a number of vehicle systems, especially if there is insufficient battery power before disconnection. For example, the alarm may trigger, depending on its state, when the battery is disconnected. If the alarm does sound, use the smart key to disarm the security system. The windows may need recalibrating to operate correctly.

Note: *After reconnecting the battery, a number of systems may need to be reset.*

BATTERY MONITORING SYSTEM

Only start the engine if it is safe to do so. Failure to do so may lead to a collision, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.

The Intelligent Power System Management (IPSM) continuously monitors the condition of the main vehicle battery. If excessive battery discharge occurs, the system begins to shut down non-essential electrical systems, in order to protect the battery.

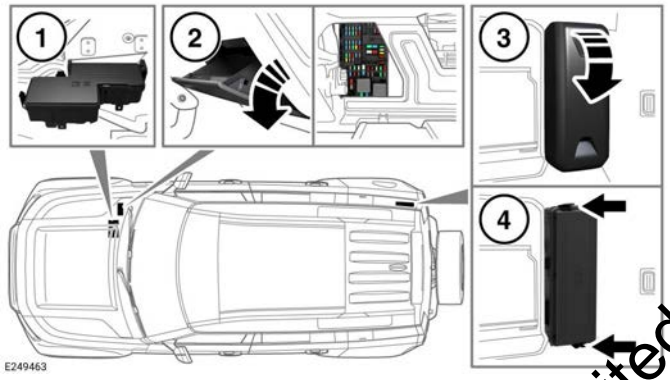
If the IPSM calculates that the battery's condition is not within the set parameters, there are two levels of action which can be taken. Both levels have an accompanying message on the touchscreen, and in the case of the low battery warning, in the instrument panel.

- **Energy Management**: Is displayed in the instrument panel if the engine is not running and system features are causing excessive battery discharge. After 3 minutes, the IPSM begins shutting down the vehicle's systems. Normal system operation resumes when the engine is started.
- **Low battery - Please start engine**: Is displayed on the touchscreen and in the instrument panel, if the engine is not running. After 3 minutes, the IPSM begins shutting down the vehicle's systems. Normal system operation resumes when the engine is started.

Note: *If the instrument panel displays* ***Low Battery - Please Start Engine****, drive the vehicle to allow the battery to recover to an acceptable level. Drive the vehicle for at least 30 minutes in temperatures above 0°C, or at least 60 minutes if the temperatures are below 0°C. If normal system operation does not resume when the engine is switched back off, the battery may not have been sufficiently charged. If safe to do so, restart the engine. If problems still exist, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

FUSE BOX LOCATIONS



Take care to protect the box from moisture. Refit the fuse box lid at the earliest opportunity.

Access the fuses as follows:

1. Engine compartment fuse box: Remove the under-bonnet cover. See **373, UNDER-BONNET COVERS REMOVAL**. Release the four clips to remove the fuse box lid.

   Note: *The fuse box is always located on the passenger's side of the vehicle.*

2. Passenger compartment fuse box: Open the glovebox. See **119, STORAGE COMPARTMENTS**. Firmly press the top of the support stay at each end and lower the glovebox into the footwell.

   Note: *The fuse box label for the passenger compartment fuse box is contained within the load space fuse box.*

3. Loadspace fuse box cover: Pull the fuse box cover forwards to release the six clips.

4. Loadspace fuse box: Release the two clips to remove the fuse box lid.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

REPLACING A FUSE

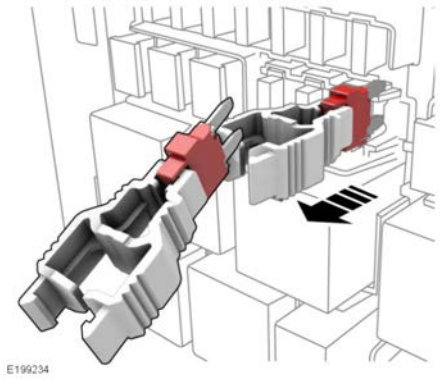
Always switch off the ignition system and the affected electrical circuit before replacing a fuse. Failure to do so could cause damage to the vehicle.

Fit approved replacement fuses of the same rating and type, or fuses of a matching specification. Using an incorrect fuse may result in damage to the vehicle's electrical system and can result in a fire.

If the replacement fuse blows after fitment, the system should be checked by a retailer/authorised repairer. Further damage could be caused to the vehicle if ignored.

Note: *Relays and fuses not detailed in the Owner's Handbook should only be replaced by qualified persons.*

Fuses



If an electrical system has stopped operating, the cause may be a blown fuse. The easiest way to check if a fuse has blown is to first remove it.

To check for a blown fuse:

1. Refer to the fuse box tables shown in this section to identify the correct fuse.
2. Gain access to the appropriate fuse box. See **397, FUSE BOX LOCATIONS**.
3. Refer to the fuse box label to locate the correct fuse. Depending on the fuse box, the label is located on the underside of the lid. The label on the loadspace fuse box is located in the slot on the front edge of the fuse box.
4. Use the fuse removal tool to remove the fuse. The fuse removal tool is located in the loadspace fuse box. See **397, FUSE BOX LOCATIONS**.
5. Check for a break in the wire within the fuse. If the wire within the fuse is broken, the fuse has blown and needs replacing. If the wire is still intact, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.
6. Refit or replace the fuse, as appropriate. Make sure the fuse is pushed fully into its correct position. Spare fuses are located in the loadspace fuse box.

ENGINE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse Box A

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
1	10	Red.	Engine management.
2	15	Blue.	Engine management.
3	10	Red.	Hybrid vehicle cooling.
4	10	Red.	Engine management.
5	10	Red.	Engine management.
6	15	Blue.	Auxiliary engine systems.
7	5	Tan.	Auxiliary engine systems.
8	5	Tan.	Starter motor.
9	25	Clear.	Rear washer jet.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
10	10	Red.	Heated washer jet.
11	15	Blue.	Engine cooling.
12	25	Clear.	Fuel pump.
13	15	Blue.	Engine cooling.
14	15	Blue.	Engine management.
15	10	Red.	Engine cooling.
16	25	Clear.	Front washer jets.
17	5	Tan.	Engine management.
18	20	Yellow.	Engine management.
19	25	Clear.	Engine management.
20	20	Yellow.	Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF).
21	20	Yellow.	Starter motor (diesel engines only).
22	40	White.	Starter motor.
23	60	Blue.	Cooling fan.
24	40	Orange.	Engine management (petrol engines only).
25	40	Orange.	Oil pump.
26	20	Yellow.	Front wiper.
27	60	Blue.	Anti-lock Braking System (ABS).

Fuse Box B

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
1	-	-	-
2	-	-	-
3	15	Blue.	Hybrid vehicle cooling.
4	-	-	-
5	-	-	-
6	15	Blue.	Horn.
7	10	Red.	Driver assistance systems.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
8	10	Red.	Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).
9	5	Tan.	Front corner radar.
10	5	Tan.	Camera systems.
11	20	Yellow.	Driveline module.
12	5	Tan.	Transmission control module.
13	-	-	-
14	30	Green.	Headlight washer pump.
15	-	-	-
16	10	Red.	Wireless charger.
17	30	Green.	Headlight washer pump.
18	25	Clear.	Right-side headlight.
19	15	Blue.	Transmission, off-road systems, gear selector.
20	25	Clear.	Left-side headlight.
21	30	Green.	Transfer box.
22	40	Orange.	Left-side heated windscreen.
23	40	Orange.	Right-side heated windscreen.
24	40	Orange.	Glow plugs.
25	40	Orange.	Glow plugs.
26	50	Red.	Front blower motor.
27	60	Blue.	Anti-lock Braking System (ABS).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

PASSENGER COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
1	20	Yellow.	Front cigar lighter.
2	20	Yellow.	Cigar lighter/front accessory socket.
3	20	Yellow.	Accessory socket.
4	20	Yellow.	Accessory socket console/USB console.

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
5	5	Tan.	Phone booster.
6	10	Red.	3rd row cool box.
7	5	Tan.	Battery back-up sounder.
8	-	-	-
9	15	Blue.	Hybrid system.
10	20	Yellow.	Accessory socket console/USB console.
11	5	Tan.	Wireless phone charger.
12	20	Yellow.	Sunroof.
13	20	Yellow.	Sunroof.
14	5	Tan.	Terrain optimization switch.
15	-	-	-
16	-	-	-
17	5	Tan.	Rear-view mirror.
18	30	Green.	Front passenger's seat.
19	-	-	-
20	25	Clear.	Left-side rear door.
21	10	Red.	Cool box.
22	5	Tan.	Cooling fan (MHEV).
23	-	-	-
24	25	Clear.	Driver's door.
25	15	Blue.	Suspension system.
26	-	-	-
27	25	Clear.	Front passenger's door.
28	20	Yellow.	Driver's seat.
29	25	Clear.	Right-side rear door.
30	30	Green.	Sunroof.
31	5	Tan.	Overhead console, RF receiver, auxiliary heater, Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
32	-	-	-
33	-	-	-
34	-	-	-
35	5	Tan.	Brake switch.
36	-	-	-
37	5	Tan.	Singapore road pricing connector.
38	10	Red.	Driving aids and collision avoidance systems.
39	10	Red.	Near field sense module.
40	-	-	-
41	5	Tan.	Telematics module.
42	-	-	-
43	10	Red.	Heated steering wheel.
44	5	Tan.	Steering wheel.
45	-	-	-
46	15	Blue.	Climate control.
47	-	-	-
48	-	-	-
49	5	Tan.	Immobiliser antenna.
50	10	Red.	Head-up display (HUD).
51	-	-	-
52	5	Tan.	Ioniser module.
53	10	Red.	Instrument panel.
54	5	Tan.	OBD2 diagnostic connector.
55	-	-	-
56	-	-	-

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

LOADSPACE FUSE BOX

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
1	15	Blue.	Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).
2	25	Clear.	3rd row heat seats.
3	15	Blue.	3rd row seat switchpacks.
4	-	-	-
5	-	-	-
6	5	Tan.	Battery (MHEV).
7	5	Tan.	Blind spot monitor / Park distance control / Rear corner radar.
8	20	Yellow.	Driver's seat heat.
9	15	Blue.	Driver's/passenger's seat switch and massage seat.
10	20	Yellow.	Passenger's seat heat.
11	20	Yellow.	Heater cushion rear RH.
12	15	Blue.	3rd row seat heat and switches / RH/LH rear seat switch packs.
13	20	Yellow.	Heater cushion rear LH.
14	20	Yellow.	Rear wiper.
15	30	Green.	Fuel pump.
16	15	Blue.	Trailer pick-up.
17	10	Red.	Diesel exhaust fluid tank.
18	20	Yellow.	Accessory socket load space/USB 3rd row.
19	20	Yellow.	Cigar lighter rear.
20	20	Yellow.	Accessory socket cubby box.
21	10	Red.	Rear USB.
22	-	-	-
23	-	-	-
24	-	-	-
25	5	Tan.	Electronic air suspension.
26	-	-	-

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
27	-	-	-
28	-	-	-
29	5	Tan.	Adaptive cruise control.
30	30	Green.	Heated rear screen.
31	-	-	-
32	5	Tan.	Speaker.
33	15	Blue.	Tailgate.
34	5	Tan.	Battery (MHEV).
35	-	-	-
36	-	-	-
37	30	Green.	Driver's seat.
38	5	Tan.	Touchscreen switchpack/climate control.
39	30	Green.	Deployable sidesteps.
40	-	-	-
41	-	-	-
42	20	Yellow.	Rear RH seat.
43	20	Yellow.	Keyless vehicle module.
44	15	Blue.	Trailer pick up.
45	15	Blue.	Fuel tank.
46	15	Blue.	Fuel pump.
47	-	-	-
48	10	Red.	Front display upper.
49	-	-	-
50	15	Blue.	Entertainment system.
51	15	Blue.	Front infotainment control module (FICM).
52	10	Red.	User portable devices.
53	10	Red.	Rear console portable.
54	-	-	-
55	15	Blue.	Chassis control module (AIR).

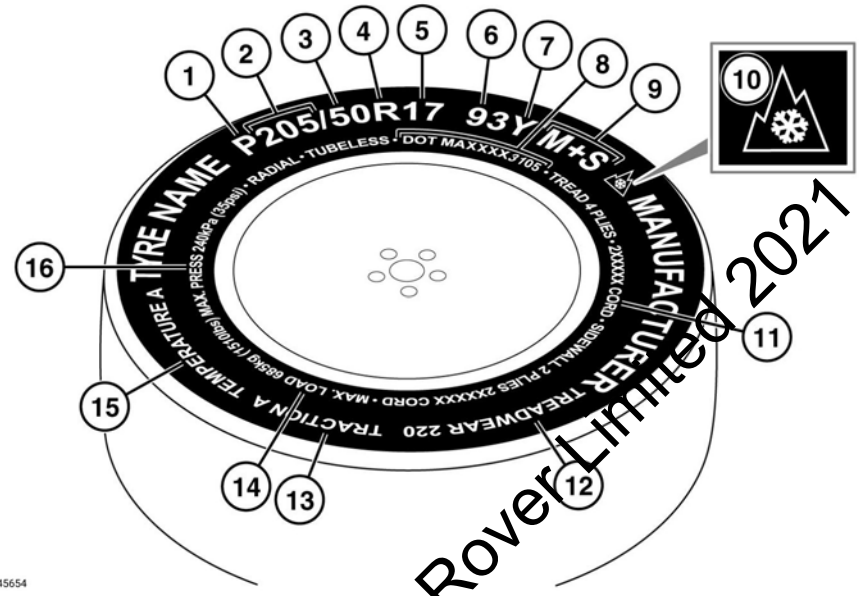
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
56	10	Red.	Chassis control module (CVD).
57	5	Tan.	Keyless vehicle module.
58	30	Green.	Passenger's seat.
59	-	-	-
60	-	-	-

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TYRE MARKINGS



Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before replacing a tyre. See **410, REPLACEMENT TYRES**.

All replacement tyres must be the same specification as the original equipment tyres, except for approved winter tyres, off-road tyres, and Professional Off-Road (POR) tyres. If in doubt, consult a retailer/authorised repairer. Failing to comply with these rules can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

1. **P** indicates that the tyre is for passenger vehicle use. The index is not always shown.
2. The width of the tyre from sidewall edge to sidewall edge, given in mm.
3. The aspect ratio, also known as the profile, gives the sidewall height as a percentage of the tread width. For example, if the tread width is 205 mm and the aspect ratio is 50, the sidewall height is 102 mm.
4. **R** indicates that the tyre is of radial ply construction.
5. The diameter of the wheel rim, given in inches.
6. The load index for the tyre. The load index specifies the maximum load the tyre can carry at the speed indicated by the tyre's speed rating. The index is not always shown.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

7. The speed rating denotes the maximum speed at which the tyre may be used for extended periods. See **407, SPEED RATING**.
8. Tyre manufacturing standard information, which can be used for tyre recalls and other checking processes. Most of this information relates to the manufacturer, place of manufacture, etc. The last four numbers are the date of manufacture. For example, if the number is 3106, the tyre was made in the 31st week of 2006.
9. **M+S** or **M/S** indicates that the tyre has been designed with some capability for mud and snow.
10. The winter tyres symbol identifies dedicated winter tyres. See **412, USING WINTER TYRES**.
11. The number of plies in both the tread area and the sidewall area. The number of plies indicates how many layers of rubber-coated material make up the structure of the tyre. Information is also provided on the type of materials used.
12. Wear rate indicator. A tyre rated at 400, e.g., lasts longer than a tyre rated at 200.
13. The traction rating grades a tyre's performance when stopping on a wet road surface. The higher the grade, the better the braking performance. The grades, from highest to lowest, are: **AA**, **A**, **B**, and **C**.

    Note: *The traction grade assigned to the tyre is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.*
14. The maximum load which can be carried by the tyre.
15. Heat resistance grading: The tyre's resistance to heat is grade **A**, **B**, or **C**, with **A** indicating the greatest resistance to heat. The grading is provided for a correctly inflated tyre which is being used within its speed and loading limits.
16. The maximum inflation pressure for the tyre. The maximum inflation pressure should not be used for normal driving. See **411, AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS**.

Note: *Approved tyres are generally identified by the brand mark J, LR, or J LR. Brand markings are specifically excluded for winter and POR tyres.*

SPEED RATING

Rating	Speed km/h (mph)
Q	160 (99)
R	170 (106)
S	180 (112)
T	190 (118)
U	200 (124)
H	210 (130)
V	240 (149)
W	270 (168)
Y	300 (186)

TYRE CARE

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before driving the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Tyres

Do not drive the vehicle if a tyre is damaged, excessively worn, or incorrectly inflated. A tyre in such a condition may catastrophically fail and cause an accident.

Avoid contaminating the tyres with vehicle fluids. Vehicle fluids may cause damage to the tyre and cause a tyre failure.

Avoid spinning the wheels. The forces released can damage the structure of the tyre and cause it to fail.

If wheel spin is unavoidable due to a loss of traction, e.g., in deep snow, do not exceed the 50 km/h (30 mph) point on the speedometer. Do not allow anyone to stand near or directly behind a tyre that might spin.

Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the sidewall of the tyre.

Note: *Tyre condition should be checked after the vehicle has been used off-road. As soon as the vehicle returns to a normal, hard road surface, stop and check for damage to the tyres.*

Check all of the vehicle's tyres, including the spare, regularly for damage, wear, and distortion. If in any doubt about the condition of a tyre, have it checked immediately by a tyre repair centre or a retailer/authorised repairer.

TYRE PRESSURE SAFETY

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

Check the tyres, including the spare, for condition and pressure on a weekly basis and before long journeys.

All tyre pressures, including the spare, should be checked. Failure to properly maintain the tyre pressures could increase the risk of tyre failure.

The loading of the vehicle should always be considered when checking and adjusting the tyre pressures. Failure to do so may lead to a loss of control, potentially causing serious injury or death. See 410, TYRE PRESSURE LABEL.

Always use a calibrated tyre pressure gauge. Using an un-calibrated tyre pressure gauge may result in tyres with incorrect pressures. Incorrect tyre pressure can lead to vehicle instability.

Never drive the vehicle if the tyre pressures are incorrect. Under-inflation causes excessive flexing and uneven tyre wear, which can lead to sudden tyre failure. Over-inflation causes harsh ride, uneven tyre wear and poor handling.

Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

If the tyre pressures are checked while the vehicle is inside a protected, covered area, e.g., a garage, and subsequently driven in lower outdoor temperatures, tyre under-inflation could occur.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

A slight pressure loss occurs naturally with time. If this exceeds 0.14 bar (2 psi, 14 kPa) per week, have the cause investigated and rectified by qualified personnel.

Pressure checks should be carried out ideally when the tyres are cold, and the vehicle has been stationary for more than 3 hours. A hot tyre at, or below, the recommended cold inflation pressure, is dangerously under-inflated. Tyres can be hot after driving, if the vehicle has been parked in strong sunlight, or used in high ambient temperatures. Do not reduce the tyre pressures. Recheck the pressures when cold.

If the tyre pressures are checked when the tyres are warm, expect the pressures to have increased by up to 0.3 to 0.4 bar (4 to 6 psi, 30 to 40 kPa). If Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) advised pressures are not available in the instrument panel, allow the tyres to cool fully before adjusting the pressures.

For vehicles with TPMS, it is possible to adjust the pressure of a warm tyre, providing the advised pressures are used. See **416, TYRE PRESSURE CHECK**.

TYRE PRESSURES

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before checking and adjusting the tyre pressures. See **408, TYRE PRESSURE SAFETY**.

For vehicles with Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS), inflate the tyres to the advised pressures displayed in the instrument panel. The advised tyre pressures are displayed in brackets in instrument panel. See **416, TYRE PRESSURE CHECK**.

Confirm that the TPMS loading setting is correct. See **417, VEHICLE LOADING**.

If the advised tyre pressures are not available in the instrument panel, or if TPMS is not fitted, when the tyres are cold, inflate to the recommended cold tyre pressures. See **410, TYRE PRESSURE LABEL**.

Tyre inflation procedure

To avoid damaging the valves, do not apply excessive force or sideways pressure on the gauge and/or inflator.

To avoid damage to the TPMS valves, it is recommended not to use rigid tyre inflation wands. Rigid tyre inflation wands increase the risk of excess leverage and sideways pressure on the valve.

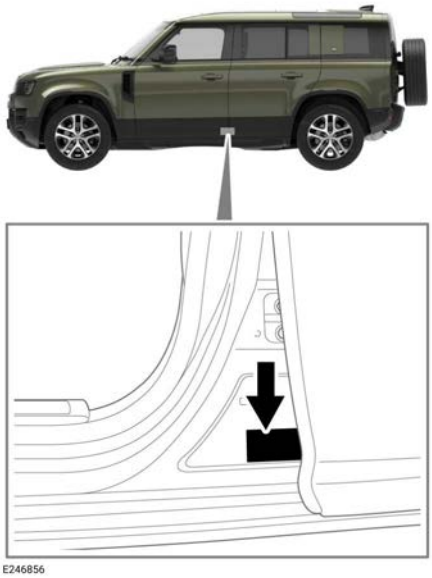
The following procedure should be used to adjust the tyre pressures:

1. Remove the tyre valve cap.
2. Firmly attach a tyre pressure gauge and/or inflator to the valve.
3. Read the tyre pressure from the gauge and add air, if required.
4. If air is added to the tyre via a manual gauge, remove the gauge and re-attach it before reading the pressure. Failure to do so may result in an inaccurate reading.
5. Refit the valve cap.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Tyres

TYRE PRESSURE LABEL



The recommended cold inflation tyre pressures are listed on a label located in the driver's door opening.

The pressures on the label provide optimum ride and handling characteristics for all normal operating conditions.

The label contains the following information:

- Cold inflation pressures for the front, rear, and spare tyres.
- Cold inflation pressures for both vehicle loading conditions.
- A list of the tyres available for all specifications of the vehicle.

Note: *The labels must not be changed, even if different wheels and tyres are fitted at a later stage.*

TYRE VALVES

Do not twist or bend the tyre valves when attaching a pressure hose or gauge. Doing so may cause damage, leading to tyre failure. Death or serious injury may result.

Keep the tyre valve caps screwed down firmly to prevent water or dirt from entering the valve. Check the valves for leaks when checking the tyre pressures.

Do not use metal valve caps as these can corrode onto the valve threads and be difficult or impossible to remove.

REPLACEMENT TYRES

Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in damage to the vehicle, or an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

Always fit replacement tyres of the same type and, wherever possible, of the same make and tread pattern as the original. Failure to comply may reduce vehicle stability, efficiency, and range.

The load index and speed ratings on all replacement tyres must be at least the same specification as the vehicle's original equipment. If in doubt, consult a retailer/ authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

If the use of tyres not recommended by the vehicle manufacturer is unavoidable, make sure to read and fully comply with the tyre manufacturer's instructions. Failure to do so may lead to tyre failure due to incorrect fitting or use.

Drive within the speed limitations for the tyres if lower speed-rated tyres are fitted, e.g., winter tyres, off-road, or Professional Off-Road (POR) tyres. In markets that require a tyre's maximum speed label to be fitted, the label should be placed within the driver's field of vision. Tyre maximum speed labels can be obtained from the tyre retailer. Consult a retailer/ authorised repairer for further information.

Tyre removal and fitting should only be carried out by a retailer/ authorised repairer.

Make sure that the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor is not damaged during a tyre change.

When the tread has worn down to approximately 2 mm, wear indicators start to appear at the surface of the tread pattern. Wear indicators produce a continuous band of rubber across the tread, as a visual reminder.

It is recommended that tyres should be replaced in sets of four. If this is not possible, replace the tyres in pairs, both front or both rear. When the tyres are replaced, make sure to have the wheels re-balanced and the alignment checked.

Use the correct tyre specification and pressures. Alternatively, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer for advice. See **409, TYRE PRESSURES**.

PRESSURE COMPENSATION FOR TEMPERATURE CHANGES

Daily ambient temperature variations may cause intermittent, minor tyre pressure changes, which is normal and should not indicate a tyre failure.

To mitigate this condition, check and adjust the tyre pressures to the recommended cold inflation pressures before vehicle use.

Note: *Make sure that the correct tyre pressures are maintained when moving to areas of differing ambient temperature. See **409, TYRE PRESSURES**.*

AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS

In areas of extended high ambient temperature, vehicle tyres can be affected by a softening of the tyre's sidewall. If the vehicle is stationary for long periods, the tyre deforms at the point where the standing surface meets the tyre.

The tyre deformation described is known as a flat spot and is normal tyre behaviour.

When the vehicle is subsequently driven, a vibration may be experienced from the flat spot. The condition steadily improves with extra mileage.

In order to minimise flat spotting, increase the tyre pressures to the maximum, as stated on the tyre's sidewall. The tyres must be returned to the specified running pressures before driving. See **409, TYRE PRESSURES** and **406, TYRE MARKINGS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TYRE DEGRADATION

Tyres degrade over time, due to the effects of ultraviolet light, extreme temperatures, high loads, and environmental conditions. It is recommended that all tyres, including the spare tyre, are replaced at least every 6 years from the date of manufacture. However, the tyres may require replacement more frequently.

USING WINTER TYRES

A dedicated winter tyre often has a lower speed rating than the original equipment tyre. Consequently, the vehicle must be driven within the speed limitation of the winter tyre. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer for further information. In markets that require a tyre's maximum speed label to be fitted, make sure to place the label within the driver's field of vision. Maximum speed labels can be obtained from the tyre retailer. Failure to adhere to the winter tyre's speed limit may result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

Note: *M+S tyres have a recognised level of winter performance. However, the M+S marking on the sidewall of the tyre does not necessarily indicate that the tyre is a dedicated winter tyre. The M+S marking on an all-season tyre indicates that it is designed for use all year round, including in cold temperatures, snow, and ice. The performance of all-season tyres is generally inferior to a dedicated winter tyre in conditions specific to winter.*

In many countries, legislation exists that requires the use of winter tyres during specified periods of the year.

The winter tyres symbol identifies dedicated winter tyres. Dedicated winter tyres are recommended if optimum winter traction is required or the vehicle is to be used in more extreme winter conditions.

The tyre pressures indicated on the tyre information label are for use in all conditions on the original equipment tyres. If a reduced speed-rating tyre is fitted, the recommended pressures are only suitable up to the tyre's maximum speed, with a normal vehicle load. Vehicle speed should be restricted to below 160 km/h (100 mph) when heavily loaded.

Winter tyres must be fitted to all four wheels.

For optimum traction, the tyres should be run-in for at least 160 kilometres on dry roads, before driving on snow or ice.

Use of dedicated winter tyres may require a change of wheel size, depending on the original choice of wheel. All four wheels must be changed.

If fitted with standard rubber valves, the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) warning lamp flashes for 75 seconds and then remains illuminated. The instrument panel also displays **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM FAULT**.

When the original wheels and tyres are refitted, the vehicle needs to travel a short distance to reset the TPMS and extinguish the warning lamp.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Recommended winter tyres					
Wheel size	**Tyre size**	**Brand**	**Pattern**	**Rim Width / Profile / Offset**	**Type**
18 in	255/ 70R18 116V	Michelin	Pilot Alpin 5	8.0J / CH+ / 41.5	Alpine
		Nokian	Hakkapeliitta R3 SUV		Studless
19 in	255/ 65R19 114V	Continental	TS 850 P SUV	8.0J / CH2 / 41.5	Alpine
20 in	255/ 60R20 113V	Pirelli	Scorpion Winter	8.5J / CH+ / 41.5	Alpine
	275/ 55R20 117Q	Nokian	Hakkapeliitta R3 SUV		Studless
22 in	275/ 45R22 112W	Continental	TS 850 P SUV	9.0J / CH+ / 43.0	Alpine
		Michelin	Xice N4 SUV		Studded

Note: *Studded tyres are market dependent. If in doubt, or for further information, contact a retailer/authorised repairer. Alternatively, visit:* ***www.ownerinfo.landrover.com****.*

Note: *For information about the latest recommended winter tyres, contact a retailer/authorised repairer. Alternatively, visit:* ***www.ownerinfo.landrover.com****.*

PROFESSIONAL OFF-ROAD (POR) TYRES

Recommended Professional Off-Road (POR) tyres					
Wheel size	**Tyre size**	**Brand**	**Pattern**	**Rim Width / Profile / Offset**	**Type**
18 in	255/ 70R18 116Q	Goodyear	DuraTrac	8.0J / CH+ / 41.5	POR
19 in	255/ 65R19 114Q	Goodyear	DuraTrac	8.0J / CH2 / 41.5	POR
20 in	255/ 60R20 113Q	Goodyear	DuraTrac	8.5J / CH+ / 41.5	POR

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *For information about the latest recommended POR tyres, contact a retailer/authorised repairer. Alternatively, visit:* ***www.ownerinfo.landrover.com****.*

USING SNOW CHAINS

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using snow chains. Failure to use the snow chains safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

Only use traction devices in heavy snow conditions, on compacted snow.

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) must be switched off when using traction devices.

Never exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) when traction devices are fitted.

Never fit traction devices to a temporary-use spare wheel.

Traction devices approved by the vehicle manufacturer may be used to improve traction in heavy snow conditions, on compacted snow.

Traction devices should not be used in off-road conditions where there is no compacted snow.

If it becomes necessary to fit traction devices, the following points must be observed:

- Only use vehicle manufacturer approved traction devices on the vehicle. Only vehicle manufacturer approved traction devices have been tested to make sure that the devices do not cause damage to the vehicle. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer for information.
- The wheels and tyres fitted to the vehicle must conform to the specifications of the vehicle manufacturer's original equipment. Doing so helps to enhance the performance of the traction devices. See **406, TYRE MARKINGS**.
- Full-chain traction devices can be fitted to the rear wheels of vehicles with the following tyre sizes:
  - 255/70R18.
  - 255/65R19.
  - 255/60R20.
- Do not fit a traction device to a temporary-use spare wheel.
- Always read, understand, and follow the traction device manufacturer's instructions. Pay particular attention to the maximum speed and fitting instructions.

  Fit traction devices in pairs on the same axle.
- Remove the traction devices, as soon as the conditions allow, to avoid tyre and/or vehicle damage.

Contact a retailer/authorised repairer for details and availability of approved snow chains.

Note: *When using snow chains, select the grass gravel snow driving program and switch DSC off. See* ***192, GRASS GRAVEL SNOW*** *and* ***188, SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF****.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TYRE DECLARATION (India only)

All imported tyres meet the requirements of Bureau of India Standards (BIS) and comply with the requirements under Central Motor Vehicle Rules (CMVR) 1989. The tyres are the same as those tyres supplied as original equipment for Land Rover models which are fully Type Approved for the Indian market.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) provides a low pressure warning and does not re-inflate the tyres. Tyre pressures should be checked regularly, using an accurate pressure gauge when the tyres are cold. Failure to do so could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

The TPMS cannot register damage to a tyre. Regularly check the condition of the tyres, especially if the vehicle is driven off-road. Failure to do so could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

When inflating tyres, care should be taken to avoid bending or damaging the TPMS valves. Always make sure that the inflation heads are correctly aligned to the valve stem.

To avoid damage to the TPMS valves, it is recommended not to use rigid tyre inflation wands. Using rigid inflation wands increases the risk of excess leverage and sideways pressure on the valve.

The tyre pressure warning lamp illuminates when one or more of the tyres are significantly under-inflated. Stop and check the tyres as soon as possible. Inflate the tyres to the recommended inflation pressures for the vehicle's loading condition. See **87, TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (AMBER)** and **409, TYRE PRESSURES**.

The TPMS constantly monitors the tyre pressure in each road wheel. The spare wheel tyre pressure is not monitored.

To confirm if TPMS is fitted to the vehicle: Switch on the vehicle's ignition and check for the presence of a TPMS lamp in the instrument panel. Vehicles with a TPMS lamp have TPMS.


TPMS lamp.

Note: *A special service kit is required when changing a tyre fitted with a TPMS valve.*

Note: *Non-approved accessories may interfere with the TPMS. If this occurs, the instrument panel displays the message* ***Tyre Pressure Monitoring System fault****.*

Note: *Different types of tyres may affect the performance of the TPMS. Always replace the tyres in accordance with recommendations.*

TYRE PRESSURE CHECK

The vehicle's current tyre pressures can be displayed via the **Vehicle** and **Tyre information** menus. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION**.

When selected, the instrument panel displays two tyre pressure values for each tyre. One value shows the actual tyre pressure, the other (in brackets) is the advised inflation pressure.

The advised inflation pressures change, based on ambient conditions and as air temperature within the tyres fluctuates during use.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Note: *The advised inflation pressures do not necessarily align with the vehicle's pressure label due to warming of the tyres through driving and changes in ambient conditions.*

Note: *Always inflate the tyres to the advised inflation pressures displayed in the* ***Tyre Pressures*** *menu.*

Note: *If any of the wheels or tyres have been removed, the displayed tyre pressures may not be valid. Drive the vehicle for at least 15 minutes in order to re-calibrate the system.*

Note: *The tyre pressure units can be configured to display as either bar, psi, or kPa via the* ***Vehicle*** *and* ***Units*** *menus. See* ***247, SYSTEM SETTINGS****.*

VEHICLE LOADING

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) can be adjusted for **Light** load and **Heavy** load conditions. Adjust the TPMS settings via the **Vehicle**, **Tyre information** and **TPM load setting** instrument panel menus. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION**.

Note: *The vehicle's ignition must be switched on and the vehicle stationary.*

Note: *When the vehicle's ignition is switched on, the instrument panel displays a message to confirm that the* ***Light*** *load setting is selected. No message is displayed if the* ***Heavy*** *load setting is selected.*

Adjust the TPMS to suit the vehicle's load.

Number of seats in the vehicle	Light load	Heavy load
Commercial vehicles	up to 2 occupants and pieces of luggage	more than 2 occupants and 2 pieces of luggage
Up to 5 seats - except commercial vehicles	up to 3 occupants	4 occupants and above
6 seats and above	up to 4 occupants	5 occupants and above

Note: *The TPMS setting and tyre pressures must correspond with the vehicle's current tyre load. See* ***409, TYRE PRESSURES****.*

The vehicle's current tyre pressures can be displayed via the **Vehicle** and **Tyre information** menus. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION**.

FULL-SIZE SPARE WHEEL AND TYRE CHANGE

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) automatically recognises any changes in wheel positions. The vehicle must be stationary for 15 minutes during the wheel and tyre change, to make sure that the system can detect the change. After driving above 25 km/h (16 mph), any warning should update within approximately 5 minutes.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Note: *Re-inflate the tyre, within close proximity of the vehicle, following repairs to a full-size spare wheel fitted with tyre pressure monitoring. The TPMS warning lamp may illuminate if tyre inflation is not carried out within close proximity of the vehicle. Should this occur, re-inflate the tyre within 5 m of the vehicle. See* ***87, TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (AMBER)*** *and* ***409, TYRE PRESSURES****.*

Note: *The full-size spare tyre's pressure should always be maintained at the highest recommended cold inflation pressure for that tyre size, displayed on the tyre pressure label. See* ***410, TYRE PRESSURE LABEL****.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TYRE REPAIR SYSTEM SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using the tyre repair system. Failure to follow the guidance given could affect vehicle safety, leading to serious injury or death.

Some tyre damage may only be partially sealed, or may not seal at all, depending on the amount and type of damage. Any loss of tyre pressure can seriously affect vehicle safety.

Do not use the tyre repair system if the tyre has been damaged by driving while under-inflated.

Check the tyre's sidewall before inflating the tyre. If any cracks, damage, or deformities are apparent, do not inflate the tyre.

Watch the tyre's sidewall during inflation. If any cracks, bumps, or similar damage or deformities appear, switch off the compressor and deflate the tyre. Do not continue to use the tyre.

Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) when a repaired tyre is fitted to the vehicle.

The maximum distance that should be driven when a repaired tyre is fitted is 200 km.

When a repaired tyre is fitted, drive with caution. Avoid sudden braking or steering manoeuvres.

Only use the tyre repair system for the vehicle with which it was supplied.

Do not use the tyre repair system for any other purpose than tyre repair.

Only use the tyre repair system within the -30°C to +70°C temperature range.

Always keep children and animals at a safe distance from the tyre repair system when in use.

Always monitor the tyre repair system at a safe distance from the compressor. Do not stand directly beside the compressor when it is operating.

Never leave the tyre repair system unattended when in use.

TYRE REPAIR SYSTEM

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 419, TYRE REPAIR SYSTEM SAFETY.

A tyre repair system is supplied for vehicles without a spare wheel. The tyre repair system is stored under the loadspace floor panel.

Note: *Vehicles supplied with a tyre repair system may not have a jack and wheel brace fitted as standard equipment.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Tyre repair system

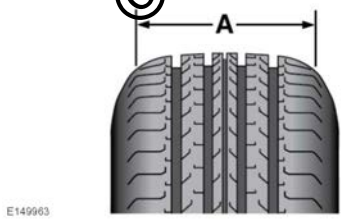


1. Sealant bottle.
2. Compressor.
3. Locking wheel nut adaptor.

Depending on the specification of the vehicle, the storage location of the tyre repair system may vary:

- Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicles (PHEVs) - the tyre repair system is stored in a bag, and secured to the loadspace floor with 2 straps.
- Commercial vehicles - the tyre repair system is stored in a bag, and secured in the storage compartment under loadspace floor, with 2 straps. See **427, TOOL KIT**.

The tyre repair system can be used to repair one punctured tyre.



The tyre repair system seals most punctures with a maximum diameter of 6 mm, if the puncture is within the tread area (**A**).

Only use the tyre repair system to seal damage located within the tyre tread area (A). Carrying out tyre repairs outside of the tyre tread area (A) could cause the tyre to fail, leading to serious injury or death.

Note: *The sealant used in the tyre repair system has a shelf life. The expiry date is shown on the sealant bottle. Make sure that the sealant bottle is replaced before the expiry date. Also make sure that the sealant bottle and inflation hose are replaced after each use.*

USING THE TYRE REPAIR SYSTEM

Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before carrying out a tyre repair. Failure to follow the guidance given could affect vehicle safety, leading to vehicle damage, serious injury, or death.

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 419, TYRE REPAIR SYSTEM SAFETY.

Avoid skin contact with the sealant, as it contains natural rubber latex.

Before attempting a tyre repair, make sure that the vehicle is parked safely, as far away from passing traffic as possible.

Make sure that the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Vehicles with automatic transmissions: Make sure that Park (P) is engaged.

While using the compressor, make sure that the hazard warning lights are switched on and that the smart key is removed from the vehicle.

Do not attempt to remove foreign objects, such as nails, screws, etc., from the tyre.

While using the compressor, make sure the engine is running and there is sufficient ventilation. Never start the engine or leave it running when the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Exhaust gases are poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and death if inhaled.

All vehicle drivers and occupants should be made aware that a temporary repair has been made to a tyre fitted to the vehicle. All vehicle drivers and occupants should also be made aware of the special driving conditions imposed when using a repaired tyre.

To prevent overheating, do not operate the compressor continuously for longer than 10 minutes. Doing so could cause damage to the compressor.

REPAIR PROCEDURE

Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before carrying out a tyre repair. Failure to follow the guidance given could affect vehicle safety, leading to vehicle damage, serious injury, or death.

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 419, TYRE REPAIR SYSTEM SAFETY and 420, USING THE TYRE REPAIR SYSTEM.

If in any doubt about carrying out the instructions, or if the warnings in this section cannot be complied with, seek qualified assistance. See 476, ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE.

If the tyre's inflation pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi, 180 kPa) within 7 minutes, the tyre may have suffered excessive damage. A temporary repair is not possible. Do not drive the vehicle until the tyre has been replaced.

Do not exceed the maximum tyre pressure stated on the sidewall of the tyre.

When pumping the sealant through the tyre valve, sealant may leak from the puncture location. Remove any excess sealant immediately. Failure to do so may result in a surface residue that is difficult to remove.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Tyre repair system

Before carrying out a tyre repair procedure

1. Make sure the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
2. Automatic vehicles only: Make sure Park (**P**) is selected.
3. Remove the tyre repair system from the vehicle. See **419, TYRE REPAIR SYSTEM**.
4. Remove the packaging from the compressor.
5. Peel off the warning label on the side of the compressor.
6. Attach the warning label to the windscreen, in a visible location, but not obstructing the driver's field of vision.

⚠ **The speed and mileage recommendations for a repaired tyre are mandated and must be observed. The speed and mileage recommendations are stated on the warning label. Failure to adhere to the recommendations may cause a loss of vehicle control, leading to serious injury or death.**

7. Uncoil the inflation hose and power cable from the underside of the compressor.
8. Unscrew the orange cap from the compressor.
9. Unscrew the cap from the sealant bottle.
10. Screw the sealant bottle clockwise on to the compressor, until it is completely tight.

Note: *Do not pierce the sealant bottle before fitting it to the receiver.*

Note: *The sealant bottle cannot be removed from the compressor once fitted.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

To carry out a tyre repair procedure

1. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tyre.

   Note: *Make sure that the valve cap is stored in a known location for future use.*

2. Remove the protective cap from the compressor's inflation hose.
3. Connect the inflation hose to the tyre valve.

   Note: *Make sure that the inflation hose is fully screwed on to the tyre valve.*

4. Make sure that the compressor switch is in the off (**0**) position.
5. Insert the power cable connector into a power socket marked 12V. See **124, AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS**.

   Note: *Do not use the cigar lighter socket for this purpose.*

6. Start the engine. See **165, STARTING THE ENGINE**.
7. Switch the compressor to the on (**I**) position.
8. Run the compressor for no longer than 10 minutes.

   Note: *Make sure to monitor the tyre pressure. When pumping the sealant through the tyre valve, the compressor's pressure gauge may rise up to 6 bar (87 psi, 600 kPa). The measurement at this point is the pressure within the compressor and not the actual tyre pressure, which is normal and should not cause alarm. The pressure drops again after approximately 30 seconds.*

9. Switch off the compressor.
10. Check the inflation pressure on the compressor's pressure gauge. If the pressure is:
    - Greater than 1.8 bar (26 psi, 180 kPa), continue with the repair procedure.
    - Less than 1.8 bar (26 psi, 180 kPa), do not attempt to drive the vehicle. Seek qualified assistance. See **476, ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE**.
11. Unscrew the inflation hose.
12. Replace the inflation hose cap.
13. Disconnect the power cable.
14. Store the tyre repair system securely in the vehicle.
15. Drive the vehicle within 1 minute of completing the tyre pressure check. Drive the vehicle between 3 and 10 km (2 and 6 miles) for 10 minutes. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph). When done, stop the vehicle in a safe place and carry out the following:
16. Connect the compressor's inflation hose to the tyre valve.
17. Check the repaired tyre's pressure. Refer to the table below.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Tyre pressure	Action
Greater than 2.2 bar (32 psi, 220 kPa).	The vehicle can be driven for up to 200 km (120 miles) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). It is recommended to drive to the nearest tyre repair centre or retailer/authorised repairer for a replacement tyre to be fitted. Be sure to make the repair centre aware that the tyre repair system has been used before the tyre is removed.
Less than 1.3 bar (19 psi, 130 kPa).	Do not attempt to drive the vehicle. Seek qualified assistance. See **476, ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE**.
Between 1.3 bar (19 psi, 130 kPa) and 2.2 bar (32 psi, 220 kPa).	Switch on the compressor and run it for no longer than 10 minutes. Do not exceed the maximum tyre pressure stated on the sidewall of the tyre. If the pressure is above 2.2 bar (32 psi, 220 kPa), drive the vehicle 3 to 10 km (2 to 6 miles) or for 10 minutes. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph). Re-check the tyre pressure. If a tyre pressure of 2.2 bar (32 psi, 220 kPa) is not achieved, seek qualified assistance. See **476, ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE**.

AFTER USING THE TYRE REPAIR SYSTEM

When driving the vehicle, if vibrations, abnormal steering, or noises are experienced, reduce speed immediately. Drive with extreme caution, at reduced speed, to the first safe place to stop the vehicle. Visually examine the tyre and check its pressure. If there are any signs of damage or deformity to the tyre, or the tyre pressure is below 1.3 bar (19 psi, 130 kPa), do not continue driving. Doing so could lead to serious injury or death.

Consult a tyre repair centre as soon as possible, for advice concerning the replacement of a tyre after using the tyre repair system. Alternatively, consult a retailer/authorised repairer. Failure to do so could lead to serious injury or death.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



Only sealant bottles which are completely empty should be disposed of with normal household waste. Sealant bottles and the tyre inflation hose, which contain some sealant, should be disposed of by a tyre specialist or a retailer/ authorised repairer. In addition, they should be disposed of in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Wheel changing

WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

Note: *If in any doubt regarding the ability to carry out the instructions, or comply with warnings, seek assistance.*

Always find a safe place to stop, off the carriageway, and away from traffic. Switch on the hazard warning lights to alert all traffic of the obstruction. Apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) and engage Park (P). Switch the engine off and remove the smart key from the vehicle.

If available, place a warning triangle at a suitable distance behind the vehicle, facing toward oncoming traffic.

Note: *Different countries have different traffic laws. Carrying and/or using warning triangles may be required by law when stopping at the side of a carriageway. The driver is responsible for staying informed about road regulations, and for complying with local traffic laws.*

In an emergency or a breakdown situation, wear a reflective jacket if stopped at the side of the road and working around the vehicle.

Note: *Different countries have different traffic laws. Carrying and/or wearing reflective jackets may be required by law. The driver is responsible for staying informed about road regulations, and for complying with local traffic laws.*

Make sure that all passengers, and animals, are out of the vehicle and in a safe place away from the carriageway.

Make sure that the vehicle and jack are both on firm, level ground. Do not jack the vehicle if it is over a metal grating or manhole cover.

Make sure that the front wheels are in the straight ahead position and engage the steering lock.

Always use the complete jacking lever assembly throughout the wheel changing process, to minimize any chance of accidental injury. Position the jack from the side of the vehicle, in line with the appropriate jacking point. Never place anything between the jack and the ground, or between the jack and the vehicle. Do not attempt to raise the vehicle, unless the jack head is fully engaged in the jacking point. Only jack the vehicle using the approved jacking points.

WARNING - THAT NO PERSON SHOULD PLACE ANY PORTION OF THEIR BODY UNDER A VEHICLE THAT IS SUPPORTED BY A JACK.

The jack is designed for wheel changing only. Never work beneath the vehicle with the jack as the only means of support. Always use correctly-rated vehicle support stands before putting any part of the body beneath the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

When jacking the vehicle, make sure that all precautions are taken to prevent vehicle movement. As an additional precaution, it is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle are chocked.

When one rear wheel is lifted off the ground, the transmission Park (P) position does not prevent the vehicle from moving. The vehicle can potentially slip off the jack, as the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) operates only on the rear wheels. Use a wheel chock when jacking the vehicle.

Always chock the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed. Chock the front of a front wheel or the rear of a rear wheel.

If jacking the vehicle on a slight slope is unavoidable, place chocks on the downhill side of the two opposite wheels. Two chocks must be used if this is the case.

Take care when loosening the wheel nuts. The wheel brace may slip off if not properly attached, and the wheel nuts may give way suddenly. Further unexpected movement may cause an injury.

Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported only by a jack.

Remove the spare wheel before jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilising the vehicle when raised. Take care when lifting the spare wheel and removing the punctured wheel. The wheels are heavy, and can cause injuries if not handled correctly.

After wheel changing, always secure the tools, jack, and the replaced wheel in the correct storage positions. Such objects, if not properly stored, can become flying missiles in a crash or rollover.

TOOL KIT

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before using the tool kit. See 426, WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY.



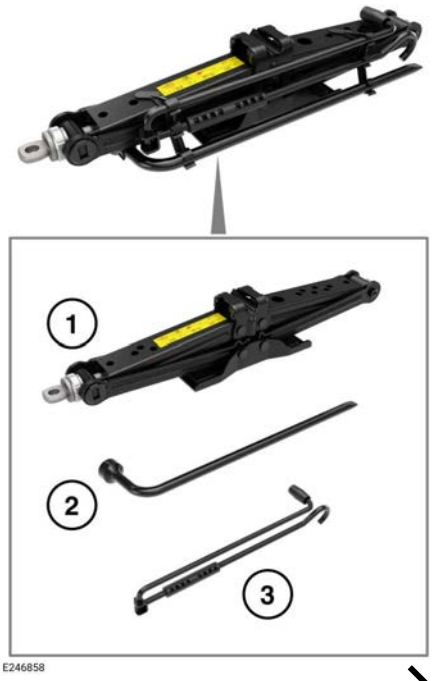
The tool kit is located beneath the loadspace floor panel.

The tool kit consists of the following:

1. Jack assembly.
2. Locking wheel nut adaptor.
3. Spare wheel alignment tool.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Wheel changing



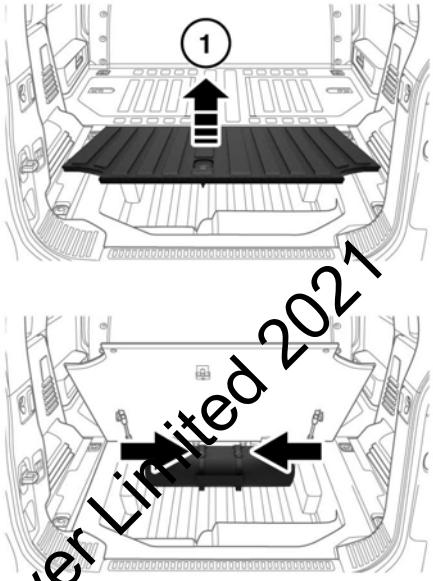
The jack assembly consists of:

1. Jack: Observe the instructions printed on the jack.
2. Wheel brace.
3. Jack handle.

Note: *Tool types and positions may vary from the illustration.*

Note: *Examine the jack occasionally. Clean and grease the moving parts, particularly the screw thread, to prevent corrosion.*

Note: *Take careful note of the storage position for each tool, as it is important to return the tools to their correct position after use.*



Commercial vehicles: The tool kit is stored in a bag, and secured in the storage compartment under loadspace floor, with 2 straps.

REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings. Failure to comply with the safety instructions may result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠ **Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before removing the spare wheel. See 426, WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY.**

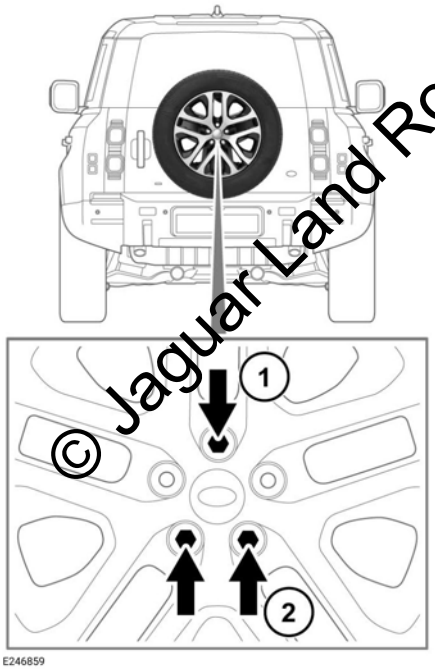
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

An open taildoor obscures the rear lights. If available, place a warning triangle at a suitable distance behind the vehicle, facing toward oncoming traffic. See 441, WARNING TRIANGLE.

Do not store the wheel while the vehicle is raised on the jack.

Always secure the spare wheel, or the removed wheel, in the correct position, using the three wheel nuts.

Note: *If in any doubt regarding the ability to remove or secure the spare wheel, seek assistance. See* ***476, ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE****.*



E246859

The spare wheel is located on the taildoor. The spare wheel is secured to the vehicle with three wheel nuts.

The location of the locking wheel nuts depends on the specification of the vehicle:

1. Steel wheels: One locking wheel nut in the upper position, as shown.
2. Alloy wheels: Two locking wheel nuts in the lower positions, as shown.



E259529

Vehicles with steel wheels have a hubcap. To remove the hubcap:

1. Insert a suitable tool into the slot on the hub cap.
2. Carefully lever the hub cap off the wheel nuts.

To remove the spare wheel:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Wheel changing

1. Carefully remove the spare wheel's cover or hubcap.
2. Use the locking wheel nut adaptor and the wheel brace to remove the locking wheel nuts. See **427, TOOL KIT**.
3. Remove the standard wheel nuts.

Make sure that the spare wheel is supported when removing the final wheel nut. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death.



E253061

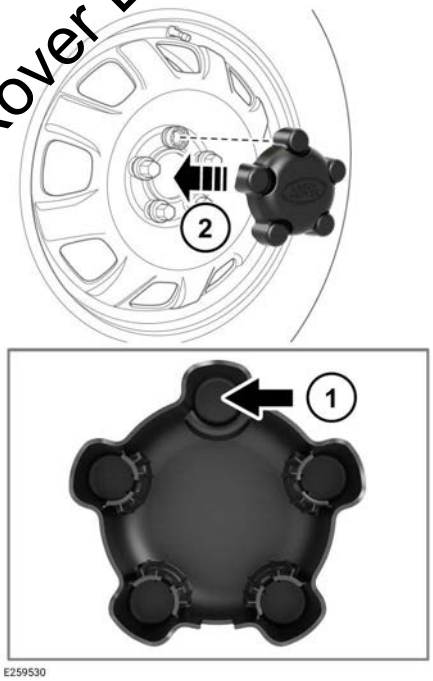
Vehicles with alloy wheels: A spare wheel alignment tool is supplied in the vehicle's tool kit. See **427, TOOL KIT**.

Install the spare wheel alignment tool as shown before storing the spare wheel on the vehicle:

1. Fit the spare wheel alignment tool to the spare wheel carrier.
2. Tighten the spare wheel alignment tool using the end of the wheel brace.

Make sure that the locking wheel nuts are fitted in the correct location.

Reverse the removal procedure to store the changed wheel. Tighten the spare wheel nuts to 140 Nm.



E259530

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Make sure that the hubcap is correctly aligned to the locking wheel nut.

To install the hubcap:

1. Align the hubcap to the locking wheel nut.
2. Press the hubcap firmly into place.

USING WHEEL CHOCKS

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before using wheel chocks. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death. See 426, WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY.

A wheel chock is stored in the vehicle's spare wheel tool kit. See **427, TOOL KIT**.

Note: *Not all vehicles have wheel chocks supplied as part of the tool kit. Wheel chocks are a useful addition to a vehicle's tool kit.*

LOCKING WHEEL NUTS

Note: *Not all vehicles have locking wheel nuts as standard part.*

The locking wheel nut adaptor must be correctly aligned and fully fitted to the locking wheel nut before usage. Incorrect fitment can result in permanent damage to the locking wheel nut adaptor. If in doubt, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.

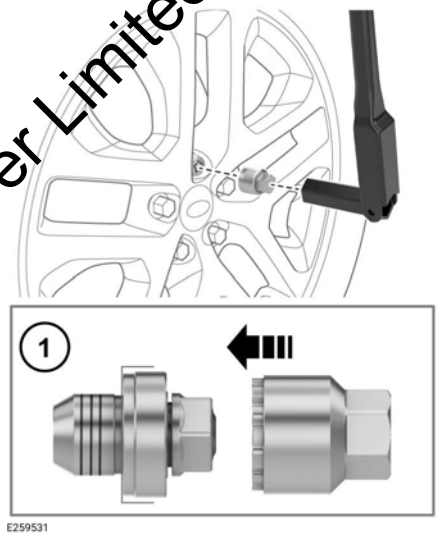
Do not use air tools or power tools to remove or to refit the locking wheel nuts. Doing so may damage the locking wheel nuts or the locking wheel nut adaptor.



E246860

The locking wheel nuts are dependent on the vehicle's specification:

1. Vehicles with alloy wheels.
2. Vehicles with steel wheels.



E259531

Locking wheel nuts can be removed and fitted using only the special adaptor provided. See **427, TOOL KIT**.

To release the locking wheel nuts:

1. Fit the locking wheel nut adaptor onto the locking wheel nut. Make sure that the locking wheel nut adaptor fully engages.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Wheel changing

If the locking wheel nut adaptor is forced onto the locking wheel nut, the adaptor may be damaged beyond repair.

2. Locate the wheel brace over the locking wheel nut adaptor. Unscrew the wheel nut half a turn counter-clockwise.
3. After raising the vehicle on the jack, remove the locking wheel nut.

Note: *When the vehicle is first supplied, the wheel nut adaptor may be stored in the glovebox. If this is the case, the wheel nut adaptor must be moved to its correct storage position in the loadspace, as soon as possible. See* ***427, TOOL KIT****.*

Note: *Should a replacement locking wheel nut adaptor be required, consult an authorised retailer. Record the locking wheel nut adaptor code number in the table below to allow a replacement to be sourced, if required. Depending upon the specification of the locking wheel nut adaptor, the code may be stamped on the locking wheel nut adaptor or supplied on a separate card.*

Locking wheel nut adaptor code number	

WHEEL CHANGING

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before changing a wheel. See 426, WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY.

Disconnect any trailer or caravan from the vehicle.

The standard vehicle jacking points should be used to raise the vehicle. Do not raise the vehicle by jacking under the fixed side steps, deployable side steps, or side tubes.

Only jack the vehicle using the jacking points described, or damage to the vehicle could occur.

Note: *To allow easier access to the vehicle's jacking points, it is recommended that the deployable side steps are in the stored position. See* ***245, APPS SCREEN****.*

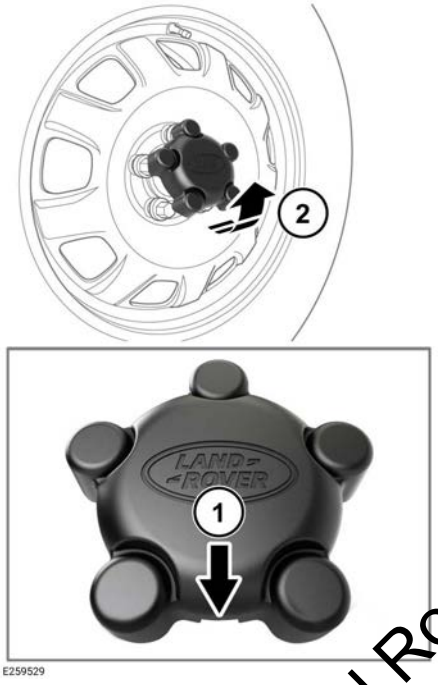
Note: *Vehicles fitted with deployable side steps: Select off-road height before jacking the vehicle. See* ***176, OFF-ROAD HEIGHT****.*

Note: *A tilt sensor activates the alarm if the vehicle is tilted in any direction after it has been locked. To lock the doors while changing the wheel, and avoid the alarm activating, the tilt sensor can be temporarily disabled. See* ***23, TILT SENSOR****.*

Before raising the vehicle:

1. Remove the required tools from the vehicle. See **427, TOOL KIT**.
2. Remove the spare wheel. See **428, REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL**.
3. Correctly position the wheel chocks. See **426, WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY**.

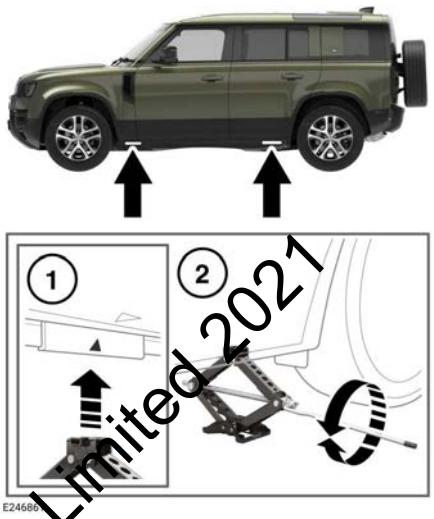
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



E259529

Vehicles with steel wheels have a hubcap. To remove the hubcap:

1. Insert a suitable tool into the slot on the hub cap.
2. Carefully lever the hub cap off the wheel nuts.



E246867

To change a wheel:

1. Use the wheel nut brace to loosen the wheel nuts of the wheel to be replaced. Turn half a turn counter-clockwise.
2. Locate the jack under the relevant jacking point (**1**).

Do not allow the jack to contact the sill at any other point, as damage may result.

3. Unfold the handle from the stored position on the jack. Fit the wheel nut brace to the end of the cranking handle.
4. Rotate the handle clockwise (**2**) to raise the jack, until the jack pin locates into the jacking point.
5. Raise the vehicle until the wheel is clear of the ground.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

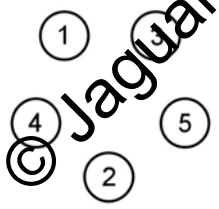
Wheel changing

Avoid rapid, jerky actions. Rapid, jerky actions may cause the vehicle and jack to become unstable, which may result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

6. Remove the wheel nuts. Place the wheel nuts together where they cannot roll away.
7. Remove the wheel and place it to one side.

Do not lay the wheel on its face, as this may damage the finish.

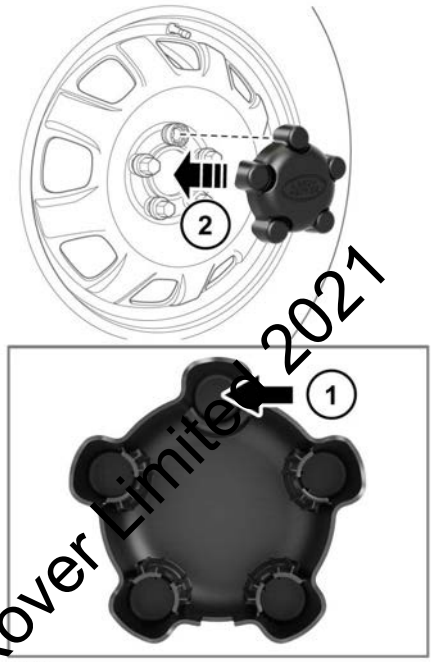
8. Fit the spare wheel to the hub.
9. Refit the wheel nuts. Lightly tighten the wheel nuts. Make sure the wheel is making contact with the hub evenly.
10. Make sure the area under the vehicle is clear of obstructions. Lower the vehicle slowly and smoothly.
11. With all of the wheels on the ground and the jack removed, fully tighten the wheel nuts. Tighten the wheel nuts in the sequence shown in the illustration, to the correct torque of 140 Nm.



E132675

Note: *If it is not possible to torque the wheel nuts when a wheel is replaced, set to the correct torque as soon as possible.*

Check and adjust the tyre pressure as soon as possible.



E259530

Make sure that the hubcap is correctly aligned to the locking wheel nut.

To install the hubcap:

1. Align the hubcap to the locking wheel nut.
2. Press the hubcap firmly into place.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

RECOVERY METHOD

Make sure that vehicle recovery and/or transportation is carried out by suitably qualified personnel, and the vehicle is secured correctly. Recovery and/or transportation carried out by unqualified personnel can result in serious injury or death.

The recovery agent must activate the transmission park release before recovery commences. Transmission park release instructions are covered in a separate publication for recovery personnel use. Failure to activate the transmission park release can result in serious transmission damage.

The vehicle should not be towed on all four wheels and should not be recovered with the front or rear wheels suspended. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

The method for recovery and/or transportation of the vehicle is on a transporter or trailer designed for that purpose.

FRONT TOWING EYE

The front towing eye is designed for both on-road and off-road recovery (up to 6.5 tonnes). If the towing eye is used for any other purpose, it may result in vehicle damage and can cause serious injury or death.

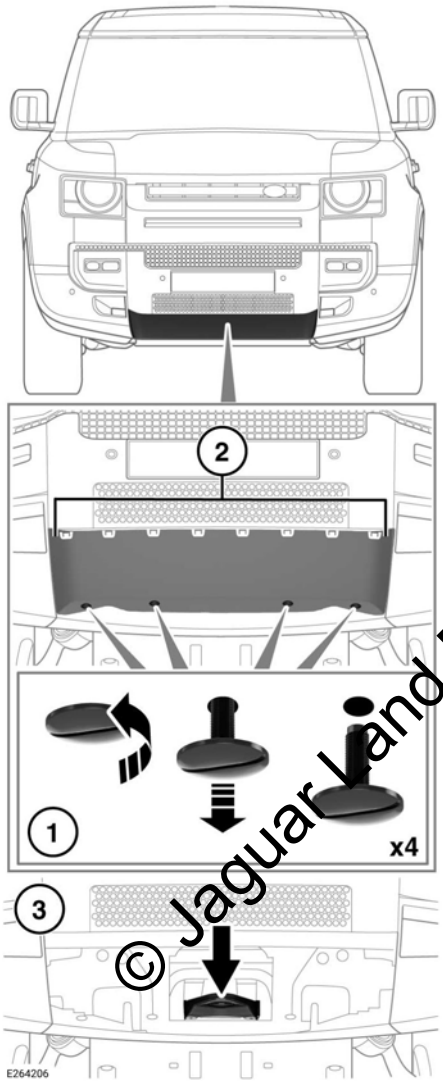
Use extreme caution when moving or towing the vehicle. Death or serious injury may occur.

Remove the front towing eye cover before driving off-road, to prevent damage or loss. The cover must be replaced before driving on the road.

The front towing eye is located behind a removable cover in the front bumper.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Vehicle recovery



To remove the cover:

1. Rotate each of the fasteners counter-clockwise with a suitable tool.
2. Pull the cover forward from the rear lower edge to release the lower tabs and the lugs on the top edge of the cover.
3. The towing eye is located in the centre of the exposed area.

To refit the cover:

1. Offer up the cover. Make sure the lugs at the top edge and the tabs in the bottom edge engage with the holes in the bumper.
2. Rotate each of the fasteners clockwise to secure the cover in position.

REAR TOWING EYE

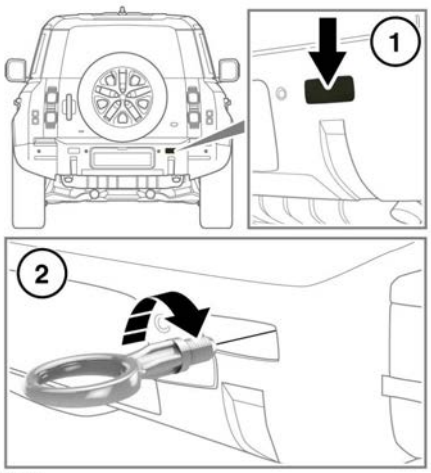
The screw-in type rear recovery eyes are designed for on-road recovery only. If the screw-in type towing eyes are used for any other purpose, it may result in vehicle damage and can cause serious injury or death.

Use extreme caution when moving or towing the vehicle. Death or serious injury may occur.

Note: *The rear towing eyes may be used to tow another vehicle, if required.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Vehicles without exposed towing eyes



E246418

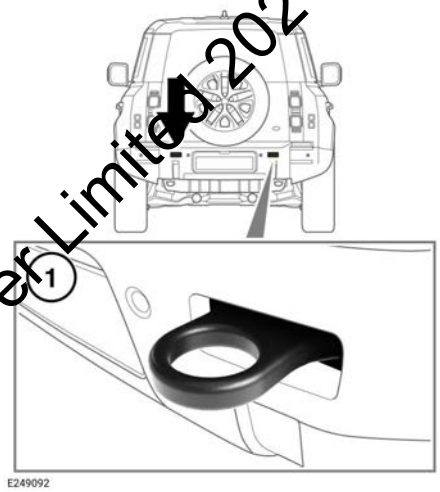
The vehicle's rear towing eye socket is located behind the rear bumper cover 1. To remove the cover, lever the left-hand side of the cover outward from the bumper.

The vehicle's rear towing eye is located underneath the loadspace floor. Screw the towing eye into the aperture located behind the rear bumper cover.

To refit the cover, push the right-hand side of the cover home first. Then push the left-hand side of the cover to be flush with the bumper.

Vehicles with exposed towing eyes

The rear exposed towing eyes are designed for both on-road and off-road recovery (up to 6.5 tonnes). If the exposed towing eyes are used for any other purpose, it may result in vehicle damage and can cause serious injury or death.



E249092

Avoid leaving towing equipment attached to the rear towing eyes when not in use. Some towing equipment may damage the vehicle's paintwork.

Vehicles with exposed towing eyes have a pair of towing eyes protruding through the rear bumper cover **1**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Vehicle recovery

TRANSMISSION PARK RELEASE

Make sure that the vehicle is secured with wheel chocks. Apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) or firmly press the brake pedal. Two people are required for this procedure. Failure to do so can result in unexpected movement of the vehicle, potentially causing serious injury or death.

The recovery agent must activate the transmission park release before recovery commences. The procedure for activating the transmission park release is covered in a separate publication for service personnel. Failure to activate the transmission park release can result in serious transmission damage.

When recovering the vehicle, it is essential that the transmission park release mechanism is activated. Activating the transmission park release mechanism locks the transmission in Neutral (**N**) and prevents the transmission from automatically selecting Park (**P**).

When vehicle transportation is complete, make sure the transmission park release mechanism is deactivated.

STEERING COLUMN UNLOCKING

During vehicle recovery, the smart key must remain inside the vehicle. The ignition must be switched on to make sure that the steering column is unlocked. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle.

OFF-ROAD RECOVERY

If the towing eyes are to be used for off-road recovery, it is essential that off-road driver training, covering recovery techniques, is undertaken.

Further information on off-road driving can be found at: **www.landrover.com**.

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE

Use extreme caution when moving or towing the vehicle. Moving or towing the vehicle in an unsafe manner may result in death or serious injury.

If the vehicle's electronics are operational, set the electronic air suspension system to access height, before securing the vehicle to a recovery vehicle or trailer. Failure to do so can result in damage to the vehicle.

The recommended method for recovering or transporting the vehicle is by a trailer designed for that purpose.

Always use qualified persons to perform recovery and to make sure that the vehicle is secured correctly.

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

The recovery agent MUST activate the transmission park release mechanism before towing commences.

©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

If Neutral (N) is selected and the engine is then switched off, the transmission automatically selects Park (P) after 10 minutes has elapsed. If the transmission park release mechanism has not been activated and the vehicle is being towed, serious damage to the transmission will result. There is also a danger to personal safety.

If the engine cannot be used during towing, there will be no power assistance to the braking system. The lack of power assistance results in a much greater effort to stop the vehicle and in a greatly increased stopping distance.

If the vehicle's battery is to be disconnected, the steering column must be unlocked first. Unlocking the steering column is not possible with the battery disconnected. If the steering column locks during towing, loss of control may occur, leading to serious injury or death.

Always make sure that the steering column is unlocked before recovery. Failure to do so may lead to accidents causing serious injury or death.

Only tow the vehicle in a forward direction with all four wheels on the ground. Towing in a reverse direction, or with only two wheels on the ground, will cause serious damage to the transmission.

Do not tow the vehicle for more than 50 km (30 miles). Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph). Towing for a greater distance or at a higher speed may result in serious damage to the transmission.

Do not tow the vehicle if the transmission cannot be set in Neutral (**N**). Do not tow the vehicle if the rear electronic differential has failed in the locked position. Doing so may result in damage to the vehicle.

The vehicle should be recovered with all four wheels clear of the ground, i.e., on a trailer. If the vehicle cannot be recovered via the correct method, the vehicle can be towed on all four wheels for a short distance. Please adhere to the following guidelines.

The following procedure must be carried out carefully to prevent damage to the vehicle:

1. Secure the towing attachment from the recovery vehicle to the front towing eye. See **435, FRONT TOWING EYE**.
2. With the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) applied, switch on the ignition. Make sure that the steering lock is unlocked.
3. Apply the brake pedal and select Neutral (**N**).
4. Activate the transmission park release mechanism.
5. Leave the smart key in a secure place inside the vehicle.
6. The ignition may be switched on to allow operation of turn signals, brake lights, etc.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Leaving the ignition switched on for extended periods will drain the vehicle's battery.

7. Release the EPB before towing the vehicle.

AFTER TOWING ON FOUR WHEELS

The following steps must be applied after towing the vehicle on four wheels:

1. Apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB).
2. Switch on the ignition and apply the brake pedal.
3. Select Park (**P**).
4. Deactivate the transmission park release mechanism.
5. Switch off the ignition and remove the smart key from the vehicle.
6. Remove the recovery vehicle's towing attachment from the front towing eye. Refit the cover. See **435, FRONT TOWING EYE**.

Use extreme caution when detaching towing equipment. Vehicle movement is possible, which can result in serious injury or death, as well as damage to the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

BEFORE STARTING OR DRIVING

If the vehicle is involved in a collision, it should be checked by a retailer/authorised repairer or suitably qualified personnel, before starting or driving. A collision can damage the vehicle and its systems, making the vehicle unsafe, which may lead to serious injury or death.

Note: *Some vehicles have an SOS emergency call button and an optimised assistance call button. See* ***341, INCONTROL OVERVIEW****.*

Note: *Some vehicles have a Post Crash Braking function that will in certain circumstances apply the vehicle brakes following a collision. The brakes are released when the ignition is cycled.*

SERVICE DATA RECORDING

Service data recorders in the vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about the vehicle. Potentially, this includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle. Such systems and modules are the engine, accelerator pedal, steering, or brakes.

In order to properly diagnose and service the vehicle, a retailer/authorised repairer may access the vehicle's diagnostic information. To access the information, a direct connection to the vehicle is required.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

WARNING TRIANGLE

Depending on market and local legislation, a warning triangle may be supplied with the vehicle. For vehicles with a warning triangle, it is located in the taildoor as illustrated below.



1. Rotate the two knobs clockwise.
2. Pull the cover down.

Place the warning triangle at a suitable location, to warn other drivers of a possible obstruction.

EVENT DATA RECORDING

The vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record data in certain circumstances that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. Such circumstances are crash or near crash-like situations e.g. an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in the vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seat belts were buckled or fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was pressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was travelling.

The collected data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *EDR data are recorded by the vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs. No data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions. No personal data, e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

South Korea only

Please be advised that this vehicle incorporates an Event Data Recorder (EDR).

An EDR stores driving information at the moment of accident (driving speed, application of brake pedal and accelerator control etc.), and enables to confirm the information stored.

EDR information helps understanding the circumstances of accident more clearly.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

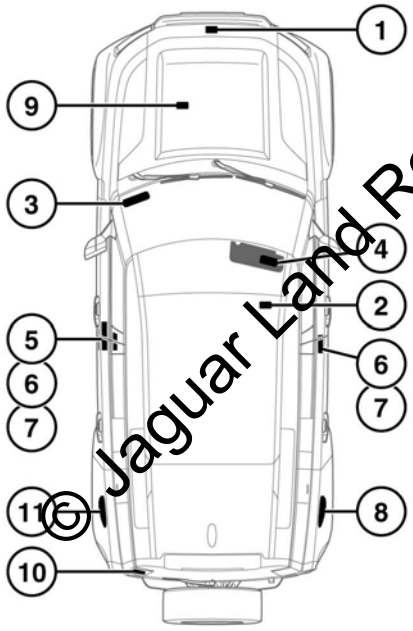
LABEL LOCATIONS



Warning labels attached to the vehicle bearing this symbol mean: Do not touch or adjust components until having read the relevant instructions in the handbook.



Labels showing this symbol indicate that the ignition system utilises very high voltages. Do not touch any ignition components while the ignition is switched on.



1. Bonnet locking platform: Air Conditioning (A/C) label.
2. Top of the battery: Battery warning symbols.
3. The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is etched onto a label, visible through the lowest part of the left side of the windscreen. The number is also stamped into the right-side suspension tower.

   Note: *The VIN number may be requested by the retailer/authorised repairer.*
4. Passenger side sun visor: Airbag label, vehicle handling label.
5. B pillar: VIN certification label, containing the certified vehicle weights.
6. B pillar or inside base of the front door: Tyre pressure labels.
7. B pillar: Airbag warning label.
8. Inside the fuel filler flap: Fuel label.
9. Engine number: Inlet manifold.
10. Rear taildoor warning information.
11. PHEV information and warning label (PHEV vehicles only): Located inside charge flap.

It is important to be familiar with these subjects, to make sure that the vehicle and its features are used safely.

COUNTRY OF MANUFACTURE

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) can be used to determine the vehicle's location of manufacture.

The 11th character of the VIN designates build location as specified below:

- A = Solihull, United Kingdom.
- C = Castle Bromwich, United Kingdom.
- G = Changshu, China.
- H = Halewood, United Kingdom.
- L = Pune, India.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Vehicle labels

- S = Oxford Road, United Kingdom.
- T = Itatiaia, Brazil.
- 1 = Graz, Austria.
- 2 = Nitra, Slovakia.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Some technical specification information in the Owner's Handbook is not available at the time of print, or is subject to updates after printing. Please visit the online Owner's Handbook at: **www.ownerinfo.landrover.com**, or contact a retailer/authorised repairer, for the latest data.

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS

	Capacity (cc)	Number of cylinders
2.0L petrol	1 997	4
3.0L petrol	2 995	6
2.0L diesel	1 999	4
3.0L diesel	2 996	6

Note: *For further information, contact a retailer/authorised repairer and quote the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). See* ***443, LABEL LOCATIONS****.*

PERFORMANCE DATA

Variant	Maximum Power (PS (kW)) at Engine Speed (rpm)	Maximum Torque (Nm) at Engine Speed (rpm)	Maximum Vehicle Speed - km/h (mph)
2.0L petrol	300 (221) at 5 500	400 at 1 500 to 4 000	191 (119)
2.0L petrol Plug in Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	404 (297) at 5 500	640 at 1 500 to 4 400	191 (119) 209 (130)*
3.0L petrol	400 (294) at 5 500	550 at 2 000 to 5 000	191 (119) 209 (130)*
2.0L diesel (200 PS)	200 (147) at 3 750 to 4 000	430 at 1 400 to 3 000	175 (109)
2.0L diesel (240 PS)	240 (177) at 4 000	500 at 1 500 to 2 500	188 (117)
3.0L diesel (200 PS)	200 (147) at 4 000	500 at 1 250 to 2 500	175 (109)

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Variant	Maximum Power (PS (kW)) at Engine Speed (rpm)	Maximum Torque (Nm) at Engine Speed (rpm)	Maximum Vehicle Speed - km/h (mph)
3.0L diesel (249 PS)	249 (183) at 4 000	600 at 1 250 to 2 250	188 (117)
3.0L diesel (300 PS)	300 (220) at 4 000	650 at 1 500 to 2 500	191 (119)

*Vehicles with a performance pack.

LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS

Part	Variant	Specification
Engine oil	Petrol vehicles	SAE 0W-20 meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.03.5006.
	Diesel vehicles	SAE 0W-30 meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.03.5007.
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF)	Diesel vehicles with DEF	AdBlue™ meeting ISO 22241 and ISO 22241-1. Diesel Exhaust Fluid is also known as DEF, AdBlue, AUS 32 and ARLA 32.
Brake fluid	All vehicles	It is recommended to use Land Rover brake fluid. If unavailable, then a non-petroleum based brake fluid meeting specification DOT4 ISO 4925 Class 6 may be used.
Windscreen washer fluid	All vehicles	Windscreen wash with frost protection.
Coolant fluid	All vehicles	Mixture of 50% water and 50% Havoline XLC anti-freeze, meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.651.5003.

AdBlue™ is a trademark of the Verband der Automobilindustrie e.V. (VDA).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

If in doubt about the required specification of a lubricant or fluid, seek advice from a retailer/authorised repairer.



E176576

Castrol EDGE Professional exclusively recommended by Land Rover.

CAPACITIES

Item	Variant	Capacity (litres)
Fuel tank (usable)	2.0L petrol Plug in Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	91
	Petrol vehicles except PHEV	90
	Diesel vehicles	89
Engine oil refill and filter change	2.0L petrol	7.0
	3.0L petrol	8.8
	2.0L diesel	7.0
	3.0L diesel	9.8
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF)	Diesel vehicles with DEF	20.7
Washer fluid reservoir	All vehicles	6.25

The quoted capacities are approximate and provided as a guide only. All levels must be checked using the level marks or information displayed on the vehicle, as applicable.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

WEIGHTS

110

Variant	Weight (kg)	Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)* (kg)	Gross Train Weight (GTW)** (kg)
2.0L petrol - 5 seats	2 186	3 105	6 605
2.0L petrol - 6 seats	2 209	3 105	6 605
2.0L petrol - 7 seats	2 243	3 200	6 700
2.0L petrol Plug in Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) - 5 seats	2 525	3 300	6 300
2.0L petrol PHEV - 6 seats	2 548	3 320	6 320
2.0L petrol PHEV X derivative - 5 seats	2 622	3 300	6 300
2.0L petrol PHEV X derivative - 6 seats	2 633	3 320	6 320
3.0L petrol - 5 seats	2 286	3 165	6 665
3.0L petrol - 6 seats	2 309	3 165	6 665
3.0L petrol - 7 seats	2 343	3 250	6 750
2.0L diesel EU5 emissions - 5 seats	2 218	3 150	6 650
2.0L diesel EU5 emissions - 6 seats	2 241	3 150	6 650
2.0L diesel EU5 emissions - 7 seats	2 275	3 215	6 715
2.0L diesel EU6 emissions - 5 seats	2 248	3 150	6 650
2.0L diesel EU6 emissions - 6 seats	2 271	3 150	6 650
2.0L diesel EU6 emissions - 7 seats	2 305	3 215	6 715

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Variant	Weight (kg)	Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)* (kg)	Gross Train Weight (GTW)** (kg)
3.0L diesel Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV) - 5 seats	2 340	3 200	6 700
3.0L diesel MHEV - 6 seats	2 362	3 220	6 720
3.0L diesel MHEV - 7 seats	2 396	3 280	6 780
3.0L diesel except MHEV - 5 seats	2 310	3 200	6 700
3.0L diesel except MHEV - 6 seats	2 333	3 220	6 720
3.0L diesel except MHEV - 7 seats	2 366	3 280	6 780

* The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle, including passengers and load.

** The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle and braked trailer, including their respective loads.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Variant	Maximum front axle load* (kg)	Maximum rear axle load* (kg)	Maximum roof crossbar load** (kg)
2.0L petrol - 5 seats	1 480	1 800	Vehicles with all season tyres: 100 Vehicles with all terrain tyres: 168
2.0L petrol - 6 seats	1 500	1 800	
2.0L petrol - 7 seats	1 490	1 900	
2.0L petrol PHEV - 5 seats	1 540	1 900	
2.0L petrol PHEV - 6 seats	1 570	1 900	
3.0L petrol - 5 seats	1 530	1 800	
3.0L petrol - 6 seats	1 560	1 800	
3.0L petrol - 7 seats	1 530	1 900	
2.0L diesel - 5 seats	1 480	1 800	Vehicles with all season tyres: 100 Vehicles with all terrain tyres: 168
2.0L diesel - 6 seats	1 500	1 800	
2.0L diesel - 7 seats	1 500	1 900	
3.0L diesel - 5 seats	1 530	1 800	
3.0L diesel - 6 seats	1 560	1 800	
3.0L diesel - 7 seats	1 530	1 900	

* The front and rear axle maximum loads cannot be reached simultaneously as this will exceed the GVW limit.

** This figure includes the weight of the roof rails and crossbars.

110 Commercial

Variant	Weight (kg)	Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)* (kg)	Gross Train Weight (GTW)** (kg)
2.0L diesel - 2 seats, coil suspension	2 248	3 100	6 600
2.0L diesel - 3 seats, coil suspension	2 271	3 130	6 630
2.0L diesel - 2 seats, air suspension	2 248	3 180	6 680
2.0L diesel - 3 seats, air suspension	2 271	3 215	6 715

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Variant	Weight (kg)	Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)* (kg)	Gross Train Weight (GTW)** (kg)
3.0L diesel MHEV - 2 seats, coil suspension	2 369	3 150	6 650
3.0L diesel MHEV - 3 seats, coil suspension	2 392	3 190	6 690
3.0L diesel MHEV - 2 seats, air suspension	2 369	3 220	6 720
3.0L diesel MHEV - 3 seats, air suspension	2 392	3 260	6 760
3.0L diesel except MHEV - 2 seats, coil suspension	2 356	3 130	6 630
3.0L diesel except MHEV - 3 seats, coil suspension	2 379	3 180	6 680
3.0L diesel except MHEV - 2 seats, air suspension	2 356	3 220	6 720
3.0L diesel except MHEV - 3 seats, air suspension	2 379	3 260	6 760

* The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle, including passengers and load.

** The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle and braked trailer, including their respective loads.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Variant	Maximum front axle load* (kg)	Maximum rear axle load* (kg)	Maximum roof crossbar load** (kg)
2.0L diesel - 2 seats, coil suspension	1 480	1 800	Vehicles with all season tyres: 100 Vehicles with all terrain tyres: 168
2.0L diesel - 3 seats, coil suspension	1 500	1 800	
2.0L diesel - 2 seats, air suspension	1 480	1 900	
2.0L diesel - 3 seats, air suspension	1 500	1 900	
3.0L diesel - 2 seats, coil suspension	1 530	1 800	
3.0L diesel - 3 seats, coil suspension	1 560	1 800	
3.0L diesel - 2 seats, air suspension	1 530	1 900	
3.0L diesel - 3 seats, air suspension	1 560	1 900	

* The front and rear axle maximum loads cannot be reached simultaneously as this will exceed the GVW limit.

** This figure includes the weight of the roof rails and crossbars.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

90

Variant	Weight (kg)	Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)* (kg)	Gross Train Weight (GTW)** (kg)
2.0L petrol - 5 seats	2 065	2 910	6 410
2.0L petrol - 6 seats	2 087	2 950	6 450
3.0L petrol - 5 seats	2 170	2 970	6 470
3.0L petrol - 6 seats	2 193	3 000	6 500
3.0L petrol X derivative - 5 seats	2 276	2 970	6 470
3.0L petrol X derivative - 6 seats	2 287	3 000	6 500
2.0L diesel - 5 seats	2 133	2 940	6 440
2.0L diesel - 6 seats	2 156	2 970	6 470

Variant	Weight (kg)	Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)* (kg)	Gross Train Weight (GTW)** (kg)
3.0L diesel MHEV - 5 seats	2 228	2 970	6 470
3.0L diesel MHEV - 6 seats	2 251	3 050	6 550
3.0L diesel except MHEV - 5 seats	2 198	2 970	6 470
3.0L diesel except MHEV - 6 seats	2 221	3 050	6 550

* The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle, including passengers and load.

** The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle and braked trailer, including their respective loads.

Variant	Maximum front axle load* (kg)	Maximum rear axle load* (kg)	Maximum roof crossbar load** (kg)
2.0L petrol - 5 seats	1 330	1 775	Vehicles with all season tyres: 80 Vehicles with all terrain tyres: 118
2.0L petrol - 6 seats	1 360	1 775	
3.0L petrol - 5 seats	1 380	1 775	
3.0L petrol - 6 seats	1 400	1 775	
2.0L diesel - 5 seats	1 350	1 775	Vehicles with all season tyres: 80 Vehicles with all terrain tyres: 118
2.0L diesel - 6 seats	1 370	1 775	
3.0L diesel - 5 seats	1 380	1 775	
3.0L diesel - 6 seats	1 400	1 775	

* The front and rear axle maximum loads cannot be reached simultaneously as this will exceed the GVW limit.

** This figure includes the weight of the roof rails and crossbars.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

90 Commercial

Variant	Weight (kg)	Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)* (kg)	Gross Train Weight (GTW)** (kg)
2.0L diesel - 2 seats, coil suspension	2 107	2 900	6 400
2.0L diesel - 3 seats, coil suspension	2 130	2 940	6 440
3.0L diesel - 2 seats, air suspension	2 232	2 950	6 450
3.0L diesel - 3 seats, air suspension	2 255	2 980	6 480

* The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle, including passengers and load.

** The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle and braked trailer, including their respective loads.

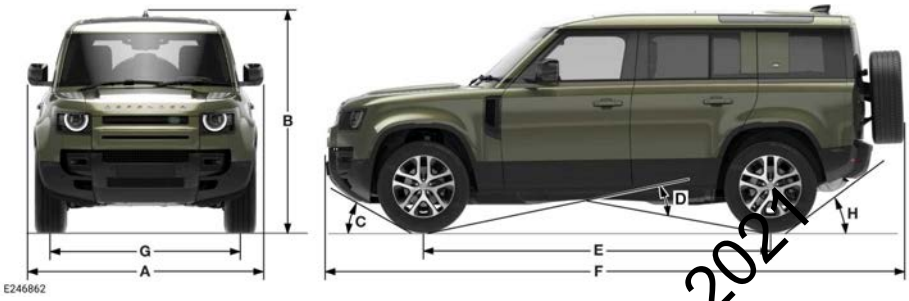
Variant	Maximum front axle load* (kg)	Maximum rear axle load* (kg)	Maximum roof crossbar load** (kg)
2.0L diesel	1 350	1 775	Vehicles with all season tyres: 80 Vehicles with all terrain tyres: 118
3.0L diesel	1 380	1 775	

* The front and rear axle maximum loads cannot be reached simultaneously as this will exceed the GVW limit.

** This figure includes the weight of the roof rails and crossbars.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

DIMENSIONS



Item	Description	Variant	mm	Degrees
A	Width (including mirrors).	All vehicles.	2 105	-
	Body width.	All vehicles.	1 996	-
B	Height.	110.	1 970	-
		90 - air suspension	1 971	-
		90 - coil suspension	1 974	-
C	Approach angle.	Air suspension at standard height.	-	30.1
		Coil suspension at standard height.	-	31.2
		Coil suspension**.	-	31.5
		At off-road height**.	-	37.5
D	Ramp breakover angle.	110 - air suspension at standard height.	-	22.0
		110 - air suspension at off-road height.	-	28.0
		110 - coil suspension.	-	22.6
		90 - at standard height.	-	24.2
		90 - air suspension at off-road height.	-	31.0
E	Wheelbase.	110.	3 022	-
		90.	2 587	-

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Item	Description	Variant	mm	Degrees
F	Overall length (including number plate plinth).	110 - with 18 inch spare wheel.	5 032	-
		110 - with 19 inch spare wheel.	5 032	-
		110 - with 20 inch spare wheel.	5 035	-
		110 - with 22 inch spare wheel.	5 034	-
		110 - without spare wheel.	4 775	-
		90 - with 18 inch spare wheel.	4 597	-
		90 - with 19 inch spare wheel.	4 597	-
		90 - with 20 inch spare wheel.	4 600	-
		90 - with 22 inch spare wheel.	4 599	-
		90 - without spare wheel.	4 323	-
G	Track - front.	All vehicles.	1 698	-
	Track - rear.	All vehicles.	1 683	-
H	Departure angle.	110 - air suspension at standard height.	-	37.7
		110 - air suspension at off-road height**.	-	40.0
		110 - coil suspension.	-	35.5
		110 - coil suspension**.	-	37.8
		90 - air suspension at standard height.	-	37.6
		90 - air suspension at off-road**.	-	40.0
		90 - coil suspension.	-	35.5
		90 - coil suspension**.	-	37.9

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Item	Description	Variant	mm	Degrees
-	Wading depth.*	Air suspension - at off-road height.	900	-
		Coil suspension.	850	-
-	Minimum ground clearance.	90 - air suspension at standard height.	216	-
		110 - air suspension at standard height.	218	-
		Air suspension - at off-road height.	291	-
		90 - coil suspension.	225	-
		110 - coil suspension.	227	-
-	Turning circle (kerb to kerb).	110.	12.84 m	-
		90.	11.3 m	-

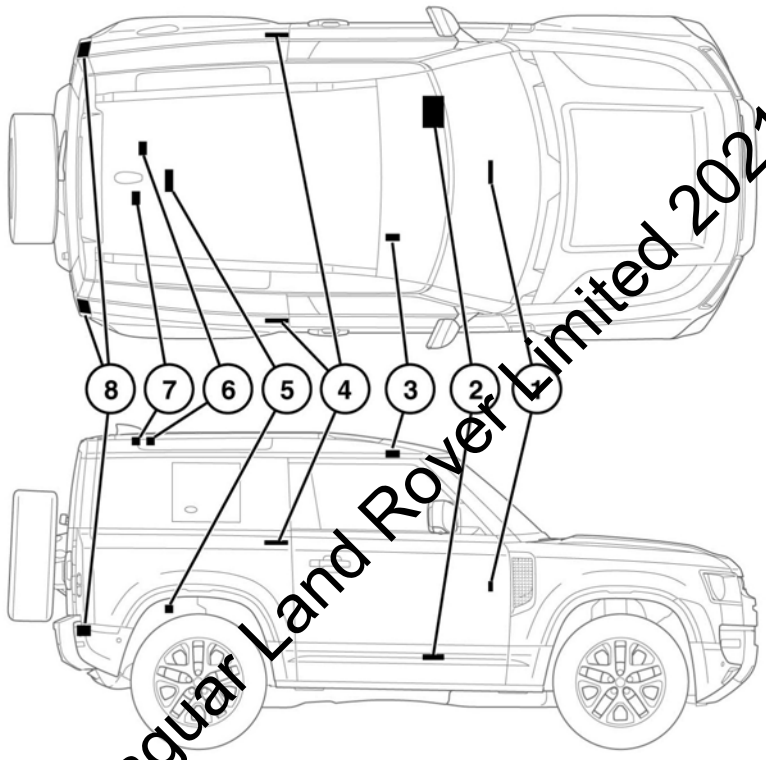
*Maximum wading speed is 7 km/h (4 mph).

**With towing eye cover removed.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS

90



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

1. Cabin front transmitter.
2. Keyless vehicle module.
3. Satellite transceiver[1].
4. Door transmitters[1].
5. Rear transmitter[2].
6. Satellite transceiver[1].
7. Keyless vehicle module.
8. Rear transmitter[1].

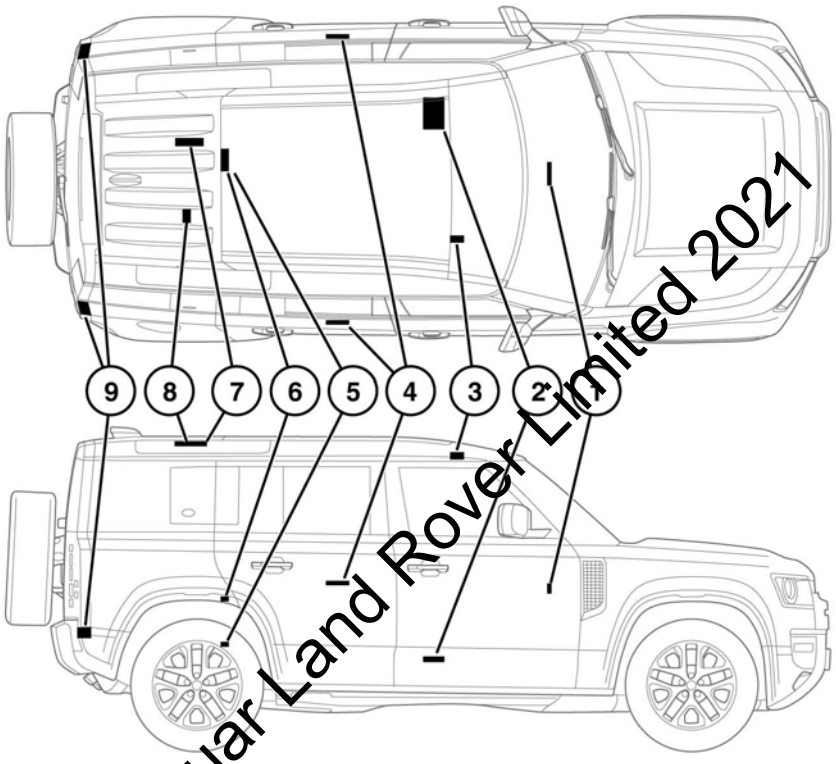
[1] Vehicles with keyless entry.

[2] Vehicles without keyless entry.

⚠ Any person fitted with an implanted medical device should make sure the device is kept at a distance of at least 22 cm away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

110



E267158

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

1. Cabin front transmitter.
2. Keyless vehicle module.
3. Satellite transceiver[1].
4. Door transmitters[1].
5. Rear transmitter[2].
6. Rear transmitter[2] - Plug in Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) only.
7. Satellite transceiver[1].
8. Keyless vehicle module.
9. Rear transmitter[1].

[1] Vehicles with keyless entry.

[2] Vehicles without keyless entry.

Any person fitted with an implanted medical device should make sure the device is kept at a distance of at least 22 cm away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device.

RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM REGULATION STATEMENTS

Service	Frequency band (MHz)	Max. Output (Watts)	Antenna position	Specific conditions
Short Wave	1.8-30	100 (RMS)	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
8 m	30-50	120 (RMS)	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
6 m	50-54	120 (RMS)	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
4 m	68-87.5	120 (RMS)	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
2 m	142-176	120 (RMS)	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
70 cm	410-470	120 (RMS)	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
TETRA TETRAPOL	380-390 410-420 450-460 806-825 870-876	20 (Peak)	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
4G	703-748	20 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Technical specifications

Service	Frequency band (MHz)	Max. Output (Watts)	Antenna position	Specific conditions
4G	832-862	20 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.
GSM 850	824-849	20 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.
GSM 900	876-915	20 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.
23 cm	1200-1300	25 (RMS)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.
GSM 1800	1710-1785	2 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.
GSM 1900	1850-1910	2 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.
IMT-2000 (3G)	1885-2025	1 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.
WiFi/ Bluetooth	2400-2500	1 (Peak)	Anywhere on the vehicle.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Service	Frequency band (MHz)	Max. Output (Watts)	Antenna position	Specific conditions
4G	2496-2690	1 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.
WiFi	4195-5825	1 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.

South Korea only

Omnidirectional transmission or point-to-multipoint transmission is prohibited according to the law.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ARRANGING A SERVICE

To make sure that the vehicle remains in first class order, visits to a retailer/ authorised repairer are required for routine servicing.

To help smooth this process:

- Arrange an appointment, unless it is an emergency. Give details of the vehicle and the nature of the work required. Where available, the retailer reviews the Online Service History (OSH) to determine the service required.

After arriving at the servicing premises:

- Give your name and address, and a phone number where you can be contacted during the day. Contact details are important if queries arise or additional work is found to be necessary.
- Explain, as fully as possible, the details of the service or repair required.

For information, it is also important to:

- Enquire whether the service or repair is chargeable and, if so, ask for details of any costs and confirm the preferred method of payment.
- Establish when the vehicle will be ready for collection. Alternatively, arrange a time and place for it to be delivered.

Note: *Make sure that the retailer provides a copy of the latest OSH printout when the vehicle is returned. For markets where an OSH is unavailable, make sure the appropriate pages of the Service Record are correctly completed.*

SAFETY-RELATED DEFECTS (AUSTRALIA ONLY)

Motor manufacturers and distributors are bound by the uniform code of practice for the recall of motor vehicles and/or parts. They will check and repair, free of charge, any vehicles which are found to have a possible safety-related defect.

Jaguar Land Rover takes scrupulous care in making its vehicles safe for our roads. The chances of the vehicle being subject to a safety defect recall during its life are small.

However, should such an event occur that affects the model purchased, it is best to adhere to the advice given in any letter received from us. The advice given may involve a retailer carrying out a check on the vehicle. Contact a retailer and arrange an appointment as speedily as possible.

The retailer records the reference details of any work carried out on a decal. The decal is then affixed to the right-side, front A pillar, which forms part of the surround for the right-side front door aperture. Once fixed, this label must not be removed.

ONLINE SERVICE HISTORY (OSH)

The Online Service History (OSH) system has been introduced to completely replace the stamping of 'Service Record' pages in owner literature. A vehicle's service history is now stored on a centralised system, which can be accessed and amended by a retailer/authorised repairer via the internet.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The OSH records every scheduled service event, and includes all those items that need to be inspected, or replaced, over extended periods.

Keeping to the recommended service intervals is important to help protect the on-going validity of the manufacturer's warranty. An up-to-date OSH provides the necessary proof of service should any warranty work be required.

After each scheduled and extended service visit, the retailer/authorised repairer updates the OSH for the vehicle. A printed copy of the complete record is also provided as proof that the required service has been performed.

As the OSH is securely stored for the life of the vehicle, it can be viewed online, at anytime. The OSH helps to enhance the vehicle's resale value and each subsequent owner will be able to obtain a service history they can trust. Any retailer/authorised repairer can produce an up-to-date OSH printout for the vehicle. The printout also contains details of how to register and view the vehicle's OSH.

For any questions regarding the OSH system, please contact a retailer/authorised repairer or the Land Rover distributor for the market. The distributor may also be contacted through the Land Rover internet site.

Note: *OSH is not available in all markets. For these markets, a Service Record publication is provided. See* ***467, SERVICE RECORD****.*

SERVICE REQUIREMENTS

Routine services must be carried out throughout the life of the vehicle.

The flexible service on your vehicle takes into account individual driving styles and conditions to determine when and what type of service is due.

The vehicle is fitted with a service interval indicator in the instrument panel. When a service is due, and when the ignition is switched on, the relevant service message and estimated distance or time to the next service is displayed. On completion of a service, the instrument panel countdown feature is reset.

The servicing schedules for arduous operating conditions are not displayed in the instrument panel. Refer to a retailer/authorised repairer for details.

Information on the next required service can be displayed via the Touchscreen:

- Select **Vehicle** from the touchscreen system settings. See **247, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
- Select **My Vehicle**.
- Select **Service**.

Dependent on the vehicle's specification, different service info and messages are available as part of the flexible servicing strategy. Other fluid intervals and capacities may also be displayed.

The required service interval displays as a distance or time left until the next service is due.

If the distance or time is exceeded, the instrument panel will display a message until this is done and the service counter reset.

Refer to a retailer/authorised repairer for details.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

SERVICE CONTENT

The precise content of each service varies from model to model and also according to the age of the vehicle, the distance it has travelled, and whether an arduous service is applicable. The service operations applicable to the vehicle are listed on the maintenance check sheet used by the retailer/authorised repairer.

Note: *Some service providers may use their own check sheet with differing levels of service operations. Usually the highest level matches Jaguar Land Rover Limited requirements.*

FLUID REPLACEMENT

Brake fluid and engine coolant (antifreeze and water solution) must be completely replaced at specific intervals. The retailer/authorised repairer replaces the fluids at the appropriate scheduled service.

Note: *Replacement of fluids is subject to extra labour and material costs.*

Some braking system components may also need to be replaced. The intervals are significantly longer than those in the interval plan and are indicated on the maintenance check sheet.

ARMOURED VEHICLES

Armoured vehicles require servicing every 13 000 km (12 months.

ARDUOUS OPERATING CONDITIONS

When a vehicle is used in arduous conditions, more frequent attention must be paid to servicing requirements. Even daily attention may be necessary to make sure that continued safe and reliable operation of the vehicle is maintained.

Failure to adhere to the recommended service schedules may result in premature engine wear or damage, and may invalidate the warranty.

Some markets may have unique service requirements. Check with a retailer/authorised repairer or importer.

Arduous operating conditions include:

- No other use than short trips where the engine doesn't reach the normal operating temperature.
- Engine at idle for long periods and/or continuous low speed driving.
- Continuous operation at high vehicle speed and high engine load for long periods.
- Continuous operation at temperatures below -40°C or above +50°C.
- Frequent operation off-road or on rough roads at high engine speed and low vehicle speed.
- Frequent wading and/or driving on mud, snow and rocks.
- Frequent operation at high engine speed and low vehicle speed, such as heavy cargo transportation and towing.
- Continuous driving in mountainous conditions.
- Continuous operation under dusty or sandy conditions.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Contact a retailer/authorised repairer for advice.

SERVICE RECORD

For markets where an Online Service History (OSH) is unavailable, the Service Record publication provides a record of the routine services carried out on the vehicle.

The information is important and could affect warranty entitlement. Always make sure that the appropriate record slip is stamped and signed on completion of each service.

REPLACEMENT SERVICE RECORD

If the Service Record book is lost, and an Online Service History (OSH) is not available, a replacement publication can be ordered via the Internet at:

www.jaguarlandroverliterature.com or from a retailer/authorised repairer.

The replacement book is visibly different to the original version. The front cover and title page have the revised title. Page 2 explains why the replacement version is being used. Each internal page displays the caption **REPLACEMENT**. To counteract fraudulent attempts to recreate a vehicle's service history, original style books are not available for purchase. Remember to transfer the details recorded on the **Vehicle Details** page to the replacement book.

END OF LIFE VEHICLE (ELV)

Within certain markets, Jaguar Land Rover has established a comprehensive plan to meet vehicle recycling requirements and End of Life Vehicle (ELV) legislation.

In accordance with applicable market directives and local legislation, Jaguar Land Rover takes back all on-sale vehicles and vehicle starter batteries, regardless of the date of a vehicle's first registration, at the end of their life. Items taken back are treated in an environmentally responsible manner.

To locate the nearest take back or recycling facility, and for information on terms and conditions, consult a retailer. Alternatively, visit: **www.landrover.com**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

OWNER'S RESPONSIBILITIES

Proper maintenance and use guard against major repair expenses.

Make sure to present the vehicle to an authorised repairer for any warranty repair as soon as possible after a defect is detected. This minimises the effect a defect has on the vehicle and the nature of the repair needed.

Make sure all documentation for completed maintenance or service works are retained with the vehicle.

DATA PROTECTION STATEMENT

Jaguar Land Rover Limited respects the privacy of every individual. Information collected about you will be used to satisfy requests made by you, to fulfil contracts you have entered into, to inform you about new products and services, or to improve how we may serve you as a valued customer. The information will be treated in accordance with applicable data protection laws and the European Union EC Directive 95/46/EC. Information may be shared with Jaguar Land Rover and its affiliated or associated companies, its authorised retailers and repairers, agencies, and other companies providing services for your benefit.

We will not disclose your information to third parties, except as described above and as may be required by law. Should this happen, we will take steps to make sure that any third party companies who handle your information, comply with the relevant data protection laws. We may share generalised information about your behaviour patterns with partners or other parties on an anonymous basis and in such a way that neither you nor any individual customer can be identified.

Any personal information that you supply to Jaguar Land Rover Limited or its authorised retailers or repairers, will be held in encrypted electronic format on a secure computer server, to prevent unauthorised access by other people. We aim to make sure that the personal data stored will be up to date, relevant and not excessive, and that information is not retained longer than is necessary.

You have the right, at any time, to see what is held about you and to correct any inaccuracies or to withdraw from receiving any further communications from Jaguar Land Rover Limited and its affiliated or associated companies. Should you wish to do this, please contact a local retailer or (if different) the retailer from which the vehicle was purchased.

QUALITY CHECKS

The vehicle has been quality checked throughout every stage of the manufacturing process. The final check was made by dedicated inspectors to make sure that the vehicle was built to the level of excellence required by Jaguar Land Rover Limited.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Retailers will inspect every vehicle before delivery and will repair any damage before the vehicle is delivered to the customer.

WARRANTY AND CONSUMER LAW

This warranty is a manufacturer's supplementary warranty. It does not affect your legal rights under the vehicle purchase agreement with your selling authorised retailer. Nor does it affect your legal rights under applicable national legislation governing the sale of consumer goods.

Obtaining Warranty Assistance

Should the vehicle ever require attention under the warranty arrangements, simply contact the nearest authorised repairer.

Transfer of Warranty

Warranty benefits continue to apply regardless of any change of ownership.

WARRANTY COVER WHEN TOURING

Jaguar Land Rover Limited has a comprehensive service network in most parts of the world. Any authorised repairer can carry out repairs under the Jaguar Land Rover warranty.

MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY

Should any part of the vehicle require repair or replacement as a result of a manufacturing defect, the part will be repaired or replaced completely free of charge by any Jaguar Land Rover authorised repairer, regardless of any change of vehicle ownership during the period of cover.

REGIONAL WARRANTY

All new vehicles sold on or after 1st June 2018 will benefit from Jaguar Land Rover Regional Warranty. The vehicle is covered by the manufacturer's warranty terms in the region to which it was delivered by JLR for first sale as new through the JLR appointed network or other legally authorised sales outlet. Specifications and warranty may differ in other regions.

If the vehicle is to be registered or used in another region, further activation may be required, exclusions may apply and warranty conditions may be affected. For the purposes of warranty, regions are defined as USA, China, Europe & UK (excluding Turkey), Turkey, Russia, Overseas (including Japan), Australia & New Zealand, Africa, Middle East and North Africa, and Latin America. See a retailer/authorised repairer for further detail.

MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY TERMS

Warranty Terms: 3 years or 100,000 km, whichever is sooner, or warranty period as advised at vehicle handover.

In all cases of warranty repair carried out by a Jaguar Land Rover authorised repairer, genuine Jaguar Land Rover parts will be used. Any displaced parts become the property of Jaguar Land Rover Limited.

Note: *Market legislation may overrule this.*

All parts fitted during warranty repairs are covered for the balance of the original warranty period.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *Tyres are covered separately by the tyre manufacturer. A Jaguar Land Rover authorised retailer will, however, assist with any tyre issue.*

PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLES (PHEV)

PHEV traction battery warranty: 6 years or 100,000 km, whichever is sooner, and 70% State of Health (SOH).

PAINT SURFACE WARRANTY

Should the paint surface of the vehicle body require attention due to a defect in material or applications, any necessary repairs will be performed completely free of charge by any Jaguar Land Rover authorised repairer, regardless of any change in vehicle ownership during the period of cover.

Warranty Terms: as per the manufacturer's vehicle warranty but with no distance limitation.

CORROSION PROTECTION WARRANTY

Should any part of the bodywork of the vehicle be perforated by rust corrosion, the panel(s) affected by the perforation will be repaired or replaced by any Jaguar Land Rover authorised repairer, completely free of charge, regardless of any change in vehicle ownership.

Warranty Terms: 6 years, unlimited distance.

Note: *The term perforation means a hole that penetrates through the bodywork, caused by corrosion from the inside to the outside or from the underside to the upper side, as a result of faulty manufacture or materials. For the purpose of this warranty, the term bodywork, is defined as metal panels, including doors, bonnet, engine and boot compartments, wings, sills, scuttles, roof, floor panel, structural frames and chassis members, but excluding attachments such as brightwork, bumpers, mouldings, hinges, and road wheels.*

PARTS AND ACCESSORIES WARRANTY

There is a separate parts warranty for genuine Jaguar Land Rover parts and accessories purchased. Should any genuine part or accessory require repair or replacement as a result of a material or manufacturing defect, the part or accessory will be repaired or replaced completely free of charge by any authorised retailer/repairer.

Where the part or accessory is being repaired or replaced under the terms of this warranty by an authorised retailer/repairer, no labour charge will be made for such repair or replacement. However, where the work is carried out by anyone other than an authorised retailer/repairer, no contribution will be made to labour charges.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *Genuine parts and accessories have been specifically designed to comply with Jaguar Land Rover safety and reliability standards. We, therefore, recommend that only genuine parts and accessories are used on the vehicle. Please be advised that non-genuine parts and accessories have neither been tested or approved by Jaguar Land Rover, and that, in spite of constant observation of the market, Jaguar Land Rover cannot evaluate their suitability and safety, neither isolated or when fitted to our vehicles.*

Duration of the Genuine Jaguar Land Rover Parts and Accessories Warranty

The warranty commences on the date of delivery of the part or vehicle accessory and is applicable for a period of 12 months or as per agreed local market legislation or the stated service life of the part or vehicle accessory, whichever occurs later. All parts or vehicle accessories fitted during warranty repairs are covered for the balance of the original warranty period.

Note: *Genuine Jaguar Land Rover 12 volt batteries and exhaust components are covered by a 3 year warranty. All other batteries are covered by the standard part warranty period as detailed above.*

ACCESSORIES FITTED TO A NEW VEHICLE

Genuine Jaguar Land Rover accessories, excluding gift items, fitted by an authorised retailer within 1 month or 1 600 km, whichever occurs first, of a new vehicle being sold will benefit from the same warranty terms and period of cover as the manufacturer's warranty.

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTY

Jaguar Land Rover Limited warrants that its vehicles are designed, built, and equipped, so as to conform at the time of sale, with all emission standards applicable at the time of manufacture, and are free from defects in materials and workmanship that could cause them not to meet those standards.

During the emission control system warranty period, if the failure of any part covered by this emission control system warranty is not the result of a lack of maintenance or of misuse of the vehicle, it will be repaired, replaced, or adjusted without charge.

A retailer can advise warranty terms.

ACCIDENT DAMAGE REPAIR

In the event of the vehicle requiring body repairs due to accident damage, a Jaguar Land Rover authorised repairer will make sure all repairs are carried out by a Jaguar Land Rover approved body repair centre. The body repair centre uses only Genuine Jaguar Land Rover approved parts, materials and repair techniques, making sure that warranty cover continues on the repaired body sections for the remaining period of the corrosion protection warranty.

ALUMINIUM BODY REPAIRS

Some models incorporate the latest technology in aluminium body structure.

Specialist vehicle body and paint centres are provided with full technical support from Jaguar Land Rover.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Warranty

The body and paint centres operate to high standards and have all the necessary tools and equipment essential to repair Jaguar Land Rover vehicles.

WHAT IS NOT COVERED BY THE MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY TERMS?

Jaguar Land Rover Limited offers no warranty and is **not** responsible for any repair or replacement to the vehicle, part or accessory that is required as a direct result of:

- Any modification to the vehicle, components, parts, or accessories, including any engine performance enhancement modifications, in particular, chip tuning, which are not authorised by Jaguar Land Rover Limited.
- Normal wear and tear. Includes brake pads, brake discs, and any other friction related components. The list is not exhaustive.
- Defects or damage caused as a result of the vehicle being used in motor sport events, or for any purpose other than normal, private, or commercial use.
- Damage resulting from neglect, accident, flooding, or improper use or fitting.
- Damage due to the failure of another part on the vehicle.
- Damage caused during maintenance.
- Failure to properly maintain the vehicle, part, or accessory, in accordance with Jaguar Land Rover maintenance schedules and service instructions.
- Failure to use Jaguar Land Rover specified parts, oils, lubricants, or fluids during a warranty repair, or parts of equivalent quality during a authorised retailer repair.

  Note: *Failure to use oils, lubricants, or fluids of the correct specification may result in mechanical failure and refusal by Jaguar Land Rover to pay for any resultant claims.*
- The part or vehicle accessory covered by the parts warranty is damaged due to the failure of another part on the vehicle, except manufacturing defect.
- Failure of a non-approved part and/or the failure or misuse of a product or accessory not recommended by Jaguar Land Rover. Additionally, any consequential damage caused by the fitment or use of such parts, products, or accessories will not be covered by the Jaguar Land Rover vehicle or parts warranties.
- Any vehicle that has had its Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) altered or removed, or on which the odometer reading has been unlawfully changed.
- Refilling or topping up with the incorrect fuel, e.g., petrol used instead of diesel, or vice versa, or consequential damage from misfuelling.
- The vehicle, part, or accessory having been altered from Jaguar Land Rover specifications.
- Use of fuel specifications or alternative fuels which are not approved by Jaguar Land Rover for the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- Use of supplemental additives and flushing agents for fuel or engine oil, unless specified as part of a Jaguar Land Rover service requirement.
- The vehicle, as manufactured, does not meet the operational specification of a market for which it was not specified, including any legal requirements or penalties imposed by Government or other authority.
- The effects of any vehicle modifications undertaken to comply with legal or local requirements of a market for which it was not specified, unless authorised by Jaguar Land Rover Limited.

  Note: *Where applicable, a Jaguar Land Rover authorised repairer may, at the customer's expense, carry out authorised modifications to meet legal or operational requirements of a market.*

Activity key

Warranty Terms: as per the manufacturer's warranty.

Note: *Activity keys requested within one month of vehicle purchase or 1 600 km, benefit from the manufacturer's warranty terms. Accessories fitted after this time benefit from the terms of the parts and accessories warranty.*

Specific exclusions: In addition to the manufacturer's warranty terms, the activity key is subject to the following specific exclusions:

- General cosmetic abrasions and wear and tear, not affecting the activity key function.
- Misuse or abuse of the product.
- Loss or damage due to breakage under extreme loading.
- Damage by cutting and/or crushing.
- Exposure to corrosive substances or environments.
- Exposure to excessive heat nominally to function from -40ºC to +85ºC. Avoid 'greenhouse' storage exceeding 100ºC. Cold, low or high pressures in aircraft cargo holds are acceptable.

WHAT IS NOT COVERED BY THE PAINT SURFACE WARRANTY AND CORROSION PROTECTION WARRANTY?

Jaguar Land Rover Limited is **not** responsible for any repair or replacement that is required as a direct result of the following:

- Failure to properly maintain paint and bodywork by regular cleaning in accordance with Jaguar Land Rover Limited instructions.
- Failure to promptly rectify any paint or corrosion damage.
- Factors beyond Jaguar Land Rover's control, such as environmental hazards, including but not limited to industrial fall-out, storm damage, acid rain, bird droppings, rodent damage, and damage including but not limited to stone chips, scratches, and use of unsuitable cleaning agents.
- Accident repairs using materials or methods of repair that have not been approved by Jaguar Land Rover Limited.
- Alterations of the vehicle from Jaguar Land Rover original specification.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

WHAT IS NOT COVERED BY SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS?

During a normal scheduled service or maintenance operation, consumable items which are subject to adjustment or replacement are **not** covered by the warranty, unless work is required as a direct result of a manufacturing defect.

Parts that fall into this category for all models are:

- Lubricants.
- Oil filter.
- Fuel filter.
- Air filter.
- Pollen filter (where applicable).
- Drive belts.
- Spark plugs (petrol engines only).
- Smart key batteries. Not all models. Please check with an authorised retailer/repairer.

Note: *The Jaguar Land Rover warranty applies up to the first scheduled service change point of the particular item. The period of cover for any item will not exceed the time and mileage limitation of the manufacturer's warranty.*

LIMITED SERVICE LIFE REPAIR, REPLACEMENTS AND ADJUSTMENTS

Some parts that require repair, replacement or adjustment are recognised as having a limited service life. Such parts are warranted against manufacturing defects for a limited period of time. Your local retailer can provide details of these parts and advise on their respective periods of cover.

Note: *Brake pads, brake discs and any other friction related components are not covered when replacement is due to wear and tear, but are covered against manufacturing defects for the duration of the manufacturer's vehicle warranty.*

OTHER EXCLUSIONS

Jaguar Land Rover warranties exclude liability for any lost time, inconvenience, loss of transportation, or any other incidental or consequential damage that you (or anyone else) may incur as a result of a defect covered by the warranties.

OTHER EXCLUSIONS - MENA MARKETS ONLY

In warranty terms, MENA markets refer to the following countries: Algeria, Azerbaijan, Bahrain, Egypt, Georgia, Iraq, Jordan, Kuwait, Lebanon, Morocco, Oman, Pakistan, Palestine, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, Tunisia, United Arab Emirates, and Yemen.

In the fourth and fifth year, or 100 000 km and 150 000 km, whichever occurs first, additional warranty terms and conditions apply. General exclusions include, but are not limited to:

- All rubber components.
- Batteries.
- Exhaust systems.
- Paint, body, and trim components.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

VEHICLE DEFECTS - SOUTH KOREA ONLY

Your vehicle is guaranteed for replacement with a new vehicle or refund in the event of certain structure or system defects or repeated defects as detailed in the written contract provided to the vehicle owner.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

The roadside assistance programme provides assistance in motoring emergencies, from immobilisation due to breakdown or accident, to minor emergencies such as punctures. The benefits of the roadside assistance programme are available throughout the Manufacturer's Warranty period.

Contact Numbers

To contact Land Rover Assistance, call the number corresponding to the country where the vehicle was first registered:

Country	Phone number
Australia.	1800 819 181.
Austria.	0800 500 806. If outside Austria +43 1 503 0 806.
Bahrain.	800 00212. If outside Bahrain +9714 332 2234.
Belarus.	882000 718081.
Belgium.	0800 92 291. If outside Belgium +32 3 253 6045.
Croatia.	0800 1002. If outside Croatia +385 1 4693 791.
Czech Republic.	+420 261 000 557.
Denmark.	+45 70 266 566.
Egypt.	0800 755 5555 / (02) 24047905. If outside Egypt +9714 332 2234.
Estonia.	+372 69 79 163.
Finland.	+358 800 13 700.

Country	Phone number
France.	+33 1 70 94 11 11.
Germany.	0049 2131 1512 575.
Gibraltar.	900 314 195. If outside Gibraltar +34 915 949 383.
Greece.	+210 65 04 043.
Hungary.	+36 1 345 1754.
India.	1800 103 8545.
Italy.	800 557 999. If outside Italy +39 02 68 286 768.
Jordan.	07 77 777 313. If outside Jordan +9714 332 2234.
Kazakhstan.	8800 2008081.
Korea (South).	080 337 9696.
Kuwait.	222 462 17. If outside Kuwait +9714 332 2234.
Latvia.	+371 67 11 22 10.
Lebanon.	(01) 806 690. If outside Lebanon +9714 332 2234.
Lithuania.	+370 52 499 006.
Luxembourg.	+32 3 253 6045.
Morocco.	0801 003 738. If outside Morocco +9714 332 2234.
Netherlands.	0800 555 0777. If outside Netherlands +31 592 390 558.
Norway.	+47 22 65 12 00.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Country	Phone number
Oman.	800 73636. If outside Oman +9714 332 2234.
Poland.	0801 777 980. If outside Poland +48 61 83 19 980.
Portugal.	+351 219 429 116.
Qatar.	44 607 550. If outside Qatar +9714 332 2234.
Republic Of Ireland (R.O.I).	1 800 456 999. If outside R.O.I +353 1 617 9560.
Romania.	+40 21 322 7535.
Russia.	8800 2008081. If outside Russia +74957 778536.
Saudi Arabia.	800 897 1431. If outside Saudi Arabia +9714 332 2234.
Slovakia.	+421 2 492 05 [illegible]1.
Slovenia.	080 1 457. If outside Slovenia +386 [illegible]305 357.
South Africa.	0[illegible] 572 774 78. If outside South Africa +271 199 187 65.
Spain.	900 314 195. If outside Spain +34 915 949 383.
Sweden.	+46 771 99 54 00.
Switzerland.	+41 62 788 85 31.
Tunisia.	79 399 007. If outside Tunisia +9714 332 2234.

Country	Phone number
Turkey.	0850 755 0 557.
Ukraine.	+380 44 494 2951.
United Arab Emirates (UAE).	800 4647. If outside UAE +9714 332 2234.
United Kingdom.	0800 521 786. If outside UK +44 1926 320 003.
US Diplomatic and Military vehicles in Europe.	0049 [illegible]1512 577.

Please have the following information to hand:

- Name.
- Location.
- Registration number or Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).
- A brief description of the incident.
- A contact telephone number.

If the vehicle has been involved in a road traffic accident, describe the extent of the damage and provide details of any third parties involved.

GENERAL CONDITIONS

Financial limitations may apply in some cases. Please refer to the owner section of **www.landrover.com** for further details.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Roadside assistance

The participating countries in Europe are: Andorra, Austria, Belgium, Croatia, Czech Republic, Denmark (excluding the Faeroe Islands), Estonia, Finland (excluding Aland), France, Germany, Gibraltar, Greece, Hungary, Italy, Latvia, Liechtenstein, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Monaco, Netherlands, Norway, Poland, Portugal, Republic of Ireland, San Marino, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain (including the Balearic Islands and Canary Islands), Sweden, Switzerland, and Turkey.

The participating countries in Middle East and North Africa (MENA) are: Bahrain, Egypt, Jordan, Kuwait, Lebanon, Morocco, Oman, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, Tunisia, and United Arab Emirates.

All calls to Land Rover Assistance are recorded to assist in confirming details of calls that may be incomplete or unclear. Recordings may be used for training purposes.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

DECLARATIONS OF CONFORMITY

The following information is correct at the time of print. The digital handbook can be viewed at: **www.ownerinfo.landrover.com** and is updated with the latest available information.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

E150388

SIEMENS VDO
Automotive

SiemensVDO Automotive AG „P.O. Box 10 09 43 „D-93009 Regensburg

Name Dagmar Kolar
Department SV C TS RBG EMC-Laboratory
Tel. +49(0)941/790-6699
Fax +49(0)941/790-136699
E-Mail dagmar.kolar@siemens.com
Internet www.siemensvdo.de
Our Ref. Doc_5WK49096.doc
Date. 03/08/2005

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer: Siemens VDO Automotive AG
Body & Chassis Electronics

Address: Dep. SV C BC P2 RF TG
Siemenstrasse 12
D-93049 Regensburg
Germany

Product type designation: 5WK4 9096

Intended use: Radio frequency receiver used in vehicle locking/unlocking systems

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:

Health and safety pursuant to §3.1.a: *Applied standard(s):* EN 60950:2000

Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1.b: *Applied standard(s):* EN 301 489-1,-3: V1.4.1 (2002-08)

Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2: *Applied standard(s):* EN 300 220-1: V1.3.1 (2000-09)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:

CE

Siemens VDO Automotive AG

Regensburg, 2005-08-03

i.V.
Jean-Francois Tarabbia
Executive Vice President
Body and Chassis Electronics Operations

i.V.
Dr. Martin Fischer
Vice President
Wireless Products and Modules

SiemensVDO Automotive AG Body & Chassis Electronics
Helmut Matschi
Klaus Müller
Postal Address: SiemensVDO Automotive AG P.O. Box 10 09 43 D-93009 Regensburg
Office Address: Siemenstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Tel. +49(0)941/790-0

SiemensVDO Automotive AG „Chairman of the Supervisory Board: Edward G. Krubasik „Managing Board: Franz Wesseriq, Chairman „Members: Klaus Egger, Günter Hauptmann, Johann Löttner „Registered Office: München „Commercial Registry: München, HRB 132637

SIEMENS VDO
Automotive

SiemensVDO Automotive AG „P.O. Box 10 09 43 „D-93009 Regensburg

Name Dagmar Kolar
Department SV C TS RBG EMC Laboratory
Tel. +49(0)941/790-6699
Fax +49(0)941/790-1366999
E-Mail dagmar.kolar@siemens.com
Internet www.siemensvdo.de
Our Ref. Doc_S122780002.doc
Date. 09/11/2005

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer: Siemens VDO Automotive AG
Body & Chassis Electronics

Address: Siemensstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Germany

Product type designation: S122780002

Intended use: Radio frequency transmitter used Tire Pressure Monitoring system

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:

Health and safety pursuant to §3.1.a: *Applied standard(s):* EN 60950: 2000

Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1.b: *Applied standard(s):* EN 301 489 -1,-3: V1.4.1 (2002-08)

Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2: *Applied standard(s):* EN 300 220 -1: V1.3.1 (2000-09)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:

CE

Siemens VDO Automotive AG

Regensburg, 2005-11-09

i.V.
Jean-Francois Tarabbia
Executive Vice President
Body and Chassis Electronics Operations

i.V.
Dr. Martin Fischer
Vice President
Wireless Products and Modules

SiemensVDO Automotive AG Body & Chassis Electronics
Helmut Matschi
Klaus Müller
Postal Address: SiemensVDO Automotive AG P.O. Box 10 09 43 D-93009 Regensburg
Office Address: Siemensstraße 12 D-93055 Regensburg Tel. +49(0)941/790-0

SiemensVDO Automotive AG „Chairman of the Supervisory Board: Edward G. Krubasik „Managing Board: Franz Wesseriq, Chairman „Members: Klaus Egger, Günter Hauptmann, Johann Löttner „Registered Office: München „Commercial Registry: München, HRB 132637

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

E150389

Lear Corporation
Electronics Systems Division
21557 Telegraph Road
Southfield, MI 48033-4248
USA
Phone (248) 447-1500

Date: February 6, 2009

INFORMATION TO BE INCLUDED IN THE END USER'S MANUAL

The following information must be included in the end product [illegible]ual to ensure continued FCC and Industry Canada regulatory compliance. The [illegible]s must be included in the manual if the device label is not readily accessible to the end user. The compliance paragraphs below must be included in the user's manual.

The following user's manual statements are provided by Lear Corporation to Jaguar Land Rover electronically after certification.

Key fobs

Land Rover, Range Rover,

****

FCC ID: KOBJTF10A (Range Rover, Land Rover)
FCC ID: KOBJTF10B (Jaguar)
IC: 3521A-JTF10A (Range Rover, Land Rover)
IC: 3521A-JTF10B (Jaguar)
Model #: AH42-15K601A (Range Rover)
Model #: AH22-15K601A (Land Rover)
Model #: AW93-15K601A (Jaguar)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

****

Lear Corporation
Electronics Systems Division
21557 Telegraph Road
Southfield, MI 48033-4248
USA
Phone (248) 447-1500

RKE Receiver

Land Rover, Range Rover, Jaguar

****

FCC ID: KOBJLR09A
IC: 3521-JLR09A
Model #: AH42-15K602-A

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

****

Passive Entry / Passive Start Module

Land Rover, Range Rover, Jaguar

****

FCC ID: KOBJBG10A
IC: 3521-JBG10A
Model #: AH22-19H440 (PEPS)
Model #: AH42-19H440 (Passive Start ONLY)

FCC ID: KOBJBG10B
IC: 3521-JBG10B
Model #: AH22-19H440 (PEPS)
Model #: AH42-19H440 (Passive Start ONLY)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

E150360

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive.	1999/5/EC
Manufacturer:	Lear Corporation
Type Designation / FCC ID:	KOBJBG10A
Model Numbers:	5E0770257, 5E0770357, 19H440, AH22-19H440, AH42-19H440, AH22-19H440-AD, AH42-19H440-AE
Description / Intended Use:	Remote Function Actuator (RFA), passive keyless entry and start system low frequency initiator
Trademarks.	Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar
Applied Standards.	European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC ETSI EN 60950 ETSI EN 300 330 CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03 AS/NZS 4268 FCC Regulations 47 CFR Part 15
Responsible Person:	Kevin Cotton Lear Corporation 21557 Telegraph Road Southfield, Michigan 48033 United States of America

Hereby, **Lear Corporation** declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of **Directive 1999/5/EC**, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to **Directive 1999/5/EC**

Signed. Kevin Cotton
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date. **27 March 2009**

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive.	1999/5/EC
Manufacturer.	Lear Corporation
Type Designation / FCC ID.	KOBJBG10A
Model Numbers:	5E0770237, 5E0770337, 19H440, AH22-19H440-AC, AH42-19H440-AD, AH22-19H440, AH42-19H440
Description / Intended Use:	Remote Function Actuator (RFA), passive keyless entry and start system low frequency initiator
Trademarks:	Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar
Applied Standards:	European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC ETSI EN 60950 ETSI EN 300 330 CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03 AS/NZS 4268 FCC Regulations 47 CFR Part 15
Responsible Person:	Kevin Cotton Lear Corporation 21557 Telegraph Road Southfield, Michigan 48033 United States of America

Hereby, Lear Corporation declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to Directive 1999/5/EC

Signed. Kevin Cotton
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date. 27 March 2009

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

E150391

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive:	1999/5/EC
Manufacturer:	Lear Corporation
Type Designation:	5E0760127
Model Numbers:	5E0760127, 15K602, AH42-15K602-B, AH42-15K602-BC
Description / Intended Use:	RF Receiver (RFR), used for passive entry and passive start, remote keyless entry and tire pressure monitoring systems
Trademarks:	Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar
Applied Standards:	European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC ETSI EN 60950 ETSI EN 300 220 CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03 AS/NZS 4268
Responsible Person:	Kevin Cotton Lear Corporation 21557 Telegraph Road Southfield, Michigan 48033 United States of America

Hereby, **Lear Corporation** declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of **Directive 1999/5/EC**, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to **Directive 1999/5/EC**.

Signed: Kevin Cotton
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date: **27 March 2009**

EC Declaration of Conformity

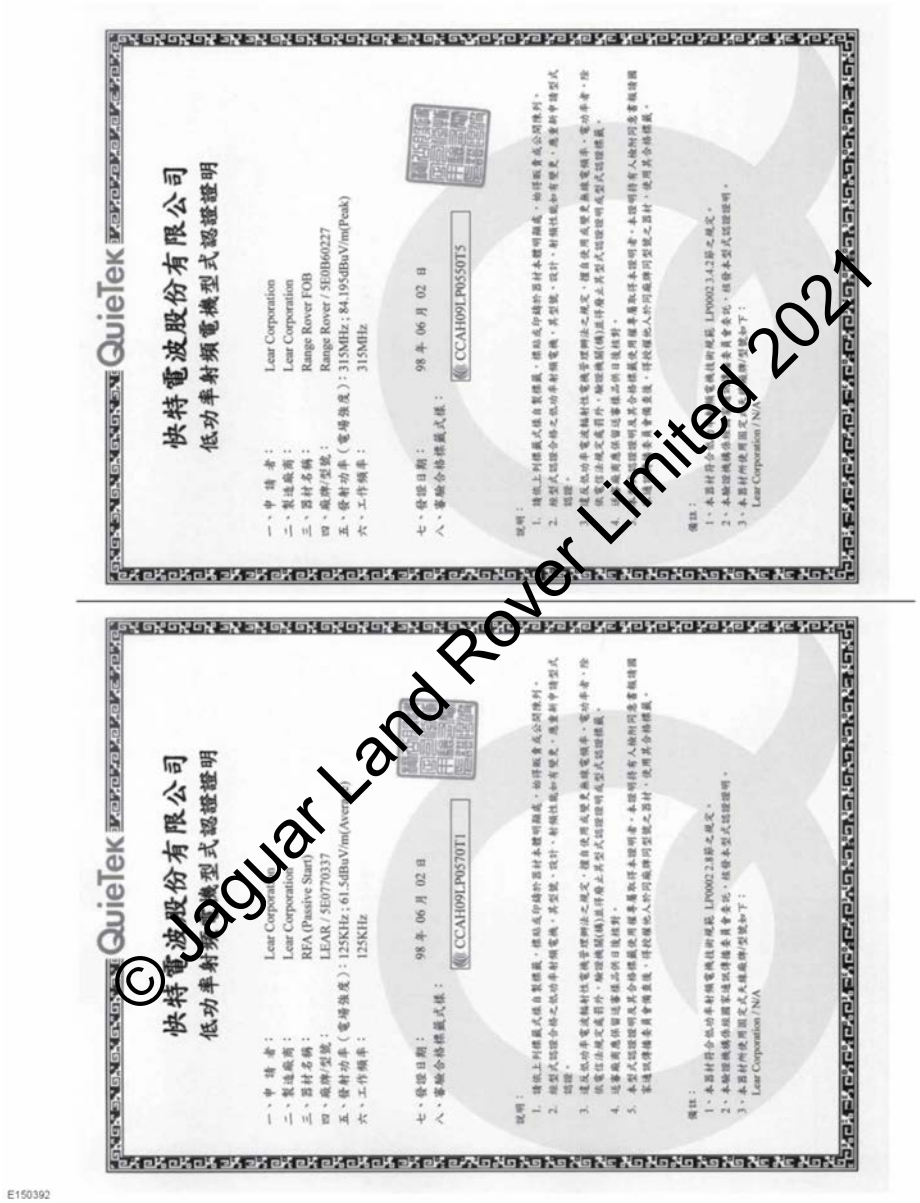
EC Directive:	1999/5/EC
Manufacturer:	Lear Corporation
Type Designation:	15K601
Model Numbers:	5E0B50127, 5E0B60127, 15K601-BB, AH42-15K601B, AH22-15K601B, AH42-15K601-BC, AH22-15K601-BC
Description / Intended Use:	Passive Key (PK) / Customer Identification Device (CID), passive keyless entry system keyfob
Trademarks:	Land Rover / Range Rover
Applied Standards:	CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03 ETSI EN 60950 ETSI EN 300 220 ETSI EN 301 489 IEC EN 60950 AS/NZS 4268
Responsible Person:	Kevin Cotton Lear Corporation 21557 Telegraph Road Southfield, Michigan 48033 United States of America

Hereby, **Lear Corporation** declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of **Directive 1999/5/EC**, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to **Directive 1999/5/EC**.

Signed: Kevin Cotton
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date: **26 March 2009**

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



快特電波股份有限公司
低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申 請 者：Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商：Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱：Range Rover FOB
四、廠牌/型號：Range Rover / 5E0B60227
五、發射功率（電場強度）：315MHz；84.195dBuV/m(Peak)
六、工作頻率：315MHz

七、發證日期：98 年 06 月 02 日
八、審驗合格標籤式樣：

CCAH09LP0550T5

說明：
1. 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標示在容器外部本體明顯處，始得販售或公開陳列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻特性如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，經自地方主管機關處電機停、電功率、除依電信法處罰外，本證將逕行廢止其型式認證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 這事廠商保留這事修改所有日後修訂。
5. 本型式認證明及其合格標籤使用權專屬於本證明者，本證明持有人始得同意專屬轉讓或讓與他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。

備註：
1. 本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 2.1節之規定。
2. 本驗證機構依組織章程規定辦理本型式認證證明。
3. 本器材所使用固定天線廠牌/型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

E150392

©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

E150393

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

QuieTek

快特電波股份有限公司

低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申 請 者： Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商： Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱： Range Rover FOB
四、廠牌/型號： Range Rover / 5E0B50227
五、發射功率（電場強度）：315MHz ; 84.195dBuV/m(Peak)
六、工作頻率： 315MHz

七、發證日期： 98 年 06 月 02 日
八、審驗合格標籤式樣：

CCAH09LP0551T7

說明：

1. 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標貼或印錄於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得廢止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 送審廠商應保留送審樣品供日後核對。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用權專屬取得本證明者，本證明持有人檢附同意書報請國家通訊傳播委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。

備註：

1、本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 3.4.2節之規定。
2、本驗證機構係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3、本器材所使用固定式天線廠牌/型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

QuieTek

快特電波股份有限公司

低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申 請 者： Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商： Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱： RFA (Passive Start & Start Module)
四、廠牌/型號： LEAR / 5E0770237
五、發射功率（電場強度）：125KHz ; 63.3dBuV/m(Average)
六、工作頻率： 125KHz

七、發證日期： 98 年 06 月 02 日
八、審驗合格標籤式樣：

CCAH09LP0560T8

說明：

1. 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標貼或印錄於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得廢止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 送審廠商應保留送審樣品供日後核對。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用權專屬取得本證明者，本證明持有人檢附同意書報請國家通訊傳播委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。

備註：

1、本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 2.8節之規定。
2、本驗證機構係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3、本器材所使用固定式天線廠牌/型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

E160934

QuieTek

快特電波股份有限公司

低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申 請 者：Lear Co...
二、製造廠商：Lear Corporati...
三、器材名稱：Jaguar fob
四、廠牌/型號：JAGUAR / 5E0B4P2...
五、發射功率（電場強度）：315MHz ; 83.225dBuV/m(Peak)
六、工作頻率：315MHz

七、審驗日期：98 年 07 月 01 日
八、審驗合格標籤式樣：

CCAH09LP0830T1

說明：

1. 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標貼或印錄於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得廢止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 送審廠商應保留送審樣品供日後核對。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用權專屬取得本證明者，依電信管制射頻器材審驗辦法第15條規定，得有人得經由網際網路申請同意他人於同廠牌同型號之電信管制射頻器材使用型式認證標籤，並於次日起 30 天內，應檢具「電信管制射頻器材審驗合格標籤或符合性聲明標籤同意使用備查表」送本會備查。

備註：

1. 本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範(LP0002 3.4.2節)之規定。
2. 驗證機構係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3. 本器材使用固定式天線，廠牌/型號為:Lear Corporation / N/A。

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Continental

Continental Automotive GmbH – Postfach 100 903 – 93009 Regensburg

Kolar Dagmar
AQL RBG 42
Phone +49 (941) 790-6699
Fax +49 (941) 790-136699
dagmar.kolar@continental-corporation.com

Date: July 29, 2008
Your message dated:
Our Reference:
Your reference:

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer:	Continental Automotive GmbH
Address:	Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany
Product type designation:	S180 052 020 A
Intended use:	Tire Pressure System

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:

Health and safety pursuant to §3.1.a:	*Applied standard(s):* EN 60950-1: 2006
Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1.b:	*Applied standard(s):* EN 301 489 -1: V1.6.1 (2005-09) EN 301 489 -3: V1.4.1 (2002-08)
Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2:	*Applied standard(s):* EN 300 220 -1: V2.1.1 (2006-04) EN 300 220 -2: V2.1.1 (2006-04)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:

CE

Continental Automotive GmbH

Regensburg, 2008-07-29

Andreas Wolf
Executive Vice President
Body &Security

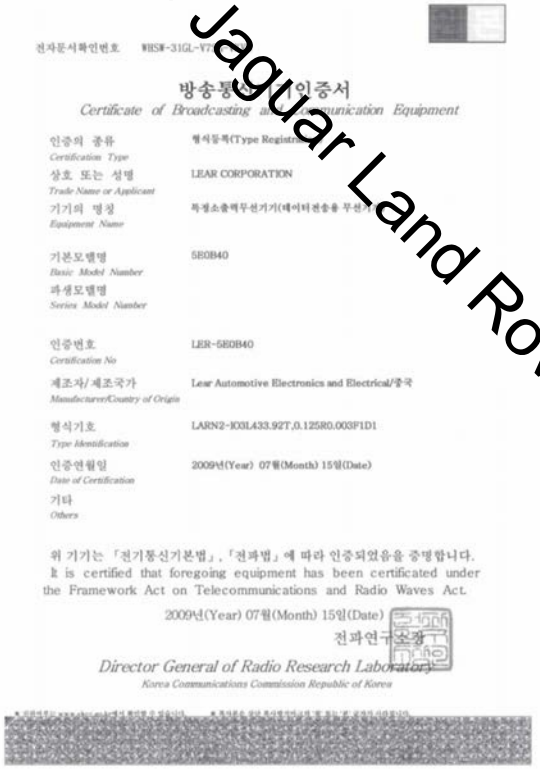
N... Müller
Director Product Group 3
Body & Security

Continental Automotive GmbH
Siemensstr. 12
93055 Regensburg
Postfach 100 903
93009 Regensburg

Phone +49 941 790-0
Fax +49 941 790-4999
www.continental-corporation.com

Registered Office:
Hannover
Registered Court:
Amtsgericht Hannover
HRB 59424

General Managers:
Gerard Cordonnier,
Helmut Matschi,
Harald Stuhlmann



전자문서확인번호 WHSW-31GL-V7

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

인증의 종류 *Certification Type*	형식등록(Type Registration)
상호 또는 성명 *Trade Name or Applicant*	LEAR CORPORATION
기기의 명칭 *Equipment Name*	특정소출력무선기기(데이터전송용 무선기
기본모델명 *Basic Model Number*	5E0B40
파생모델명 *Series Model Number*	
인증번호 *Certification No*	LER-5E0B40
제조자/제조국가 *Manufacturer/Country of Origin*	Lear Automotive Electronics and Electrical/중국
형식기호 *Type Identification*	LARN2-103L433.92T,0.125R0.003F1D1
인증연월일 *Date of Certification*	2009년(Year) 07월(Month) 15일(Date)
기타 *Others*	

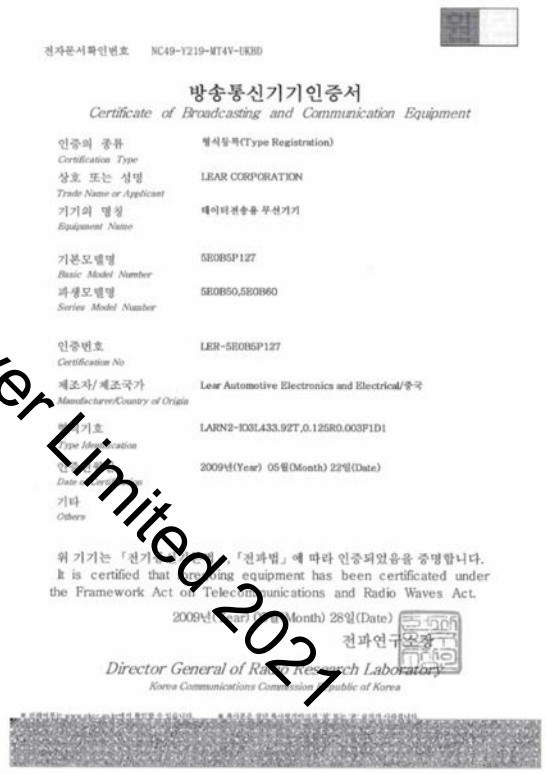
위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

2009년(Year) 07월(Month) 15일(Date)

전파연구소장

Director General of Radio Research Laboratory

Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea



전자문서확인번호 NC49-Y219-MT4V-UKBD

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

인증의 종류 *Certification Type*	형식등록(Type Registration)
상호 또는 성명 *Trade Name or Applicant*	LEAR CORPORATION
기기의 명칭 *Equipment Name*	데이터전송용 무선기기
기본모델명 *Basic Model Number*	5E0B5P127
파생모델명 *Series Model Number*	5E0B50,5E0B60
인증번호 *Certification No*	LER-5E0B5P127
제조자/제조국가 *Manufacturer/Country of Origin*	Lear Automotive Electronics and Electrical/중국
형식기호 *Type Identification*	LARN2-103L433.92T,0.125R0.003F1D1
인증연월일 *Date of Certification*	2009년(Year) 05월(Month) 22일(Date)
기타 *Others*	

위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

2009년(Year) 05월(Month) 28일(Date)

전파연구소장

Director General of Radio Research Laboratory

Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

전자문서확인번호 [illegible]RWWI-SU1X

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Br[illegible] and Communication Equipment

인증의 종류 *Certification Type*	형식등[illegible]egistration)
상호 또는 성명 *Trade Name or Applicant*	LEAR C[illegible]
기기의 명칭 *Equipment Name*	비약 전계강도 무선기[illegible]
기본모델명 *Basic Model Number*	5E0770237
파생모델명 *Series Model Number*	
인증번호 *Certification No*	LER-5E0770237
제조자/제조국가 *Manufacturer/Country of Origin*	Lear Valls Automotive Electronics and Electrical/스페인
형식기호 *Type Identification*	LPD-I03L0.125TA1D
인증연월일 *Date of Certification*	2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)
기타 *Others*	

위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

전파연구소장

Director General of Radio Research Laboratory

Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea

전자문서확인번호 JVC5-A5YQ-BF4C-1D8T

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

인증의 종류 *Certification Type*	형식등록(Type Registration)
상호 또는 성명 *Trade Name or Applicant*	LEAR CORPORATION
기기의 명칭 *Equipment Name*	비약 전계강도 무선기기
기본모델명 *Basic Model Number*	5E0770237
파생모델명 *Series Model Number*	5E0770337
인증번호 *Certification No*	LER-5E0770237
제조자/제조국가 *Manufacturer/Country of Origin*	Lear Valls Automotive Electronics and Electrical/스페인
형식기호 *Type Identification*	LPD-I03L0.125TA1D
인증연월일 *Date of Certification*	2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)
[illegible] *Others*	

위 기[illegible]기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is cer[illegible] foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Frame[illegible]t on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

[illegible]9년(Year) 09월(Month) 18일(Date)

전파연구소장

Director General of [illegible]adio Research Laboratory

Korea Comm[illegible]ission Republic of Korea

E150547

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ICASA

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
Pinmill Farm, [illegible] Sandton
Private Bag X10002, Sandton, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2009/302

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 95 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document (see overleaf), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

Company Particulars

Name	:	**Jaguar Land Rover SA**
Street Address	:	**Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton**
Telephone Number	:	**012 842 3274**
Facsimile Number	:	**012 845 1005**
Registration Number	:	**2001/027269/07**

Description of Apparatus

Category	:	**Remote Function Actuator (RFA)**
Model	:	**KOBJBG10B**
Frequency Range	:	**119 – 135 kHz**
ITU Emission Code	:	**12KG1D**
Modulation	:	**BPSK**
Power Output	:	**+37.7 DbµA/m @ 3m**
Channel Spacing	:	-
Features	:	-

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

Philemon Molefe
Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

09 JUN 2009

P Mashile (**Chairperson**), NA Buthi, TLV Makhakhe, R Nkuna, BB Ntombela, FK Sibande, Dr MM Soukisa
Prof JCW van Rooyen SC, MM Zokwe (**Councillors**), **BK Motlana (CEO)**

ICASA

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
Pinmill Farm, 164 Katherine Street, Sandton
Private Bag X10002, Sandton, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2009/303

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 95 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document (see overleaf), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

Company Particulars

Name	:	**Jaguar Land Rover SA**
Street Address	:	**Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton**
Telephone Number	:	**012 842 3274**
Facsimile Number	:	**012 845 1005**
Registration Number	:	**2001/027269/07**

Description of Apparatus

Category	:	**Remote Function Actuator (RFA)**
Model	:	**KOBJBG10A**
Frequency Range	:	**119 – 135 kHz**
ITU Emission Code	:	**12KG1D**
Modulation	:	**BPSK**
Power Output	:	**+40.7 DbµA/m @ 3m**
Channel Spacing	:	-
Features	:	-

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

Philemon Molefe
Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

09 JUN 2009

P Mashile (**Chairperson**), NA Buthi, TLV Makhakhe, R Nkuna, BB Ntombela, FK Sibande, Dr MM Soukisa
Prof JCW van Rooyen SC, MM Zokwe (**Councillors**), **BK Motlana (CEO)**

E150398

ICASA

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
Pinmill Farm, 164 Katherine Street, Sandton
Private Bag X10002, Sandton, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2009/304

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 95 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document (see overleaf), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

Company Particulars

Name	:	**Jaguar Land Rover SA**
Street Address	:	**Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton**
Telephone Number	:	**012 842 3274**
Facsimile Number	:	**012 845 1005**
Registration Number	:	**2001/027269/07**

Description of Apparatus

Category	:	**Low Frequency Initiator FET Receiver**
Model	:	**5E0760127**
Frequency Range	:	**433.05 – 434.79 MHz**
ITU Emission Code	:	**739KK1D**
Modulation	:	**ASK, FSK**
Power Output	:	-
Channel Spacing	:	-
Features	:	-

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

Philemon Molefe
Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

0 9 JUN 2009

P Mashile (Chairperson), NA Batyi, TLV Makhakhe, R Nkuna, BB Ntombela, FK Sibande, Dr MM Sucikwa,

ICASA

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
Pinmill Farm, 164 Katherine Street, Sandton
Private Bag X10002, Sandton, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2009/305

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 95 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document (see overleaf), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

Company Particulars

Name	:	**Jaguar Land Rover SA**
Street Address	:	**Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton**
Telephone Number	:	**012 842 3274**
Facsimile Number	:	**012 845 1005**
Registration Number	:	**2001/027269/07**

Description of Apparatus

Category	:	**Key Fob Transmitter**
Model	:	**15K601**
Frequency Range	:	**433.05 MHz**
ITU Emission Code	:	**739KK1D**
Modulation	:	**ASK, FSK**
Power Output	:	**-14.6 dBm**
Channel Spacing	:	-
Features	:	-

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

Philemon Molefe
Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

0 9 JUN 2009

P Mashile (Chairperson), NA Batyi, TLV Makhakhe, R Nkuna, BB Ntombela, FK Sibande, Dr MM Sucikwa,
Prof JCW van Rooyen SC, MM Zrikwa (Councillors), BK Motlana (CEO)

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ALPINE ELECTRONICS, INC.
20-1 Yoshima-Kogyodanchi Iwaki-City, Fukushima 970-1153, Japan
Phone: (+81) 246-34-5111 Fax: (+81) 246-36-8090

ALPINE

DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

We, **Alpine Electronics, Inc.** of the above address, hereby declare, at our sole responsibility, that the following product conforms to the Essential Requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed herewith.

Product : **Bluetooth Module**

Model Type Number : **JAM 2.1 BT PWB EU**

Directive and Standards used : **Radio: EN 300 328 V1.7.1: 200610**

EMC: EN 301 489-17 V1.3.2: 2008-04

EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1: 2008-04

ISO7637-2: 2004

Safety: IEC 60065 Ed.7: 2001 + Amd.1: 2005

EN 60065: 2002 + Amd.1: 2006

Year of starting CE marking : 2009

Signature : *P. Awake*

Name : S. Awake

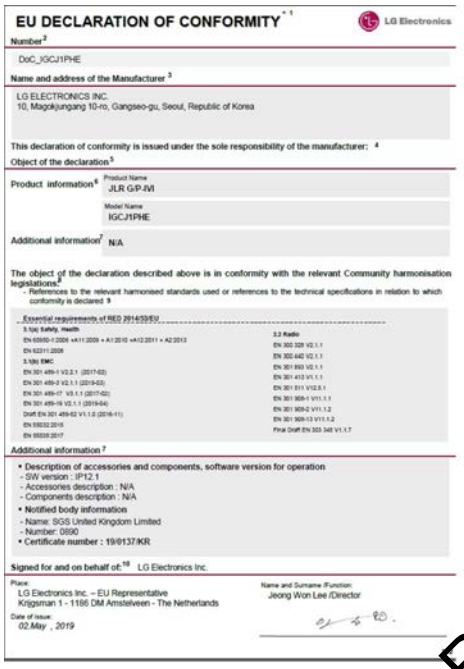
Date : November 2009

CE

E150399

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Type approval



EU DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY [1]

LG Electronics

Number [2]

DoC_IGCJ1PHE

Name and address of the Manufacturer [3]

LG ELECTRONICS INC.
10, Magokjungang 10-ro, Gangseo-gu, Seoul, Republic of Korea

This declaration of conformity is issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer: [4]

Object of the declaration [5]

Product information [6]

Product Name: JLR G/P-IVI

Model Name: IGCJ1PHE

Additional information [7]: N/A

The object of the declaration described above is in conformity with the relevant Community harmonisation legislations: [8]

- References to the relevant harmonised standards used or references to the technical specifications in relation to which conformity is declared [9]

Essential requirements of RED 2014/53/EU

3.1(a) Safety, Health

EN 60950-1:2006 +A11:2009 + A1:2010 +A12:2011 + A2:2013
EN 62311:2008

3.1(b) EMC

EN 301 489-1 V2.2.1 (2017-03)
EN 301 489-2 V2.1.1 (2019-03)
EN 301 489-17 V3.1.1 (2017-02)
EN 301 489-19 V2.1.1 (2019-04)
Draft EN 301 489-52 V1.1.0 (2016-11)
EN 55032:2015
EN 55035:2017

3.2 Radio

EN 300 328 V2.1.1
EN 300 440 V2.1.1
EN 301 893 V2.1.1
EN 301 413 V1.1.1
EN 301 511 V12.5.1
EN 301 908-1 V11.1.1
EN 301 908-2 V11.1.2
EN 301 908-13 V11.1.2
Final Draft EN 303 345 V1.1.7

Additional information [7]

- Description of accessories and components, software version for operation
  - SW version : IP12.1
  - Accessories description : N/A
  - Components description : N/A
- Notified body information
  - Name: SGS United Kingdom Limited
  - Number: 0890
- Certificate number : 19/0137/KR

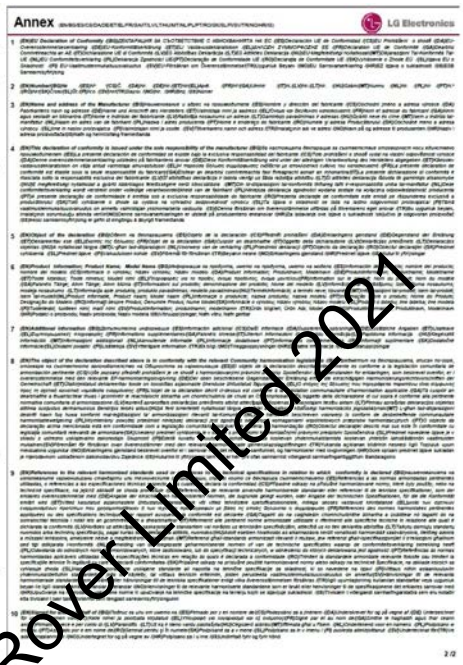
Signed for and on behalf of:[10] LG Electronics Inc.

Place: LG Electronics Inc. – EU Representative
Krijgsman 1 - 1186 DM Amstelveen - The Netherlands

Name and Surname /Function: Jeong Won Lee /Director

Date of issue: 02.May , 2019

E255496



Annex

LG Electronics

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

OMAN-TRA
R/5769/18
D172338

Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission

ZICTA
ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2018/7/25

기자재의 명칭 : 미약 전계강도 무전기기
상호명 : 엘지전자(주)
제조자 / 제조국가 : 엘지전자(주) / 중국
주의사항 해당 무선설비는 운용 중 전파혼신의 가능성이 있음.

Manufacturer info : Ел-Джі Електронікс Інк.", 10, Магок'юнганг 10-ро, Гангсео-гу, Сеул, 07796, Корея
Importer info : Winner Imports Ukraine Ltd" at Kapitanovka, 5-A, Dachnaya Str. Kiev region, 08131, Ukraine
Інформація про викиди
111 кГц / Максимальна потужність РЧ: 42 дБмк А / м
справжнім (найменування виробника) заявляє, що тип радіообладнання (позначення типу радіообладнання) відповідає
Технічному регламенту радіообладнання;
повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою адресою:https://www.lg.com/global/support/cedoc/cedoc.

E258974

CONATEL Mark related JLR in Paraguay real importer information (Agencia Comercial Espinoza (ACE) S.A.C. Cal. Avda. Espana 1180 esq. Tte. Maluff Asuncion, Paraguay 9115) is required (label will be filled in) or There is not an exclusive commercial representative in Paraguay and the product can be imported freely by any importer/commerce.



Dilarang melakukan perubahan spesifikasi yang dapat menimbulkan gangguan fisik dan/atau elektromagnetik terhadap lingkungan sekitarnya

E253109

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Type approval

The following information relates to Declarations of Conformity for vehicles fitted with a phone signal booster.

EU Declaration of Conformity:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Български	С настоящото Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH декларира, че този тип радиосъоръжение LTE-MBC-EU2-JLR е в съответствие с Директива 2014/53/ЕС. Цялостният текст на ЕС декларацията за съответствие може да се намери на следния интернет адрес: http://www.molex.com/doc
Čeština	Tímto Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH prohlašuje, že typ rádiového zařízení LTE-MBC-EU2-JLR je v souladu se směrnicí 2014/53/EU. Úplné znění EU prohlášení o shodě je k dispozici na této internetové adrese: http://www.molex.com/doc
Dansk	Hermed erklærer Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH, at radioudstyrstypen LTE-MBC-EU2-JLR er i overensstemmelse med direktiv 2014/53/EU. EU-overensstemmelseserklæringens fulde tekst kan findes på følgende internetadresse: http://www.molex.com/doc
Deutsch	Hiermit erklärt Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH, dass der Funkanlagentyp LTE-MBC-EU2-JLR der Richtlinie 2014/53/EU entspricht. Der vollständige Text der EU-Konformitätserklärung ist unter der folgenden Internetadresse verfügbar: http://www.molex.com/doc
English	Hereby, Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH declares that the radio equipment type LTE-MBC-EU2-JLR is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: http://www.molex.com/doc
Eesti	Käesolevaga deklareerib Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH, et käesolev raadioseadme tüüp LTE-MBC-EU2-JLR vastab direktiivi 2014/53/EL nõuetele. ELi vastavusdeklaratsiooni täielik tekst on kättesaadav järgmisel internetiaadressil: http://www.molex.com/doc
Español	Por la presente, Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH declara que el tipo de equipo radioeléctrico LTE-MBC-EU2-JLR es conforme con la Directiva 2014/53/UE. El texto completo de la declaración UE de conformidad está disponible en la dirección Internet siguiente: http://www.molex.com/doc
Français	Le soussigné, Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH, déclare que l'équipement radioélectrique du type LTE-MBC-EU2-JLR est conforme à la directive 2014/53/UE. Le texte complet de la déclaration UE de conformité est disponible à l'adresse internet suivante: http://www.molex.com/doc
Ελληνικά	Με την παρούσα ο/η Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH, δηλώνει ότι ο ραδιοεξοπλισμός τύπου LTE-MBC-EU2-JLR πληροί την οδηγία 2014/53/ΕΕ. Το πλήρες κείμενο της δήλωσης συμμόρφωσης ΕΕ διατίθεται στην ακόλουθη ιστοσελίδα στο διαδίκτυο: http://www.molex.com/doc
Hrvatski	Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH ovime izjavljuje da je radijska oprema tipa LTE-MBC-EU2-JLR u skladu s Direktivom 2014/53/EU. Cjeloviti tekst EU izjave o sukladnosti dostupan je na sljedećoj internetskoj adresi: http://www.molex.com/doc
Italiano	Il fabbricante, Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH, dichiara che il tipo di apparecchiatura radio LTE-MBC-EU2-JLR è conforme alla direttiva 2014/53/UE. Il testo completo della dichiarazione di conformità UE è disponibile al seguente indirizzo Internet: http://www.molex.com/doc
Latviešu	Ar šo Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH deklarē, ka radioiekārta LTE-MBC-EU2-JLR atbilst Direktīvai 2014/53/ES. Pilns ES atbilstības deklarācijas teksts ir pieejams šādā interneta [illegible] http://www.molex.com/doc
Lietuvių	Aš, Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH, patvirtinu, kad radijo įrenginių tipas LTE-MBC-EU2-JLR atitinka Direktyvą 2014/53/ES. Visas ES atitikties deklaracijos tekstas prieinamas šiuo interneto adresu: http://www.molex.com/doc
Magyar	Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH igazolja, hogy a LTE-MBC-EU2-JLR típusú rádióberendezés megfelel a 2014/53/EU irányelvnek. Az EU-megfelelőségi nyilatkozat teljes szövege elérhető a következő internetes címen: http://www.molex.com/doc
Malti	B'dan, Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH, tiddikjara li dan it-tip ta' tagħmir tar-radju LTE-MBC-EU2-JLR huwa konformi mad-Direttiva 2014/53/UE. It-test kollu tad-dikjarazzjoni ta' konformità tal-UE huwa disponibbli f'dan l-indirizz tal-Internet li ġej: http://www.molex.com/doc
Nederlands	Hierbij verklaar ik, Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH, dat het type radioapparatuur LTE-MBC-EU2-JLR conform is met Richtlijn 2014/53/EU. De volledige tekst van de EU-conformiteitsverklaring kan worden geraadpleegd op het volgende internetadres: http://www.molex.com/doc
Polski	Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH niniejszym oświadcza, że typ urządzenia radiowego LTE-MBC-EU2-JLR jest zgodny z dyrektywą 2014/53/UE. Pełny tekst deklaracji zgodności UE jest dostępny pod następującym adresem internetowym: http://www.molex.com/doc
Português	O(A) abaixo assinado(a) Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH declara que o presente tipo de equipamento de rádio LTE-MBC-EU2-JLR está em conformidade com a Diretiva 2014/53/UE. O texto integral da declaração de conformidade está disponível no seguinte endereço de Internet: http://www.molex.com/doc
Românesc	Prin prezenta, Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH declară că tipul de echipamente radio LTE-MBC-EU2-JLR este în conformitate cu Directiva 2014/53/UE. Textul integral al declarației UE de conformitate este disponibil la următoarea adresă internet: http://www.molex.com/doc
Slovensko	Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH potrjuje, da je tip radijske opreme LTE-MBC-EU2-JLR skladen z irektivo 2014/53/EU. Celotno besedilo izjave EU o skladnosti je na voljo na naslednjem spletnem naslovu: http://www.molex.com/doc
Slovensky	Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH týmto vyhlasuje, že rádiové zariadenie typu LTE-MBC-EU2-JLR je v súlade so smernicou 2014/53/EÚ. Úplné EÚ vyhlásenie o zhode je k dispozícii na tejto internetovej adrese:: http://www.molex.com/doc
Suomi	Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH vakuuttaa, että radiolaitetyyppi LTE-MBC-EU2-JLR on direktiivin 2014/53/EU mukainen. EU-vaatimustenmukaisuusvakuutuksen täysimittainen teksti on saatavilla seuraavassa internetosoitteessa: http://www.molex.com/doc
Svenska	Härmed försäkrar Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH att denna typ av radioutrustning LTE-MBC-EU2-JLR överensstämmer med direktiv 2014/53/EU. Den fullständiga texten till EU-försäkran om verensstämmelse finns på följande webbadress: http://www.molex.com/doc

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Type approval

Phone Signal Booster technical information.

Frequency Bands:

GSM900 (uplink: 880 ... 915 MHz / downlink: 925 ... 960 MHz)

GSM1800 (uplink: 1710 ... 1785 MHz / downlink: 1805 ... 1880 MHz)

WCDMA FDDI (uplink: 1920 ... 1980 MHz / downlink: 2110 ... 2170 MHz)

WCDMA FDDIII (uplink: 1710 ... 1785 MHz / downlink: 1805 ... 1880 MHz)

WCDMA FDDVIII (uplink: 880 ... 915 MHz / downlink: 925 ... 960 MHz)

LTE FDD1 (uplink: 1920 ... 1980 MHz / downlink: 2110 ... 2170 MHz)

LTE FDD3 (uplink: 1710 ... 1785 MHz / downlink: 1805 ... 1880 MHz)

LTE FDD7 (uplink: 2500 … 2570 MHz / downlink: 2620 … 2690 MHz)

LTE FDD8 (uplink: 880 ... 915 MHz / downlink: 925 ... 960 MHz)

LTE FDD20 (uplink: 832 … 862MHz / downlink: 791 … 821 MHz)

Maximum Radio Frequency (RF) Power:

GSM 900: 33dBm / 2 Watt

GSM 1800: 30dBm / 1 Watt

UMTS: 21dBm / 0.125 Watt

LTE: 23dBm / 0.2 Watt

Manufacturer: Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH

Address: Märkische Strasse 72, 15806 Zossen, Germany Phone: + 49 3377 316-0

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

112 eCall....345
2-stage unlocking....11
360° parking aid....286
4x4i....297
  4WD information wade sensing....302
  ITL....304
4x4i safety....301

A

About this handbook....2
ACC
  follow mode off....212
  performance....210
Access height (air suspension)....177
Accessories....371
  tow ball....148
Acoustic vehicle alert system (AVAS)
  hybrid system....161
Active differential control....189
Activity key
  unlocking....13
Adaptive cruise control....208
  adaptive cruise control gap change....212
  follow mode performance....213
  queue assist....213
  stop and go....214
Adaptive cruise control follow mode....211
Adaptive cruise control on warning lamp....87
Adaptive cruise control override....210
Adaptive cruise control with steering assist active
  warning lamps....89
Adaptive cruise control with steering assist not active
  warning lamps....89
Adaptive driving beam....95
Adaptive dynamics....181
Adaptive front lighting system....95
Adaptive headlamps....95
Adaptive speed limiter
  warning lamps....87
AdBlue....359
Advanced tow assist
  trailer reverse....139
Advanced tow assist calibration....138
Age degradation (tyres)....412
Airbag
  safety locations....68
Airbags
  cover cleaning....381
  curtain....69
  deployment....64–65
  disability modifications....67
  disabling....69
  front....69
  introduction....64
  maintenance....370
  obstruction....65
  safety....64
  service information....66
  side....69
  warning lamp....65, 84
Airbag safety labels....54
Air conditioning
  air quality sensor....272
  automatic recirculation....272
  front....270
  remote control batteries....283
  using the remote control....282
Air conditioning (a/c)
  fluid top up....367
Air suspension
  access height....177
  auto access height....178
  extended mode....177
  locked access height....179
  normal height....176
  off-road height....176
  rear height adjust....179
  smart key operation....180
Air suspension auto access height limitations....178
Air suspension limitations....181
Air suspension overview....175

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Index

Air suspension safety.....175
Alarm.....370
  automatic relocking and arming.....23
  battery back-up sounder.....23
  deactivating.....24
  disabling the interior motion sensor alarm sensors.....23
  tilt sensor.....23
Alarm sensors
  interior motion sensor.....23
All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC)
  descent control mode.....228
  full function mode.....229
All terrain progress control (ATPC)
  overview
    settings.....227
All wheel drive (AWD).....190
Alternative camera views.....295
AM/FM radio controls.....255
  media.....255
Amber exhaust fluid warning lamp.....85
Anchor points
  ISOFIX and i-Size.....59
Anchor points (luggage).....119
Android auto
  incontrol.....313
Anti-lock braking system
  emergency stop signal.....185
Anti-lock braking system (ABS).....182
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) warning lamp.....85
Anti-theft system.....370
Anti-trap protection
  windows.....116
Apple CarPlay
  incontrol.....313
Apps screen.....245
  touchscreen.....245
Arduous driving conditions.....368
ARLA 32.....359
Assistance 24.....476
Assistance contact numbers.....476
ATPC
  using.....227
ATPC enabling.....227
ATPC not operating.....230
ATPC safety.....227
Audio
  AM/FM radio controls.....258
  automatic station retune.....259
  changing portable media device.....269
  DAB radio
    controls.....261
    settings.....262
  licensing.....256–257
  media controls.....252
  portable media connections.....263
  portable media controls.....266
  portable media pairing.....268
  portable media playing.....267
  settings.....253
  sound settings.....254
Audio settings.....253
AUS 32.....359
Auto access height.....178
Auto hybrid fuel economy.....164
Automatic locking.....17, 23
Automatic speed limiter
  warning lamps.....89
Automatic transmission.....172
  gear shift warning lamp.....88
  high and low range.....173
Auto program.....195
Auto start.....169
Auto stop.....169
Auto zoom
  navigation.....336
Auto zoom (navigation).....323
Auxiliary device connection.....267
Auxiliary heater.....279
Auxiliary power sockets.....124

B

Battery
  boost starting.....394
  care.....391

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

charging....394
connecting jump leads....392
disconnection....396
effects of disconnection....396
hybrid system fault....84
maintenance....391
monitoring system....396
removing....394
replacing....395
using a starting aid....394
warning lamp....82
warning symbols....391
Battery back-up sounder....23
Belts
seat....51
Blind
resetting the roof blind....375
Blinds
rear window....113
Blind spot monitor
closing vehicle sensing....221
closing vehicle sensing performance....222
Bluetooth
compatibility....308
general information....315
pairing
via the phone....308
phone
icons....310
safety....305
portable media
pairing....268
playing....267
Bluetooth phone
call volume....311
overview....305
steering wheel controls....311
Bonnet
closing....373
opening....372
Booster seats for larger children....53
Boost starting....394
Boot open and close....15
Brake assist....87
Brake hold....185
Brakes
ABS warning lamp....85
anti-lock braking system (ABS)....182
control with ABS....183
electronic brake force distribution....183
emergency brake assist....183
emergency stop signal....185
fluid check....388
fluid specification....389
fluid top up....389
handbrake....183
hill start assist....187
important information....182
parking brake warning lamp....83
steep slope control....183
warning lamp (amber)....85
warning lamp (red)....82
Brake temperature....198
Braking
AEB....217
engine stop on the move....170
Braking systems
AEB....217
aEBA....220
aEBA performance....220
AEB performance....219
collision avoidance....215
Bulbs
changing a bulb....374

C

Cable
charging indicators....154
connecting charging....150
disconnecting charging....155
Calibration
trailer....138
Camera features safety warnings....293
Camera features warnings....293
Cameras
hitch assist....135

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Index

reverse traffic detection.....224
Camera system faults.....297
Camera system troubleshooting.....297
Camera views
advanced tow assist.....141
tow assist.....139
Canvas roof reset.....374
Capacities.....447
Care points
driving aids.....232
speed limiter.....199
towing.....132
Carpets and mats.....381
Car-wash.....378
Cell phone
call volume.....311
icons.....310
overview.....305
steering wheel controls.....311
Centre seat back
folding.....39
Changing a bulb.....374
Changing a fuse.....397
Changing a wheel
locking wheel nuts.....
recommended process.....432
safety warnings.....426
spare wheel.....428
temporary spare wheel.....431
tool kit.....427
Charging
cable connecting.....150
cable disconnecting.....155
cable indicators.....154
port indicators.....151
port location.....150
preferred period.....154
unlocking the charging port.....152
vehicle safety.....149
Charging cable
emergency release.....155
Charging status
warning lamps.....83, 87, 90
Charging the vehicle battery.....394
Chassis number.....443
Check engine warning lamp.....85
Checking trailer bulbs.....146
Child information safety.....54
Child safety
booster seats.....53
check list.....53
ISOFIX and i-Size anchor points.....59
larger children on booster seats.....53
lock and window inhibitor.....54
positioning.....52
recommended child seats.....63
tether straps.....61
Child safety tables.....55
Child seats
introduction.....52
overview.....52
Child seat tables.....55
Cleaning
after off-road driving.....379
airbag covers.....381
alloy wheels.....379
automatic car wash.....378
carpets and mats.....381
engine compartment.....378
exterior.....377
interior.....379–380
leather.....380
park assist sensors.....378
parking aids sensors.....378
seat belts.....380
sensors and cameras.....378
under body.....378
using a car-wash.....378
washer jets.....382
wipers.....381
Cleaning the wiper blades.....381
Clear sight ground view.....297
Climate
temperature differentiation.....284
Climate and comfort
fuel burning heater.....279

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

remote control batteries.....283
timed climate remote controls.....283
using the remote control.....282
Climate and comfort settings.....272
Climate control
automatic recirculation.....272
climate seats.....276
front.....270
fuel burning heater.....279
heated seats.....276
rear.....274
remote control batteries.....283
timed climate remote controls.....283
using the remote control.....282
Climate settings.....272
Clock
setting the time and date
general settings.....249
Closing the bonnet.....373
Collision avoidance
AEB.....217
aEBA.....220
aEBA performance.....220
AEB performance.....219
blind spot assist.....222
blind spot assist performance.....223
blind spot monitor.....220
blind spot monitor performance.....221
closing vehicle sensing.....221
closing vehicle sensing
performance.....222
forward alert.....216
forward alert sensitivity.....216
rear protection monitor.....226
rear protection monitor
performance.....226
reverse traffic detection.....224
Comfort program.....192
Commandshift.....172
Commute feature.....327
Condensation (headlamps).....97
Conformity declarations.....479
Connected navigation.....324
Connected services.....324
Connecting
charging cable.....150
Connecting jump leads.....392
Connectivity
connecting a sim card.....354
mobile data connectivity.....351
overview.....351
status icons.....353
wi-Fi connectivity.....353
Connectivity information.....353
Connectivity reset.....353
Controls
adaptive speed limiter.....201
speed limiter.....200
Controls cleaning.....379
Convenience mode.....14
Coolant
checking the level.....386
specification.....387
top up.....387
Country of manufacture.....443
Courtesy delay.....93
Covers
refitting.....373
removal.....373
Creating a hotspot.....352
Critical warning messages.....83
Cruise control.....204
adaptive.....209
adaptive cruise control.....208
adaptive cruise control gap
change.....212
stop and go.....214
warning lamp.....87
Cruise control safety.....207
Curtain airbags.....69

D

DAB radio
settings.....262
DAB radio controls.....261
Data recording.....441–442
Daytime running lamps.....93

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Index

DCM performance.....236
Declarations of conformity.....479
DEF.....359
DEF warning lamp.....83, 85
Departure warning
emergency assist.....234
Deployable tow ball load measure.....147
Deployable tow ball load measure limitations.....147
Descent control limitations.....198
Descent control mode
ATPC operation.....228
steep descent driving.....228
Descent driving
HDC operation.....197
Destination entry.....318, 332
Detachable tow ball.....142
removing.....143
Device charger
wireless.....125
Diesel
anti misfuel device active.....365
fuel.....358
glow plugs
warning lamp.....88
sulphur content.....359
Diesel engines.....362
Diesel particulate filter (DPF)
sulphur content.....359
Differential control.....189–190
Differentiation
climate temperature.....284
Dimensions.....455
Dipped beam
warning lamps.....88
Direction indicators.....92
warning lamp.....88
Disability modifications
airbags.....67
Disabling the passenger airbag.....69
Disconnecting
charging cable.....152, 155
Display
hybrid.....73
instrument panel.....74
Displays.....381
Display settings
touch screen.....247
Door mirrors.....106
Door to door routing.....326
Door transceiver
assistance.....111
erase all programming.....111
programming.....109
programming a single button.....111
programming the garage door opener.....109
Double locking.....19
DPF.....83, 86, 88, 369
Drive assist.....297
Drive away locking.....17
Driver condition monitor
warning lamps.....86, 90
Driver drowsiness performance.....236
Driver exit
deactivating intelligent stop/start....171
Driver fatigue monitoring.....235
Driver modes
comfort program.....192
Driver side bar icons.....241
touchscreen home.....241
Drivetrain information.....300
Driving
activating intelligent stop/start.....169
active differential.....189
adaptive cruise control.....208
adaptive cruise control gap change.....212
after a collision.....441
arduous conditions.....368
before starting.....441
brake control with ABS.....183
brakes important information.....182
daily checks.....368
deactivating intelligent stop/start....170

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

DSC active warning lamp....86
electronic brake force distribution...183
emergency brake assist....183
emergency stop signal....185
follow mode....211
fuel filler information....364
gear shift warning lamp....88
hill start assist....187
lane departure warning lamp (green)....88
lane departure warning lamp (red)....84
low oil pressure....84
overriding ACC....210
queue assist (adaptive cruise control)....213
rain sensor....103
running-in....367
sitting correctly....30
steep slope control with ABS....183
switching follow mode off....212
using cruise control....204
weekly checks....360
Driving abroad
beam pattern....97
headlamps....97
Driving aids
collision avoidance....215
forward alert....216
traffic sign recognition....236
Driving aids safety....232
Driving assist....232
Driving behaviour....235
Driving downhill
HDC....197
Driving off-road in a PHEV....191
Driving programs
auto....195
description applicability....191
dynamic program....194
grass gravel snow....192
mud/ruts....193
override options....195
rock crawl....194
sand....193
wade....194
Driving terrain conditions
program choice....191
Driving through water limitations....302
Drowsiness monitoring....235
DSC overview....188
DSC safety....188
Dynamic program....194
Dynamic stability control (DSC)
DSC active warning lamp....86
DSC off warning lamp....86
switching off....188
switching on....189

E

Eco program
fuel saving....193
Edit route....334
Effects of battery disconnection....396
Electric mode....161
Electric parking brake....183
Electric power use
instrument panel....73
Electric seats....28
position memory....31
rear seat access....32
restricted front seat travel....30
Electric tow ball....144
Electric tow ball operation....145
Electric windows
operation....113
Electronic air suspension....175
normal height....176
Electronic air suspension auto access height limitations....178
Electronic brake force distribution....183
Electronic data....442
Emergency brake assist....183, 220
Emergency brake assist performance....220
Emergency braking....217
Emergency braking performance....219
Emergency call....345, 347–348

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Index

Emergency key blade.....9
Emergency key locking.....24
Emergency release
  charging cable.....155
Emergency stop signal.....185
  hazard warning lamps.....185
Engine
  antifreeze level.....386
  coolant level.....386
  diesel.....362
  diesel fuel.....358
  engine compartment
    poisonous fluids.....372
  oil level.....384
  petrol fuels.....357
  specifications.....445
  switching off.....166
Engine compartment cleaning.....378
Engine pre-heater
  antifreeze.....168
  cold starting.....168
  connecting to mains supply.....168
Engine starting.....165
  failure to start.....17
Engine starting safety.....165
Engine stop on the move.....170
Engine temperature warning lamp.....83
Entering a destination.....318, 332
Entering the vehicle
  activity key.....13
  entry and exit mode.....46
  global opening.....14
  keyless entry.....12
  passive entry.....12
  smart key.....9
  unlocking mode.....11
  unlocking the steering column.....47
ERA glonass.....347
Ethanol.....358
Event data recording.....442
Exhaust filter.....83, 86, 88, 359, 369
Exhaust fluid
  diesel.....359
Exit detection.....22
Exiting the vehicle
  arming the alarm.....24
  closing mislock.....21
  door locks and handles.....21
  double locking.....19
  emergency locking.....24
  global closing.....23
  interior locks.....21
  keyless locking.....20
  lock confirmation.....20
  single locking.....19
Extended mode (air suspension).....177
Exterior cleaning.....377
Exterior lamps
  bulb changing.....374
Exterior lights
  overview.....91
Exterior mirrors
  electric.....106
  manual.....106
  mirror dip when reversing.....107
External synthesized sound.....161
External temperature
  warning lamp.....86
Extinguisher.....376

F

Fabric roof reset.....374
Fatigue monitoring.....235
Favourite locations
  navigation.....321, 335
Filler locations.....383
Fire extinguisher.....376
Flat spots.....411
Fluids
  air conditioning (a/c) fluid.....367
  brake
    check.....388
    specification.....389
    top up.....389
  capacities.....447
  coolant
    specification.....387

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

top up.....387
engine oil
check.....384
filler locations.....383
oil
top up.....386
specifications.....446
washer fluid.....390
check.....389
specification.....390
Fluid service intervals.....368
Fog lamps
warning lamps
front.....88
rear.....87
Folding roof reset.....374
Following another vehicle.....211
Follow mode
gap change.....212
gap changing.....212
on.....88
Follow mode off.....212
Follow mode override.....212
Forward alert sensitivity.....216
Front airbags.....69
Front climate control
automatic recirculation.....272
Front seats.....30
Front towing eye.....435
Fuel and refuelling.....364
anti misfuel device active.....365
consumption.....366
diesel.....358
diesel fuel sulphur content.....359
ethanol.....358
fuel filler.....364
fuel filler flap.....363
identification of correct fuel.....365
methanol.....358
methyl tertiary butyl ether (MTBE)...358
octane rating.....357
petrol.....357
running out.....361
safety precautions.....357
tank capacity.....366
water in fuel.....362
Fuel burning heater.....279
Fuel can.....361
Fuel consumption.....366
Fuel filler flap.....363
locked.....363
Fuel filter information.....364
Fuel label.....365
Fuel saving
eco program.....193
Fuel system.....374
Full function mode
ATPC operation.....229
low speed driving.....229
Fuses
changing.....397
engine compartment fuse box.....398
loadspace fuse box.....403
locations.....397
luggage compartment.....403
passenger compartment fuse box...400

G

Garage door opener.....109
assistance.....111
erase all programming.....111
programming.....109
programming a single button.....111
Garage door transceiver.....109
Gearbox
automatic.....172
emergency park release.....438
gear shift warning lamp.....88
high and low range.....173
limp home mode.....174
Genre icons
audio
media.....255
Global closing.....23
Global opening.....14
Glow plugs
warning lamp.....86

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

GPF.....83, 86, 88, 369
Gradient release control
ascent brake release.....198
Grass gravel snow.....192

H

Handbook symbols.....2
Handbrake.....183
Hazard warning lamps
emergency stop signal.....185
HDC
switching on and off.....197
Headlamps.....92
adaptive.....95
adaptive driving beam.....95
auto high beam assist warning lamp.....89
beam pattern.....97
bulb changing.....374
condensation.....97
courtesy delay.....93
daytime running lamps.....93
driving abroad.....97
high beam assist.....84
high beam assist warning lamp.....89
high beam warning lamp.....89
levelling.....98
washers.....105
Headlight
washers.....105
Head restraints
front seats.....43
rear seats.....44
removing.....44
Headrest safety.....43
Head up display.....78
Head-up display configuration.....78
Head-up display limitations.....79
Heated steering wheel.....47
Heating and ventilation
air quality sensor.....272
automatic recirculation.....272
front.....270
rear.....274
Height
normal setting.....176
High beam assist.....94
Hill brake.....87
Hill descent control
brake release control.....198
brake temperature.....198
warning lamp.....88
Hill descent control (HDC)
switching on and off.....197
Hill start assist.....187
Hitch assist
cameras.....135
Hold hybrid charge
save.....162
Homelink.....109
assistance.....111
erase all programming.....111
programming.....109
programming a single button.....111
programming the garage door opener.....109
Home screen.....241–242
touchscreen home.....241–242
Hybrid preferred charging period.....154
Hybrid safety
hybrid vehicle.....160
Hybrid vehicle
electric mode.....161
hybrid safety.....160
hybrid system battery fault.....84
system overview.....160
warning messages.....163

I

Identification of correct fuel.....365
Ignition
rolling restart.....166
switching on.....166
Important points
engine starting.....165
InControl
android auto.....313
apple CarPlay.....313

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

online media.....253
overview.....341
safety warnings.....341
secure.....349
InControl overview.....253
InControl protect account.....342
InControl remote account.....342
InControl remote smartphone app.....343
InControl smartphone apps.....343
InControl warnings.....341
Indicator lamps.....80
Indicators
charging cable.....154
charging port.....151
Indicators warning lamp.....88
Information
4X4i.....300
child safety.....54
service.....368
terrain response.....303
Information messages.....76, 86
Infotainment.....253, 255
automatic station retune.....
connecting a media device.....265
DAB radio
settings.....262
DAB radio controls.....261
licensing.....257
media controls.....252
portable media
changing.....269
connecting multiple devices.....267
connections.....263
controls.....266
pairing.....268
playing.....267
radio controls.....258
settings.....253
sound settings.....254
touchscreen.....239, 245
touch screen
care.....244
home menu.....240
operating.....243
Instrument panel.....381
fuel gauge.....74
head up display.....78
head-up display configuration.....78
hybrid.....73
information panel.....74
lamp test.....82
speedometer.....73
standard.....72
tachometer.....74
temperature gauge.....74
trip computer.....77
tyre pressure check.....416
virtual.....72
configuration.....72
warning lamps.....82
warning messages.....76
Instrument panel menu
navigation information.....323, 336
Intelligent stop/start.....169
activating.....169
deactivating.....170–171
Intelligent stop/start inhibit lamp.....90
Intelligent stop/start warning
lamp.....87, 90
Interior
smart mirror.....107
Interior cleaning.....379–380
airbag covers.....381
carpets and mats.....381
Interior lamps.....99
bulb changing.....374
intensity.....100
interior mood lighting.....100
stealth mode.....100
types.....99
Interior locking.....21
Interior motion sensor
temporary disabling
alarm sensors.....23
Introduction
air suspension.....175

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Index

instrument panel....72
vehicle charging....149
Intrusion sensor
alarm sensors....23
In-vehicle hotspot....352
ISOFIX and i-Size anchor points....59

J

Jump seat....30
Jump starting
connecting a starting aid....394
connecting jump leads....392

K

Keyless entry....12
Keyless locking....20
Keyless start backup....166
Key transmitters....15

L

Label locations....443
Labels
warning safety....54
Lamps....92
bulb changing....374
condensation....92
test....82
TPMS warning lamp....87
warning lamps....82
Lane departure emergency assist....234
Lane departure warning lamp (green)....88
Lane departure warning lamp (red)....84
Lane drifting....232
Lane keeping
emergency assist....234
Languages and keyboard settings....248
Leather cleaning....380
Levelling
headlamps....98
Licensing
audio/video....256
Lighting
interior lamps intensity....100
interior lamps locations....99
interior mood lighting....100
stealth mode....100
Limitations
adaptive cruise control....210
adaptive speed limiter....202
advanced tow assist....141
AEB....219
aEBA....220
air suspension....181
ATPC....230
auto access height....178
blind spot assist....223
blind spot monitor....221
closing vehicle sensing....222
cruise control....206
driver condition monitor....236
emergency lane keeping....235
follow mode....213
HDC....198
lane keep assist....234
load measuring....147
ITM....304
rear protection monitor....226
speed limiter....201
terrain response....195
tow assist....139
traffic sign recognition....237
tSA....138
wade sensing....302
Limiter performance....201
adaptive speed limiter....202
Limiting vehicle speed....200
Limp home mode....174
Live apps....349
LKA performance....234
Load carrying
securing a load....128
Load measuring....147
Load securing....129
Loadspace cover....128
Location
charging port....150
Location of manufacture....443

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Locations
airbag safety....68
Locked access height....179
Locking
automatic relocking....23
confirmation....20
door locks and handles....21
double locking....19
drive away....17
emergency locking....24
global closing....23
in an emergency....24
keyless....20
mislock....21
single....19
transmitter effects on medical devices....15
with the emergency key....24
Locking the vehicle
smart key....9
Locking wheel nuts....431
Low beam....87
Low fuel warning lamp....88
Low oil pressure warning lamp....84
Low range transmission warning lamp....89
Low traction launch warning lamp....90
LTL....304
LTL limitations....304
Lubricants specifications....446
Luggage
loadspace area....128
Luggage compartment
anchor points....129
loadspace cover....128
Luggage compartment hatch....131

M

Maintenance
after off-road driving....379
air conditioning (a/c)....367
arduous driving conditions....368
brake fluid level....388
bulb changing....374
capacities....447
changing a fuse....397
checking tyre pressure after a repair....424
cleaning
alloy wheels....379
exterior....377
interior....379–380
leather....380
seat belts....380
sensors and cameras....378
the engine compartment....378
under body....378
closing the bonnet....373
daily checks....368
engine compartment fuse box....398
engine coolant level....386
engine oil level....384
fuel system....374
fuse box (passenger compartment)....400
jump starting....394
label locations....443
loadspace fuse box....403
lubricants and fluid specifications....446
oil top up....386
paintwork repair....382
running-in....367
smart key battery....17
tyre repair procedure....421
tyre repair system....419
using a starting aid....394
washer fluid level....389
weekly checks....368
Manual seats....26
head restraints....43
Map
auto zoom....323, 336
split screen....319, 333
updates....324, 337
Master PIN....249
Media....253

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Index

automatic station retune.....259
genre icons.....255
online media.....253
portable media
connecting a media device.....265
radio controls.....258
safety.....251
Media controls.....252
Media shortcut icons
touchscreen home.....243
Memory seats.....31
Menu operation
instrument panel.....75
Menu options
instrument panel.....75
Message centre operation.....75
Message centre options.....75
Methanol.....358
Minor paintwork repairs.....382
Mirrors
blind spot assist.....222
blind spot assist performance.....223
blind spot monitor.....220
blind spot monitor performance.....221
dip when reversing.....106
exterior mirrors.....106
interior mirror.....107–108
rear protection monitor.....226
rear view mirror.....107–108
Misfuel device active.....365
Monitor
blind spot.....220
clear exit.....22
rear protection.....226
seat belts.....51
Monitoring driver behaviour.....235
Mpg.....366
Mud/ruts.....193
My commute.....327
MY EV
charge.....164
energy flow.....164
My EV
hold hybrid charge.....162
save.....162
save.....164

N

Navigation
adjusting the volume.....323, 336
alerts.....321, 335
destination entry.....318, 332
edit route.....320
favourite locations.....321, 335
fuel prices service.....326
instrument panel view.....323, 336
map
auto zoom.....323, 336
split screen.....319, 333
updates.....324
menu.....332
notifications.....321, 335
route routing.....325
operating.....317, 330
real time traffic flow.....325
safety cameras.....327
satellite view.....326
Navigation commute.....327
Navigation feature settings.....321, 335
Navigation introduction.....316, 328
Navigation panes.....329
Navigation pro services.....324
Navigation safety warnings.....316, 328
Navigation settings menu.....321, 335
Navigation shortcut.....329
Navigation shortcut icons
touchscreen home.....242
Navigation system.....316, 328
Navigation system features.....316, 328
Navigation system limitations.....316, 328
Navigation system
performance.....316, 328
Navigation touchscreen home tiles.....329
Navigation troubleshooting.....316, 328
Navigation voice.....323
Navigation voice commands.....323

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Navigation voicetags.....323
Navigation warnings.....316, 328
Notifications settings.....249
system settings.....249

O

Obstructing the airbag.....65
Occupant safety
airbag safety.....64
child seat safety.....52
child seat tether straps.....61
cleaning seat belts.....380
recommended child seats.....63
seat belt checks.....50
seat belt pre-tensioners.....51
seat belt reminder warning.....50
seat belt safety.....48
seat belts warning lamp.....84
Octane rating.....357
petrol.....357
Off-road camera system overview.....293
Off-road driving
auto program.....192
cleaning after.....379
comfort program.....192
dynamic program.....194
grass gravel snow.....192
ITL.....304
mud/ruts.....193
override options.....195
recovery.....438
rock crawl.....194
sand program.....193
wading.....194
Off-road driving information.....303
Off-road driving limitations.....195, 304
Off-road height.....176
Off-road information.....299–300
Oil
engine oil specification.....386
poisonous fluids.....372
top up.....386
used engine oil.....372
Online features.....349
Online live apps.....349
Online media
audio.....253
Online pack.....253
Online service history (OSH).....464
On-road camera system overview.....293
Opening the bonnet.....372
Opening the tailgate.....15
Operation
adaptive cruise control.....209
deployable tow ball.....145
instrument panel menu.....75
seat belts.....48
smart key.....9
Optimised assistance.....348
Optimised breakdown assistance.....348
Options
instrument panel menu.....75
OSH
Online service history.....464
Over the air
software updates.....355
Overview
4X4i.....299
air suspension.....175
camera system.....293
child seats.....52
deployable tow ball.....144
DSC.....188
exterior lights.....91
hybrid vehicle system.....160
InControl mobile technology.....341
indicator lamps.....80
instrument panel.....72
preconditioning.....156
vehicle charging.....149
warning lamps.....80
Owner maintenance.....368

P

Paintwork
repair.....382
Pairing
via the phone.....308

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Index

Panoramic
reset....375
Panoramic roof
windows....375
Panoramic roof blind....117
resetting the roof blind....375
Park assist
cleaning sensors and cameras....378
limitations....290
options....288
selecting....288
troubleshooting....291
using....289
Parking aid
limitations....287
selecting....287
Parking aids
adjusting the volume....287
cleaning sensors and cameras....378
system fault....288
Parking brake....183
warning lamp....83
Parking features
park assist....288
limitations....290
selecting....288
troubleshooting....291
using....289
select parking aid....287
Parking features safety warnings....285
Parking features warnings....285
Park position emergency release....438
Particle filter....369
Particulate filter....83, 86, 88
Parts....371
Passenger compartment fuse box....400
Passenger side bar icons....242
touchscreen home....242
Passive entry....12
Pedestrian audible alert....161
Performance
adaptive cruise control....210
adaptive speed limiter....202
blind spot monitor....221
closing vehicle sensing....222
cruise control....206
driver condition monitor....236
emergency lane keeping....235
follow mode....213
lane keep assist....234
rear protection monitor....226
speed limiter....201
traffic sign recognition....237
Performance data....445
Performance limitations
air suspension....181
HDC....198
Petrol
fuel types....357
Petrol consumption....366
PHEV charging period....154
PHEV terrain response....191
Phone
Bluetooth compatibility....308
call volume....311
compatibility list....308
contacts....311
icons....310
managing two calls....309
merge calls....309
overview....305
pairing via the phone....308
receiving text messages....312
steering wheel controls....311
Phone charger....125
Phone safety....305
Phone shortcut icons
touchscreen home....243
PIN number
master PIN....249
Port
charging indicators....151
charging location....150
Portable media
Bluetooth wireless technology....315
changing device....269

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

connecting a media device.....265
connecting multiple devices.....267
connections.....263
controls.....266
pairing.....268
playing.....267
safety.....263
Power sockets.....124
Preconditioning
departure times.....156
overview.....156
safety.....156
timed charging.....156
timed climate.....156
Predictive energy optimisation
mY EV.....164
Pregnancy
using seat belts.....49
Pressure checking (tyres)
checking after a repair.....424
Pressures
tyres.....407
Profiles
terrain response.....194
Profiles settings.....248
system settings.....248
Progress control enabling.....227
Progress control limitations.....230
Progress control safety.....227
Progress control warning lamp.....87
Protect.....343
Pulling away
brake hold.....185
Puncture repair system.....419
instructions for use.....420
repair procedure.....421
safety.....419
Push button start backup.....166

Q

Queue assist
adaptive cruise control.....213
stop and go.....214

R

Radio
automatic station retune.....259
DAB
settings.....262
DAB controls.....261
Radio controls.....255
Radio frequency ID (RFID).....117
Radio frequency regulations.....461
Rain sensor.....103
Rear camera.....295
hitch assist.....135
Rear fog lamps warning lamp.....87
Rear height adjust (air suspension).....179
Rear seat access.....32
Rear seat hitch.....131
Rear seats
restricted travel.....41
safety.....33
second row folding and raising.....34
third row folding and raising.....40
Rear seat screens
rear climate.....274
Rear suspension height adjust using the smart key.....180
Rear towing eye.....436
Rear traffic monitor.....224
Rear window blind.....113
Receiving text messages
phone.....312
Recording
event data.....442
service data.....441
Recovery
off-road.....438
towing on four wheels.....438, 440
transmission park release.....438
transporting.....435, 438
Red exhaust fluid warning lamp.....83
Refuelling
diesel.....358
diesel fuel sulphur content.....359
ethanol.....358

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Index

fuel filler flap....363
methanol....358
MTBE....358
octane rating....357
petrol....357
running out of fuel....361
safety precautions....357
unlocking the fuel filler flap....363
Release
charging cable emergency....155
Reminder (seat belt)....50
Remote....343
Remote and protect....343
Remote and protect account....342
Remote control
care....18
single locking....19
smart key battery....17
system transmitters....458
Removing a rear head restraint....44
Removing the spare wheel....428
Removing the vehicle battery....394
Repairing paintwork damage....382
Replacement tyres....4[illegible]0
Resetting the windows....[illegible]
Restarting the engine while moving....166
Restricted front seat travel....30
Restricted seat travel
obstructions....41
Reverse parking aid....286
Reverse parking aids
adjusting the volume....287
parking aid system fault....288
Reverse trailer....139
Reversing
parking aid limitations....287
Roadside Assistance....476
Road sign recognition....236
Rock crawl....194
Roll back....87
Rolling restart....166
Rolling roads....371
Roof blind....117
operation....116
Route....318, 332
favourite locations....321, 335
Route planner....326
Route planning web portal....326
Routine service intervals....368
Running-in....367
Running out of fuel....361

S

Safety....285, 296, 316, 328
adaptive cruise control....207
AEB....217
airbag locations....68
air suspension....175
ATPC....227
child information....54
child safety locks....54
cleaning seat belts....380
collision avoidance....215
cruise control....204
driving aids....232
DSC....188
front seats....26
fuel and refuelling....357
head restraints....43
media....251
portable media....263
preconditioning....156
reference tables....55
seat belt checks....50
seat belt pre-tensioners....51
seat belt reminder warning....50
seat belts....48, 52
seat belts warning lamp....84
seats for larger children....53
sitting correctly....30
speed limiter....199
starting....165
touchscreen....238
towing....132
TPMS pressure compensation....411
tyre care....407
tyre pressures....409

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

used engine oil.....372
use seat belts during pregnancy.....49
using the phone.....305
vehicle charging.....149
wade sensing.....301
warning labels.....54
warning triangle.....441
Safety camera alert
adjusting the volume.....323, 336
Safety in the garage.....371
Sand program.....193
Satellite navigation
destination entry.....318, 332
edit route.....320
favourite locations.....321, 335
fuel prices service.....326
instrument panel view.....323, 336
map
auto zoom.....323, 336
split screen.....319, 333
updates.....324, 337
menu.....332
online routing.....325
operating.....317, 330
real time traffic flow.....325
safety cameras.....327
satellite view.....326
Save
hold hybrid charge.....162
Screen wash
check.....389
topping up.....390
Seat
monitor.....51
Seat belts.....380
checks.....50
operation.....48
pre-tensioners.....51
reminder warning.....50
safety.....48, 52
use during pregnancy.....49
warning lamp.....84
Seats
centre seat back folding.....39
child restraint check list.....53
child seat positioning.....52
child seat tether straps.....61
cleaning seat belts.....380
cooled.....276
electric front.....28
front head restraints.....43
heated.....276
jump seat.....30
manual front.....26
position memory.....31
rear head restraints.....44
rear seat access.....32
rear seat folding.....34, 40
rear seat restricted movement.....41
rear seat safety.....33
recommended child seats.....63
removing a rear head restraint.....44
restricted front seat travel.....30
seat belts warning lamp.....84
second row seats.....34
sitting correctly.....30
Seat safety
front.....26
Securing luggage.....128–129
Security
alarm.....370
tilt sensor.....23
automatic relocking and arming.....23
battery back-up sounder.....23
closing mislock.....21
deactivating the alarm.....24
lock confirmation.....20
locking with the emergency key.....24
single locking.....19
Selecting
park aid.....287
Sensing
clear exit detection.....22
Sensitivity
forward alert.....216

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Index

Sequential shift.....172
Service
  arduous operating conditions.....466
  armoured vehicles.....466
  arranging a service.....464
  end of life vehicle (elv).....467
  fluid replacement.....466
  online service history (OSH).....464
  replacement service record.....467
  service content.....466
  service record.....467
  service requirements.....465
Service position
  wipers service position.....374
Servicing
  airbags.....66
  data recording.....441
Setting a terrain response profile.....194
Setting a waypoint.....334
Settings.....321, 335
  customisable.....249
  general.....249
  system.....247
  system settings.....248–249
  timed charging.....159
  timed climate.....158
  vehicle preconditioning.....158
Setting the heating and ventilation.....272
Set-up
  virtual instrument panel.....72
Side airbags.....69
Side lamps warning lamp.....89
Sign recognition.....236
Silencing the alarm.....24
Sim card
  connecting.....354
Sitting correctly.....30
Smart key
  battery changing.....17
  care.....18
  single locking.....19
  suspension height adjustment.....180
  transmitters.....458
Smartphone app.....343
Snow chains.....414
Software
  updates.....355
Solar attenuating glass.....117
SOS call.....347
SOS call.....345
Sound settings.....254
Spare wheel.....428
  using wheel chocks.....431
Specifications
  capacities.....447
  dimensions.....455
  engine.....445
  ethanol.....358
  fluids.....446
  fuel tank capacity.....366
  label locations.....443
  lubricants.....446
  methanol.....358
  MTBE.....358
  updates.....445
  weight.....448
Speed-dependent wipers.....104
Speed limiter
  adaptive speed limiter.....201
  automatic speed limiter.....199
  overview.....199
Speedometer.....72
  standard.....72
  virtual.....72
Split screen map.....319, 333
SRS
  airbag warning lamp.....84
Stability assist limitations.....138
Stability control
  active differential.....189
  all wheel drive (AWD).....190
  awd.....190
  DSC
    switching on.....189
  switching off.....188
Stability control overview.....188

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Stability control safety.....188
Standard instrument panel
fuel gauge.....74
speedometer.....73
tachometer.....74
temperature gauge.....74
Starting after a collision.....441
Starting the engine.....165, 169
engine pre-heater.....168
failure to start.....167
push button start backup.....166
Status icons
touch screen.....241
Stealth mode.....100
Steering column
lock.....14
vehicle recovery.....14
Steering correction.....232
Steering wheel
adjusting.....46
AUTO position.....46
heated.....46
Stolen vehicle
InControl secure.....349
Stop/start
activating.....169
deactivating.....170–171
Stop on the move.....170
Stopping the engine.....169
Storage compartments.....119
cup holders.....119
front cubby box.....119
rear armrest.....119
Storage compartments areas
glove box.....119
Sun blind.....113, 117
Sunroof
anti-trap protection.....116
Sun roof
roof blind.....117
Supplementary restraint system (SRS)
airbag deployment.....65
airbags maintenance.....370
airbag warning lamp.....65, 84
curtain airbags.....69
disabling passenger airbag.....69
front airbags.....69
side airbags.....69
Surround camera.....139
Surround cameras.....295
Suspension.....175
access height.....177
adaptive dynamics.....181
electronic air suspension.....175
extended mode.....177
height adjustment.....175
locked access height.....179
off-road height.....176
rear height adjust.....179
Switch cleaning.....379
Switching off the engine.....166
Switching on the ignition.....166
System limitations
cameras.....297

T

Technical specifications
capacities.....447
dimensions.....455
engine.....445
radio frequency regulations.....461
updates.....445
weights.....448
Telephone
Bluetooth compatibility.....308
Bluetooth wireless technology.....315
call volume.....311
contacts.....311
icons.....310
managing two calls.....309
merge calls.....309
overview.....305
pairing
via the phone.....308
steering wheel controls.....311
Telephone safety.....305

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Index

Temperature
climate differentiation.....284
Terrain response.....192
description applicability.....191
pHEV.....191
wade.....194
Terrain response information.....303
Terrain response profiles.....194
Terrain response program
description applicability.....191
Tilt sensor.....23
Time and date
general settings.....249
Timed charging (blue)
warning lamps.....89
Timed climate.....280
additional remote controls.....283
remote control batteries.....283
touch screen controls.....280
using the remote control.....282
Timed climate control.....279
Tinted front screen.....117
Toll road payment.....117
Tool kit.....417
Topping up fluids
filler locations.....383
Touch screen.....381
Touchscreen
apps screen.....245
changing portable media device.....269
connecting multiple portable media devices.....267
customisable settings.....249
DAB radio controls.....261
display settings.....247
eco-data.....193
fuel burning heater.....279
fuel economy facts.....193
general settings.....249
home menu.....240
languages and keyboard settings.....248
notifications settings.....249
operating.....243
portable media controls.....266
portable media connections.....263
portable media pairing.....268
portable media playing.....267
profiles settings.....248
safety.....238
status icons.....241
system settings.....247
timed climate controls.....280
touch screen care.....244
valet mode.....245
deselecting.....246
welcome screen.....239
Touchscreen home
home screen.....241–242
media shortcut icons.....243
navigation shortcut icons.....242
phone shortcut icons.....243
Tow assist calibration.....138
Towball
deployable.....144
detachable.....142–143
Tow ball accessories.....148
Tow ball operation
deployable.....145
Tow bar
options.....134
Towing
a trailer.....135
bulb check.....146
calculating weight.....147
checks
breakaway cable.....147
lights.....147
nose weight limit.....147
tow ball.....147
detachable tow ball.....142–143
essential checks.....147
hitch assist.....135
on four wheels.....438
stability assist.....138
tow assist.....139

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

tow ball accessories.....148
tow bar options.....134
trailer electrical connections.....137
trailer hitch.....135
trailer sway.....138
weights.....133
Towing eyes
front.....435
rear.....436
Tracking your vehicle
InControl secure.....349
Traction control
switching off.....188
switching on.....189
Traffic detection
reverse.....224
Traffic sign recognition.....236
Trailer
electrical connections.....137
sway.....138
towing weights.....133
Trailer bulb check.....146
Trailer direction indicators warning lamp.....89
Trailer rear view.....139
Trailer reverse.....139
Trailer safety.....132
Trailer weight measure.....147
Trailer weight measure limitations.....147
Transfer case
high and low range.....173
Transmission
automatic.....172
emergency park release.....438
gear shift warning lamp.....88
limp home mode.....174
Transmission park release.....438
Transmitters
smart key.....458
Transporting the vehicle.....435, 438
TR info.....299
Trip computer.....77
TR limitations.....195
Trunk access.....15
TSA limitations.....138
TSR performance.....237
Turning adaptive cruise control follow mode on.....88
Tyre pressure
safety warnings.....408
Tyre pressure checking after a repair.....424
Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS).....416
full size replacements.....417
tyre care.....407
warning lamp.....87
Tyre pressures.....417
Tyre repair system
checking pressures.....424
repair procedure.....421
safety information.....419
using.....420
Tyres
age degradation.....412
flat spots.....411
full size replacements.....417
Indian regulations.....415
information label.....410
off-road tyres.....413
pressure check.....416
pressure check safety warnings.....408
pressures.....409
repair procedure.....421
repair system.....419
repair system use.....420
replacements.....410
snow chains.....414
speed ratings.....407
TPMS.....416
warning lamp.....87
TPMS pressure compensation.....411
tyre care.....407
tyre repair safety.....419
tyre wall markings.....406
valves.....410

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

vehicle loading.....417
wall markings.....406
winter.....412

U

Under body cleaning.....378
Under bonnet covers.....373
Unlocking.....21
activity key.....13
entry and exit mode.....46
fuel filler flap.....363
global opening.....14
keyless entry.....12
multi point entry.....11
passive entry.....12
single point entry.....11
steering column.....47
transmitter effects on medical devices.....15
Unlocking the charging port.....152
Unlocking the steering column.....438
Updates
software.....355
specifications.....445
USB devices
connecting multiple devices.....267
Used engine oil.....372
Using ATPC.....227
Using cruise control.....204
Using seat belts.....48
Using the parking aid.....286
Using wheel chocks.....431

V

Valet mode.....245
deselecting.....246
Valves
tyres.....410
Vehicle
charging overview.....149
charging safety.....149
Vehicle alarm.....370
Vehicle battery
battery monitoring system.....396
connecting jump leads.....392
effects of disconnection.....396
removing.....394
replacing.....395
warning symbols.....391
Vehicle battery care.....391
Vehicle cleaning
after driving off-road.....379
airbag covers.....381
alloy wheels.....379
automatic car wash.....378
carpets and mats.....381
engine compartment.....378
interior.....379–380
under body.....378
washer jets.....382
Vehicle data recording.....442
Vehicle loading tyre pressures.....417
Vehicle location
InControl secure.....349
Vehicle preconditioning
overview.....156
safety.....156
Vehicle recovery
front towing eye.....435
off-road.....438
rear towing eye.....436
steering column lock.....14
towing on four wheels.....438, 440
transmission park release.....438
transporting the vehicle.....435, 438
unlocking the steering column.....438
Vehicle testing on rolling roads.....371
VIN
build location.....443
VIN number.....443
Virtual instrument panel
fuel gauge.....74
speedometer.....73
tachometer.....74
temperature gauge.....74
Virtual instrument panel configuration.....72

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Voice control.....338
settings
command list.....339
operating guide.....339
preferences.....339
voicetags.....339
voice training.....339
tutorial.....339
voicetags.....339

W

Wade aid.....299
Wade sensing
4x4i 4 wheel drive information.....302
Wading limitations.....302
Warning lamp
AdBlue.....83, 85
Warning lamps.....80, 82, 86, 88
ABS.....85
adaptive cruise control follow mode on.....88
adaptive cruise control on.....87
adaptive cruise control with steering assist active.....89
adaptive cruise control with steering assist not active.....89
adaptive speed limiter.....87
airbags.....65, 84
auto high beam assist.....89
auto lights.....89
automatic speed limiter.....89
battery charge.....82
brake.....82, 85
charging status.....83, 87, 90
check engine.....85
critical warning message.....83
cruise control.....87
diesel glow plugs.....86
dipped beam.....88
driver condition monitor.....86, 90
DSC active.....86
engine temperature.....83
external temperature.....86
gear shift warning lamp.....88
HDC.....88
headlamp high beam.....89
high beam assist.....89
hybrid vehicle battery fault.....84
indicators.....88
intelligent stop/start (green).....87
intelligent stop/start (white).....90
lamp test.....82
lane departure (green).....88
lane departure (red).....84
low fuel.....86
low oil pressure.....84
low range selected.....89
low traction launch.....90
parking brake.....83
progress control system.....87
rear fog lamps.....87
seat belt.....84
side lights.....89
timed charging (blue).....89
trailer direction indicators.....89
tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS).....87
Warning messages.....76
hybrid vehicles.....163
information panel.....74
Warnings
adaptive cruise control.....207
air suspension.....175
driving aids.....232
media.....251
portable media.....263
speed limiter.....199
touchscreen.....238
Warning triangle.....441
Warranty
accessories fitted to a new vehicle.....471
accident damage repair.....471
aluminium body repairs.....471
corrosion protection warranty.....470
data protection statement.....468
emission control system warranty.....471

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

manufacturer's warranty.....469
manufacturer's warranty terms.....469
other exclusions.....474
other exclusions - MENA.....474
owner's responsibilities.....468
paint surface warranty.....470
parts and accessories warranty.....470
plug-in hybrid electric vehicles (PHEV).....470
quality checks.....468
regional warranty.....469
safety-related defects (australia only).....464
warranty and consumer law.....469
warranty cover when touring.....469
what is not covered by scheduled maintenance items?.....474
what is not covered by the manufacturer's warranty?.....472
what is not covered by the paint surface warranty and corrosion protection warranty?.....473
Warranty exclusions
other exclusions.....474
other exclusions - MENA.....474
what is not covered by scheduled maintenance items?.....474
what is not covered by the manufacturer's warranty?.....472
what is not covered by the paint surface warranty and corrosion protection warranty?.....473
Warranty information
owner's responsibilities.....468
warranty and consumer law.....469
warranty cover when touring.....469
Warranty terms
accessories fitted to a new vehicle.....471
accident damage repair.....471
aluminium body repairs.....471
corrosion protection warranty.....470
emission control system warranty....471
manufacturer's warranty.....469
manufacturer's warranty terms.....469
paint surface warranty.....470
parts and accessories warranty.....470
plug-in hybrid electric vehicles (PHEV).....470
regional warranty.....469
Washer jets.....382
Washers.....101
fluid specification.....390
fluid top up.....390
headlamps.....105
headlight.....105
Washing
automatic car wash.....378
Water in fuel.....362
Weights
gross vehicle weights.....448
roof load.....448
roof rack weight.....448
tow ball/hitch.....133
towing.....133
vehicle weights.....448
Welcome screen.....239
touchscreen.....239
Wheel changing
locking wheel nuts.....431
recommended process.....432
safety warnings.....426
spare wheel.....428
temporary spare wheel.....431
tool kit.....427
Wheel chocks use.....431
Wheels and tyres
age degradation.....412
checking the pressures after a repair.....424
flat spots.....411
full size replacements.....417
Indian regulations.....415
off-road tyres.....413
pressures.....409
puncture repair.....419

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

puncture repair safety.....419
repair procedure.....421
repair system.....419
repair system use.....420
replacements.....410
snow chains.....414
TPMS.....416
TPMS pressure compensation.....411
TPMS warning lamp.....87
tyre care.....407
tyre pressure label.....410
tyre speed ratings.....407
tyre wall markings.....406
valves.....410
winter tyres.....412
White auto stop/start lamp.....90
Wi-Fi connection icons.....353
Wi-Fi Hotspot.....352
Wi-Fi vehicle connections.....353
Windows
anti-trap protection.....116
operation.....116
panoramic roof.....375
reset.....375
resetting the roof blind.....375
roof blind.....117
solar attenuating.....117
Winter tyres.....412
Wipers.....101
service position.....374
Wipers and washers.....101
drip wipe.....104
fluid level.....389
rain sensor.....103
speed-dependent mode.....104
winter park position.....104
Wireless technology
Bluetooth.....315

©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021